



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 08231340 8



Bullwom's

TR 20









THE  
PRINCIPLES  
OF  
LATIN GRAMMAR;

COMPRISING THE SUBSTANCE OF THE MOST APPROVED  
GRAMMARS EXTANT, WITH

AN APPENDIX,

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

---

By Rev. PETER BULLIONS, D. D.,

LATE PROFESSOR OF LANGUAGES IN THE ALBANY ACADEMY; AUTHOR  
OF THE SERIES OF GRAMMARS, GREEK, LATIN AND  
ENGLISH, ON THE SAME PLAN, ETC., ETC.

---

REVISED AND IMPROVED.

NEW YORK:  
SHELDON AND COMPANY, PUBLISHERS  
677 BROADWAY.

1873

562086

ASTOR, LENOX AND  
TILDEN FOUNDATION  
1912

according to Act of Congress, in the year 1858, by  
PETER BULLIONS, D.D.,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the  
Northern District of New York.

## COLLEGE AND SCHOOL TEXT-BOOKS

BY

EMINENT PRACTICAL TEACHERS.

### BULLIONS' SERIES OF GRAMMARS, ETC.

- INTRODUCTION TO ANALYT. AND PRAC. GRAMMAR. 40 cts.  
ANALYTICAL AND PRACTICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR. 75 cents.  
EXERCISES IN ANALYSIS AND PARSING. 18 cents.  
LATIN LESSONS, by Spencer, 75 cents, introductory to Bullions'  
LATIN GRAMMAR. \$1 25.  
\*LATIN READER. \$1 25. \*LATIN EXERCISES. \$1 25.  
CÆSAR. \$1 25. CICERO. \$1 25. SALLUST. \$1 12.  
\*LATIN ENGLISH DICTIONARY (with Synonyms). \$3 00.  
GREEK LESSONS. 85 cents. GREEK GRAMMAR. \$1 50.  
\*GREEK READER. \$2 00. \*COOPER'S VIRGIL. \$2 25.

### THE NORMAL MATHEMATICAL SERIES.

- STODDARD'S JUVENILE MENTAL ARITHMETIC. 22 cents.  
STODDARD'S INTELLECTUAL ARITHMETIC. 25 cents.  
STODDARD'S RUDIMENTS OF ARITHMETIC. 50 cents.  
STODDARD'S PRACTICAL ARITHMETIC. 70 cents.  
STODDARD & HENKLE'S ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA. \$1 00.  
STODDARD & HENKLE'S UNIVERSITY ALGEBRA. \$1 75.  
\*KEY TO S.'S INTELL. AND PRAC. ARITHMETICS. 60 cents.  
\*KEY TO S. & H.'S ELEMENTARY ALGEBRA. \$1 00.  
\*KEY TO S. & H.'S UNIVERSITY ALGEBRA. \$1 75.

### FRENCH AND GERMAN.

- KEETELS' NEW METHOD OF LEARNING FRENCH. \$1 50.  
PEISSNER'S ELEMENTS OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE. \$1

### PHYSIOLOGY, LOGIC, ASTRONOMY, ETC.

- HOOKE'S HUMAN PHYSIOLOGY. \$1 50. FIRST BOOK. I  
WHATELY'S ELEM. OF LOGIC. \$1 50. RHETORIC. \$1  
THOMPSON'S LAWS OF THOUGHT. \$1 50.  
WAYLAND'S INTELLECTUAL PHILOSOPHY. \$1 50.  
BROCKLESBY'S ASTRONOMY. \$1 50. \*METEOROLOGY. I  
PALMER'S PRACTICAL BOOK-KEEPING. 75 cents.  
COMSTOCK'S NAT. PHILOSOPHY. \$1 50. CHEMISTRY. I

Also, several other Text Books by good Authors, for which, see  
Catalogue, which is furnished gratis. We furnish to Teachers for Exam-  
ination, postpaid by mail, a copy of any of the above books not having a \*  
annexed, at half price. Those marked with a \* we send on receipt of the  
prices annexed.

SHELDON & CO.,

Publishers, New York.

*Manufactured by Case, Lockwood & Co., Hartford, Conn.*

## PREFACE.

---

In the study of any language, the foundation of success must be laid in a thorough acquaintance with its principles. This being once attained, future progress becomes easy and rapid. To the student of language, therefore, a good Grammar, which must be his constant companion, is of all his books the most important. Such a work, to be really valuable, ought to be *simple* in its arrangement and style, so as to be adapted to the capacity of youth, for whose use it is designed; *comprehensive*, and *accurate*, so as to be a sufficient and certain guide in the most difficult as well as in easy cases; and its principles and rules should be rendered familiar by numerous examples and exercises.

The fundamental principles are nearly the same in all languages. So far as Grammar is concerned, the difference lies chiefly in the minor details—in the forms and inflections of their words, and in the modes of expression peculiar to each, usually denominated *idioms*. It would seem, therefore, to be proper, in constructing Grammars for different languages, that the principles, so far as they are the same, should be arranged in the same order, and expressed as nearly as possible in the same words. Where this is carefully done, the study of the Grammar of one language becomes an important aid in the study of another;—an opportunity is afforded of seeing wherein they agree, and wherein they differ, and a profitable exercise is furnished in comparative or general grammar. But when a Latin Grammar is put into the hands of the student, differing widely in its arrangement or phraseology from the English Grammar which he had previously studied, and afterwards a Greek Grammar different from both, not only is the benefit derived from the analogy of the different languages in a great measure lost, but the whole subject is made to appear intolerably intricate and mysterious. By the publication of this series of Grammars, English, Latin, and Greek, on the same plan, this evil is now remedied probably as far as it can be done.

The work here presented to the public, is upon the foundation of ADAM'S LATIN GRAMMAR, so long and so well known as a text book in this country. The object of the present undertaking was, to combine with all that is excellent in the work of Adam, the many important results of subsequent

labors in this field ; to supply its defects ; to bring the whole up to that point which the present state of classical learning requires, and to give it such a form as to render it a suitable part of the series formerly projected. In accomplishing this object, the author has availed himself of every aid within his reach, and no pains have been spared to render this work as complete as possible in every part. His acknowledgments are due for the assistance derived from the excellent works of Scheller, Crombie, Zumpt, Andrews & Stoddard, and many others, on the whole or on separate parts of this undertaking ; and also for many hints kindly furnished by distinguished teachers in this country. As in the other grammars, so here, the rules and leading parts which should be first studied, are printed in larger type ; and the filling up of this outline is comprised in observations and notes under them, made easy of reference by the sections and numbers prefixed. The whole is now committed to the judgment of an intelligent public, in the hope that something has been done to smooth the path of the learner in the successful prosecution of his studies, and to subserve the interests of both English and Classical literature in this country.

### REVISED EDITION.

New plates having become necessary for this work, the opportunity has been embraced of thoroughly revising and improving it. The rules, definitions, and leading parts, with very few exceptions, remain just as they were ; but still, some things deemed important have been added in many places in the form of new Observations, or of additions to the former ones. On this account, the pages of this edition do not correspond to those of former editions ; but this will occasion no difficulty, as the Sections, Observations, etc., are arranged and numbered as they were before. Besides this mode of reference, which is still retained, the simpler method, by a running series of numbers, from first to last, as in the English Grammars, has been added. A leading object kept constantly in view, in the revision of this work, as well as of the Greek Grammar just completed, has been, to bring about a still greater uniformity in the works composing this series, and to indicate more fully and distinctly wherein the languages agree, and wherein they differ. The additions that have been made to this work, amount in all to about twenty-eight pages, and no labor or expense has been spared to render the work in all respects more worthy of that favor with which it has already been received.

*New York, June, 1853*

# INDEX.

A.		PAGE		PAGE
<b>Ablative, meaning of, . . . . .</b>	13	<b>Analysis of sentences, . . . . .</b>	294	
construction of, . . . . .	243	examples of, . . . . .	297	
governed by nouns, . . . . .	243	<b>Apposition, substantives in, . .</b>	207	
by adjectives, . . . . .	244	<b>Archaism, . . . . .</b>	291	
by comp. degree, . . . . .	244	<b>Arrangement, Latin, . . . . .</b>	291	
by verbs, . . . . .	246	General principles of, . . . . .	292	
by passive verbs, . . . . .	252	B.		
variously, . . . . .	247	<b>Beginners, directions for, . . . .</b>	299	
<b>Accidents of the noun, . . . . .</b>	10	C.		
<b>Accusative, meaning of, . . . . .</b>	12	<b>Case, . . . . .</b>	12	
construction of, . . . . .	240	<b>Cases, government of, . . . . .</b>	205	
governed by verbs, . . . . .	240	<b>Cæsural pause, . . . . .</b>	321	
by passive verbs, . . . . .	252	<b>Cause, manner, and instrument, .</b>	255	
by prepositions, . . . . .	263, 264	<b>Circumstances, construction of, .</b>	254	
variously, . . . . .	242	of limitation, . . . . .	254	
and genitive, . . . . .	247, 248	of cause, manner, &c., . . . . .	255	
and dative, . . . . .	249	of place, . . . . .	256	
and accusative, . . . . .	250	of time, . . . . .	258	
and ablative, . . . . .	251	of measure, . . . . .	259	
<b>Adjectives, . . . . .</b>	48	of price, . . . . .	260	
Root of, . . . . .	13	<b>Concord, of, . . . . .</b>	207	
of first and second decl. . . . .	49	<b>Conjugations, of, . . . . .</b>	109	
of third, . . . . .	51	General remarks on, . . . . .	162	
irregular, . . . . .	54	First, . . . . .	119	
exercises on, . . . . .	56	irregular, . . . . .	167	
numeral, . . . . .	57	Second, . . . . .	128	
cardinal, . . . . .	57	irregular, . . . . .	168	
ordinal, . . . . .	60	Third, . . . . .	136	
comparison of, . . . . .	63	irregular, . . . . .	171	
Rules for, . . . . .	63, 64	Fourth, . . . . .	146	
irregular, &c., . . . . .	65	irregular, . . . . .	179	
derivation of, . . . . .	67	1st Periphrastic, . . . . .	163	
distributive, . . . . .	60	2d     do.     . . . . .	164	
Multiplicative, . . . . .	62	<b>Conjunctions, . . . . .</b>	203	
construction of, . . . . .	209	construction of, . . . . .	288	
<b>Adverbs, signification of, . . . .</b>	196	<b>Consonants, . . . . .</b>	2	
derivation of, . . . . .	197	<b>Construing, Rules for, . . . . .</b>	300	
comparison of, . . . . .	198	D.		
construction of, . . . . .	261	<b>Dative, meaning of, . . . . .</b>	12	
cases governed by, . . . . .	262	construction of, . . . . .	230	
		governed by nouns, . . . . .	231	



Dative governed	PAGE	Genitive, governed	PAGE
by adjectives,.....	231	by adverbs,.....	282
by verbs,.....	233	variously,.....	286
by impersonals,....	236	Gerunds,.....	108
by the pass. voice,..	253	construction of,.....	284
variously,.....	239	Gerundives,.....	107
Datives two, gov'd by verbs,	238	construction of,.....	286
Declension, Rules for,.....	13, 14	Government, of.....	221
First,.....	15	Grammar, definition of,.....	1
Exceptions in,....	16	division of,.....	1
Greek nouns in,..	16	H	
Exercises on,....	17	Hellenism,.....	291
Second,.....	17	Hyperbaton,.....	291
Exceptions in,....	19, 20	I	
Greek nouns in,..	21	Increment of nouns,.....	306
Exercises on,.....	21	of the 2d decl....	307
Third,.....	22	of the 3d decl....	307
Observations on,..	22	of the plural,....	308
Examples of,....	23-25	of the verb,.....	309
Exercises on,.....	26	Interjections,.....	202
Genders in,.....	27	construction of,.....	242
Exceptions in,....	30	Irregular nouns,.....	33
Greek nouns in,..	33	adjectives,.....	54
Fourth,.....	33	comparison,.....	65
Exceptions in,....	34	Verbs,.....	181
Observations on,..	35	L	
Exercises on,....	36	Letters,.....	1
Fifth,.....	36	Limitation, circumstances of,	254
Exercises on,....	37	M	
Dependent verbs,.....	154	Marks and characters,.....	3
irregular,.....	180	Measure, circumstances of,...	251
Derivatives and compounds,		Metre,.....	319
quantity of,.....	315	different kinds of,....	321
special rules for,.....	316	Iambic,.....	321
Diphthongs,.....	1	Trochaic,.....	322
E		Anapæstic,.....	323
Ellipsis,.....	290	Dactylic,.....	323
Enallage,.....	290	Choriambic,.....	325
Etymology,.....	8	Ionic,.....	326
F		Metres, compound,.....	328
Feet, simple,.....	317	Metres, combination of, in	
compound,.....	318	Horace,.....	328
isochronous,.....	318	Metrical key to Odes of Hor-	
G		ace,.....	329
Gender, of,.....	10	Moods,.....	88
Observations on,.....	11	Indic, tenses of,.....	92
Genitive, meaning of,.....	12	construction of,.....	266
construction of,.....	222	Subjunctive, tenses of,	
gov'd by nouns,.....	222	construction of,....	267
by adjectives,..	225	with conjunctions,	268
by verbs,.....	228	with relative,....	270
by passives,....	252	used for imperative,...	90

	PAGE	Pronouns,	PAGE
<b>Moods, Imperative tenses of,...</b>	100	Possessive, .....	73
construction of, .....	275	Demonstrative, .....	74
<b>Infinitive, tenses of,...</b>	100	Observations on, ..	76
construction of, ....	275	Definite, .....	77
without a subject, ..	276	Relative, .....	77
with a subject, ...	278	construction of, ....	213
N.		case of, .....	216
<b>Negatives, construction of,...</b>	261	Interrogative, .....	78
<b>Nominative, meaning of, ....</b>	12	Observations on, ..	79
construction of, .....	217	Indefinite, .....	80
after the verb, .....	220	Patrial, .....	80
<b>Notation of numbers, .....</b>	59	compound, .....	80
<b>Nouns, .....</b>	9	Pronunciation, .....	4
Accidents of, . ....	10	English method of, ...	341
Root of, .....	13	Prosody, .....	304
Irregular, ....	38	Figures of, .....	327
defective, .....	40	Punctuation, .....	3
<b>Nouns, redundant, .....</b>	46	Q	
Syntax of, .....	207, 227	Quantity, of, .....	6, 304
increment of, .....	306	General rules for, ...	6, 304
<b>Number, .....</b>	12	Special rules for, ....	306
<b>Numbers, notation of, .....</b>	59	of penult syllables, ...	310
<b>Numeral adjectives, ...</b>	57	of final syllables, ....	312
O.		of derivatives and com-	
<b>Orthography, .....</b>	1	pounds, .....	315
P.		R.	
<b>Parsing, directions for, .....</b>	301	Resolution or analysis, .....	294
examples of, .....	302	Examples of, .....	300
<b>Participles, of, .....</b>	106	S.	
construction of, .....	282	Scanning, .....	327
case absolute, .....	283	Stanza, .....	328
<b>Parts of speech, .....</b>	9	Supines, of, .....	106
<b>Person, .....</b>	10	construction of, .....	287
<b>Person, and number of verbs, ..</b>	104	Syllables, .....	5
<b>Place, circumstances of, ....</b>	256	Syntax, .....	204
<b>Pleonasm, .....</b>	290	General principles of, ..	205
<b>Prepositions, of, .....</b>	199	of cases, Synopsis of, ..	205
Observations on, .....	200	Parts of, .....	207
in composition, .....	201	of the noun, .....	222
inseparable, .....	202	of the verb, .....	265
governing the accusa-		Figures of, .....	290
tive, .....	263	T.	
the ablative, .....	263	Tenses, of, .....	91
the acc. and		of the indicative, ....	92
ablative, ..	264	subjunctive, ....	96
in composi-		imperative, ....	100
tion, ....	264	infinitive, ....	100
<b>Price, circumstances of, .....</b>	280	participles, ....	106
<b>Pronouns, Personal, .....</b>	68	Active, how formed, ...	110
Observations on, .....	69	Passive, how formed, ..	113
Adjective, .....	72	Connection of, .....	265

	PAGE	Verb,	PAGE
Terminations, table of,.....	14	Deponent, 1st conj. ....	155
Time, circumstances of,.....	258	2d do.....	156
V.		3d do.....	157
Verb,.....	88	Verb, deponent, 4th do. ....	158
Different kinds of,....	85	Exercises on,.....	159
Inflection of,.....	86	Verbs, Neuter-passives,.....	160
Voices of,.....	86	compound,.....	165
Observations on,.....	87	irregular in perf. and	
Moods of,.....	88	Sup. ....	166-179
Tenses of,.....	91	Irregular,.....	181
of the Indicative, ..	92	<i>Sum</i> ,.....	114
of the Subjunctive, ..	96	Exercises on, ..	117
of the Imperative, ..	100	Defective,.....	188
of the Infinitive, ..	100	Impersonal,.....	190
Number and person of, ..	104	Exercises on,....	193
how formed,.....	110	Redundant,.....	194
Regular, conjugation of, ..	109	Derivatives,.....	194
1st conj. Active,.....	119	Frequentatives, ..	196
Exercises on,.....	122	Inceptives,.....	196
1st conj. Passive,.....	124	Desideratives,.....	196
Exercises on,.....	127	Diminutives, ....	196
2d conj. Active,.....	128	construction of, with	
Exercises on,.....	131	Nom. ....	217
2d conj. Passive,.....	132	Special rules for, ..	218
Exercises on,.....	135	Syntax of,.....	265
3d conj. Active,.....	136	Increment of,.....	309
Exercises on,.....	141	Versification,.....	317
3d conj. Passive,.....	141	Vocative, meaning of,.....	18
Exercises on, ....	145	construction of,.....	242
4th conj. Active,.....	146	Voice,.....	86
Exercises on,.....	149	Vowels,.....	1
4th conj. Passive, ....	150	Vowel sounds, table of,.....	4
Exercises on,.....	153	W.	
Deponent verbs,.....	154	Words,.....	8

## CONTENTS OF THE APPENDIX.

I. Roman computation of time,.....	331
II. Roman names,.....	334
III. Divisions of the Roman People,.....	335
IV. Divisions of the Roman civil officers,.....	336
V. The Roman Army,.....	336
VI. Roman Money, Weights, and Measures,.....	337
VII. Different ages of Roman Literature,.....	340
VIII. English pronunciation of Latin,.....	341

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

1.—LATIN GRAMMAR is the art of speaking or writing the Latin language with propriety.

It is divided into four parts; namely, *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax*, and *Prosody*.

---

## PART FIRST.

---

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

2.—ORTHOGRAPHY treats of letters, and the mode of combining them into syllables and words.

---

#### § 1. LETTERS.

3.—A LETTER is a mark or character used to represent an elementary sound of the human voice.

The Latin Alphabet consists of twenty-five letters, the same in name and form as those of the English Alphabet, but without the *w*.

Letters are either *Vowels* or *Consonants*.

#### VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

4.—A VOWEL is a letter which represents a simple *inarticulate* sound; and, in a word or syllable, may be sounded alone.

The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. In Latin, *y* is never a consonant as in English.

5.—The union of two vowels in one sound, is called a *Diphthong*. Diphthongs are of two kinds, proper and improper.

6.—A *Proper Diphthong* is one in which both the vowels are sounded. The Proper Diphthongs in Latin are three, viz: *au, eu, ei*; as, *aurum, euge, hei*.

7.—An *Improper Diphthong* is one in which only one of the vowels is sounded. The Improper Diphthongs in Latin are *ae* and *oe*, often written together, *æ, œ*; as, *tada, pœna*.

### 8.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Ai* and *oi* are found as diphthongs in proper names from the Greek, as *Maia, Troia*.

2. After *g* and *q*, and sometimes after *s, u* before another vowel in the same syllable, does not form a diphthong with it, but is to be regarded as an appendage of the preceding consonant, having nearly the force of *w*, as in the English words, *linguist, quick, persuade*; thus, *lingua, sanguis, qui, quæ, quod, quum, suadeo*, are pronounced as if written *lingwa, sangwis, kwi, kwæ, kwod, kwum, swadeo*. So also after *c* and *h* in *cui* and *huic*, pronounced in one syllable, as if written *cwi* or *kwi*, and *hwic*; also *ui* after a consonant, in such words from the Greek as *Harpuia*.

3. Two vowels standing together in different syllables, pronounced in quick succession, resemble the diphthong in sound, and, among the poets, are often run together into one syllable; thus *de-in, de-inde, pro-inde, &c.*, in two and three syllables, are pronounced in one and two, *cein, deinde, proinde, &c.*

### CONSONANTS.

9.—A **CONSONANT** is a letter which represents an *articulate* sound, and, in a word or syllable, is never sounded alone, but always in connection with a vowel or diphthong.

10.—The consonants in Latin are *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z*. Of these, eight, viz, *p, b, t, d, c, k, q, and g*, are called *mutes*, because they interrupt or stop the sound of the voice, as *b* in *sub*;—four, viz, *l, m, n, r*, are called *liquids*, because of their fluency, or the ease with which they *flow* into other sounds, or, in combining with other consonants, are changed one for another;—two are called *double consonants*, viz, *x* and *z*, because they are each equivalent to two other consonants; namely, *x* to *cs* or *gs*, and *z* to *ds*. The letter *j*, likewise, is sounded by us as a double consonant, equivalent to *dg*, and in prosody is so considered, because, except in compounds of *jūgum*, it uniformly makes the vowel before it long. The letter *s* represents a sibilant or hissing sound. The *h* is only an aspirate, and denotes a rough breathing: in prosody, it is not regarded as

a consonant. The letters *k*, *y*, and *z*, are used only in words derived from the Greek.

11.—*Note.* Anciently, the letter *j* seems to have been more nearly allied to a vowel than to a consonant, and was represented by *i*; thus, *qius*, *peius*, &c., were written *eius*, *peius*, &c.; and the *j* thus forming a sort of diphthong with the preceding vowel, of course made the syllable long; as, *ei-us*, *pe-i-us*, &c. In like manner, *u* and *e* were represented by the same letter, namely, *e*.

## MARKS AND CHARACTERS.

12.—The marks and characters used in Latin Grammar, or in writing Latin, are the following:

˘ Placed over a vowel shows it to be short."

ˉ Placed over a vowel shows it to be long.

˘ˉ Placed over a vowel shows it to be short or long.

¨ Is called *Diaeresis*, and shows that the vowel over which it is placed does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel, but belongs to a different syllable; as, *aër*, pronounced *a-er*.

ˆ The *circumflex* shows that the syllable over which it stands has been contracted, and is consequently long, as *nuntiadrunt* for *nuntiaverunt*, *dimicassent* for *dimicavissent*; or that the vowel over which it is placed, has its long open sound; as, *pennä*.

ˋ The grave accent is sometimes placed over particles and adverbs, to distinguish them from other words consisting of the same letters; as, *quòd*, a conjunction, "that," to distinguish it from *quod*, a relative, "which."

ˊ The acute accent is used to mark the accented syllable of a word. as, *tába*, *dom'ínus*.

' *Apostrophe* is written over the place of a vowel cut off from the end of a word; as, *men'* for *mena*.

## PUNCTUATION.

13.—The different divisions of a sentence are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The modern punctuation in Latin is the same as in English. The marks employed are the *Comma* (,); *Semicolon* (;); *Colon* (:); *Period* (.); *Interrogation* (?); *Exclamation* (!).

14.—The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients, was a point (.), which denoted pauses of a different length, according as it stood at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line—that at the top denoting the shortest, and that at the bottom the longest pause.

## § 2. PRONUNCIATION.\*

15.—The pronunciation of the Latin language prevalent among the nations of continental Europe, is greatly preferable to the English, both because it harmonizes better with the quantity of the language, as settled by the rules of Prosody, and because, by giving one simple sound to each vowel, distinguishing the short and the long only by the duration of sounds, it is much more simple. The sound of the vowels, as pronounced alone or at the end of a syllable, is exhibited in the following—

## 16.—TABLE OF VOWEL AND DIPHTHONGAL SOUNDS.

Short <i>ă</i>	sounds like	<i>a</i>	in Jehovah,	as <i>ămăt.</i>
Long <i>ā</i>	like	<i>a</i>	in father,	as <i>fāma.</i>
Short <i>ĕ</i>	like	<i>e</i>	in met,	as <i>pĕtĕrĕ.</i>
Long <i>ē</i>	like	<i>ey</i>	in they,	as <i>docĕre.</i>
Short <i>ĭ</i>	like	<i>i</i>	in uniform,	as <i>unĭtas.</i>
Long <i>ī</i>	like	<i>i</i>	in machine,	as <i>pīnus.</i>
Short <i>ŏ</i>	like	<i>o</i>	in polite,	as <i>indŏles.</i>
Long <i>ō</i>	like	<i>o</i>	in go,	as <i>pŏno.</i>
Short <i>ŭ</i>	like	<i>u</i>	in popular,	as <i>popŭlus.</i>
Long <i>ū</i>	like	<i>u</i>	in rule, or pure,	as <i>tŭba, ūsu.</i>
<i>ae</i> or <i>æ</i>	} like	<i>ey</i>	in they,	as { <i>Pæan.</i>
<i>oe</i> or <i>œ</i>				{ <i>Phœbus.</i>
<i>au</i>	like	<i>ou</i>	in our,	as <i>aurum.</i>
<i>eu</i>	like	<i>eu</i>	in feud,	as <i>eurus.</i>
<i>ei</i>	like	<i>i</i>	in ice,	as <i>hei.</i>

## 17.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. The sound of the vowels *a* and *e* remains unchanged in all situations.
2. The sound of *i*, *o*, and *u*, is slightly modified when fol-

---

\* The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language, cannot now be certainly ascertained. The variety of pronunciation in different nations, arises from a tendency in all to assimilate it in some measure to their own. But of all varieties, that of the English—certainly the farthest of any from the original—is, in our opinion, decidedly the worst; not only from its intricacy and want of simplicity, but especially from its conflicting constantly with the settled quantity of the language. In English, every accented syllable is long, and every unaccented one is short. When, therefore, according to the rules of English accentuation, the accent falls on a short syllable in a Latin word, or does not fall on a long one, in either case, its tendency is, to lead to false quantity.—For the English orthoëpy of the Latin language, see p. 341.

lowed by a consonant in the same syllable, and is the same, whether the syllable is long or short. Thus modified,

i	sounds like	i	in sit,	as mīttit.
o	like	o	in not,	as pōterat, forma.
u	like	u	in tub,	as frūctūs.

*Note.* For the sound of *u*, before another vowel, after *g*, *q*, and sometimes *s*, &c., See 8-2.

8. The consonants are pronounced generally as in the English language. *C* and *g* are hard, as in the words *cat*, and *got*, before *a*, *o*, and *u*; and *c* is soft like *s*; and *g*, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *α*.

4. *T* and *c*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* short, followed by a vowel, usually have the sound of *sh*; as in *nuntius* or *nunciūs*, *patientia*, *socius*; pronounced *nunshius*, *pashienshia*, *soshius*. But *t* has not the sound of *sh* before *i* long, as *totius*; nor in such Greek words as *Miltiades*, *Bæotia*, *Ægyptius*; nor when it is preceded by another *t*, or *s*, or *x*; as *Bruttii*, *ostium*, *mixtio*, &c.; nor, lastly, when *ti* is followed by the termination of the infinitive passive in *er*, as in *nitier*, *quatier*.

*Note.* The soft sound of *c* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *α*, adopted by all European nations, is evidently a deviation from the ancient pronunciation, according to which *c* was sounded hard, like *k*, or the Greek *κ*, in all situations. *Ti* sounding *shi* is a similar corruption, chiefly English, which it might perhaps be well to change by giving *ti* the same sound in all situations; as, *arvī*, *artī-um*, *artī-bus*.

5. *S* has always the sharp sound like *ss*, and never the soft sound like *s*; or like *s* in *as*, *peas*, *doss*, &c.; thus, *nos*, *domīnos*, *rūpes*, are pronounced as if written *noss*, *domīnoss*, *rūpess*, not *noss*, *domīnoss*, *rūpess*.

### § 3. SYLLABLES.

18.—A SYLLABLE is a distinct sound forming the whole of word, or so much of it as can be sounded at once.

Every word has as many syllables as it has distinct vowel sounds.

A word of one syllable is called a *Monosyllable*.

A word of two syllables is called a *Dissyllable*.

A word of three syllables is called a *Trissyllable*.

A word of many syllables is called a *Polysyllable*.

19.—In a word of many syllables, the last is called the *final* syllable; the one next the last is called the *penult*, and the syllable preceding that is called the *antepenult*.



20.—The Figures which affect the orthography of words, are as follows :

- 1st. *Prosthesis* prefixes a letter or syllable to a word ; as, *gnatus* for *natus*, *tetūlit* for *tūlit*.
- 2d. *Epenthesis* inserts a letter or syllable in the middle of a word ; as, *navita* for *nauta*, *Timolus* for *Timolus*.
- 3d. *Paragoge* adds a letter or syllable to the end of a word ; as, *amarier* for *amāri*, &c.
- 4th. *Apharesis* cuts off a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word ; as, *brēvis't* or *brēvist* for *brēvis est* ; *rhābo* for *arrhābo*.
- 5th. *Syncope* takes a letter or syllable from the middle of a word, as, *oraculum* for *oracūlum* ; *amdrim*, for *amavērim* ; *deūm* for *deōrum*.
- 6th. *Apocope* takes a letter or syllable from the end of a word ; as, *Antōni* for *Antonii*, *men'* for *mēne*, *dic* for *dice*.
- 7th. *Antithesis* substitutes one letter for another : as, *olli* for *illi*, *vult*, *vultis*, for *volt*, *voltis*, contractions for *vōlit*, *vōltis*.
- 8th. *Metathesis* changes the order of letters in a word ; as, *pistris* for *pristis*.
- 9th. *Thesis* separates the parts of a compound word by inserting another word between them ; as, *quæ me cumque vocant terræ*, for *quæcumque me*, &c.
- 10th. *Anastrophe* inverts the order of words ; as, *dāre circum* for *circumdāre*.

### QUANTITY AND ACCENT.

21.—QUANTITY is the measure of a syllable in respect of the time required in pronouncing it.

In respect of quantity, a syllable is either *long* or *short* ; and a long syllable is considered equal to two short ones.

### 22.—GENERAL RULES.

1. A diphthong is always long ; as, *aūrum*, *pæ-na*.
2. A vowel before another vowel is short ; as, *vī-a*, *dē-us*.
3. A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant is long ; as, *cōnsul*, *pēnna*, *trāxit*.
4. A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common ; i. e., sometimes long and sometimes short ; as, *cerēbrum*, or *cerēbrum*.

[For special rules on this subject, see Prosody.]

23.—ACCENT is a special stress or force of voice on a particular syllable of a word, by which that syllable is distinguished from the rest.

Every word of more than one syllable has an accent; as *Déus, hómo, dom'ínus, tolerábilis*.

The last syllable of a word never has the accent. In a word of two syllables, the accent is always on the first. In a word of three or more syllables, if the penult is long, the accent is on the penult; as, *sermō'nis, amaré'mus*; but if the penult is short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *facílis, dúctre, pectō'ris, pectóribus*.

24.—An enclitic syllable (*que, ve, ne, &c.*), being considered, in pronunciation, part of the word to which it is annexed, generally changes the place of the accent by increasing the number of syllables; as, *vírum, virúmque; dom'ínus, dominíusve*.

25.—A word of one syllable is properly without an accent; but if an enclitic is annexed, it becomes a dissyllable, and takes the accent on the first syllable; as, *tu, túne*.

26.—In English, an accented syllable is always long, or rather the accent makes it long; but in Latin, the accent makes no change in the quantity of its syllable, and, except in the penult, is as often on a short, as on a long syllable; as, *fá'ciles, pè'tère, v'rum*.

*Note 1.* These rules respecting accent, in connection with the general rules for quantity, will be sufficient to guide the pupil in accenting words, without the artificial aid of marking the accented syllables. Where the quantity of the penult is not ascertained by the preceding rules (22), it will be marked in this work.

*Note 2.* In reading Latin, it is important, as much as possible, to distinguish accent from quantity—a matter not without difficulty to those accustomed to a language in which accent and quantity always coincide. It should be remembered that in Latin, the accent does not make a syllable long as in English, neither does the want of it make the syllable short. *Hómines*, for example, should not be pronounced *hómines*; and care should be taken to distinguish in reading the verbs *lè'go* and *lè'go*;—the noun *pòp'ulus* (the people) from *pò'pulus* (a poplar);—or the verbs *fú'ris, lè'gis, rē'gis*, from the genitives *fú'ris, lè'gis, rē'gis*. The accented short syllable should be pronounced with greater force of voice, but be preserved short still; and the long syllable, whether accented or not, should be made long.

## PART SECOND.

---

### ETYMOLOGY.

27.—**ETYMOLOGY** treats of the different sorts of words, their various modifications, and their derivations.

---

#### § 4. WORDS.

28.—**WORDS** are certain articulate sounds used by common consent as signs of our ideas.

1. In respect of *Formation*, words are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*; *Simple* or *Compound*.

A *Primitive* word is one that comes from no other; as, *puer*, *bōnus*, *pāter*.

A *Derivative* word is one that is derived from another word; as, *pueritia*, *bonitas*, *paternus*.

A *Simple* word is one that is not combined with any other word; as, *pīus*, *doceo*, *verto*.

A *Compound* word is one made up of two or more simple words; as *impius*, *dedoceo*, *animadverto*.

2. In respect of *Form*, words are either *Declinable* or *Indeclinable*.

A *Declinable* word is one which undergoes certain changes of *form* or *termination*, to express the different relations of gender, number, case, &c., usually termed, in Grammar, *Accidents*.

An *Indeclinable* word is one that undergoes no change of form.

3. In respect of *Signification* and *Use*, words are divided into different classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

## § 5. PARTS OF SPEECH.

29.—The Parts of Speech in the Latin language are eight, viz:

1. *Noun* or *Substantive*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, declined.
2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, *Conjunction*, undeclined.

30.—Any part of speech used simply as a word, and spoken of, is regarded as a noun (271). Thus used, it is indeclinable, and in the neuter gender.

---

## § 6. THE NOUN.

31.—A **NOUN** is the name of any person, place, or thing; as *Cicero*, *Roma*, *homo*, *liber*.

32.—Nouns are of two kinds, *Proper* and *Common*.

1. A *Proper Noun* is the name applied to an individual only; as, *Cicero*, *Aprilis*, *Roma*.

To this class belong,

*Patronymics*, or those which express one's parentage or family; as, *Priamides*, the son of Priam.

*Gentile*, or *Patrial*, which denote one's country; as, *Romanus*, *Gallus*.

*Obs.* A proper noun applied to more than one, becomes a common noun; as, *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

2. A *Common Noun* is a name applied to all things of the same sort; as, *vir*, a man; *dñmus*, a house; *liber*, a book.

*Note.* A Proper noun is the name of an *individual* only, and is used to distinguish that individual from all others of the same class. A Common noun is the name of a *class* of objects, and is equally applicable to all the individuals contained in it.

33.—Under this class may be ranged,

1. *Collective nouns*, or nouns of multitude, which signify many in the singular number; as, *populus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army

2. *Abstract nouns*, or the names of qualities; as, *bonitas*, goodness; *dulcedo*, sweetness.

3. *Diminutives*, or nouns which express a diminution in the signification of the nouns from which they are derived; as, *libellus*, a little book, from *liber*, a book.

4. *Amplificative nouns*, or those which denote an increase in the signification of the nouns from which they are derived; as, *capito*, a person having a large head, from *caput*, the head.

## § 7. ACCIDENTS OF THE NOUNS.

34.—To Latin nouns belong *Person*, *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case*.

### 1. PERSON.

35.—**PERSON**, in Grammar, is the distinction of nouns as used in discourse, to denote the speaker, the person or thing addressed, or the person or thing spoken of. Hence,

There are three persons, called *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

A noun is in the first person, when it denotes the speaker or writer; as, *Ego ille consul qui verbo ci'ves in exilium ejicio*.

A noun is in the second person, when it denotes the person or thing addressed; as, *Catilina, perge quo coepisti*.

A noun is in the third person, when it denotes the person or thing spoken of; as, *Tempus fugit*.

*Note.* Person has nothing to do either with the form of a noun, or with its meaning, but simply with the manner in which it is used. Hence, the same noun may at one time be in the first person; at another, in the second; and at another in the third.

### 2. GENDER.

36.—**GENDER** means the distinction of nouns with regard to Sex.

37.—There are three Genders, the *Masculine*, the *Feminine*, and the *Neuter*.

38.—Of some nouns, the gender is determined by their *signification*;—of others by their *termination*.

39.—The *Masculine* gender belongs to all nouns which denote the male sex.

40.—The *Feminine* gender belongs to all nouns which denote the female sex.

41.—The *Neuter* gender belongs to all nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine.

42.—Nouns which denote both males and females, are said to be of the *Common* gender ; i. e., they are both masculine and feminine.

43.—Nouns denoting things without sex, and which are sometimes of one gender, and sometimes of another, are said to be *Doubtful*.

44.—The gender of nouns not determined by their signification, is usually to be ascertained by their termination, as will be noticed under each declension.

#### 45.—GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON GENDER.

1. Nouns denoting brute animals, especially those whose sex is not easily discerned or but rarely attended to, commonly follow the gender of their termination. Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, insects, &c.

2. A proper name often follows the gender of the common noun under which it is comprehended ; thus,

The names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine, because *mensis*, *ventus*, *fluvius*, *mons*, are masculine.

The names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *nāvis*, are feminine.

To these, however, there are many exceptions.

3. Some nouns are masculine and feminine both in sense and grammatical construction ; as, *adolescens*, a young man or woman ; *Affinis*, a relation by marriage ; *dux*, a leader.

Some nouns are masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction ; i. e., they have an adjective word always in the masculine gender ; such as, *Artifex*, an artist ; *fur*, a thief ; *sēnex*, an old person ; &c.

Some nouns are masculine or feminine in sense, but feminine only in grammatical construction ; i. e., they have an adjective word always in the feminine gender ; such as, *copiæ*, forces, troops ; *custodiæ*, guards ; *operæ*, labourers ; &c.

4. Some nouns denoting persons, are neuter, both in termi-

nation and construction; as, *Acroāma*, a jester; *Auxilia*, auxiliary troops; *mancipium*, or *servilium*, a slave.

5. Some nouns distinguish the masculine and feminine by a difference of termination; as, *Victor*, *victrix*; *ultor*, *ultrix*; *cōquus*, *cōqua*. Some names of animals distinguish the two sexes by different forms; as, *Agnus*, *agna*; *cervus*, *cerva*; *columbus*, *columba*; *gallus*, *gallina*, &c. In some cases, the words are altogether different; as, *taurus*, a bull; *vacca*, a cow. But, in general, the male and the female are expressed by the same term; *passer*, sparrow; *corvus*, a raven; *fēlis*, a cat; *vulpes*, a fox; *cānis*, a dog; *hōmo*, a man.

### 3. NUMBER.

46.—NUMBER is that property of a noun by which it expresses one, or more than one.

47.—Latin nouns have two numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The Singular denotes *one*; the Plural, *more than one*.

48.—Some nouns in the plural form, denote only *one*; as, *Athēnæ*, Athens; others signify one or more; as, *nuptiæ*, a marriage or marriages.

### 4. CASE.

49.—CASE is the state or condition of a noun with respect to the other words in a sentence.

50.—Latin nouns have six cases, the *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

1. The *Nominative* case, for the most part, denotes the name of an object simply, or as that of which something is affirmed.

2. The *Genitive* connects with the name of an object, the idea of origin, possession, or fitness.

3. The *Dative* represents the thing named, as that *to* which something is added, or *to*, or *for* which something is said or done.

4. The *Accusative* represents the thing named, as affected or acted upon by something else, and also, as the object to which something tends or relates.

5. The *Vocative* is used when persons or things expressed by the noun, are addressed.

6. The *Ablative* represents the thing named, as that *from* which something is separated, or taken; or, as that *by* or *with* which something is done, or exists.

51.—All the cases, except the nominative, are called *Oblique* cases.

52.—The signs of the oblique cases, or the prepositions by which they are usually rendered into English, are the following, viz: Genitive, *of*; Dative, *to* or *for*; Vocative, *O*; Ablative, *with, from, in, by, &c.*, as in the following scheme:

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	a king,	Nom.	kings,
Gen.	<i>of</i> a king,	Gen.	<i>of</i> kings,
Dat.	<i>to</i> or <i>for</i> a king,	Dat.	<i>to</i> or <i>for</i> kings,
Acc.	a king,	Acc.	kings,
Voc.	O king,	Voc.	O kings,
Abl.	<i>with, from, in, or by,</i> a king.	Abl.	<i>with, from, in, or by,</i> kings.

## § 8. DECLENSION

53.—DECLENSION is the mode of changing the terminations of nouns, &c.

54.—In Latin, there are five declensions, called the *First, Second, Third, Fourth, and Fifth*.

55.—The declensions are distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular; thus,

The first declension	has the genitive singular in	—æ,
The second	“	“ in —i,
The third	“	“ in —is,
The fourth	“	“ in —ūs,
The fifth	“	“ in —ei.

56.—All that part of a noun, or of an adjective, which precedes the termination of the genitive singular, is called the *Root*. All that follows the root, in any case or number, is called the *Case-ending, or Termination*.



## 57. —GENERAL RULES FOR THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the nominative, accusative, and vocative, alike in both numbers, and these cases, in the plural, end always in *a*.

2. The vocative, for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is like the nominative.

3. The dative and the ablative plural are alike.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural.

The difference between these declensions will be seen at one view in the following :

## 53.—TABLE OF TERMINATIONS.

Singular.									
	<i>First.</i>	<i>Second.</i>		<i>Third.</i>	<i>Fourth.</i>		<i>Fifth.</i>		
		M.	N.	M.	N.	M.	N.		
<i>N.</i>	-ă,	-us, -ei,	-um,	—	—	-us,	-û,	-es,	
<i>G.</i>	-æ,	-i,	—	-is,	—	-ûs,	-ûs,	-ei,	
<i>D.</i>	-æ,	-ô,	—	-î,	—	-uî,	-û,	-ei,	
<i>Ac.</i>	-am,	-um,	-am,	-em,	—	-um,	-u,	-em,	
<i>V.</i>	-ă,	-ě, -er,	-am,	—	—	-us,	-û,	-es,	
<i>Ab.</i>	-ă,	-ô.	—	-ě, or î.	—	-û.	-û.	-ă	

Plural.									
<i>N.</i>	-æ,	-î,	-ă,	-es,	-ă, -iă,	-us,	-uă,	-es,	
<i>G.</i>	-ărur,	-ôrum,	—	-um, -ium,	—	-uum,	—	-êrum,	
<i>D.</i>	-is,	-is,	—	-îbus,	—	-îbus, or ũbus,	—	-êbus,	
<i>Ac.</i>	-as,	-os,	-ă,	-es,	-ă, -iă,	-us,	-uă,	-es,	
<i>V.</i>	-æ,	-î,	-ă,	-es,	-ă, -iă,	-us,	-uă,	-es,	
<i>Ab.</i>	-is.	-is.	—	-îbus.	—	-îbus, or ũbus.	—	-êbus.	

59. —The terminations of the nominative singular in the third declension, being numerous, are omitted in the table, also those of the vocative, which, in this declension, is always like the nominative. The terminations of the genitive, dative, and ablative neuter. are the same as the masculine.

## § 9. FIRST DECLENSION.

60.—The first declension has four terminations of the nominative singular: two feminine, *a*, *e*; and two masculine, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*; the rest are Greek.

## TERMINATIONS.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Nom.</i> -ā,	<i>Nom.</i> -æ,
<i>Gen.</i> -æ,	<i>Gen.</i> -ārum,
<i>Dat.</i> -æ,	<i>Dat.</i> -is,
<i>Acc.</i> -am,	<i>Acc.</i> -as,
<i>Voc.</i> -ā,	<i>Voc.</i> -æ,
<i>Abl.</i> -ā,	<i>Abl.</i> -is.

PENNA, *a feather*,—later, *a pen*. Fem.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> penn-ā, <i>a pen,</i>	<i>N.</i> penn-æ, <i>pens,</i>
<i>G.</i> penn-æ, <i>of a pen,</i>	<i>G.</i> penn-ārum, <i>of pens,</i>
<i>D.</i> penn-æ, <i>to or for a pen,</i>	<i>D.</i> penn-is, <i>to or for pens,</i>
<i>Ac.</i> penn-am, <i>a pen,</i>	<i>Ac.</i> penn-as, <i>pens,</i>
<i>V.</i> penn-ā, <i>O pen,</i>	<i>V.</i> penn-æ, <i>O pens,</i>
<i>Ab.</i> penn-ā, <i>with a pen.</i>	<i>Ab.</i> penn-is, <i>with pens.</i>

VIA, *a way*. Fem.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> vi-ā, <i>a way,</i>	<i>N.</i> vi-æ, <i>ways,</i>
<i>G.</i> vi-æ, <i>of a way,</i>	<i>G.</i> vi-ārum, <i>of ways,</i>
<i>D.</i> vi-æ, <i>to a way,</i>	<i>D.</i> vi-is, <i>to ways,</i>
<i>Ac.</i> vi-am, <i>a way,</i>	<i>Ac.</i> vi-as, <i>ways,</i>
<i>V.</i> vi-ā, <i>O way,</i>	<i>V.</i> vi-æ, <i>O ways,</i>
<i>Ab.</i> vi-ā, <i>with, &amp;c., a way.</i>	<i>Ab.</i> vi-is, <i>with, &amp;c., ways.</i>

*Note.* The words declined as examples in this and the other declensions, are not divided into syllables, and the hyphen (-) is never to be regarded as a division of syllables, but only as separating the root from the termination; as penn-a, agr-i, &c.

In like manner decline:

Ara, *an altar*; Sella, *a seat*; Tūba, *a trumpet*; Litēra, *a letter*.

## ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Ala, <i>a wing.</i>	Fāba, <i>a bean.</i>	Rīpa, <i>a bank.</i>
Arca, <i>a chest.</i>	Hōra, <i>an hour.</i>	Turba, <i>a crowd.</i>
Cāsa, <i>a cottage.</i>	Mensa, <i>a table.</i>	Unda, <i>a wave.</i>
Causa, <i>a cause.</i>	Norma, <i>a rule.</i>	Virga, <i>a rod.</i>

## 61.—EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. Nouns in *a*, denoting appellations of men, as *pincerna*, a butler; names of rivers; (45-2,) likewise *Hadriă*, the Hadriatic; *comēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer, are masculine. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

## EXCEPTIONS IN CASE.

2. *The Genitive Singular*.—The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive in *āi*; as, *aulă*, a hall; Gen. *aulăi*;—sometimes in *as*; as, *mater-familias*, the mother of a family, (See 96-9).

3. *The Accusative Singular*.—Greek nouns in *a*, have sometimes *an* in the accusative singular; as, *Maian*, *Ossan*.

4. *The Dative and Ablative Plural*.—The following nouns have *ābus* instead of *is*, in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them from masculine nouns in *us*, of the second declension, viz:

*Asīna*, a she ass.

*Dea*, a goddess.

*Equa*, a mare.

*Filia*, a daughter.

*Mūla*, a she mule.

*Nāta*, a daughter.

Several others are found in inscriptions and in ancient authors. Still, except *dea* and *filia*, notwithstanding the ambiguity, they generally prefer the termination *is*.

## GREEK NOUNS.

62.—Greek nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, are declined as follows, in the singular number:—

<i>Ænēas, Æneas.</i>	<i>Anchisēs, Anchises.</i>	<i>Penelōpē, Penelope.</i>
<i>N. Ænē-as,</i>	<i>N. Anchis-ēs,</i>	<i>N. Penelōp-ē.</i>
<i>G. Ænē-æ,</i>	<i>G. Anchis-æ,</i>	<i>G. Penelōp-ēs,</i>
<i>D. Ænē-æ,</i>	<i>D. Anchis-æ,</i>	<i>D. Penelōp-ē,</i>
<i>Ac. Ænē-am, or an,</i>	<i>Ac. Anchis-en,</i>	<i>Ac. Penelōp-ēn,</i>
<i>V. Ænē-ā,</i>	<i>V. Anchis-ē,</i>	<i>V. Penelōp-ē,</i>
<i>Ab. Ænē-ā.</i>	<i>Ab. Anchis-ē.</i>	<i>Ab. Penelōp-ē.</i>

Like *Ænēas*, decline *Boreas*, the north wind; *Mūlas*, a king of Phrygia;—also, *Gorgias*, *Messias*.

Like *Anchises*, decline *Alcides*, a name of Hercules; *comētes*, a comet;—also, *Priamīdes*, *Tydidēs*, *dynastes*, *satrāpes*.

Like *Penelöpe*, decline *Circe*, a famous sorceress; *Cybèle*, the mother of the gods; *epitöme*, an abridgment; *grammaticæ*, grammar;—also, *alöä*, *crambä*, *Circe*, *Danäa*, *Phoenicä*.

*Obs. 1.* When the plural of proper names occurs, it is like the plural of *penna*; thus, *Atridæ*, *Atridärum*, &c.

*Obs. 2.* Nouns in *es* have sometimes *ä* in the vocative, more rarely *ä*. Nouns in *stes* have *sta*. They also sometimes have the accusative in *em*, and the ablative in *ä*.

### EXERCISES ON THE FIRST DECLENSION.

[The words in the following exercises will be found in No. 60.]

1. *Tell the case and number of the following words, and translate them accordingly.*—*Penna*, *pennam*, *pennärum*, *pennis*, *pennä*, *pennæ*;—*āram*, *āris*; *sellæ*, *sellä*, *sellä*, *sellärum*; *tūbis*, *tūbam*, *tūbæ*; *litērā*, *litērārum*, *pennis*, *āras*, *tūbæ*, *litēris*;—*Penelöpes*, *Penelöpen*, *Ænëan*, *Anchises*, *Anchisæ*, *Ænëa*.

2. *Translate the following words into Latin*:—The pen, of pens, with pens, from a pen, in a pen, by pens; from the altars; of a trumpet; with letters; a seat; O altar; the seat of *Penelope*; of *Æneas*; with *Anchises*; a trumpet; from the altar; to a seat; with a pen; of the altars; &c., *ad libitum*.

### § 10. SECOND DECLENSION.

63.—The Second Declension has seven terminations of the nominative singular: namely,

Five masculine, *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, and *os*.

Two neuter, *um* and *on*.

Of these terminations, *os* and *on* are Greek; the rest are Latin.

#### TERMINATIONS.

Masculine.		Neuter.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> -er, -ir, -ur, -us,	<i>N.</i> -i,	<i>N.</i> -um,	<i>N.</i> -ä,
<i>G.</i> -i,	<i>G.</i> -örum,	<i>G.</i> -i,	<i>G.</i> -örum,
<i>D.</i> -ö,	<i>D.</i> -is,	<i>D.</i> -ö,	<i>D.</i> -is,
<i>Ac.</i> -um,	<i>Ac.</i> -ös,	<i>Ac.</i> -um,	<i>Ac.</i> -ä,
<i>V.</i> -er, -ir, -ur, -e,	<i>V.</i> -i,	<i>V.</i> -um,	<i>V.</i> -ä,
<i>Ab.</i> -ö.	<i>Ab.</i> -is,	<i>Ab.</i> -ö	<i>Ab.</i> -is.

64.—Nouns in *er*, *ir*, and *ur*, add *i* in the genitive; but *us* and *um* are changed into *i*. The only nouns in *ir* are *vir*, and its compounds *dumviri*, *treviri*, &c. The only word in *ur* of this declension, is the masculine gender of the adjective *satur*, full. All these are declined like *puer*.

PUER, a boy, Masc.

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>N.</i> puer,	a boy,	<i>N.</i> puēr-i,	boys
<i>G.</i> puēr-i,	of a boy,	<i>G.</i> puer-ōrum,	of boys,
<i>D.</i> puēr-o,	to, or for a boy,	<i>D.</i> puēr-is,	to or for boys,
<i>Ac.</i> puēr-um,	a boy,	<i>Ac.</i> puēr-os,	boys,
<i>V.</i> puer,	O boy,	<i>V.</i> puēr-i,	O boys,
<i>Ab.</i> puēr-o,	with, &c., a boy.	<i>Ab.</i> puēr-is,	with, &c., boys.

65.—All the nouns in *er* declined like *puer*, are the compounds of *fēro* and *gēro*; as, *Lucifer*, the morning star; *armiger*, an armor bearer: also the nouns *adulter*, an adulterer; *Celtiber*, a Celtiberian; *Iber*, a Spaniard; *Liber*, Bacchus; *sōcer*, a father-in-law; *vesper*, the evening; and sometimes *Mulciber*, a name of Vulcan: also the plural *libēri*, children.

Words in *er*, *ir*, and *ur*, it is probable, originally ended in *ērus*, *trus*, and *ūrus*; and hence, in some words, both forms are still found; as, *socērus* and *sōcer*.

66.—RULE 1. All other nouns in *er*, lose *e* in the root, by syncope, when the termination is added; as,

LIBER, a book, Masc.

Singular.		Plural.	Thus decline:	
<i>N.</i> liber,		<i>N.</i> libr-i,	Ager,	a field.
<i>G.</i> libr-i,		<i>G.</i> libr-ōrum,	Aper,	a wild boar.
<i>D.</i> libr-o,		<i>D.</i> libr-is,	Culter,	a knife.
<i>Ac.</i> libr-um,		<i>Ac.</i> libr-os,	Magister,	a master.
<i>V.</i> liber,		<i>V.</i> libr-i,	Auster,	the south wind.
<i>Ab.</i> libr-o.		<i>Ab.</i> libr-is.	Cancer,	a crab.

67.—RULE 2. Nouns in *us*, have the vocative in *e*; as, *ventus*, *vente*.

DOMINUS, a lord, Masc.

Singular.		Plural.	Thus decline:	
<i>N.</i> domin-us,		<i>N.</i> domin-i,	Ventus,	the wind,
<i>G.</i> domin-i,		<i>G.</i> domin-ōrum,	Oculus,	the eye.
<i>D.</i> domin-o,		<i>D.</i> domin-is,	Annus,	a year.
<i>Ac.</i> domin-um,		<i>Ac.</i> domin-os,	Fluvius,	a river.
<i>V.</i> domin-e,		<i>V.</i> domin-i,	Hortus,	a garden,
<i>Ab.</i> domin-o.		<i>Ab.</i> domin-is.	Radius,	a ray.

REGNUM, a kingdom, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :	
<i>N.</i> regn-um,	<i>N.</i> regn-a,	Antrum,	a cave.
<i>G.</i> regn-i,	<i>G.</i> regn-ōrum.	Astrum,	a star.
<i>D.</i> regn-o,	<i>D.</i> regn-is,	Dōnum,	a gift.
<i>Ac.</i> regn-um,	<i>Ac.</i> regn-a,	Jūgum,	a yoke.
<i>V.</i> regn-um,	<i>V.</i> regn-a,	Saxum,	a stone.
<i>Ab.</i> regn-o.	<i>Ab.</i> regn-is.	Pōmum,	an apple.

PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES.

Arbiter, a judge.	Folium, a leaf.	Söcer, a father-in-law.
Bellum, war.	Gladus, a sword.	Tēlum, a dart.
Cādus, a cask.	Lūpus, a wolf.	Tōrus, a couch.
Cervus, a stag.	Mūrus, a wall.	Tectum, the roof.
Collum, the neck.	Nidus, a nest.	Truncus, the trunk.
Equus, a horse.	Ovum, an egg.	Vēlum, a sail.
Fāber, an artist.	Prælium, a battle.	Vādum, a ford.
Ficus, f., a fig-tree.	Rāmus, a branch.	Vōtum, a vow.

68.—EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

*Exc.* 1. Of nouns ending in *us*, the names of plants, towns, islands, and precious stones, with few exceptions, are feminine, (45-2.)

*Obs.* In many cases, where the name of a tree ends in *us*, fem., there is a form in *um* denoting the fruit of the tree; as, *cerāsus*, *cerāsum*; *mālus*, *mālum*; *mōrus*, *mōrum*; *pīrus*, *pīrum*; *prūnus*, *prūnum*; *pōmus*, *pōmum*. But *ficus* means both a fig-tree, and a fig.

*Exc.* 2. Besides these, only four words, originally Latin, are feminine; viz, *alvus*, the belly; *cōlus*, the distaff; *hūmus*, the ground; and *vannus*, a winnowing fan.

*Exc.* 3. *Vīrus*, juice, poison; and *pelāgus*, the sea, are neuter, and have the accusative and vocative like the nominative. *Vulgus*, the common people, is both masculine and neuter. *Pampīnus*, a vine branch, is rarely feminine, commonly masculine.

*Exc.* 4. Many Greek nouns in *us*, are feminine, especially compounds of ὄδω; as, *methodus*, *periodus*, &c. So also, *biblus*, *papīrus*, *diphthēongus*, *paragraphus* *diametrus*, *perimetrus*.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

69.—*Exc. 5. The Vocative Singular.* 1st. Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as, *Virgilius*, V. *Virgili*; except *Pius*, which has *Pie*.

In like manner, *filius*, a son, has *fili*; and *genius*, one's guardian angel, has *geni*. But other common nouns in *ius*, and such epithets as *Delius*, *Saturnius*, &c., not considered as proper names, have *ie*. Also proper names in *ius*, from Greek nouns in *eios*, have *ie*.

2d. *Deus* has *deus* in the vocative, and in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, (sometimes contracted *di* and *dis*,) than *dei* and *deis*. *Meus*, my, has the vocative *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

70.—*Obs.* The poets, sometimes, make the vocative of nouns in *us*, like the nominative, which is seldom done in prose. Sometimes, also, they change nouns in *er* into *us*; as, *Evander* or *Evandrus*; in the vocative, *Evander* or *Evandre*.

71.—*Exc. 6. The Genitive Singular.*—Nouns in *ius* and *ium*, in the purest age of the Latin language, formed the genitive singular in *i*, not in *ii*, both in prose and verse; as, *fili*, *Tulli*, *ingeni*; they are now frequently written with a circumflex; thus, *fili*, *Tulli*, *ingent*; for, *fili*, *Tulli*, &c.

72.—*Exc. 7. The Genitive Plural.*—Some nouns, especially those which denote value, measure, weight, commonly form the genitive plural in *um*, instead of *orum*; as, *nummum*, *sestertium*, &c. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry; as, *deum*, *Danäum*, &c.; also, *divom* is used for *divorum*.

73.—*DEUS*, a god, is thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.	
N. De-us,	N. De-i, or Di-i,	Contr. Di,
G. De-i,	G. De-orum,	
D. De-o,	D. De-is, or Di-is,	" Dis,
Ac. De-um,	Ac. De-os,	
V. De-us,	V. De-i, or Di-i,	" Di,
Ab. De-o.	Ab. De-is, or Di-is,	" Dis.

## GREEK NOUNS.

74.—Greek nouns in *os* and *on*, are often changed into *us* and *um*; as, *Alpheos*, *Alpheus*; *Ilion*, *Ilium*: and those in *ros*, into *er*; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander*. When thus changed, they are declined like Latin nouns of the same terminations. Otherwise,

Greek nouns are thus declined:

ANDROGEOS, Masc; DELOS, Fem.—BARBITON, a lyre, Neut.

Singular.			Singular.		Plural.
N. Androge-os,	Dēl-os,	N. barbit-on,	barbit-a,		
G. Androge-o, or -i,	Dēl-i,	G. barbit-i,	barbit-on,		
D. Androge-o,	Dēl-o,	D. barbit-o,	barbit-is,		
Ac. Androge-o, or -on,	Dēl-on,	Ac. barbit-on,	barbit-a,		
V. Androge-os,	Dēl-e,	V. barbit-on,	barbit-a,		
Ab. Androge-o.	Dēl-o.	Ab. barbit-o.	barbit-is.		

75.—Some nouns in *os*, anciently had the genitive in *u*; as, *Menandru*, *Panthu* occurs in Virgil, as the vocative of *Panthus*. Proper names in *eüs* are declined like *dominus*, but have the vocative in *eus*, and sometimes contract the genitive singular; as, *Orpheü* into *Orphei*, or *Orphi*. Proper names in which *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension. Other nouns, also, are sometimes of the third declension; as, *Androgeo*, *Androgeonis*.

## EXERCISES ON THE SECOND DECLENSION.

List of words in the following exercises:

Puer, a boy.	Regnum, a kingdom,	Sölum, the soil,
Domīnus, a lord.	Ventus, the wind.	Ocūlus, the eye.
Liber, a book.	Cœlum, heaven.	Filius, a son.

Tell the case and number of the following words, and translate them accordingly:—*Puëri*, *dominōrum*, *domīno*, *puëro*, *puërum*, *puëros*, *libri*, *libris*, *librum*, *libro*, *domīnis*, *domīne*, *regnum*, *regna*, *regnōrum*—*ventus*, *vento*, *ventum*—*ocūlus*, *oculōrum*—*filiū*, *fili*, *filiis*, *filiōs*.

Translate the following words into Latin:—To a boy, from a boy, O boy, O boys, of boys; books, of books, for books, in books, with a book; a lord, from a lord, to a lord, of lords, the lords; of a kingdom, the kingdom, to the kingdoms; to the winds of heaven, lords of the soil, &c., *ad libitum*



## § 11. THE THIRD DECLENSION.

76.—Nouns of the third declension are very numerous; they are of all genders, and generally increase one syllable in the oblique cases. Its final letters, in the nominative, are thirteen, *a, e, i, o, y, c, d, l, n, r, s, t, x*. Of these, *a, i, y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

*Obs.* A noun is said to *increase*, when it has more syllables in any case than it has in the nominative.

## TERMINATIONS.

<i>Masculine and Feminine.</i>		<i>Neuter.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> —,	<i>N.</i> -es,	<i>N.</i> —,	<i>N.</i> -a,
<i>G.</i> -is,	<i>G.</i> -um, or -ium,	<i>G.</i> -is,	<i>G.</i> -um, or -ium,
<i>D.</i> -i,	<i>D.</i> -ibus,	<i>D.</i> -i,	<i>D.</i> -ibus,
<i>Ac.</i> -em,	<i>Ac.</i> -es,	<i>Ac.</i> —,	<i>Ac.</i> -a,
<i>V.</i> —,	<i>V.</i> -es,	<i>V.</i> —,	<i>V.</i> -a,
<i>Ab.</i> -e, or -i.	<i>Ab.</i> -ibus.	<i>Ab.</i> -e, or -i.	<i>Ab.</i> -ibus.

## 77.—GENERAL OBSERVATIONS.

1. In this declension, the nominative and vocative of masculine and feminine nouns are always alike. As the final syllables of the nominative are very numerous, a dash (—) supplies their place in the preceding table. Neuter nouns come under the general rule, (57-1).

2. All nouns of this declension are declined by annexing the above *case-endings*, or terminations to the *root*.

3. The *Root* consists of all that stands before *is* in the genitive (56), and remains unchanged throughout. Hence, when the genitive case is found, the cases after that are alike in all nouns, except as noticed hereafter. In most nouns of this declension, the root does not appear in full form in the nominative, nor in the vocative singular. See 78, 80, 81.

4. The genitive singular of nouns, in this declension, will be most easily learned from the Dictionary, as all rules that can be given are rendered nearly useless by the number of exceptions under them.

5. In the following examples, the root and terminations are separated by a hyphen (-), in order to show more distinctly the regularity of the declension. This being mentioned, it will occasion no difficulty, though standing, as it often does, in the middle of syllables; as, *pá tr-is*.

## 78.—§ 12. EXAMPLES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

### 1. SERMO, a speech, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :
N. Sermo,	N. Sermōn-es,	Carbo, a coal.
G. Sermōn-is,	G. Sermōn-um,	Leo, a lion.
D. Sermōn-i,	D. Sermon-ibus,	Oratio, an oration.
Ac. Sermōn-em,	Ac. Sermōn-es,	Pāvo, a peacock.
V. Sermo,	V. Sermōn-es,	Prædo, a robber.
Ab. Sermōn-e,	Ab. Sermon-ibus,	Titio, a fire-brand.

NOTE. *Hōmo*, *nāmo*, *Apollo*, and *turbo*; also, *cardo*, *ordo*, *margo*, and likewise, nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, change *o* into *i* before the terminations; as, *Hōmo*, *hominis*; *Cupido*, *Cupidinis*; *imāgo*, *imaginis*. But *Comēdo*, *unēdo*, and *harpāgo*, retain *o*; as, *Comēdo*, *comedōnis*. *Anio* and *Nerio* change *o* into *e*; as, *Anio*, *Anienis*; and *cāro* has *carnis*, by syncope for *carōnis*.

### 2. COLOR, a color, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :
N. cōlor,	N. colōr-es,	Arbor, a tree.
G. colōr-is,	G. colōr-um,	Cantor, a singer.
D. colōr-i,	D. color-ibus,	Hōnor, honor.
Ac. colōr-em,	Ac. colōr-es,	Lābor, labor.
V. cōlor,	V. colōr-es,	Lector, a reader.
Ab. colōr-e.	Ab. color-ibus.	Pastor, a shepherd.

### 3. MILES, a soldier, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :
N. miles,	N. milīt-es,	Ales, a bird.
G. milīt-is,	G. milīt-um,	Cōmes, a companion.
D. milīt-i,	D. milit-ibus,	Līmes, a limit.
Ac. milīt-em,	Ac. milīt-es,	Trāmes, a path.
V. miles,	V. milīt-es,	Sēges -ētis, a crop.
Ab. milīt-e	Ab. milit-ibus.	Tēges, -ētis, a mat.

79.—RULE 1. Nouns in *es* and *is*, not increasing in the genitive singular, have *ium* in the genitive plural; as,

4. RŪPES, *a rock*, Fem.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :	
N. rūp-es,	N. rūp-es,	Apis,	<i>a bee.</i>
G. rūp-is,	G. rūp-ium,	Classis,	<i>a fleet.</i>
D. rūp-i,	D. rūp-ibus,	Mōles,	<i>a mass.</i>
Ac. rūp-em,	Ac. rūp-es,	Nūbes,	<i>a cloud.</i>
V. rūp-es,	V. rūp-es,	Vitis,	<i>a vine.</i>
Ab. rūp-e.	Ab. rūp-ibus.	Vulpes,	<i>a fox.</i>

Exc. *Strues*, a pile; *vātes*, a prophet; *cānis*, a dog; *juvēnis*, a young man; *mugilis*, a mullet; *pānis*, bread; *strigilis*, a scraper, have *um*. *Sedes*, *mensis*, *āpis* or *āpes*, and *volūcris*, have *um* or *ium*.

80.—RULE 2. Nouns of one syllable in *as* and *is*, and also, in *s* and *x*, after a consonant, have *ium* in the genitive plural; as,

5. PARS, *a part*, Fem.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :	
N. pars,	N. part-es,	Calx, -cis,	<i>the heel.</i>
G. part-is,	G. part-ium,	Vas, -dis,	<i>a surety.</i>
D. part-i,	D. part-ibus,	Lis, -tis,	<i>a law-suit.</i>
Ac. part-em,	Ac. part-es,	Arx, -cis,	<i>a citadel.</i>
V. pars,	V. part-es,	Urbs, -is,	<i>a city.</i>
Ab. part-e,	Ab. part-ibus.	Pons, -tis,	<i>a bridge.</i>

81.—RULE 3. Nouns of more than one syllable in *as* and *ns*, have *um*, and sometimes *ium*, in the genitive plural; as,

6. PARENS, *a parent*, Masc. or Fem.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :	
N. pārens,	N. parent-es,	Bīdens,	<i>a fork.</i>
G. parent-is,	G. parent-um, -ium,	Rūdēns,	<i>a cable.</i>
D. parent-i,	D. parent-ibus,	Cliens,	<i>a client.</i>
Ac. parent-em,	Ac. parent-es,	Serpens,	<i>a serpent.</i>
V. pārens,	V. parent-es,	Sextans,	<i>a sixth of an as.</i>
Ab. parent-e.	Ab. parent-ibus.	Torrens,	<i>a torrent.</i>

82.—*Obs.* 1 Masculine and feminine nouns, which have *ium* in the genitive plural, sometimes have *is*, or *eis*, as well as *es* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural; as, *partes*, *partium*;—nominative, accusative, and vocative, *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

### 7. OPUS, a work, Neut. (57-1.)

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:
<i>N.</i> opus,	<i>N.</i> opēr-a,	Fünus, a funeral.
<i>G.</i> opēr-is,	<i>G.</i> opēr-um,	Lātus, the side.
<i>D.</i> opēr-i,	<i>D.</i> oper-ibus,	Corpus, -ōris, the body.
<i>Ac.</i> opus,	<i>Ac.</i> opēr-a,	Cāput, capītis, the head
<i>V.</i> opus,	<i>V.</i> opēr-a,	Fēmur, -ōris, the thigh.
<i>Ab.</i> opēr-e.	<i>Ab.</i> oper-ibus,	Iter, itinēris, a journey.

83.—**RULE 4.** Nouns in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative singular; *ium* in the genitive plural; and *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural; as,

### 8. SEDILE, a seat, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline.
<i>N.</i> sedil-e,	<i>N.</i> sedil-ia,	Ancile, a shield.
<i>G.</i> sedil-is,	<i>G.</i> sedil-ium,	Mantile, a towel.
<i>D.</i> sedil-i,	<i>D.</i> sedil-ibus,	Māre, the sea.
<i>Ac.</i> sedil-e,	<i>Ac.</i> sedil-ia,	Ovile, a sheep-fold.
<i>V.</i> sedil-e,	<i>V.</i> sedil-ia,	Rēte, a net.
<i>Ab.</i> sedil-i.	<i>Ab.</i> sedil-ibus.	Cubile, a couch.

### 9. ANIMAL, an animal, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline:
<i>N.</i> animal,	<i>N.</i> animal-ia,	Cubital, a cushion.
<i>G.</i> animāl-is,	<i>G.</i> animal-ium,	Calcar, a spur
<i>D.</i> animāl-i,	<i>D.</i> animal-ibus,	Jūbar, a sun-beam
<i>Ac.</i> animal,	<i>Ac.</i> animal-ia,	Nectar, nectar.
<i>V.</i> animal,	<i>V.</i> animal-ia,	Tōral, a bed-cover.
<i>Ab.</i> animāl-i	<i>Ab.</i> animāl-ibus.	Vectigal, a tax.

*Exc.* Proper names in *e* have *e* in the ablative as, *Præneste* Neut., a town in Italy; ablative, *Præneste*

## 84.—ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Acer, -ëris, n.,	a maple tree.	Hömo, -ïnis, c.,	a man.
Ætas, -ätis, f.,	age.	Imägo, -ïnis, f.,	an image.
Arbor, -öris, f.,	a tree.	Lac, -tis, n.,	milk.
Aries, -ëtis, m.,	a ram.	Läpis, -ïdis, m.,	a stone.
Ar, -tis, f.,	an art.	Laus, -dis, f.,	praise.
Cänon, -önis, m.,	a rule.	Lex, lægis, f.,	a law.
Carcer, -ëris, m.,	a prison.	Monile, -ia, n.,	a necklace.
Cardo, -ïnis, m.,	a hinge.	Mons, -tis, m.,	a mountain.
Carmen, -ïnis, n.,	a poem.	Münus, -ëris, n.,	a gift.
Cervix, -icis, f.,	the neck.	Nix, nivis, f.,	snow.
Cödex, -icis, m.,	a book.	Nox, noctis, f.,	night.
Consul, -ülis, m.,	a consul.	Onus, -ëris, n.,	a burden.
Cor, cordis, n.,	the heart.	Pecten, -ïnis, m.,	a comb.
Crux, -icis, f.,	a cross.	Regio, -önis, f.,	a region.
Dens, -tis, m.,	a tooth.	Sälar, -äris, m.,	a trout.
Dos, dötis, f.,	a dowry.	Serpens, -tis, c.,	a serpent.
Formido, -ïnis, f.,	fear.	Trabe, -äbis, f.,	a beam.
Fornax, -acis, f.,	a furnace.	Turris, -is, f.,	a tower.
Fräter, -tris, m.,	a brother.	Uter, utris, m.,	a bottle.
Fur, fûris, c.,	a thief.	Virgo, -ïnis, f.,	a virgin.
Génus, -ëris, n.,	a kind.	Voluptas, -ätis, f.,	pleasure.
Hæres, -ëdis, c.,	an heir.	Vulnus, -ëris, n.,	a wound.

## EXERCISES ON THE EXAMPLES.

Tell the case and number of the following words, and translate them accordingly :—Sermönis, sermönium; coloribus, colöri, colöre, colöres; militum, militis, militem, militibus, rūpis, rūpe, rupium, rūpi, rūpibus; partium, partes, parte, partis; parenti, parente, parentum, parentes, parentis; opëra, opëre, opëri, operibus, opërum; sedilis, sedilia, sedilibus, sedili sedilium; animalia, animalis, animali: carminis, carmini, carminibus.

Translate the following words into Latin :—Of a rock, of rocks; from a soldier, with soldiers; to a seat, seats, of seats; the works, of a soldier; to the color, of a rock, a seat, for a parent, the speech, of a parent, to a soldier, the color, of an animal, from rocks, to rocks, of a region, for a serpent, the night &c., *ad libitum*.

## § 13. GENDER OF NOUNS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

### 1. MASOULINE NOUNS.

85.—**RULE 1.** Nouns in *n, o, er, or, es* increasing (76, *Obs.*) and *os*, are generally masculine.

86.—The following are exceptions; viz:

#### 1. *Exceptions in N.*

**FEM.** *Sindon, aëdor; halcyon, and toon*, are feminine.

**NEUT.** *Gluten, unguen, inguen, pollen*, and all nouns in *men*; as *carmen, nomen*, etc., are neuter.

#### 2. *Exceptions in O.*

**FEM.** 1. Nouns in *io*, denoting things incorporeal, are feminine.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, with *granda, virgo*, and sometimes *margo*, are feminine.

But *harpago, comedo, unedo* and *Cupido*, Cupid, are masculine.

**NOTE.** *Cupido*, desire, in prose, is always feminine; in poetry often masculine.

3. *Otto*, flesh, is feminine, and Greek nouns in *o*; as, *echo, Argo*.

#### 3. *Exceptions in ER.*

**FEM.** *Tuber*, the tuber-tree, and sometimes *linter*, a boat, are feminine.

**NEUT.** *Acer, cadaver, cicer, iter, luser, läver, papaver, piper, siler, spinther, süber, tüber*, a swelling, *über, ver, verber, zingiber*, and sometimes *siser*, are neuter.

#### 4. *Exceptions in OR.*

**FEM.** *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine. (45-2.)

**NEUT.** *Ador, æquor, marmor*, and *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

#### 5. *Exceptions in ES, increasing (76, Obs).*

**FEM.** *Uompea, merces, merges, quies, requies, inquis, sages, tages, tüdes*, and sometimes *ales*, a bird, are feminine.

**NEUT.** *Æs*, brass, is neuter.

#### 6. *Exceptions in OS.*

**FEM.** *Arbos*, (45-2) *eos, dos, eos*, are feminine.

**NEUT.** *Os*, the mouth; *os*, a bone; also, the Greek *chaos, ethos, epas*, and *mælos*, are neuter.

## 2. FEMININE NOUNS.

87.—RULE 2. Nouns in *as*, *es* not increasing, *is*, *ys*, and *aus*;—also in *s* after a consonant, and *e*, are, for the most part, feminine.

88.—The following are exceptions; viz:

1. *Exceptions in AS.*

MASC. *As*, a piece of money, and Greek nouns in *as*, *-antis*, are masculine.  
NEUT. *Vas*, a vessel, and Greek nouns in *as*, *-ätis*, are neuter.

2. *Exceptions in ES not increasing.*

MASC. *Acināces*, *cōles*, and sometimes *palumbes*, and *vepres*.  
NEUT. *Cacoëthes*, *hippomānes*, *nepenthes*, and *panāces*, Greek.

3. *Exceptions in IS.*

MASC. 1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine. But *amis*, *cīnis*, *clūnis*, *fīnis*, and *jūnis*, are sometimes feminine. *Fīnes*, boundaries, in the plural, is always masculine.

2. The following nouns are masculine, viz:

Axis,	Cossis,	Lāpis,	Semissis,
Aquālis,	Cucūmis,	Mensia,	Sentia,
Callia,	Decussis,	Mugīlis,	Sodālis,
Cassis,	Ensis,	Orbis,	Torris,
Caulis, or }	Fascia,	Piscis,	Unguis,
Cōlis, }	Follis,	Pollis,	Vectis,
Centussia,	Fustia,	Postis,	Vermis,
Collis,	Glis,	Sanguis,	Vōmis.

MASC. or FEM. *Anguis*, *canālis*, *cenchris*, *corbis*, *pulvis*, *scrōbis*, *tigris*, *torquis*, are masculine or feminine.

4. *Exceptions in YS.*

MASC. Names of rivers and mountains, as *Halys*, *Othrys*, &c., are commonly masculine. (45-2.)

5. *Exceptions in S after a consonant.*

MASC. 1. *Dens*, *fons*, *mons*, and *pons*; also, *chālybs*, *ellops*, *ēpops*, *gryps*, *hydrops*, *mērops*, and *seps*, are masculine.

2. Nouns in *ns*, originally participles, and compounds of *dens*, as *occidēns*, *oriēns*, *vidēns*, a two-pronged hoe; also *sextans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, &c., parts of *as*, are masculine; but *vidēns*, a sheep, is feminine.

MASC. or FEM. *Adeps*, *forceps*, *rūdēns*, *scrobs*, *serpens*, *stirps*.

NOTE *Animans*, a living creature, is of all genders.

6. *Exceptions in X.*

- MASC.** 1. **AX.** *Öbraz, cordax, dröbax, styraz, thöraz*, are masculine.  
 2. **EX.** All nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *lex, nex, supellex*, feminine; *cortex, imbrex, öbex, rümax, silex*, sometimes feminine; *grex* and *pümax*, rarely feminine; and *atriplex*, neuter.  
 3. **IX.** *Cäliz, forniz, phœniz, spädiz*, are masculine, and sometimes *perdiz* and *väriz*; otherwise feminine.  
 4. **OX.** *Box, ésoz, and volvoz* are masculine.  
 5. **UX.** *Träduz* is masculine.  
 6. **YX.** *Bombyz*, a silk worm; *cälyz, coccyz, öryz*, are masculine; but *önyz*, and *sandyz*, are masculine or feminine.  
 7. **NX.** *Quincunx, septunx, decunx, deunx*, parts of *as*, are masculine; *lynx* is masculine or feminine.  
*Calx*, lime, is feminine; *calx*, the heel, masculine or feminine.  
*Bombyz*, silk, is feminine.
- NEUT.** *Atriplex*, gold-herb, is neuter.

## • 3. NEUTER NOUNS.

89.—**RULE 3.** Nouns in *a, e, i, c*, and *t*, are always neuter; those in *l, ar, ur*, and *us*, are almost always neuter.

90. The following are exceptions; viz:

1. *Exceptions in L.*

- MASC.** *Mügil* and *sol* are masculine; *sal*, in the singular, is commonly masculine or feminine, sometimes neuter; in the plural, always masculine.

2. *Exceptions in AR.*

- MASC.** *Sälar* is masculine. *Par*, in the sense of "mate," is masculine or feminine; in the sense of "a pair," it is neuter.

3. *Exceptions in UR.*

- MASC.** *Astur, furfur, turtur*, and *vultur*, are masculine.

4. *Exceptions in US.*

- MASC.** *Lëpus, mus, rhus*, meaning a seed, or spice, and Greek nouns in *pus*, (except *lagöpus*, feminine,) are masculine.  
**FEM.** Nouns in *us*, having *ütis*, or *üdis* in the genitive; also *pëcus, üdis, tellus, lagöpus*, and *rhus*, meaning a tree, are feminine. *Grus*, is masculine or feminine.



## 90.—§ 15. EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

## THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

1. The following nouns in
- is*
- have
- im*
- in the accusative.

Amussis, <i>f</i> , a measure, rule.	Rāvis, <i>f</i> , a hoarseness.
Būris, <i>f</i> , the beam of a plough.	Sināpis, <i>f</i> , mustard.
Cannābis, <i>f</i> , hemp.	Sītis, <i>f</i> , thirst.
Cucūmis, <i>m</i> , a cucumber.	Tussis, <i>f</i> , a cough.
Gummi, <i>f</i> , gum.	Vis, <i>f</i> , strength.
Mephitis, <i>f</i> , a strong smell.	

2. Proper names in
- is*
- not increasing in the genitive, have
- im*
- in the accusative; viz :

Names of cities and other places; as, *Bilbilis*, *f*, a city of Spain; *Syrtis*, *f*, a quicksand on the coast of Africa.

Names of rivers; as, *Tibēris*, *m*, the Tiber; *Bætis*, *m*, the Guadalquivir.

Names of gods; as, *Anūbis*, *m*; *Osiris*, *m*, Egyptian deities.

*Note.* These nouns have sometimes *in* in the accusative.

3. The following nouns in
- is*
- have
- em*
- or
- im*
- in the accusative; viz :

Aquālis, <i>f</i> , a water pot.	Puppis, <i>f</i> , the stern of a ship.
Clāvis, <i>f</i> , a key.	Restis, <i>f</i> , a rope.
Cūtis, <i>f</i> , the skin.	Secūris, <i>f</i> , an axe.
Febria, <i>f</i> , a fever.	Sementia, <i>f</i> , a sowing.
Lens, <i>f</i> , lentiles.	Strigilis, <i>f</i> , a curry-comb.
Nāvis, <i>f</i> , a ship.	Turris, <i>f</i> , a tower.
Pelvis, <i>f</i> , a basin.	

*Note 1.* *Puppis*, *restis*, *secūris*, and *turris*, have generally *im*; the others commonly *em*. The oldest Latin writers form the accusative of some other nouns in *im*; as, *avis*, *auris*.

4. Nouns which have been adopted from the Greek, sometimes retain
- a*
- in the accusative; as,
- hērōs*
- ,
- m*
- , a hero,
- hērōa*
- ;
- Tros*
- ,
- m*
- , a Trojan,
- Troa*
- . (See No. 13 below.)

*Note 2.* This form of the accusative singular is seldom used by the best prose writers, and is chiefly confined to proper names, except in *aēr*, *m*, the air; *āther*, *m*, the sky; *delphin*, *m*, a dolphin; *Pan*, *m*, the god of the shepherds, which commonly have *aēra*, *āthēra*, *delphina*, and *Pāna*.

*Obs. 1.* Many Greek nouns in *es* have *en*, as well as *em*, in the accusative; as, *Euphrāten*, *Oresten*, *Pylāden*.

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

5. Nouns in *is*, which have *im* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *sitis, sitim, siti*.

But *cannābis, Bætis, sināpis, and Tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

6. Nouns in *is*, which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the Ablative; as, *clāvis, clāve* or *clāvi*.

Note 3. But *cūtis*, and *restis*, have *e* only; *secūris, sementis*, and *strigilæ*, seldom have *e*.

7. The following nouns, which have *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; viz :

Amnis, m., a river.	Ocēput, n., the hind-head.
Anguis, m. and f., a snake.	Orbis, m., a circle.
Avis, f., a bird.	Part, f., a part.
Civis, c., a citizen.	Postis, m., a door post.
Classis, f., a fleet.	Pūgil, c., a pugilist.
Finis, m. and f., an end.	Rus, n., the country.
Fustis, m., a staff.	Sors, f., a lot.
Ignis, m., a fire.	Supellex, f., furniture.
Imber, m., a shower.	Unguis, m., a nail.
Mūgil, m., a mullet.	Vectis, m., a lever.

Note 4. *Finis, mūgil, ocēput, pūgil, rus, supellex*, and *vectis*, have *e* or *i* indifferently; the others much more frequently have *e*.

Obs. 2. Names of towns, when they denote the place in or at which any thing is done, take *e* or *i*; as, *Carthagīne*, or *Carthagīni*.

Obs. 3. *Canālis*, m. or f., a water pipe, has *canāli* only. Likewise names of months in *is* or *er*; as, *Aprilis, September, Aprīli, Septembri*; and those nouns in *is* which were originally adjectives; as, *ādilis, affinis, bipennis, familiāris, natālis, rivālis, sodālis, volucris*, &c. This class of nouns also admits *e* in the ablative: *Rūdis*, f., a rod, and *juvēnis*, c., a youth, have *e* only.

8. The following neuter nouns in *al* and *ar* have *e* in the ablative; viz :

Baccar, lady's glove.	Jubar, a sunbeam.	Par, a pair.
Far, corn.	Nectar, nectar.	Sal, salt.

Obs. 4. *Māre*, the sea, has the ablative in *e* or *i*.

## GENITIVE PLURAL

[See Rules, 79—88.]

9. The following nouns have *ium* in the genitive plural :

Căro, f, <i>flesh</i> .	Lar, m., <i>a household god</i> .	Par, n., <i>a pair</i> .
Côhors, f, <i>a cohort</i> .	Linter, m. or f, <i>a boat</i> .	Quiris, m., <i>a Roman</i> .
Cor, n., <i>the heart</i> .	Mas, m., <i>a male</i> .	Samnis, m., <i>a Samnite</i> .
Cos, f, <i>a whetstone</i> .	Nix, f, <i>snow</i> .	Strix, f, <i>a screech-owl</i> .
Dos, f, <i>a dowry</i> .	Nox, f, <i>night</i> .	Uter, m., <i>a bottle</i> .
Fauce, f, <i>the jaws</i> .	Os, n., <i>a bone</i> .	Venter, m., <i>the belly</i> .

Obs. 5. The compounds of *uncia* and *as* have likewise *ium*; *as*, *Septunz*, m., seven ounces, *septuncium*; *sextans*, m., two ounces, *sextantium*.

Obs. 6. *Apis*, f, a bee, has *ăpium* and *apium*; *fraus*, fraud; and *mus*, a mouse, generally, and *fornax*, *lar*, *palus*, and *radix*, sometimes, have *ium*; *ăpis*, f, power, has *ăpum* only. *Gryps*, m., a griffon; *lynx*, m. or f, a lynx; and *Sphinx*, f, the Sphinx, have *um*. *Bôs*, c, gen. *bôvis*, an ox, has *boum*.

## DATIVE PLURAL

10. *Bos*, c, an ox or a cow, has *bôbus* or *bûbus* in the dative plural; and *sus*, c, a sow, has *sûibus*, or *sûbus*. Nouns in *ma* have *tis* as well as *ibus*; *as*, *poëma*, n., a poem, *poematibus* or *poemătis*. The Greek termination *ai* or *sin* is very uncommon in prose, and is admissible only in words purely Greek. (See No. 13, below.)

## ACCUSATIVE PLURAL

11. The form of the accusative plural in *as* is admissible in all words which have that termination in Greek, but is rarely used in prose. Livy, however, frequently uses *Macedônas*; and *Allobrôgas* is found in Caesar, (For the accusative plural in *is*, or *eis*, see 82.)

12. Some nouns of the third declension are somewhat peculiar in different cases, as follows :

## JUPITER.

Singular.
N. Jupĭter
G. Jôv-is,
D. Jôv-i,
Ac. Jôv-em,
V. Jupĭter,
Ab. Jôv-e.

## VIS, force, power, Fem.

Singular.	Plural.
N. vis,	N. vir-es,
G. vis,	G. vir-ium,
D. —,	D. vir-ibus,
Ac. vim,	Ac. vir-es,
V. vis,	V. vir-es,
Ab. vi.	Ab. vir-ibus.

Bos, *an ox*, or *cow*, Masc. or Fem.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> bos,	<i>N.</i> bōv-es,
<i>G.</i> bōv-is,	<i>G.</i> boum
<i>D.</i> bōv-i,	<i>D.</i> bōvus, or būbus,*
<i>Ac.</i> bōv-em,	<i>Ac.</i> bōv-es,
<i>V.</i> bos,	<i>V.</i> bōv-es,
<i>Ab.</i> bōv-e,	<i>Ab.</i> bōbus, or būbus.

\* Contracted for *bovidus*.

### 13. GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Ab.</i>
<i>Υ.</i> Lampas	-ādis, or -ādos,	-ādi,	-ādem, or -āda,	-as,	-āde.
<i>Pl.</i> Lamp-ādes,	-ādum,	-adibus,	-ādes, or -ādas,	-ādes,	-adibus.
<i>Σ.</i> Trō-as,	-ādis, or -ādos,	-ādi,	-ādem, or -āda,	-as,	-āde.
<i>Pl.</i> Trō-ādes,	-ādum,	{ -adibus, -āsi, or -āsini,	{ -ādes, or -ādas,	-ades,	{ -adibus -āsi, or -āsini.
<i>Σ.</i> Heros,	-ois,	-oi,	-oēm, or -oa,	-oa,	-oē.
<i>Σ.</i> Phyll-is,	-idis, or -idos,	-idi,	-idem, or -ida,	-i, or -is,	-ide.
<i>Σ.</i> Pār-is.	-idis, or -idos,	-idi,	-idem, -im, or -in,	-i,	-ide.
<i>Σ.</i> Chlām-ya,	-ydis, or -ydos,	-ydi,	-ydem, or -ida,	-ya,	-yde.
<i>Σ.</i> Cāp-ya,	-yia, or -yos,	-yi,	-ym, or -yn,	-y,	-ye.
<i>Σ.</i> Hæres-is,	-is, -ios, or -eos,	-i,	-im, or -in,	-i,	-i.
<i>Σ.</i> Orph-eus,	-eos, or -ei, or -ei,	-ei, or -ei,	-ea,	-eu,	-eo.
<i>Σ.</i> Did-o,	-us, or -ōnis,	-o, or -ōni,	-o, or -ōnem,	-o,	-o, or -ōne

### § 16. FOURTH DECLENSION.

91.—The Fourth Declension has two terminations of the nominative singular, *us* and *u*. Those in *u* are neuter.

#### TERMINATIONS.

<i>Masculine and Feminine.</i>		<i>Neuter.</i>	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> -us,	-us,	<i>N.</i> -u,	-ua,
<i>G.</i> -ūs,	-uum,	<i>G.</i> -ūs,	-uum,
<i>D.</i> -ui,	-ibus,	<i>D.</i> -u (ui),	-ibus,
<i>Ac.</i> -um,	-us,	<i>Ac.</i> -u,	-ua,
<i>V.</i> -us,	-us,	<i>V.</i> -u,	-ua,
<i>Ab.</i> -u,	-ibus.	<i>Ab.</i> -u,	-ibus.

FRUCTUS, *fruit*, Masc.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline
N. fruct-us,	N. fruct-us,	Cantus, a song.
G. fruct-ūs,	G. fruct-uum,	Cāsus a fall.
D. fruct-ūi,	D. fruct-ibus,	Currus, a chariot.
Ac. fruct-um,	Ac. fruct-us,	Fluctus, a wave.
V. fruct-us,	V. fruct-us,	Grādus, a step.
Ab. fruct-u	Ab. fruct-ibus.	Senātus, the senate.

CORNU, *a horn*, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline :
N. corn-u,	N. corn-ua,	Gēlu, ice
G. corn-ūs (93-4),	G. corn-uum,	Gēnu, the knees.
D. corn-u,	D. corn-ibus,	Pēcū, cattle.
Ac. corn-u,	Ac. corn-ua,	Vēru, a spit.
V. corn-u,	V. corn-ua,	
Ab. corn-u.	Ab. corn-ibus.	

*Note.* The only neuters in this declension are *cornu*, *gēlu*, *gēnu*, *vēru*, and *pēcū*, which has the dative *pecui*: *tonitrus*, *ūs*, m., and *tonitruum*, i, n., thunder, are in common use; *tonitru* is hardly ever found in classic writers, and never in the nominative or accusative singular.

## ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES.

Flātus, a blast.	Mōtus, a motion.	Rītus, a ceremony.
Ictus, a stroke.	Nūtus, a nod.	Sīnus, a bosom.
Mānus, f, the hand.	Passus, a pace.	Sītus, a situation.

## 92.—EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

*Exc. 1.* The following nouns are feminine; viz :

Acus, a needle.	Ficus, a fig.	Porticus, a gallery.
Anus, an old woman.	Mānus, the hand.	Spēcus,* a den.
Dōmus, a house.	Pētus,* a storehouse.	Tribus, a tribe.

\* Sometimes masculine.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

*Exc. 2.* The Genitive and Dative singular :—In some writers the genitive singular is occasionally found in *uis*; as, *ejus anuis causā*, for *anūs*. TERENCE: sometimes also in *i*; as, *senāti* and *tumultū*. SALL. In others, the dative is sometimes found in *u*, as, *resistere impētū*, for *impetui*; *Esse usū sibi*, for *usui*. CIC.

**Exc. 3. The Genitive, Dative, and Ablative plural :—**The genitive plural is sometimes contracted ; as, *currūm*, for *currum*. The following nouns have *ūbus* instead of *ibus* in the dative and ablative plural ; viz :

<i>Acus</i> , a needle.	<i>Lacus</i> , a lake.	<i>Spēcus</i> , a den.
<i>Arcus</i> , a bow.	<i>Partus</i> , a birth.	<i>Tribus</i> , a tribe.
<i>Artus</i> , a joint.	<i>Portus</i> ,* a harbour.	<i>Vēru</i> ,* a spit.
<i>Gēnu</i> ,* the knee		

\* These words also have *-ibus* in the dative plural.

### 93.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. Nouns of this declension seem to have belonged anciently to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis* ; thus, *fructus*, *fructu-is*, *fructu-i*, &c. So that all the cases, except the Dative singular and the genitive plural, may be regarded as contracted forms of that declension.

2. Several nouns of this declension are, in whole or in part, of the second also ; such as, *Ficus*, *laurus*, *pēnus*, *pīnus*, *dōmus*, *senātus*, *tumultus*, and several others. *Capricornus*, m., and the compounds of *mānus*, as *unimānus*, *centimānus*, &c., are always of the second.

3. *JESUS*, the name of the Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other oblique cases. This word does not properly belong to this declension, but is after the Greek : Ἰησοῦς, οὔ, οὔ, οὔ, οὔ.

4. Nouns in *u* were formerly considered indeclinable in the singular ; but the recent investigations of Freund and others, have shown this opinion to be incorrect, at least with regard to the genitive ; and that *u*, the only termination of the dative now found, is probably a contraction for *ui*—just as *usu* is contracted for *usui*. (Exc. 2.)

5. *Dōmus*, a house, Fem., is thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> dōm-us,	<i>N.</i> dōm-us,
<i>G.</i> dōm-ūs, or -i,	<i>G.</i> dom-ōrum, or -um,
<i>D.</i> dōm-ui, or -o,	<i>D.</i> dom-ibus,
<i>Ac.</i> dōm-um,	<i>Ac.</i> dōm-us, or -os,
<i>V.</i> dōm-us,	<i>V.</i> dōm-us,
<i>Ab.</i> dōm-o.	<i>Ab.</i> dom-ibus.

*Note.*—*Dōmus* in the genitive, signifies of a house. *Dōmī* is used only to signify at home, or of home.

## EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

1. Tell the gender, number, and case, of the following words, from the paradigm and additional examples, pp. 34 and 35, and translate :

Fructus, fructûs, fructuum, flatibus, flātu, manuum, manibur, nūtu, passuum, passibus, passûs, cornua, tonitribus, veribus, casu, currum, curruī, fluctu, fluctibus, cornibus, &c.

2. Translate the following words into Latin, and tell the gender, number, and case, in which the words are put ; viz :

Of fruit, to fruit, with the hand, for the hand, of a horn, to a horn, with a horn, from horns, horns, the horns, of the chariot, for a chariot, of chariots, from the waves, for the waves, from his hands, with a nod, &c.

## § 17. FIFTH DECLENSION.

94.—The Fifth Declension has but one termination of the nominative singular, namely, *es* ; as, *res*, a thing : *dies*, a day.

All nouns of this declension are feminine, except *dies*, a day, which is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural ; and *meridies*, the mid-day, which is masculine in the singular, and wants the plural.

## 1. DIES, a day.

Singular.	Plural.	TERMINATIONS.	
		Singular.	Plural.
N. di-es,	N. di-es,	-es,	-es,
G. di-ēī,	G. di-ērum,	-ēī, -ēī,	-ērum,
D. di ēī,	D. di-ēbus,	-ēī, -ēī,	-ēbus,
Ac. di-em,	Ac. di-es,	-em,	-es,
V. di-es,	V. di-es,	-es,	-es,
Ab. di-ē.	Ab. di-ēbus.	-ē.	-ēbus,

Obs. 1. *Dies*, *res*, and *species*, are the only nouns of the fifth declension which have the plural complete ; *acies*, *effigies*, *facies*, *series*, and *spes*, in the plural, have only the nominative, accusative, and vocative ; the other nouns of this declension have no plural.

## 2. FACIES, the face, Fem.

Singular.	Plural.	Thus decline.
N. faci-es,	N. faci-es,	Acies, an army.
G. faci-ēi,	G. —	Effigies, an image.
D. faci-ēi,	D. —	Series, a series.
Ac. faci-em,	Ac. faci-es,	Spes, -ēi, hope.
V. faci-es,	V. faci-es.	
Ab. faci-ē.	Ab. —	

*Exc.* The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative singular, in *e*; as, *fide* for *fidei*, Ov.: sometimes in *i*; as, *pernicii* for *perniciēi*, Nep.; and *plēbi* for *plēbēi*, Liv. *Requies* is both of the third and the fifth declension.

## EXERCISES ON THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

1. Tell the gender, number, and case of the following nouns, and translate them:—*Diēi*, *spēi*, *aciem*, *acie*, *faciēi*, *facies*, *diēbus*, *diērum*, *dies*, *faciem*, *effigiem*, *series*, *rērum*, *diēbus*, *diem*, &c., *ad libitum*.

2. Translate the following English words into Latin, and tell the gender, &c.:—The image, of the face, the things, of the army, the hope, of the army, a series, of days, to a day from the days, with the army, to an image, &c.

## PROMISCUOUS EXAMPLES ON ALL THE DECLENSIONS.

Tell the gender, declension, case, and number, of the following nouns, in the order here mentioned, and give the translation, thus, *Pennā*, a noun, feminine, of the first declension, in the ablative singular, "with a pen" \*:

*Via*, *puēri*, *genēro*, *ventis*, *puerōrum*, *sermo*, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*, *sedilibus*, *fructuum*, *fructūs*, *sellæ*, *tūbam*, *regno*,

\* The following are the words used in these exercises; the declension is indicated by the genitive, according to No. 55.

<i>Ala</i> , -æ, a wing.	<i>Iter</i> , <i>itinēris</i> , a way.	<i>Sedile</i> , -is, a seat.
<i>Bellum</i> , -i, war.	<i>Mānus</i> , -ūs, a hand.	<i>Sella</i> , -æ, a seat.
<i>Cāput</i> , -itis, the head.	<i>Mensa</i> , -æ, a table.	<i>Sermo</i> , -ōnis, a speech.
<i>Cōlor</i> , -is, color.	<i>Miles</i> , -itis, a soldier.	<i>Templum</i> , -i, a temple.
<i>Dies</i> , -ēi, a day.	<i>Pārens</i> , -tis, a parent.	<i>Tempus</i> , -ōris, time.
<i>Dominus</i> , -i, a lord.	<i>Pars</i> , -tis, a part.	<i>Tūba</i> , -æ, a trumpet.
<i>Facies</i> , -ēi, the face.	<i>Puer</i> , -i, a boy.	<i>Urbs</i> , -is, a city.
<i>Fructus</i> , -ūs, fruit.	<i>Regnum</i> , -i, a kingdom.	<i>Ventus</i> , -i, the wind.
<i>Gēner</i> , -i, a son-in-law.	<i>Res</i> , <i>rēi</i> , a thing.	<i>Via</i> , -æ, a way.
<i>Hōnor</i> , -is, honor.	<i>Rūpes</i> , -is, a rock.	<i>Vulpes</i> , -is, a fox.



templi, dies, rerum, capite, caput, itineribus, partis, parentibus, rupe, urbis, vulpem, vulpibus, parente, sedilia, die, colorem, militis, militibus, sermones, honore, manus, manus, manibus, faciem, ala, tubam, mensuram, bellum, dominorum, templum, puerorum, bella, bello, &c.

*Translate the following into Latin, and state the gender, declension, case, and number, always following the same order; thus, "Of boys," puerorum, a noun, masculine, of the first declension, in the genitive plural:*

From the way, to a speech, with a part, of a seat, of seats, to the wind, a kingdom, to a boy, of boys, with lords, foxes, of tables, to parents, with seats, of soldiers, from the head, heads, to a part, with a trumpet, in a time, of war, the time, of color, in a journey, to a seat, of a rock, to sons-in-law, with fruit, of the face, with a seat, to tables, of rocks, &c.

## § 18. IRREGULAR NOUNS.

95. Irregular Nouns are divided into *Variable, Defective, and Redundant*.

### I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

96.—Nouns are variable either in Gender, or Declension, or in both. Nouns varying in gender are called, *Heterogeneous*. Those which vary in declension are called, *Heteroclites*.

### *Heterogeneous Nouns.*

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as.

Avernus, a hill in Campania.

Dindymus, a hill in Phrygia.

Ismarus, a hill in Thrace.

Mænalus, a hill in Arcadia.

Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.

Tænarus, a promontory in Laconia.

Tartarus, hell.

Taygetus, a hill in Laconia.

2. Masculine in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural; as, jocus, a jest, plural joci and joca; locus, a place, plural loci and loca.

3. Feminine in the singular, neuter in the plural; as, carbæus, a sail, plural carbæa; Pergæus, the citadel of Troy, plural Pergæa.

4. Neuter in the singular, masculine in the plural; as, *Argos*, Argos, a city in Greece, plural *Argi*; *Elysium*, the Elysian fields, plural *Elysi*; *cælum*, heaven, plural *cæli*.

*Note 1.*—*Argos*, in the Singular, is used only in the Nom. and Acc.

5. Neuter in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural; as, *frēnum*, a bridle, plural *frēni* and *frēna*; *rastrum*, a rake, plural *rastri* and *rastra*.

6. Neuter in the singular, feminine in the plural; as, *balneum*, a bath, plural *balneæ*, seldom *balnea*; *epulum*, a banquet, plural *epulæ*; *delicium*, a delight, plural *deliciæ*.

### *Heteroclites.*

7. *Vas, vās*, neuter, a vessel, of the third declension, plural *vāsa, vasōrum*, of the second. *Jugērum, jugēri*, neuter, an acre, of the second declension, plural *jugēra, jugērum*, of the third. *Jugēris* and *jugēre* from *jūgus*, are also found in the singular. (See Num. 11 below.)

8. Some Greek proper nouns are declined both by the second declension and the third, as follows:

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>	
Orpheus, {	-ēi.	-eo,	-eum, <i>or</i> -eon,	—	-eo;	2d Decl.
	-eos,	-ēi,	-ea,	-eu,	—	3d Decl.
Œdīpus, {	-i,	-o,	-um,	—	-o;	2d Decl.
	-ōdis,	-ōdi,	-ōdem,	-u,	-ōde;	3d Decl.
Achilleus, -ēi,		-eo,	—	-eu,	-eo;	2d Decl.
Achilles, -lis, <i>or</i> -lēos,		-li,	-lem, <i>or</i> -len,	-lea, <i>or</i> -le,	-le;	3d Decl.

### DOUBLE NOUNS.

9. To this class may be referred a few double nouns, the parts of which are of different declensions. When the two nominatives combine, both parts are declined like a substantive and adjective; thus,

*RESPUBLICA, a commonwealth, Fem.*

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>respublica,</i>	<i>respublicæ,</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>reipublicæ,</i>	<i>rerumpublicarum,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>reipublicæ,</i>	<i>rebuspublicis,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>republicam,</i>	<i>respublicas,</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>respublica,</i>	<i>respublicæ,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>republicā.</i>	<i>rebuspublicis.</i>

JUSJURANDUM, *an oath*, Neut.

Singular.	Plural.
N. jusjurandum,	N. jurajuranda,
G. jurisjurandi,	G. _____
D. jurijurando,	D. _____
Ac. jusjurandum,	Ac. jurajuranda,
V. jusjurandum,	V. jurajuranda,
Ab. jurejurando,	Ab. _____

When the one part is a nominative, and the other an **oblique case**, the part in the nominative only is declined ; as,

MATERFAMILIAS, *a mistress of a family*, Fem.

## Singular.

N. materfamilias,
G. matrisfamilias,
D. matrifamilias,
Ac. matremfamilias,
V. materfamilias,
Ab. matrefamilias.

*Note 2.*—Here, *familias* is an old form of the genitive, and is governed by *māter*. So, *Pater-familias*, *filius-familias*, *filia-familias*. Pl. *matres-familiarum*, &c. In this way, *familias* is used as well as *familias*.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective either in *Case* or in *Number*.

*Obs. 1. Indeclinable nouns*, i. e., nouns which have the same form in all cases, though commonly ranked under this class, do not properly belong to it, because none of the cases are wanting. They are such as *pondo*, n., a pound or pounds ; *sēmis*, n., the half ; *mille*, a thousand ; *cæpe*, an onion ; *opus*, need or needful, used both as a substantive and an adjective. To these may be added any word used as a noun ; as, *velle*, in the phrase, *suum velle* (for *sua voluntas*), his own inclination ; —proper names adopted from a foreign language ; as, *Elizabet*, *Jerusālem*, &c.

I. *Nouns defective in particular cases.*

*Note.*—A noun used in one case only, is called a *monoptote*; in two cases, a *diptote*; in three, a *triptote*; in four, a *tetraptote*; in five, a *pentaptote*. A *an* indeclinable word is called an *aptote*.

10. The following nouns are used only in one case .

*Nominative.* Iniquis, f., *want of rest*.

*Ablative.*

Admonitio, m., an admonition.

Ambage, f., a winding.

Casse, m., a net.

Diu, by day.

Ergo, on account of.

Fauces, f. the jaws.

Ingratitia, f., in spite of.

Injussu, m., without order

Interdiu, by day.

Natu, m., by birth.

Noctu, f., by night.

Promptu, m., in readiness.

*Obs. 2.* Many verbal nouns of the fourth declension are used only in the ablative singular; as, *accitu*, *promptu*, &c. *Dicis*, f., and *nauci*, n., are used only in the genitive singular; as *dicis gratia*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value. *Inficias*, f., and *incita*, f., or *incitas*, have only the accusative plural; as, *inficias ire*, to deny; *ad incitas reductus*, reduced to extremities. *Ambages*, *casses* and *fauces*, are regularly declined in the plural.

11. The following nouns are used only in two cases :

*Nominative and Accusative.*

Astu, n., the city of Athens.

- Instar, n., likeness, bigness.

Inferias, -as, f., sacrifices to the dead.

Suppetias, -as, f., help.

*Nominative and Ablative.*

Astus, -u, m., cunning.

Vesper, -e, or -i, m., the evening.

*Genitive and Ablative.*

Compēdis, -e, f., a fetter.

Spontis, -e, f., of one's own accord

Impētis, -e, m., force.

Verbēris, -e, n., a stripe.

Jugēris, -e, n., an acre.

Repetundarum, -is, f., extortion.

*Obs. 3.* *Compēdes*, *jugēra* and *verbēra* are regularly declined in the plural. *Astus* is found in the nominative and accusative plural.

12. The following nouns are used only in three cases

*Nominative, Accusative and Vocative.*

Cacoēthes, n., a bad custom.

Nēfas, n., impiety.

(Also other Greek nouns in -es.)

Nīhil, and Nil, n., nothing.

Cēte, n., whales.

Tempe, n., the vale of Tempe

D'ca, -am, f., a process; pl. -as.

*Nominative, Accusative and Ablative.*

Epos, n., a heroic poem.

Mēlos, n., a song; pl. -e.

Fas, n., divine law.

Māne, -e, -e, n., the morning.

Grātes, f., thanks.

Tābes, f., consumption.

Lues, f., a plague.

Vepres, or -is, m., a briar

*Nom., Gen. and Abl.* Tabum, n., *putrid gore.*

*Nom., Gen. and Acc.* Munia, -trum, n., *offices.*

*Ovis*, f., genitive, *help*, (from *ops*.) has *opem* in the accusative, and *ope* in the ablative singular, with the plural complete, *opes*, *opum*, &c., *wealth*; and *præci*, f., dative, a *prayer*, (from *prez*.) has *præcem* and *præce*, with the plural entire, *præces*, *præcum*, &c. *Femînis*, n., genitive, the *thigh*, (from *femen*;) has *femîni* and *femîne*, in the dative and ablative singular, and *femîna* in the nominative, accusative and vocative plural.

*Obs. 4.* *Vêpres* has the plural entire; and *tâbes* and *gratibus*, the nominative and the ablative plural of *tâbes* and *grâtes*, are also found.

The following nouns want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural :

*Far*, n., *corn.*

*Mel*, n., *honey.*

*Rus*, n., *the country*

*Hiems*, f., *winter.*

*Mêtus*, m., *fear.*

*Thus*, n., *frankincense.*

(For nouns of the Fifth Declension, see 94.)

13. The following nouns want the nominative and vocative, and are therefore used only in four cases :

*Ditiônîa*, f., *power.*

*Sordis*, f., *filth.*

*Pecûdia*, f., *a beast.*

*Vicis*, f., *a change.*

To these may be added *daps*, f., a *dish*; *frux*, f., *corn*; and *nex*, f., *slaughter*, which are seldom used in the nominative. The plural of *frux* is entire; *daps* wants the genitive; and *nex* seems to have the nominative, accusative, and vocative only.

*Chaos*, n., a *confused mass*, wants the genitive and dative singular, and is not used in the plural.

*Obs. 5.* *Pecûdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire; *vicis* is defective in the genitive; *ditiônîs* has no plural.

14. Some nouns are defective in one case.

The following want the genitive plural :

*Fæx*, f., *dregs.*

*Prôles*, f., *offspring.*

*Fax*, f., *a torch.*

*Ros*, m., *dew.*

*Lâbes*, f., *a stain.*

*Sobôles*, f., *offspring.*

*Lux*, f., *light.*

*Sol*, m., *the sun.*

*Os*, n., *the mouth.*

*Satias*, f., a *glut of any thing*, and *adlun*, n., the *sea*, want the genitive singular and the plural entirely. *Situs*, m., a *situation*, *mustiness*, wants

the genitive, and perhaps the dative singular, and probably the genitive, dative, and ablative plural. *Nemo*, e., nobody, wants the vocative singular, and has no plural.

## II. Nouns defective in number.

15. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, cannot be used in the plural. Such are the names of virtues and vices; of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, abstract nouns, &c.; as, *justitia*, justice; *luxus*, luxury; *musica*, music; *apium*, parsley; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *triticum*, wheat; *magnitudo*, greatness; *senectus*, old age; *macies*, leanness, &c. But some of the nouns included in these classes are occasionally found in the plural.

16. The following masculine nouns, for the most part, want the plural:

<i>Aër</i> , <i>aëria</i> , the air.	<i>Pénus</i> , -i, or -ūs, all manner of provisions.
<i>Æther</i> , -ëris, the sky.	<i>Pontus</i> , -i, the sea.
<i>Fîmus</i> , -i, dung.	<i>Pulvis</i> , -ëris, dust.
<i>Hespërus</i> , -i, the evening star.	<i>Sanguis</i> , -înis, blood.
<i>Jîmus</i> , -i, mud.	<i>Sôpor</i> , -ôris, sleep.
<i>Meridies</i> , -iëi, mid-day.	<i>Veternus</i> , -i, a lethargy.
<i>Mundus</i> , -i, a woman's ornaments.	
<i>Muscus</i> , -i, moss.	

*Note 3.*—*Aër*, *pulvis*, and *sôpor* are found in the plural.

17. The following feminine nouns, for the most part, want the plural:

<i>Argilla</i> , -æ, potter's earth.	<i>Sâlus</i> , -ûtis, safety.
<i>Fâmes</i> , -is, hunger.	<i>Sîtis</i> , -is, thirst.
<i>Hûmus</i> , -i, the ground.	<i>Supellex</i> , -ctilis, household furniture.
<i>Indôles</i> , -is, a disposition.	<i>Venia</i> , -æ, pardon.
<i>Plebs</i> , -is, the common people.	<i>Vespëra</i> , -æ, the evening.
<i>Pûbes</i> , -is, the youth.	

The following are sometimes found in the plural:

<i>Bilis</i> , -is, bile.	<i>Pituïta</i> , -æ, phlegm.
<i>Cholëra</i> , -æ, cholera.	<i>Pix</i> , -ois, pitch.
<i>Cûtis</i> , -is, the skin.	<i>Prôles</i> , -is, offspring.
<i>Fâma</i> , -æ, fame.	<i>Quies</i> , -ëtis, rest.
<i>Gloria</i> , -æ, glory.	<i>Sobôles</i> , -is, offspring.
<i>Lâbes</i> , -is, a stain.	<i>Tellus</i> , -ûris, the earth.
<i>Pax</i> , -cis, peace.	

18. The following neuter nouns, for the most part, want the plural :

Album, -i, <i>a list of names.</i>	Lütum, -i, <i>clay</i>
Baräthrum, i, <i>any deep place.</i>	Nectar, -äria, <i>nectar</i>
Dilucülum, -i, <i>the dawn of day</i>	Pelägus, -i, <i>the sea.</i>
Ebur, -öria, <i>ivory.</i>	Pënum, -i, and pënus, öria, <i>all kinds of provisions.</i>
Fœnum, -i, <i>hay.</i>	Pus, püris, <i>matter.</i>
Üälu, <i>frost, indeclinable</i>	Sal, sälia, <i>salt.</i>
Hilum, -i, <i>the black speck of a bean ; a trifle.</i>	Ver, vëria, <i>the spring.</i>
Jübar, -äria, <i>the sunbeam.</i>	Virus, -i, <i>poison.</i>
Justitium, -i, <i>a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.</i>	Vitrum, -i, <i>glass.</i>
Lardum, -i, <i>bacon.</i>	Viscum, -i, <i>the mistletoe.</i>
Lëthum, -i, <i>death.</i>	Vulgus, i, <i>the rabble.</i>

Obs. 6. *Ebur, lardum, lütum, and pus*, are found in the plural ; and *peläge* is found, in some cases, as the plural of *pelägus* ; *sal*, as a neuter noun, is not used in the plural.

19. Many nouns want the singular ; such as the names of feasts, books, games, and many cities and places ; as,

Apollinäres, -ium, <i>games in honor of Apollo.</i>	Olympia, -örum, <i>the Olympic games.</i>
Bacchanalia, -ium, and -örum, <i>the feasts of Bacchus.</i>	Syracusæ, -ärum, <i>Syracuse.</i>
Bucolica, -örum, <i>a book of pastorals.</i>	Hierosolyma, -örum, <i>Jerusalem.</i>
	Thermopylæ, -ärum, <i>the straits of Thermopyla.</i>

20. The following masculine nouns are scarcely used in the singular :

Antes, <i>the front rows of vines.</i>	Infëri, <i>the gods below.</i>
Cancelli, <i>lattices, or windows made with cross-bars.</i>	Lemüres, -um, <i>ghosts, hobgoblins.</i>
Cäni, <i>gray hairs.</i>	Libëri, <i>children.</i>
Celëres, -um, <i>the light-horses.</i>	Majöres, -um, <i>ancestors.</i>
Codicilli, <i>writings.</i>	Mänea, -ium, <i>ghosts.</i>
Fasti, -örum, or fastus, -uum, <i>calendars, in which were marked festival days, &amp;c.</i>	Minöres, -um, <i>successors.</i>
Föri, <i>the gangways of a ship, or seats in the Circus.</i>	Penätea, -um, or -ium, <i>household gods.</i>
	Postëri, <i>posterity.</i>
	Procëres, -um, <i>the nobles.</i>
	Pugilläres, -ium, <i>writing tables.</i>
	Supëri, <i>the gods above.</i>

Obs 7. *Libëri* and *procëres* are also found in the singular (*procërem*). Some of the others, as *infëri, majöres, &c.*

are properly adjectives, and agree with the substantives which are implied in their signification.

21. The following feminine nouns want the singular :

Clitellæ, <i>a pannier.</i>	Kalendæ, Nōnæ, Idus, <i>Parietinæ, ruinous walls.</i>
Cūnæ, <i>a cradle.</i>	-uum, <i>names which the</i> Phalēræ, <i>trappings.</i>
Dīræ, <i>imprecations.</i>	Romans gave to certain Primitiæ, <i>first fruits.</i>
Divitiæ, <i>riches.</i>	days in each month. Reliquiæ, <i>a remainder.</i>
Excubiæ, <i>watches.</i>	Lactes, <i>the small guts.</i> Salinæ, <i>salt-pits.</i>
Exsequiæ, <i>funerals.</i>	Lapidinæ, <i>stone quar-</i> Scālæ, <i>a ladder.</i>
Exuviæ, <i>spoils.</i>	ries. Scōpæ, <i>a besom.</i>
Feriæ, <i>holidays.</i>	Manubiæ, <i>spoils taken in</i> Tenebræ, <i>darkness.</i>
Gerræ, <i>trifles.</i>	war. Thermæ, <i>hot baths.</i>
Induciæ, <i>a truce.</i>	Mīnæ, <i>threats.</i> Tricæ, <i>toys.</i>
Induviæ, <i>clothes to put</i> Nūgæ, <i>trifles.</i> Valvæ, <i>folding doors.</i>	on. Nundinæ, <i>a market.</i> Vindicæ, <i>a claim of li-</i>
Insidiæ, <i>snarcs.</i>	Nuptiæ, <i>a marriage.</i> berty, <i>a defence.</i>

The following are generally found in the plural :

Alpes, <i>the Alps.</i>	Charites, -um, <i>the Graces.</i>
Argutiæ, <i>quirks, witticisms.</i>	Facetiæ, <i>pleasant sayings.</i>
Bigæ, <i>a chariot drawn by two horses.</i>	Ineptiæ, <i>silly stories.</i>
Trigæ, — by three.	Præstigiæ, <i>enchantments.</i>
Quadrigæ, — by four.	Salēbræ, <i>rugged places.</i>
Braccæ, <i>breeches.</i>	

22. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

Acta, <i>public acts or records.</i>	Lautia, <i>provisions for the entertain-</i>
Æstiva, <i>summer quarters.</i>	ment of foreign ambassadors.
Arma, <i>arms.</i>	Magalia, -um, <i>cottages.</i>
Bellaria, -um, <i>dainties.</i>	Mœnia, -um, <i>the walls of a city.</i>
Brevia, -um, <i>shallows.</i>	Orgia, <i>the sacred rites of Bacchus.</i>
Cibaria, <i>victuals.</i>	Parentalia, -um, <i>solemnities at the</i>
Crepundia, <i>children's toys.</i>	funeral of parents.
Cunabula, <i>a cradle, an origin.</i>	Præcordia, <i>the diaphragm, the heart.</i>
Extæ, <i>the entrails.</i>	Sponsalia, -um, <i>espousals.</i>
Februa, <i>purifying sacrifices.</i>	Stativa, <i>a standing camp.</i>
Flabra, <i>blasts of wind.</i>	Talaria, -um, <i>winged shoes.</i>
Fræga, <i>strawberries.</i>	Tesqua, <i>rough places.</i>
Hyberna, <i>winter quarters.</i>	Transtra, <i>the seats on which the rowers</i>
Iliæ, -um, <i>the entrails.</i>	sit in ships.
Iusta, <i>funeral rites.</i>	Utensilia, -um, <i>utensils.</i>
Lamenta, <i>lamentations.</i>	



*Obs. 8. Acta and transtra, are also found in the singular. Some of the others, as æstiva, brevīa, hyberna, stativa, &c., are properly adjectives; and agree with the substantives which are necessary to complete their meaning.*

### III. Redundant Nouns.

23. Some nouns are redundant in termination, gender, or form of declension: as, *arbor*, or *arbos*, a tree; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter; *menda*, *mendæ*, or *mendum*, *mendi*, a fault.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns, is composed of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as,

*Æther*, -ëris, & *æthra*, -æ, *the air*.

*Alvear*, & -e, & -ium, *a bee-hive*.

*Amaracus*, & -um, *sweet marjoram*.

*Ancile*, & -ium, *an oval shield*.

*Angiportus*, -ûs, & -i, & -um, *a narrow lane*.

*Aphractus*, & -um, *an open ship*.

*Aplustre*, & -um, *the flag, colors*.

*Arbor*, & -os, *a tree*.

*Baculus*, & -um, *a staff*.

*Balteus*, & -um, *a belt*.

*Batillus*, & -um, *a fire-shovel*.

*Capus*, & -o, *a capon*.

*Cassis*, -îdis, & -îda, -îdæ, *a helmet*.

*Cæpa*, & -e, (indec.), *an onion*.

*Clypeus*, & -um, *a shield*.

*Colluvies*, & -io, *filth, dirt*.

*Compægea*, & -go, *a joining*.

*Conger*, & -grus, *a large eel*.

*Cræcus*, & -um, *saffron*.

*Cubitus*, & -um, *a cubit*.

*Diluvium*, & -es, *a deluge*.

*Elëgi*, -örum, & -ia, *an elegy*.

*Elephantus*, & *Elephas*, -antis, *an elephant*.

*Essæda*, & -um, *a chariot*.

*Eventus*, & -a, -örum, *an event*.

*Gausäpa*, & -e, -es; & -e, -is; & -um, *a rough cloth*.

*Gëlu*, & -um, *frost*.

*Gibbus*, & -a; & -er, -ëris, or -ëri, *a bunch, a swelling*.

*Glutinum*, & -en, *glue*.

*Grus*, -uis, & -uis, -uis, *a crane*.

*Laurus*, i, & -ûs, *a laurel tree*.

*Maceria*, & -ies, -iëi, *a wall*.

*Materia*, -æ, & -ies, -iëi, *matter*.

*Menda*, -æ, & -um, -i, *a fault*.

*Milliare*, & -ium, *a mile*.

*Monitum*, & -us, -ûs, *an admonition*.

*Muria*, & -ies, -iëi, *brine or pickle*.

*Näsus*, & -um, *the nose*.

*Obsidio*, & -um, *a siege*.

*Ostrea*, -æ, & -ea, -örum, *an oyster*.

*Peplus*, & -um, *a veil, a robe*.

*Pënus*, -ûs, & -i; & -um; & -us, -ëris, *provisions*.

*Pistrina*, & -um, *a grinding-house*.

*Plebs*, & -es, *the common people*.

*Prætextus*, -ûs, & -um, *a pretext*.

*Räpum*, & -a, *a turnip*.

*Rüma*, & -men, *the cud*.

*Ruscum*, & -us, *butcher's broom*.

*Segmen*, & -mentum, *a paring*.

*Sepes*, & seps, *a hedge*.

*Sibulus*, & -a, -örum, *a hissing*.

*Sinus*, & -um, *a milk pail*.

*Strämen*, & -tum, *straw*.

Suffimen, *ḡ -tum, a perfume.*

Tignus, *ḡ -up, a plank.*

Tōral, *ḡ -āle, a bed-covering.*

Tonitrus, *-ās, ḡ -u, ḡ -uum, thunder.*

Torcūlar, *ḡ -āre, a wine-press.*

Veternus, *ḡ -um, a lethargy.*

Viscum, *ḡ -ua, the mistletoe.*

*Obs. 9.* Some of the nouns in the preceding list, may be used in either or in any of the terminations, and in the singular or plural, indifferently; some, as *auxilium*, *laurus*, *-ūs*, are used only in one or two cases; or in one number, as *elēgi*; while others, as *prætextus* (a pretext) and *prætextum* (a border), though sometimes synonymous, are commonly employed in a different meaning.

24. The following nouns have a meaning in the plural different from that which generally belongs to them in the singular:

Singular.	Plural.
Aedes, <i>a temple.</i>	Aedes, <i>a house.</i>
Auxilium, <i>assistance.</i>	Auxilia, <i>auxiliary troops.</i>
Bōnum, <i>any thing good.</i>	Bōna, <i>goods, property.</i>
Carcer, <i>a prison.</i>	Carcēra, <i>the barriers of a race course.</i>
Castrum, <i>a fort.</i>	Castra, <i>a camp.</i>
Comitium, <i>a place in the Roman forum where the comitia were held.</i>	Comitia, <i>an assembly of the people for the purpose of voting.</i>
Copia, <i>plenty.</i>	Copiæ, <i>troops.</i>
Cupedia, <i>daintiness.</i>	Cupediæ, <i>or -a, dainties.</i>
Facultas, <i>power, ability.</i>	Facultātes, <i>wealth, property.</i>
Fascis, <i>a bundle of twigs, a fagot.</i>	Fasces, <i>a bundle of rods carried before the chief magistrate of Rome.</i>
Finis, <i>the end of any thing.</i>	Fines, <i>the boundaries of a country.</i>
Fortūna, <i>fortune.</i>	Fortūnæ, <i>an estate, possessions.</i>
Gratia, <i>grace, favor.</i>	Gratiæ, <i>thanks.</i>
Hortus, <i>a garden.</i>	Horti, <i>pleasure-grounds.</i>
Litēra, <i>a letter of the alphabet.</i>	Litēræ, <i>a letter, epistle.</i>
Lustrum, <i>a period of five years.</i>	Lustra, <i>dens of wild beasts.</i>
Natālis, <i>a birth-day.</i>	Natāles, <i>birth, descent.</i>
Opēra, <i>labor.</i>	Opēræ, <i>workmen.</i>
Opis, <i>(genitive,) help.</i>	Opes, <i>wealth, power.</i>
Paras, <i>a part, portion.</i>	Partes, <i>a party, faction.</i>
Plāga, <i>a space, a tract of country.</i>	Plāgæ, <i>nets used by hunters.</i>
Principium, <i>a beginning, a first principle, or element.</i>	Principia, <i>a place in the camp where the general's tent stood.</i>

Singular.

Plural.

*Rostrum*, the beak of a bird, the sharp part of the prow of a ship. *Rostra*, a pulpit in the Roman forum, from which orators used to address the people.

*Sal*, salt.*Săles*, witticisms.

*Note 4.*—All the nouns in the preceding list, except *castrum* and *comitatus*, are sometimes found in the singular, in the sense in which they more commonly occur in the plural.

## § 19. THE ADJECTIVE.

97.—An ADJECTIVE is a word used to qualify a substantive; as, *vir* BONUS, a GOOD man; *decem naves*, TEN ships.

A noun is qualified by an adjective when the object named is thereby *described*, *limited*, or *distinguished* from other things of the same name.

1. The accidents of the adjective are *gender*, *number*, and *case*, and, of most adjectives, also *comparison*.

2. Adjectives, in Latin, indicate the gender, number, and case, by the termination; as, *bôn-us*, *bôn-a*, *bôn-um*. (98.)

3. Participles have the *form* and *declension* of adjectives, while, in *time* and *signification*, they belong to the verb.

4. Some adjectives denote each gender by a different termination in the nominative, and consequently have three terminations. Some have one form common to the masculine and feminine, and are adjectives of two terminations; and some are adjectives of one termination, which is common to all genders.

5. Adjectives are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

6. Adjectives of three terminations (except thirteen), are of the first and second declensions; but those of one or two terminations, are of the third.

*Exc.* Thirteen adjectives in *er*, of three terminations, are of the third declension. (See 99–5.)

## § 20. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

98.—Adjectives of the first and second declensions have the masculine always in *us* or *er*; the feminine always in *a*, and the neuter always in *um*; as, masculine *bōnus*, feminine *bōna*, neuter *bōnum*, good.

The masculine in *us* and *er*, is declined like *dominus*, and *gener*; the feminine in *a*, like *penna*; and the neuter in *um*, like *regnum*: thus,

### 1. BONUS, BONA, BONUM, good.

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. bōn-us,	a,	um,	N. bōn-i,	æ,	a,
G. bōn-i,	æ,	i,	G. bon-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum.
D. bōn-o,	æ,	o,	D. bōn-is,	is,	is,
Ac. bōn-um,	am,	um,	Ac. bōn-os,	as,	a,
V. bōn-e,	a,	um,	V. bōn-i,	æ,	a,
Ab. bōn-o,	ā,	o.	Ab. bōn-is,	is,	is.

In the same manner decline :

Altus, <i>high</i> .	Cavus, <i>hollow</i> .	Lætus, <i>joyful</i> .
Amplus, <i>large</i> .	Doctus, <i>learned</i> .	Plēnus, <i>full</i> .
Blandus, <i>flattering</i> .	Dūrus, <i>hard</i> .	Privatus, <i>private</i> .
Cārus, <i>dear</i> .	Fidus, <i>faithful</i> .	Rectus, <i>right</i> .

Also all participles, numerals, and pronouns, in *us*; as, *amātus*, *amātūrus*, *amandus*,—*primus*, *secundus*, &c.,—*meus*, *tuus*, *suus*.

Notes<sup>1</sup> —*Mus* has *mi* in the vocative masculine, seldom *meus*.

### 2. TENER, TENERA, TENERUM, tender.

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. tēn-er,	a,	um,	N. tenēr-i,	æ,	a,
G. tenēr-i,	æ,	i,	G. tener-ōrum,	ārum,	ōrum,
D. tener-o,	æ,	o,	D. tenēr-is,	is,	is,
Ac. tenēr-um,	am,	um,	Ac. tenēr-os,	as,	a,
V. tēn-er,	a,	um,	V. tenēr-i,	æ,	a,
Ab. tenēr-o,	ā,	o.	Ab. tenēr-is,	is,	is.

In the same manner decline

<i>Asper, rough.</i>	<i>Miser, wretched.</i>	<i>Exter, foreign.</i>
<i>Liber, free.</i>	<i>Prosper, prosperous.</i>	<i>Satur, full.</i>

Also compounds derived from *gêro* and *fêro*; as, *laniger*, bearing wool, *capifer*, bringing help.

But most adjectives in *er* lose the *e* in all the genders (66); as,

### 3. ATER, ATRA, ATRUM, black.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. âter,</i>	<i>atr-a,</i>	<i>atr-um,</i>	<i>N. atr-i,</i>	<i>atr-æ,</i>	<i>atr-a,</i>
<i>G. atr-i,</i>	<i>atr-æ,</i>	<i>atr-i,</i>	<i>G. atr-ôrum,</i>	<i>atr-ârum,</i>	<i>atr-ôrum,</i>
<i>D. atr-o,</i>	<i>atr-æ,</i>	<i>atr-o,</i>	<i>D. atr-is,</i>	<i>atr-is,</i>	<i>atr-i3,</i>
<i>Ac. atr-um,</i>	<i>atr-am,</i>	<i>atr-um,</i>	<i>Ac. atr-os,</i>	<i>atr-as,</i>	<i>atr-a,</i>
<i>V. âter,</i>	<i>atr-a,</i>	<i>atr-um,</i>	<i>V. atr-i,</i>	<i>atr-æ,</i>	<i>atr-a,</i>
<i>Ab. atr-o,</i>	<i>atr-â,</i>	<i>atr-o.</i>	<i>Ab. atr-is,</i>	<i>atr-is,</i>	<i>atr-is.</i>

In like manner decline :

<i>Eger, sick.</i>	<i>Mâcer, lean.</i>	<i>Sâcer, sacred.</i>
<i>Crêber, frequent.</i>	<i>Pulcher, fair.</i>	<i>Sinister, left.</i>

*Dexter*, right, has *dextra*, *dextrum*; or *dextera*, *dextêrum*.

4. The following adjectives have the genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*; namely,

<i>Alius, another of many.</i>	<i>Sôlus, alone.</i>	<i>Uterlibet, which of the two you please.</i>
<i>Alter, the other of two.</i>	<i>Tôtus, whole.</i>	<i>Uterque, both.</i>
<i>Alteruter, the one or other.</i>	<i>Ullus, any.</i>	<i>Utervis, which of the two you please.</i>
<i>Neuter, neither.</i>	<i>Unus, one.</i>	
<i>Nullus, none.</i>	<i>Uter, whether.</i>	

In the other cases, they are like *ôonus*, *têner*, or *âter*; as,

### TÔTUS, TÔTA, TÔTUM, whole.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. tôt-us,</i>	<i>a,</i>	<i>um,</i>	<i>N. tôt-i,</i>	<i>æ,</i>	<i>a,</i>
<i>G. tot-ius,</i>	<i>ius,</i>	<i>ius,</i>	<i>G. tot-ôrum,</i>	<i>ârum,</i>	<i>ôrum,</i>
<i>D. tôt-i,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>D. tôt-is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>
<i>Ac. tôt-um,</i>	<i>am,</i>		<i>Ac. tôt-os,</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>a,</i>
<i>V. tôt-e,</i>	<i>a,</i>		<i>V. tôt-i,</i>	<i>æ,</i>	<i>a,</i>
<i>Ab. tôt-o,</i>	<i>â,</i>	<i>o.</i>	<i>Ab. tôt-is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>is.</i>

*Note 2.*—*Alvus* has *aliud* in the neuter; and in the genitive *alvus*, contracted for *alvius*; dative, *alii*. The genitive in *ius*, in poetry, has the *i* either long or short; in prose, always long. *Uter*, neuter, *alter*, *alvus*, *ulvus*, and *nullus*, instead of *ius* in the genitive, and *i* in the dative, occasionally, in the early writers, have the regular genitive *i*, *æ*, *i*, and dative *o*, *æ*, *o*.

## § 21. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

99.—**RULE 1.** Adjectives of the third declension, have *e* or *i*, in the ablative singular; but if the neuter is in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

**RULE 2.** The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*.

*Exc.* Except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

### I. Adjectives of one termination.

#### 1. FELIX, happy.

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. felix,	felix,	felix,	N. felic-es,	es,	ia,
G. felic-is,	is,	is,	G. felic-ium,	ium,	iura
D. felic-i,	i,	i,	D. felic-ibus,	ibus,	ibus,
Ac. felic-em,	em,	felix,	Ac. felic-es,	es,	ia,
V. felix,	felix,	felix,	V. felic-es,	es,	ia,
Ab. felic-e or i,	e or i,	e ori.	Ab. felic-ibus,	ibus,	ibus

In like manner decline :

Ferox, bold.	Supplex, suppliant.	Trux, -acis, cruel.
Sagax, sagacious.	Tenax, tenacious.	VeloX, -ocis, swift.

#### 2. PRUDENS, prudent.

Singular.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. prūdēns,	prūdēns,	prūdēns,
G. prudent-is,	prudent-is,	prudent-is,
D. prudent-i,	prudent-i,	prudent-i,
Ac. prudent-em,	prudent-em,	prūdēns,
V. prūdēns,	prūdēns,	prūdēns,
Ab. prudent-e, or -i,	prudent-e, or -i,	prudent-e, or -i.

	<i>Plural.</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia,
<i>G.</i> prudent-ium,	prudent-ium,	prudent-ium,
<i>D.</i> prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus,
<i>Ac.</i> prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia,
<i>V.</i> prudent-es,	prudent-es,	prudent-ia,
<i>Ab.</i> prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus,	prudent-ibus.

In like manner decline :

Clāmēns, -tia, *gentle.*      Ingēns, *great.*      Rēcens, *fresh.*

Also all participles in *ns* ; as, *āmāns, docens, legens, audiens, &c.*

*Nota.*—Participles have *e* oftener than *i* in the ablative singular, and in the ablative absolute, they have *e* only.

## II. *Adjectives of two terminations.*

### 3. MITIS, MITE, meek.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> mit-is,	is,	e,	<i>N.</i> mit-es,	es,	ia,
<i>G.</i> mit-is,	is,	is,	<i>G.</i> mit-ium,	ium,	ium,
<i>D.</i> mit-i,	i,	i,	<i>D.</i> mit-ibus,	ibus,	ibus,
<i>Ac.</i> mit-em,	em,	e,	<i>Ac.</i> mit-es,	es,	ia,
<i>V.</i> mit-is,	is,	e,	<i>V.</i> mit-es,	es,	ia,
<i>Ab.</i> mit-i,	i,	i,	<i>Ab.</i> mit-ibus,	ibus,	ibus.

In the same manner decline :

Agilis, *active.*      Debilis, *weak.*      Talis, *such.*  
 Brevis, *short.*      Incolūmis, *safe.*      Utilis, *useful.*

### 4. *Comparative Degree*,—MITIOR, MITIUS, *more meek.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> mitior,	mitior,	mitius,	<i>N.</i> mitiōr-es,	es,	a,
<i>G.</i> mitiōr-is,	is,	is,	<i>G.</i> mitiōr-um,	um,	um,
<i>D.</i> mitiōr-i,	i,	i,	<i>D.</i> mitior-ibus,	ibus,	ibus,
<i>Ac.</i> mitiōr-em,	em,	mitius,	<i>Ac.</i> mitiōr-es,	es,	a,
<i>V.</i> mitior,	mitior,	mitius,	<i>V.</i> mitiōr-es,	es,	a,
<i>Ab.</i> mitiōr-e or i,	e or i,	e or i.	<i>Ab.</i> mitior-ibus,	ibus,	ibus.

In like manner decline :

Altior, *higher.*      Felicior, *happier.*      Melior, *better.*  
 Brevior, *shorter.*      Fortior, *braver.*      Mollior, *softer.*  
 Durior, *harder.*      Mājor, *greater.*      Pējor, *worse.*

*Exc. Plus, more, has only the neuter gender in the singular, and is thus declined:*

Singular.		Plural.		
<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. plus,</i>		<i>N. plūr-es,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>a, (ia,)</i>
<i>G. plūr-is,</i>		<i>G. plur-ium,</i>	<i>ium,</i>	<i>ium,</i>
<i>D. —</i>		<i>D. plur-ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>
<i>Ac. plus,</i>		<i>Ac. plūr-es,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>a, (ia,)</i>
<i>V. —</i>		<i>V. —</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>—</i>
<i>Ab. plūr-e, or i.</i>		<i>Ab. plur-ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>ibus.</i>

*Note.*—The neuter plural in *is* is hardly ever used. The compound, *con-plūres*, has no singular.

### III. *Adjectives of three terminations.*

#### 5. *ACER or ACRIS, ACRE, sharp.*

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. ācer, or ācr-is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>N. ācr-es,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>ia,</i>
<i>G. ācr-is</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>G. acr-ium,</i>	<i>ium,</i>	<i>ium,</i>
<i>D. ācr-i,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>D. acr-ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>
<i>Ac. ācr-em,</i>	<i>em,</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>Ac. ācr-es,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>ia,</i>
<i>V. ācer, or ācr-is,</i>	<i>is,</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>V. ācr-es,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>ia,</i>
<i>Ab. ācr-i,</i>	<i>i,</i>	<i>i.</i>	<i>Ab. acr-ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>	<i>ibus,</i>

Besides *ācer*, the following twelve are declined in this way :

<i>Alācer, cheerful.</i>	<i>Equester, equestrian.</i>	<i>Salūber, wholesome.</i>
<i>Campester, flat, level.</i>	<i>Paluster, marshy.</i>	<i>Silvester, woody.</i>
<i>Celēber, famous.</i>	<i>Pedester, on foot.</i>	<i>Terrester, terrestrial.</i>
<i>Cēler, swift.</i>	<i>Pūter, putrid.</i>	<i>Volūcer, swift.</i>

#### 100.—*Exceptions in the Ablative Singular and Genitive Plural.*

*Exc. 1.* The following adjectives have *e* in the ablative singular, and *um* in the genitive plural; viz :

<i>Cōlebs, unmarried.</i>	<i>Pauper, poor.</i>	<i>Sospes, safe</i>
<i>Compos, master of.</i>	<i>Juvēnis, young.</i>	<i>Impūbea, beardless.</i>
<i>Hospes, strange.</i>	<i>Pūbia, marriageable.</i>	<i>Superstes, surviving.</i>
<i>Impos, unable.</i>	<i>Sēnex, old.</i>	<i>Vētus, old.</i>

The compounds of *cōlor*, *corpor*, *cuspis*, and *ves*, have likewise *e* and *um*.



*Notes.*—*Calebs*, *ampoe*, *impos*, and *superstes*, have sometimes *i* in the ablative. *Vetus* has commonly *veteri* in the ablative, but always *vetere* and *veterum* in the plural.

*Exc. 2.* The following adjectives have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular, and *um* in the genitive plural; viz:

<i>Ales</i> , winged.	<i>Degēner</i> , degenerate.	<i>Particeps</i> , sharing.
<i>Anceps</i> , double.	<i>Dispar</i> , unequal.	<i>Præceps</i> , headlong.
<i>Artifex</i> , artificial.	<i>Dives</i> , rich.	<i>Princeps</i> , chief.
<i>Cicū</i> , tame.	<i>Impar</i> , unequal.	<i>Supplex</i> , suppliant.
<i>Compar</i> , equal.	<i>Inops</i> , poor.	<i>Vigil</i> , watchful.

*Notes.*—*Mēmōr*, mindful; *immēmōr*, unmindful, *par*, equal; *āber*, fertile, *solūcer*, swift, have *i* only in the ablative singular, and *um* in the genitive plural; except *par*, which has *ium*.

*Locuples*, rich; *sons*, guilty, and *insons*, innocent, have *um*, as well as *ium*, in the genitive plural.

## 101.—§ 22. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

Irregular adjectives are *Defective* or *Redundant*.

### I. DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. The adjectives *frūgi*, temperate; *sat* or *sātis*, sufficient; *semis*, half; and the plurals *quot*, how many? *tot*, so many; *aliquot*, some; *quotquot*, and *quotcunque*, how many soever; *totidem*, just so many, are indeclinable. *Nēquam*, worthless, is also indeclinable, but used in both numbers.

2. *Exspes*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, neuter *pōte*, sometimes *pōtis*, able, are used only in the nominative. They are of all genders, and *pōtis* is also found joined with plural nouns.

*Tantundem*, as much, has *tantidem* in the genitive, and *tantundem*, m. and n., in the nominative and accusative singular.

*Necesse*, or *necessum*, necessary; and *volūpe*, pleasant, are used only in the nominative and accusative singular.

3. *Mactus*, -e, and plural -i, a common word of encouragement, brave! gallant! is used only in the nominative and vocative singular, and nominative plural.

*Plus*, more, in the singular, is neuter only; wants the dative, and probably the vocative; has *e* only in the ablative, and *a*, seldom *ia*, in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter.

*Primōris*, genitive, first, wants the nominative and vocative singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter; likewise *seminēcis*, half dead, which is not used in the neuter, and has *seminēcum* in the genitive plural.

*Pauci*, few; and *plerique*, the most part, are seldom used in the singular.

4. The following classes of words want the vocative; viz: Partitives; as, *quidam*, *alius*: Relatives; as, *quālis*, *quantus*: Negatives; as, *nullus*, *neuter*: Interrogatives; as, *quōtus? ūter?*

Except *aliquis*, *quicumque*, *quilibet*, and *quisque*. (See 131.)

5. The following adjectives of one termination, in the subjoined list, are scarcely used in the nominative, accusative, or vocative plural of the neuter gender; viz:

Adjectives in ER: as, *pauper*, *pūber*, *cēler*, *degēner*, *ūber*.

Adjectives in FEX: as, *artīfex*, *carnīfex*.

Adjectives in OR: as, *mēmōr*, *concōlor*, *bicorpor*.

Adjectives in ES: as, *āles*, *dīves*, *locuples*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *dēses*, *rēses*, *hēbes*, *tēres*, *præpes*.

Adjectives in OS: as, *compos*, *impos*, *exos*.

Also *pūbis*, *impūbis*, *supplex*, *cōmis*, *īnops*, *vīgil*, *sons*, *īnsons*, *īntercus*, *rēdux*, and perhaps some others.

*Cæter*, or *cætērus*, the rest, is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

*Victrix*, victorious, and *ultrix*, revengeful, are feminine only in the singular, but feminine and neuter, in the plural; *victriccs*, *victricia*.

## II. REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

6. Some adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frēnum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jūgum*, *īnus*, *somnus*, and *anīmus*, have two forms of declension; one in *us*, of the first and second declensions; and another in *is*, of the third; as, *acclivus*, *-a*, *-um*, and *acclivis*, *-e*, steep; *imbecillus*, and *imbecillis*, weak; *semisomnus*, and *semisomnis*, half-sleeping; *exanīmus*, and *exanīmis*, dead. Also, *hīlāris*, and *hīlārus*, merry.

*Obs.* Some of these compounds do not admit of this variation; as, *magnanīmus*, *flexanīmus*, *effrēnus*, *levisomnus*, not *magnanīmis*, &c. On the contrary, *pusillanīmis*, *injūgis*, *illīmis*, *īnsomnis*, *exsomnis*, are used, and not *pusillanīmus*, &c. *Semianīmis*, *īnermis*, *sublīmis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*, are more common than *semianīmus*, &c. *Inanīmis*, and *bijūgis*, are scarcely used.

## § 23. EXERCISES ON ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives and Substantives to be declined together.*

Parva cāsa, <i>a small cottage.</i>	Alta arbor, <i>a high tree.</i>
Clārus poēta, <i>a famous poet.</i>	Priscus mos, <i>an ancient custom.</i>
Pulchra filia, <i>a beautiful daughter.</i>	Callida aestas, <i>a warm summer.</i>
Dulce pōmum, <i>a sweet apple.</i>	Tūtus portus, <i>a safe harbor.</i>
Docilis puer, <i>a docile boy.</i>	Nobile carmen, <i>a noble poem.</i>
Brēve sēvum, <i>a short life.</i>	Antiqua urbs, <i>an ancient city.</i>
Cāpax antrum, <i>a capacious den.</i>	Magna dos, <i>a great dowry.</i>
Magnum ōpus, <i>a great work.</i>	Cāva nāvis, <i>a hollow ship.</i>
Serēnus dies, <i>a clear day.</i>	Culpātus Pāris, <i>wicked Paris.</i>
Densa nūbes, <i>a thick cloud.</i>	Miser Troes, <i>a miserable Trojan.</i>
Fidus pastor, <i>a faithful shepherd.</i>	Infelix Dido, <i>unhappy Dido.</i>

2. *Translate the following words into English, according to their number and case :*

Opēris magni,	Urbem antiquam,	Urbis antiquae,
Clāro poētā,	Poētis clāris,	Parīdi culpāto,
Diēi serēno,	Puēri dociles,	Arvōres altā,
Diēi serēni,	Dōte magnā,	Trois misēri,
Densis nubībūs,	Mōrum priscōrum,	Dīdo infelīci,
Fīdi pastōria,	Carminis nobilis,	Portūbus tūtis,
Ævo brēvi,	Callida aestāte,	Dulcium pomōrum.

3. *Translate the following phrases into Latin, observing to put the adjective in the same gender, number, and case, with the substantive. The words will be found in the list above :*

To a small cottage,	Of ancient customs,	In a great work,
Of a capacious den,	Of an ancient city,	With wicked Paris,
From lofty trees,	To a great work,	A harbor safe,
For unhappy Dido,	O wicked Paris,	In a clear day,
In a hollow ship,	Faithful shepherds,	Of small cottages,
A wretched Trojan,	In a short life,	To a thick cloud,
With thick clouds,	With a sweet apple,	With high trees,
From a clear day,	With clear days,	Beautiful daughters,
Of sweet apples,	Noble poems,	In a warm summer
High trees,	Of ancient cities,	Of a short life,
With great dowries,	In small cottages,	With docile boys.

## § 24. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

102.—Numeral adjectives are those which signify number. In Latin, they are divided into four classes; viz:

1. *Cardinal*, which express number simply, or how many. as, *one, two, three, four, &c.*

2. *Ordinal*, denoting which one of a number; as, *first, second, third, fourth, &c.*

3. *Distributive*, denoting how many to each; as, *biui, two by two, or two to each.*

4. *Multiplicative*, denoting how many fold.

## I. CARDINAL NUMBERS.

103. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are:

Unus,	I	one
Duo,	II	two
Tres,	III	three
Quatuor,	III, or IV.	four
Quinque,	V	five
Sex,	VI	six
Septem,	VII	seven
Octo,	VIII	eight
Novem,	VIII, or IX.	nine
Decem,	X	ten
Undecim,	XI	eleven
Duodecim,	XII	twelve
Tredecim,	XIII	thirteen
Quatuordecim,	XIII, or XIV.	fourteen
Quindecim,	XV.	fifteen
Sedecim, or Sexdecim,	XVI	sixteen
Septendecim,	XVII	seventeen
Octodecim,	XVIII	eighteen
Novemdecim,	XVIII, or XIX.	nineteen
Viginti,	XX	twenty
Viginti unus, or Unus et viginti, }	XXI	twenty-one
Viginti duo, or Duo et viginti, &c. }	XXII	twenty-two
Triginta,	XXX	thirty
Quadriginta,	XXXX, or XL	forty
	3*	

Quinquaginta,	L	<i>fifty</i>
Sexaginta,	LX.	<i>sixty</i>
Septuaginta,	LXX.	<i>seventy</i>
Octoginta,	LXXX.	<i>eighty</i>
Nonaginta,	LXXXX, or XC.	<i>ninety</i>
Centum,	C.	<i>a hundred</i>
Centum ūnus, or Centum et ūnus, &c., }	CI	<i>a hundred and one, &amp;c.</i>
Ducenti, -as, -a,	CC.	<i>two hundred</i>
Trecenti,	CCC.	<i>three hundred</i>
Quadringenti,	CCCC.	<i>four hundred</i>
Quingenti,	ID, or D.	<i>five hundred</i>
Sexcenti,	IDC, or DC.	<i>six hundred</i>
Septingenti,	IDCC, or DCC.	<i>seven hundred</i>
Octingenti,	IDCCC, or DCCC.	<i>eight hundred</i>
Nongenti,	IDCCCC, or DCCCC.	<i>nine hundred</i>
Mille,	CIO, or M.	<i>a thousand</i>
Duo millia, or Bis mille, }	CIOCIO, or MM.	<i>two thousand</i>
Quinque millia, or Quinquies mille, }	IOO, or V.	<i>five thousand</i>
Decem millia, or Decies mille, }	CCIOO, or X̄.	<i>ten thousand</i>
Quinquaginta millia, or Quinquagies mille, }	IOOO, or L.	<i>fifty-thousand</i>
Centum millia, or Centies mille, }	CCCCIOO, or C̄.	<i>a hundred thousand</i>

## 104.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Eighteen* and *nineteen* are more properly expressed by *duodeviginti*, and *undeviginti*; from which Ordinals, Distributives and Adverbs are likewise formed. The same form is also used in the corresponding numbers of each of the other decades; as, *duodetriginta*, twenty-eight; *undetriginta*, twenty-nine, &c.

2. The Cardinal numbers, except *ūnus* and *mille*, want the singular.

3. *Unus*, as a numeral, is not used in the plural, except when joined with a substantive that wants the singular; as, *Una mœnia*, one wall; or when several particulars are con-  
High ad as one whole; as, *ūna vestimenta*, one suit of clothes.  
With *gre* declined like *tōtus* (98-4).

DUO, *two*, and TRES, *three*, are thus declined :

Plural.			Plural		
<i>Mass.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> duo,	duæ,	duo,	<i>N.</i> tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>G.</i> duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	<i>G.</i> trium,	trium,	trium,
<i>D.</i> duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	<i>D.</i> tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
<i>Ac.</i> duos, -o,	duas,	duo,	<i>Ac.</i> tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>V.</i> duo,	duæ,	duo,	<i>V.</i> tres,	tres,	tria,
<i>Ab.</i> duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	<i>Ab.</i> tribus,	tribus,	tribus,

*Ambo*, both, is declined like *duo*.

4. All the cardinal numbers, from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, they are declined like the plural of *bōnus* (98-1).

5. *Mille*, when placed before a genitive plural, is a substantive indeclinable in the singular; in the plural, it is declined like the plural of *sedīle* (83-8); thus, *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c. When it has a substantive in any other case than the genitive plural joined to it, it is a plural adjective indeclinable; as, *mille homīnes*, a thousand men; *bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

#### ROMAN METHOD OF NOTATION BY LETTERS.

6. The capital letters used by the Romans to denote numbers, were C, I, L, V, X, which are therefore called Numeral Letters. I, denotes *one*; V, *five*; X, *ten*; L, *fifty*, and C, *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these letters, all numbers were expressed as follows :

The repetition of a letter repeats its value; thus, II signifies *two*; III, *three*; XX, *twenty*; XXX, *thirty*; CC, *two hundred*; CCC, *three hundred*, &c. V and L are never repeated.

When a letter of less value is placed before another of greater value, the value of the less is *taken from* the greater. When placed after it, the value of the less is *added to* the greater; thus,

IV. Four,	V. Five,	VI. Six.
IX. Nine,	X. Ten,	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty,	L. Fifty,	LX. Sixty.
XC. Ninety	C. A hundred,	CX. A hundred and ten.

A *thousand* was marked CIO, which was afterwards expressed by M, the initial of *mille*. *Five hundred* is marked IO, afterwards changed into D.

The annexing of O to IO makes its value ten times greater; thus, IOO denotes *five thousand*; IOOO, *fifty thousand*.

In like manner, a C prefixed, together with another O annexed to the numerals CIO, always increases the value tenfold; thus, CIO, *a thousand*; CCIOO, *ten thousand*; CCCIOOO, *a hundred thousand*. Any higher number than this, according to Pliny, was expressed by repetition; thus, CCCIOOO, CCCIOOO, *two hundred thousand*.

*Thousands* are sometimes expressed by a line drawn over the numeral letters; thus,  $\overline{\text{III}}$  denotes *three thousand*;  $\overline{\text{X}}$ , *ten thousand*, &c.

## II. ORDINAL NUMBERS.

105.—The *Ordinal Numerals* are formed from the cardinal; they all end in *us*, and are declined like *bōnus* (98-1); as, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second; &c. (See the following table.)

## III. DISTRIBUTIVE NUMBERS.

106.—*Distributive numerals* distribute an equal number to each individual of several objects, or an equal number at different times. They answer the question, *How many to each?* or, *How many each time?* as, *ḃini*, two each, or two at a time, two by two. They are all plural, and declined like the plural of *bōnus* (98-1); but usually have *um* instead of *orum* in the genitive; as, *singūli*, *æ*, *a*; &c.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs:

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1. <i>Primus</i> , <i>first</i> ,	<i>Singūli</i> , <i>one by one</i> ,	<i>Semel</i> , <i>once</i> .
2. <i>Secundus</i> , <i>second</i> ,	<i>Bini</i> , <i>two by two</i> ,	<i>Bis</i> , <i>twice</i> .
3. <i>Tertius</i> , <i>third</i> ,	<i>Terni</i> , or <i>trīni</i> , &c.	<i>Ter</i> , <i>thrice</i> .
4. <i>Quartus</i> , &c.	<i>Quaterni</i> ,	<i>Quāter</i> , <i>four times</i> ,
5. <i>Quintus</i> ,	<i>Quīni</i> ,	<i>Quinquies</i> , &c.
6. <i>Sextus</i> ,	<i>Sēni</i> ,	<i>Sexies</i> .
7. <i>Septimus</i> ,	<i>Septēni</i> ,	<i>Septies</i> .
8. <i>Octāvus</i> ,	<i>Octōni</i> ,	<i>Octies</i> .
9. <i>Nōnus</i> ,	<i>Novēni</i> ,	<i>Novies</i> .
10. <i>Decimus</i> ,	<i>Dēni</i> ,	<i>Decies</i> .

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
11. Undecimus,	Undeni,	Undecies.
12. Duodecimus,	Duodeni,	Duodecies.
13. Tertius decimus,	Terni deni,	Terdecies.
14. Quartus decimus,	Quaterni deni,	Quaterdecies.
15. Quintus decimus,	Quini deni,	Quindecies.
16. Sextus decimus,	Seni deni,	Sedecies.
17. Septimus decimus,	Septeni deni,	Decies et septies.
18. Octavus decimus,	Octoni deni,	Decies et octies.
19. Nonus decimus,	Noveni deni,	Decies et nonies.
20. Vicesimus, or vigesimus, }	Viceni,	Vicies.
21. Vicesimus primus.	Viceni singuli,	Semel et vicies,
22. Vicesimus secundus.	Viceni bini,	Bis et vicies, &c.
30. Tricesimus, or trigesimus, }	Triceni,	Tricies.
40. Quadragesimus,	Quadrageni,	Quadrages.
50. Quinquagesimus,	Quinquageni,	Quinquages.
60. Sexagesimus,	Sexageni,	Sexages.
70. Septuagesimus,	Septageni,	Septuages.
80. Octogesimus,	Octogeni,	Octogies.
90. Nonagesimus,	Nonageni,	Nonages.
100. Centesimus,	Centeni,	Centies.
200. Ducentesimus,	Duceni,	Ducenties.
300. Trecentesimus,	Treceni, or trecenteni,	Trecenties.
400. Quadringentesimus, }	Quadrigeni, or quadringenteni, }	Quadringenties.
500. Quingentesimus,	Quingeni,	Quingenties.
600. Sexcentesimus,	Sexceni, or Sexcenteni,	Sexcenties.
700. Septingentesimus,	Septingeni,	Septingenties.
800. Octingentesimus,	Octingeni,	Octingenties.
900. Nongentesimus,	Nongeni,	Nongenties.
1000. Millesimus, }	Milleni, or singula millia, }	Millies.
2000. Bis millesimus, &c., }	Bis milleni, or bina millia, &c., }	Bis milia, &c.

7. Instead of *primus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

Twenty-first, thirty-first, &c., are often expressed by *unus et vicesimus*, *unus et tricesimus*, &c.; and twenty-second, &c., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesimus*, in which *duo* is indeclinable. In



the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesimus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesimus*.

8. Distributives are used in a variety of ways, as 1st. In multiplication, with adverbial numerals; as, *bis bina*, twice two, i. e. four; *bis senos*, twice six, i. e. twelve. 2d. Instead of cardinals, with words which have no singular; as, *bini codicilli*, two writings; or with nouns in the plural having the meaning of a singular, but still different from the meaning of the same word in the singular number (§ 18, 24, or 96-24); as, *bina castra*, *binae aedes*, *binae literae*; two camps, two houses, two epistles. *Duo, duae*, with these nouns, would mean two forts or castles; two temples; two letters of the alphabet. 3d. *Bini* is used for *duo*, to denote things which exist in pairs; as, *bini boves*, a pair of oxen; *binae aures*, two ears. In ordinary language, distributives occur only in the plural—among the poets sometimes in the singular in the sense of multiplicative; as, *centena arbore* (= *centum arboribus*), literally “with a tree a hundred fold.” See also No. 11.

9. The singular of some distributives, is sometimes used in the sense of a multiplicative; as, *binus*, two-fold, &c.

#### IV. MULTIPLICATIVE NUMBERS.

107.—*Multiplicatives* denote how many fold; they all end in *ex*, and are declined like *felix* (99-1). They are as follows:

Simplex, *single*.

Quadruplex, *fourfold*.

Duplex, *double*.

Quintuplex, *fivefold*.

Triplex, *threefold*.

Centuplex, *a hundredfold, &c., &c.*

10. To these classes may be added:

- 1st. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *duplus*, twice as great.
- 2d. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *binus*, two years old; *biennis*, of two years' continuance.
- 3d. Those which denote how many parts a thing contains, as, *binarius*, of two parts.
- 4th *Interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many? *quotus*, of what number? *quotēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? which have for their correlatives, *tot*, *totidem*, &c.

11. The learner should carefully notice the distinction between the cardinal and distributive numerals in their ordinary use. Thus, for example, *Duo consules VIGINTI naves habebant*, means, "the two consuls *together* had twenty ships," i. e. twenty in all, or ten each; but *Duo consules VICENAS naves habebant*, means, "the two consuls had twenty ships *each*," or *forty* in all.

---

## § 25. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

108.—Adjectives have three degrees of comparison, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

109.—The **POSITIVE** expresses a quality simply; as, *bōnus*, good. The **COMPARATIVE** expresses a quality in a higher or lower degree in one object than in another, or than in several taken together. The **SUPERLATIVE** expresses a quality in the highest or lowest degree in one object compared with several taken separately; as, gold is *heavier* than silver; it is the *most precious* of the metals. Hence, those adjectives only can be compared whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

110.—The *Superlative* is often used to express a very high or a very low degree of a quality, without implying comparison; as, *vir doctissimus*, "a very learned man;" *hortus amœnissimus*, "a most delightful garden." Thus used, it is called the superlative of *eminence*, and is commonly translated with the article *a*, or *an*;—when comparison is implied, the article *the* must be used.

111.—The *Comparative* is always of the third declension, and declined like *mitior* (99-4). The *Superlative* is always of the first and second, and declined like *bōnus* (98-1).

## 112.—RULES OF COMPARISON.

1. The comparative is formed from the root of the positive (56), by adding *ior* for the mas-

culine and feminine, and *ius* for the neuter; as,

Positive.	Root.	Masc.	Fem.	Comparative.	Neut.
Dūrus, <i>hard</i> ,	dūr-	dur-ior,	dur-ior,	dur-ius,	<i>harder</i> .
Brēvis, <i>short</i> ,	brēv-	brev-ior,	brev-ior,	brev-ius,	<i>shorter</i> .
Audax, <i>bold</i> ,	audāc-	audac-ior,	audac-ior,	audac-ius,	<i>bolder</i> .

2. The superlative is formed from the root of the positive, by adding *issimus, a, um*; as,

Positive.	Root.	Superlative.
Dūrus, <i>hard</i> ,	dūr-	dur-issimus, a, um, <i>hardest</i> .
Brēvis, <i>short</i> ,	brēv-	brev-issimus, a, um, <i>shortest</i> .
Audax, <i>bold</i> ,	audāc-	audac-issimus, a, um, <i>boldest</i> .

*Exc.* If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus, a, um*, to the nominative masculine, i. e. to the root uncontracted: as,

Positive.	Superlative.
Pulcher, <i>fair</i> ,	pulcher-rimus, a, um.
Pauper, <i>poor</i> ,	pauper-rimus, a, um.

Hence these adjectives are compared thus :

Dūrus,	durior,	durissimus ;	<i>Hard,</i>	<i>harder,</i>	<i>hardest.</i>
Brēvis,	brevior,	brevissimus ;	<i>Short,</i>	<i>shorter</i>	<i>shortest</i>
Audax,	audacior,	audacissimus ;	<i>Bold,</i>	<i>bolder,</i>	<i>boldest.</i>
Pulcher,	pulchrior,	pulcherrimus ;	<i>Fair,</i>	<i>fairer,</i>	<i>fairest.</i>
Pauper,	pauperior,	pauperrimus ;	<i>Poor,</i>	<i>poorer</i>	<i>poorest.</i>

In the same manner compare :

Altus, <i>high</i> .	Firmus, <i>strong</i> .	Liber, <i>free</i> .
Cāpax, <i>capacious</i> .	Fortis, <i>brave</i> .	Piger, <i>slow</i> .
Crēber, <i>frequent</i> .	Grāvis, <i>heavy</i> .	Prūdēns, <i>prudent</i> .
Dignus, <i>worthy</i> .	Intēger, <i>entire</i> .	Sapiens, <i>wise</i>
Doctus, <i>learned</i> .	Lentus, <i>slow</i> .	Vehēmēns, <i>vehement</i> ,
Fēlix, <i>happy</i> .	Lēvis, <i>light</i> .	Vēlox, <i>swift</i> .

### 113.—§ 26. IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE COMPARISONS.

Pos.	Comp.	Sup.			
Bonus,	melior,	optimus;	Good,	better,	best.
Magnus,	major,	maximus;	Great,	greater,	greatest.
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus;	Bad,	worse,	worst.
Multus,	plus, n.	plurimus;	Much,	more,	most.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus;	Little,	less,	least.

*Obs.* *Plus* has only the neuter in the singular. In the plural, it is regular, and is declined as 99-4. Exc.

#### 1. The following adjectives form the superlative in *issimus* :

Facilis, <i>easy</i> ,	facilior,	facillimus.
Gracilis, <i>lean</i> ,	gracilior,	gracillimus.
Humilis, <i>low</i> ,	humilior,	humillimus.
Imbecillis, <i>weak</i> ,	imbecillior,	imbecillimus.
Similis, <i>like</i> ,	similior,	simillimus.

#### 2. The following adjectives have the comparative regular, but the superlative irregular.

Citer, <i>near</i> ,	citerior,	citissimus.
Dexter, <i>right</i> ,	dexterior,	dextissimus.
Exter, <i>outward</i> ,	exterior,	extrēmus, or extissimus.
Infērus, <i>low</i> ,	inferior,	infīmus, or imus.
Intērus, <i>inward</i> ,	interior,	intissimus.
Matūrus, <i>ripe</i> ,	maturior,	maturissimus, or maturissimus.
Postērus, <i>behind</i> ,	posterior,	postrēmus, or postissimus.
Sinister, <i>left</i> ,	sinisterior,	sinistissimus.
Supērus, <i>high</i> ,	superior,	suprēmus, or summus.
Vētus, <i>old</i> .	veterior,	veterissimus.

*Note.*—*Dives*, rich, has commonly *ditior*, *ditissimus*, for its comparative and superlative; contracted for *divitior* and *divitissimus*.

#### 3. Compounds in *dicus*, *ficus*, *loquus*, and *vōlus*, form the comparative in *entior*, and the superlative in *entissimus*.

Beneficus, <i>beneficent</i> ,	beneficentior,	beneficentissimus.
Benevōlus, <i>benevolent</i> ,	benevolentior,	benevolentissimus.
Magniloquus, <i>boasting</i> ,	magniloquentior,	magniloquentissimus.
Maledicus, <i>railing</i> ,	maledicentior,	maledicentissimus.
Mirificus, <i>wonderful</i> ,	mirificentior,	mirificentissimus.

*Note.*—*Mirifious* has also *mirificissimus* in the superlative. The compounds of *loquus* are not found in the superlative.

4. The following adjectives want the positive :

<i>Detraior, worse,</i>	<i>deterrimus.</i>	<i>Propior, nearer,</i>	<i>proximus.</i>
<i>Ocior, swifter,</i>	<i>ocissimus.</i>	<i>Uterior, farther,</i>	<i>ultimus.</i>
<i>Prior, former,</i>	<i>primus.</i>		

5. The following adjectives want the comparative :

<i>Inclýtus, renowned,</i>	<i>inclýtissimus.</i>	<i>Nupérus, late,</i>	<i>nuperrimus.</i>
<i>Invictus, invincible,</i>	<i>invictissimus.</i>	<i>Par, equal,</i>	<i>parissimus.</i>
<i>Merítus, deserving,</i>	<i>merítissimus.</i>	<i>Persuásus, persuaded,</i>	<i>persuasissimus.</i>
<i>Nóvus, new,</i>	<i>novissimus.</i>	<i>Sácer, sacred,</i>	<i>sacerrimus.</i>

6. The following adjectives want the superlative :

<i>Adolescens, young,</i>	<i>adolescentior.</i>	<i>Opímus, rich,</i>	<i>opimior.</i>
<i>Diuturnus, lasting,</i>	<i>diuturnior.</i>	<i>Prónus, bending down,</i>	<i>pronior.</i>
<i>Ingens, huge,</i>	<i>ingentior.</i>	<i>Sátur, full,</i>	<i>saturior.</i>
<i>Juvénia, young,</i>	<i>junior.</i>	<i>Sénex, old,</i>	<i>senior.</i>

*Note.*—The superlative of *juvénis*, or *adolescens*, is supplied by *minimus nátu*, the youngest ; *sénex* takes *maximus nátu*, the oldest.

7. Almost all adjectives in *ilis* (penult long), *ālis*, and *bilis*, want the superlative ; as, *civilis*, civil, *civilior* ; *regālis*, regal, *regalior* ; *flebilis*, lamentable, *flebilior*.

*Note.*—Some adjectives of these terminations have the superlative also ; as *equālis*, *frugālis*, *hospitālis*, *liberālis*, *vocālis*—*affābilis*, *amābilis*, *habilis*, *ignōbilis*, *mirābilis*, *mobilis*, *mutābilis*, *nobilis*, *stabilis*.

Some adjectives of other terminations also want the superlative ; as, *arcānus*, ior, secret ; *declivis*, ior, bending downwards ; *longinquus*, far off, ior ; *propinquus*, near, ior ; *salutāris*, healthful, *salutarior*.

*Anterior*, former, and *sequior*, worse, are found only in the comparative.

*Nequam*, worthless (indeclinable), has *nequior*, *nequissimus*.

8. Many adjectives have no degrees of comparison at all, because they denote invariable qualities. They are such as denote *substance*, *origin*, *possession*, or *definite time* ; as, *aureus*, *adamantinus* ;—*Græcus*, *Romānus*, *peregrinus* ;—*paternus*, *equinus* ;—*æstivus*, *hibernus*, *vivus*, &c.

9. Many adjectives which do not denote invariable qualities, are yet without comparative and superlative forms. They are—

1st. Adjectives ending in *imus*, *inus*, *orus*, and most adjectives in *ivus* : as, *legítimus*, *matutinus*, *canōrus*, *fugítivus* : also adjectives in *us* after a vowel ; as, *dubius*, *idoneus*, *arduus*, &c. ; except adjectives in *ivus*, in which, however, the first *u* does not form a syllable (8-2) ; and sometimes *assiduus*, *agregius*, *píus*, *strenuus* and *vacuus*, which are also regularly compared.

2d. Compound adjectives, one of whose component parts is a noun or a verb; as, *versicolor*, *pestifer*, *degener*, *magnanimus*, *consensus*, *fecundus*, &c., and such as have the derivative terminations *icus*, *idus*, *ulus*, *alis*, *ilis*, *bundus*; as, *modicus*, *trepidus*, *gurrulus*, *mortalis*, *hostilis*, *furibundus*, &c.

3d. Diminutives, which in themselves imply a sort of comparison; as, *tenellus*, somewhat tender; *majusculus*, somewhat big.

4th. Many adjectives which cannot be classed under distinct heads: as *albus*, white; *almus*, gracious; *egēnus*, needy; *lācer*, torn; *mēmor*, mindful; *mirus*, wonderful; *præcox*, early ripe; *sospes*, safe; and many others noted in the dictionaries.

In most, or in all adjectives of these classes, and sometimes in others also, the comparative is made by prefixing *magis*, more; and the superlative by prefixing *valde* or *maxime*, most, to the positive; as, *arduus*, high; *magis arduus*, higher; *valde*, or *maxime arduus*, highest, or very high. Sallust has *maxime tutos*.

10. Comparison is sometimes made by means of the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, or *supra*, with the positive; as, *Præ nobis beatus*, happier than we, Cic.; *Ante alias insignis*, most distinguished, Liv. A high degree of quality without comparison is expressed by prefixing *valde*, *imprimis*, *apprime*, *admōdum*, &c., or by the preposition *per* or *præ* prefixed in composition.

11. The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiam*, even, yet, and of both comparative and superlative, by prefixing *longe* or *multo*, far, much; as, *multo melior*, much better; *longe nobilissimus*, far the noblest. *Quam* with the superlative renders it emphatic; as, *quam doctissimus*, extremely learned; *quam celerrime*, as speedily as possible.

## § 27. DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

114.—Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

1. Those derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*. They are such as *aureus*, golden; *capitālis*, capital, relating to the life; *puerilis*, boyish; *animōsus*, full of courage, &c., from *aurum*, *caput*, *puer*, *animus*, &c.

2. Those derived from adjectives are also called denomina-

tives; they are chiefly diminutives; as, *dulciculus*, sweetish, *duriusculus*, somewhat hard, &c., from *dulcis*, *dūrus*, &c.

3. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbal* adjectives. They commonly end in *bundus*, *idus*, *bilis*, *ilis*, *itius*, and *ax*; as *errabundus*, given to wandering; *rapidus*, rapid; *credibilis*, credible; *flexibilis*, easy to be bent; *fictitius*, feigned; *cāpax*, capacious, &c., from *erro*, *rapio*, *crēdo*, *flecto*, *fingo*, *cāpio*, &c.

4. Participles divested of the idea of time, and expressing merely a quality, become adjectives, and are of comparison; as, *āmans*, fond of; *amantior*, *amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, *doctissimus*. These are called *Participial* adjectives.

Adjectives are also derived from adverbs and prepositions; as, *hodiernus*, *contrarius*, &c., from *hodie*, *contra*, &c.

## § 28. PRONOUNS.

115.—A PRONOUN is a word used instead of a noun.

116.—In Latin, there are eighteen simple pronouns, namely, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*; *meus*, *tuus*, *suis*, *noster*, *vester*; *nostras*, *vestras* and *cujas*.

Of these, *Ego*, *tu*, *sui*, are substantive or personal pronouns, the rest are adjectives.

### SUBSTANTIVE OR PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

117.—The Substantive or Personal pronouns have the same accidents as nouns (34); in construction, they take the gender and number of the nouns for which they stand, and are thus declined:

Ego, I, First Person, Masc. or Fem.			
Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>ēgo</i> ,	I,	N. <i>nos</i> ,	we,
G. <i>mei</i> ,	of me,	G. <i>nostrum</i> , or <i>nostri</i> ,*	of us,
D. <i>mihi</i> ,	to me,	D. <i>nōbis</i> ,	to us,
Ac. <i>me</i> ,	me,	Ac. <i>nos</i> ,	us,
V. —	—	V. —	—
Ab. <i>me</i> ,	with, &c., me,	Ab. <i>nōbis</i> ,	with, &c., us.

\* *Nostrum*, *vestrum*, G. subjective; *nostri*, *vestri*, G. objective. 384.

**Tu, thou, Second Person, Masc. or Fem.**

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>N. tu,</i>	<i>thou, or you,</i>	<i>N. vos,</i>	<i>ye, or you,</i>
<i>G. tui,</i>	<i>of thee, or of you,</i>	<i>G. vestrum, or vestri,</i>	<i>of you,</i>
<i>D. tibi,</i>	<i>to thee, or to you,</i>	<i>D. vobis,</i>	<i>to you,</i>
<i>Ac. te,</i>	<i>thee, or you,</i>	<i>Ac. vos,</i>	<i>you</i>
<i>V. tu,</i>	<i>O thou, or O you,</i>	<i>V. vos,</i>	<i>O ye, or you</i>
<i>Ab. te, with, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>thee, or you,</i>	<i>Ab. vobis,</i>	<i>with, &amp;c., you.</i>

**Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself, Third Person,  
Masc., Fem., Neut. Reflexive.**

Singular.		Plural.	
<i>N. ———</i>	<i>———</i>	<i>N. ———</i>	<i>———</i>
<i>G. sui,</i>	<i>of himself, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>G. sui,</i>	<i>of themselves,</i>
<i>D. sibi,</i>	<i>to himself, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>D. sibi,</i>	<i>to themselves,</i>
<i>Ac. se,</i>	<i>himself, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>Ac. se,</i>	<i>themselves,</i>
<i>V. ———</i>	<i>———</i>	<i>V. ———</i>	<i>———</i>
<i>Ab. se, with, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>himself, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>Ab. se, with, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>themselves.</i>

**118.—OBSERVATIONS.**

1. In all speech, three things are implied, the person speaking, the person spoken to, and the person or thing spoken of. These are called, in Grammar, the *First*, *Second*, and *Third* persons; and the pronouns representing them are called *Personal Pronouns*.

2. The pronoun of the first person is *Ego*, I; of the second, *Tu*, thou or you; of the third, *Sui*, of himself, of herself, of itself. Also the adjective pronouns, *ipse*, *ille*, *iste*, *is*, and *hic*, without a substantive, in the gender of the nouns represented by them, and with the general meaning of *he*, *she*, *it*, may be called *Substantive* or *Personal Pronouns*.

*Note 1.*—The plural of the first person is often used for the singular, i. e. *nos* for *ego*; so also *noster* for *meus*; and the verb, without the pronoun expressed, is sometimes used in the first person plural for the first person singular; but the plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as in English.

*Note 2.*—"Thou" and "thee," are used as the rendering of *tu* and its cases in the singular, only in solemn addresses, or to mark special emphasis or contempt. In ordinary discourse, it is translated by "you." See Eng. Gram., 114. 4. An., and Pr. Gr., 244 and 245.

3. The personal pronouns of the third person, though all



translated by one term in English,\* differ from one another in meaning and use, as follows :

1st. *Sui*, the substantive pronoun of the third person, is without the nominative, as the third person (in English *he, she, it, they*) is not usually expressed in Latin in the nominative, but is implied in the third person of the verb. But if it is to be expressed, a demonstrative pronoun, commonly *ille*, is used. The other cases of the English pronouns of the third person, not reflexive, are expressed by the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*, the nominative of which belongs to the demonstrative pronouns. *Sui, sibi, se*, are used in a reflexive sense referring, as a substitute, to the main subject of the sentence† in which they occur ; as, *Laudat se*, "He praises *himself*," *Cato se occidit*, "Cato killed *himself*." *Cato dixit se esse Cæsare feliciorē*, "Cato said that *he* (Cato) was happier than Cæsar." *Puer putat hoc sibi nocere*, "The boy thinks that this hurts *him*" (the boy). *Proculus Julius dixisse fertur a se visum esse Romulum*, "Proculus Julius is reported to have said that Romulus was seen by *him*" (Julius). But when the pronoun refers to another word, and there is a transition from the principal to a subordinate subject, the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*, must be used. Thus, if the words *that he, him, by him*, in the last three propositions, referred to any other than Cato, or the boy, or Proculus Julius, they would have to be made, in the first sentence, by *eum* ; in the second, by *ei* ; and in the third, by *ab eo*.

*Exc.* *Sui*, and its corresponding possessive pronoun *suius*, are sometimes used when the reference is not to the primary, but to a subordinate subject ; but this is never done by good writers when it would cause ambiguity. The most common cases of this usage are :—1st. When the primary subject is in the first or second person, to which, of course, *sui*, being the third cannot refer ; as, *illum occidi suo gladio*, "I slew him with his own sword." 2d. After *quisque* or *unusquisque* ; as, *sum cuique tribunt*, "they give every man his own." 3d. When the word to which *suius* refers stands immediately or almost immediately before it ; as, *hunc civis sui ex urbe ejo*

---

\* The want of different pronouns of the third person, in English, is frequently the cause of ambiguity, which never can occur in Latin or Greek. Thus, if we say : "Lysias promised his father never to abandon his friends ;" it is impossible to tell, from this sentence, whose friends are meant,—whether those of Lysias or of his father. If the former, "his," in Latin, would be *suius* ; if the latter, "*ejus*," and if the latter in a special manner, "*ipsius*."

† The main subject is generally the nominative to the leading verb, as in the above examples. Sometimes, however, the construction requires it to be in a different case ; as, *Ab Antonio admonitus eum ut mans sibi adesset* ; here the leading subject is *Antonio* in the Ablative, and to this, of course, *sibi* refers ; so in the following : *Est libido homini suo animo obsequi*, the principal subject is *homini*.

*cērunt*, "his fellow citizens banished him from the city." 4th. When the noun with which *suis* agrees is coupled with another by *cum*; as, *cum cum suis rebus dimiserunt*, "they dismissed him with his effects."

2d. *Ipsæ* is applicable to any of the three persons, and, in the nominative case, is used when either the primary or the subordinate subject is again introduced with emphasis in a subsequent or subordinate clause, or in the next sentence; as, *Lycurgus nihil ulla lege in alios sanxit, cujus non ipse primus in se documenta daret*, "Lycurgus bound nothing by any law upon others, of which he did not first give an instance in himself;" here *ipse* refers to *Lycurgus*, the primary subject. In the following sentence, *ipsi* refers to the subordinate, and *ipse* to the principal subject: *Cæsar ad præfectos—mittit qui nuntiarent ne hostes prælio laceßerent; et si ipsi (præfecti) laceßerentur, sustinerent quoad ipse (Cæsar) accessisset*. Cæsar, B. G. IV, 11.

In the oblique cases, *ipse* hardly ever refers to the main subject (this being the proper office of *sui*), but to the subordinate, when that is to be expressed with emphasis, and distinguished from the primary or any other subject previously expressed; as, *Senatus dixit non sua negligentia, sed ipsius (Pompeji) subito adventu factum*, "The senate said that it happened not through any negligence on their part, but owing to his (Pompey's) sudden arrival." Instances, however, occur in which the oblique cases refer to the principal subject; but these are rare, and such as to create no ambiguity.

*Note*.—When joined with the personal pronouns *ego*, *tu*, &c., used in a reflexive sense, and in an oblique case, *ipse* commonly agrees with the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, but is always to be translated with the oblique case, to which it adds the force of the word "self," or simply emphasis: thus (the subject being in the nominative), *se ipse* (not *ipsum*) *interfecit*, "he slew himself;" *mihi ipse* (not *ipsi*) *faveo*, "I favor myself;" *virtus est per se ipsa* (not *ipsam*) *laudabilis*,—with the accusative as a subject; *credis mihi ipsum* (not *ipsi*) *favere*. Yet, when, for the word in the oblique case, special emphasis is required by antithesis or other cause, *ipse* is put in the case of the pronoun; as, *Alios amas, te ipsum* (not *ipse odisti*), "Others thou lovest, THYSELF thou hatest." 282.

3d. *Is*, *hic*, *iste*, *ille*, without a substantive, in all genders, are used as pronouns of the third person, and are all rendered *he*, *she*, or *it*, as the word which they represent may require. In the nominative, they are applicable equally to the main or to the subordinate subject; but in the oblique cases, with few exceptions, they refer to the subordinate only. It must be carefully noticed, however, that though often rendered by the same term in English, still each word has its own specific meaning and use, as follows:

*Is* simply refers to some person or thing mentioned before, and is less

emphatic and distinctive than any of the other terms. Before *qui* (*is qui* he who), it refers to the person or thing described in the relative clause, and in this construction, is often understood.

*Hic* is used in reference to objects which are nearest to the speaker. Hence, as nothing is nearer to the speaker than himself, *hic homo*, "this man," is often the same as *ego*. *Hic* is therefore called the demonstrative pronoun of the *first person*.

*Iste* refers to the person spoken to, or to the things pertaining to, or connected with him. Thus, *iste liber*, means "that book of thine," or "thy book." Hence it is called the demonstrative of the *second person*. It is often used, like the English *thou*, as an expression of worthlessness or contempt. An. and Pr. Gr., 244.

*Ille*, in opposition to *hic*, refers to objects at a distance from the speaker, or to that about which he is speaking to another, and is called the demonstrative of the *third person*. As substantive pronouns, then, these three words may be thus distinguished :

*Hic* means "he," namely, this man near me, or just spoken of.

*Iste* means "he," namely, that man by you, or of whom you spoke.

*Ille* means "he," namely, that man at a distance, or formerly spoken of.

In the use of these pronouns, however, these distinctions are not always strictly observed; *ille* and *is* especially, are often used indiscriminately, and in the same sentence, apparently for the sake of euphony or variety of expression.

4. The personal pronouns are rendered emphatic by annexing the definite *ipse*, or the syllable *met* or *te*, separately or variously combined; as, *ego ipse*, *egomet*, *tute*, *tutemet*, *nosmet ipsi*, &c. *Se*, the accusative and ablative of *sui*, is often doubled, as *sese*. When the preposition *cum* is used with the ablative of the personal pronouns, it is commonly annexed; as, *mecum*, *t tecum*, *s tecum*, *nobiscum*, &c.

5. In the accusative plural with *inter*, or after a transitive active verb, with *invicem*, *se* is used as a *reciprocal* pronoun; as, *Fratres inter se similes*, "Brothers like each other." *Brutus et Aruns se invicem occiderunt*, "Brutus and Aruns slew each other."

## § 29. ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

119.—ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS are words used sometimes like adjectives, to qualify a substantive;

and sometimes like pronouns, to stand instead of nouns. They are declined with three genders, to agree with substantives in these accidents.

120.—Adjective Pronouns may be divided into *Possessive, Demonstrative, Definite, Relative, Interrogative, Indefinite, and Patrial*.

### § 30. I. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

121—The POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS denote possession, and are derived from the substantive pronouns as follows:

Meus,	a,	um,	my, my own,	from	me.
Tuus,	a,	um,	thy, thy own,	"	tu.
Suus,	a,	um,	his, her, its, his own, &c.,	"	sui.
Noster,	tra,	trum,	our, our own,	"	nos.
Vester,	tra,	trum,	your, your own,	"	vos.

*Obs. 1.* In *signification*, possessive pronouns correspond to the genitive of their primitives, for which they may be considered as a substitute; thus, *frāter mei*, "the brother of me," and *meus frāter*, "my brother," mean the same thing, and hence they are often connected with, and may be rendered as, the genitive; as, *suo populiq̄ue Romāni beneficio*, "by the kindness of himself, and of the Roman people." *Cæs.* Hence, also, the genitive of the adjective is often put with the possessive pronoun in any case qualifying the substantive implied in it; as, *tuo ipsius amico*, "with thine own friend." *Meu unius op̄era*, "through the agency of me alone." *Vestra ipsōrum causa hoc fēci*, &c.;—and hence, also, a substantive in apposition with the possessive pronoun is put in the genitive; as, *tuum hominis simplici pectus vidimus*.

*Obs. 2.* In *form*, possessive pronouns are regular adjective of the first and the second declension. *Meus, tuus, and suus*, are declined like *bōnus*, 98-1; except that *meus* has *mi*, seldom *meus*, in the vocative singular masculine. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *ater*, 98-3.

*Obs. 3.* *Suus*, like its primitive *sui* (118-3, Exc.), is used in a reflexive

sense, referring to the main subject of the sentence, and must be rendered into English in the gender and number of that subject, without regard to the noun with which it stands; thus, *suam rem familiarem perdidērunt*, "they squandered their property;" here *suam*, though singular, to agree with *rem*, must be rendered "their," because it refers to the plural subject *ei perdidērunt*. *Illa suos fratres dilexit*, "she loved her brothers."

When the reference is not to the main subject, but to some other person or thing, the possessive is expressed in Latin, not by *suus*, but by the genitives of *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *is*, and *hic*; thus, *ejus rem familiarem rapuerunt*, "they plundered his property." *Suos amicos amat*, means "he loves his own friends;" *ejus amicos amat*, is "he loves his friends," meaning (not his own, but) the friends of some other person to whom *ejus* refers.

Obs. 4. The ablative singular of the possessive pronouns, especially *suus* and *sua*, frequently take the suffix *pte*, equivalent to the English word *own*; as, *suapte mānu*, "with his own hand;" and, in the same sense, all the cases of *suus* take the suffix *met*, usually followed by *ipse*; as, *Hannibal, suomet ipse fraude captus, abiit*, "Hannibal, being foiled by his own device, departed."

## § 31. II. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

122.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS are such as point out with precision a person or thing already known.

They are *hic*, this; *ille*, *iste*, *is*, that. They are declined as follows:

### 1. *Hic*, *hæc*, *hoc*, *this*; Plural, *these*.

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. hic,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hoc,</i>	<i>N. hi,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
<i>G. hujus,</i>	<i>hujus,</i>	<i>hujus,</i>	<i>G. hōrum,</i>	<i>hārum,</i>	<i>hōrum,</i>
<i>D. huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>huic,</i>	<i>D. his,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his,</i>
<i>Ac. hunc,</i>	<i>hanc,</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>Ac. hos,</i>	<i>has,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
<i>V. hic,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hoc,</i>	<i>V. hi,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>	<i>hæc,</i>
<i>Ab. hoc,</i>	<i>hac,</i>	<i>noc,</i>	<i>Ab. his,</i>	<i>his,</i>	<i>his.</i>

*Note.*—We suppose that the original form of this pronoun was *hice*, *hæce*, *hæce*, some cases of which still remain; that the present form was attained by dropping final *e*, and that *this*, and not *hicce*, *hæcce*, &c., is the proper emphatic form of the word. It is certain, however, that most writers and grammarians prefer the double *c*, as *hicce*, &c. See Obs. 3.

2. ILLE, ILLA, ILLUD, *that*; Plural, *those*.

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,*	G. illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
Ac. illum,	illam,	illud,	Ac. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
Ab. illo,	illā,	illo,	Ab. illis,	illis,	illis.

*Note*.—Virgil has *illi*, as a dative singular, and nominative plural; and Cicero, in an antique formula, has *olla* and *ollos*, from an ancient form *ollus*.

*Iste*, “that,” is declined like *ille*.

3. IS, EA, ID, *that*; Plural, *those*.

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. is,	eā,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	eā,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis or eis,	iis or eis,	iis or eis,
Ac. eum,	eam,	id,	Ac. eos,	eas,	eā,
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
Ab. eo,	eā,	eo,	Ab. iis or eis,	iis or eis,	iis or eis.

4. From *is*, and the syllable *dem*, is formed *idem*, *eādem*, *idēdem*, “the same,” which is thus declined:

Singular.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. idem,	eādem,	idēdem,
G. ejusdem,	ejusdem,	ejusdem,
D. eidem,	eidem,	eidem,
Ac. eundem,	eandem,	idēdem,
V. idem,	eādem,	idēdem,
Ab. eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.
Plural.		
N. idem,	eādem,	eādem,
G. eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D. eisdem, or iisdem, &c.,		
Ac. eosdem,	easdem,	eādem,
V. idem,	eādem,	eādem,
Ab. eisdem, or iisdem, &c.		

\* See 98, Note 2.

## 123.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. When two persons or things are spoken of, *ille* refers to the former, and *hic* to the latter. This order, however, is sometimes reversed. When three are spoken of, *ille* refers to the first; *iste*, to the intermediate; and *hic*, to the last.

2. *Hic* means "this," referring to something near the speaker or just spoken of. *Ille*, "that," refers to something at a distance or before spoken of; sometimes to what is well known and celebrated, and therefore regarded as present; as, *Medea illa*, "the well known Medea:" *Alexander ille*, "the illustrious Alexander." *Iste*, "that," refers to something near, or belonging to, or some way connected with the person spoken to.

a. *Is*, "that," is less precise in its reference than the other demonstratives. It commonly refers simply to a person or thing as mentioned before.—Sometimes it points out that which is to be further described in a relative clause; as, *ea legiōne quam sēcum habēbat*, "with that legion which he had with him."—Sometimes after *et*, *atque*, *que*, and in a negative clause after *nec*, it is used to show that the noun referred to receives an additional predicate; as, *in ūna dōmo, et ea quīdem angusta*, "in one house, and that, too, a small one;" *Adolescentes aliquot, nec ii tenui lōco orti*, "some young men, and these not of humble origin." The neuter (*et id*, *idque*) is used when the proposition itself receives an addition, and may be rendered "and that too," "especially," equivalent to the Greek *καὶ ταῦτα*.

b. *Is* (and sometimes *hic* and *ille*), before *ut* or *qui*, has the sense of *tālis*, "such;" as, *nēque tu is es qui* (or *ut*) *quid sis nescias*, "neither art thou such a one as not to know what thou art."

• c. *Idem*, agreeing with the subject, but without a substantive, connects emphatically two predicates which belong to the same subject, and, when the predicates are similar, may be rendered "also," "and also;" as, *Cicēro orātor erat idemque philosophus*, "Cicero was an orator and also a philosopher;" *Vīros fortes eosdem bōnos esse volūmus*, "we wish brave men to be also good." When the predicates are opposite, *idem* is translated by "yet," "and yet;" as, *hoc dicit, nēgat idem illud*, "he affirms this, yet (or, and yet) he denies that."

3. *Hic*, and some cases of the other demonstratives, are

rendered emphatic by adding *ce*; as, *hicce*, *hujusce*, *huncce*, &c. When *ne* interrogative is also added, *ce* is changed into *ci*; as, *hiccine*, *hoscine*, &c. 122. *Note*.

4. From *ille* and *iste* with *hic*, are formed the compounds *illic* and *isthic* or *istic*, used in some of the cases for *ille* and *iste*, but with greater emphasis. Those parts only are in use which end in *c*, as follows :

*Istic* is thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	N.	Neut.
N. <i>istic</i> ,	<i>istæc</i> ,	<i>istoc</i> , or <i>istuc</i> ,	N. } Ac. }	<i>istæc</i> .
Ac. <i>istunc</i> ,	<i>istanc</i> ,	<i>istoc</i> , or <i>istuc</i> ,		
Ab. <i>istoc</i> ,	<i>istac</i> ,	<i>istoc</i> ,		

*Illic* is declined in the same manner.

### § 32. III. THE DEFINITE PRONOUN.

124.—The Definite Pronoun *ipse* is used to give a closer or more definite signification of a person or thing; as, *ad ipsam portam accessit*, “he came up to the gate itself;” or “to the very gate.” It is thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. <i>ipse</i> ,	<i>ipsâ</i> ,	<i>ipsum</i> ,	N. <i>ipsi</i> ,	<i>ipsæ</i> ,	<i>ipsâ</i> ,
G. <i>ipsius</i> ,	<i>ipsius</i> ,	<i>ipsius</i> ,	G. <i>ipsorum</i> ,	<i>ipsarum</i> ,	<i>ipsorum</i> ,
D. <i>ipsi</i> ,	<i>ipsi</i> ,	<i>ipsi</i> ,	D. <i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> ,
Ac. <i>ipsum</i> ,	<i>ipsam</i> ,	<i>ipsum</i> ,	Ac. <i>ipsos</i> ,	<i>ipsas</i> ,	<i>ipsâ</i> ,
V. —	—	—	V. —	—	—
Ab. <i>ipso</i> ,	<i>ipsâ</i> ,	<i>ipso</i> ,	Ab. <i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> ,	<i>ipsis</i> .

### § 33. IV. RELATIVE PRONOUN.

125.—A RELATIVE PRONOUN is one that relates to, and connects its clause with, a noun or pronoun before it, called the antecedent.



The simple relative *qui* is thus declined :

QUI, QUÆ, QUOD, *who, which, that.*

Singular.			Plural.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> qui,	quæ,	quod,	<i>N.</i> qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>G.</i> cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	<i>G.</i> quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
<i>D.</i> cui,	cui,	cui,	<i>D.</i> queis, or quibus, &c.,		
<i>Ac.</i> quem,	quam,	quod,	<i>Ac.</i> quos,	quas,	quæ,
<i>V.</i> —	—	—	<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>Ab.</i> quō,	quā,	quō,	<i>Ab.</i> queis, or quibus, &c.		

*Notes.*—*Quis* and *quis* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative, instead of *quibus*. *Cui* is commonly regarded as one long syllable, but is sometimes used as two short ones (*cui*); so also the dative singular *huic*, or *huic*. 122-1.

(For the construction of the relative, see § 99.)

*Obs. 1.* *Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular in all genders, seldom for the plural. To all forms of the ablative, *cum* is frequently annexed; as, *quōcum, quibuscum, &c.*

*Obs. 2.* *Quicumque*, or *quicumque*, and *quivis*, also used as relatives (293, *Obs. 7*), are declined like *qui*.

## § 34. V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

126.—The INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN is used in asking a question; as, *Quis fecit?* "Who did it?"

The interrogatives are :

Quisnam !	} <i>who ? what ?</i>	Ecquis !	} <i>is any one ?</i>
Quis !		Ecquisnam !	
Qui !	} <i>which ? what ?</i>	Numquis !	}
Quinam !		Cujus ! <i>whose ?</i>	
		Cujas ! <i>of what country ?</i>	

The simple interrogative *quis* is thus declined :

QUIS, QUÆ, QUOD, or QUID ? *Who, which, what ?*

Singular.		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> quis or qui,	quæ,	quid or quod,
<i>G.</i> cujus,	cujus,	cujus,
<i>D.</i> cui,	cui,	cui,
<i>Ac.</i> quem,	quam,	quid or quod,
<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>Ab.</i> quō,	quā,	quō

	Plural.	
	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Masc.</i>		
<i>N.</i> qui,	quæ,	quæ,
<i>G.</i> quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
<i>D.</i> queis or quibus, &c.,		
<i>Ac.</i> quos,	quas,	quæ,
<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>Ab.</i> queis or quibus, &c.		

(For the inflection of the compound interrogatives, see 131-1 and 2.,

## 127. OBSERVATIONS.

1. All interrogative pronouns used in a dependent clause, and without a question, are *indefinites* (128); as, *nescio quis sit*, "I know not who he is." In this sense, *qui* is often used for *quis* for the sake of euphony, when the following word begins with an *s*; as, *qui sit apêrit*, "he shews who he is." So also such adjectives as *quantus*, *quālis*, &c.

2. The interrogative *quis* is commonly used as a substantive without a noun following it; *qui*, as an adjective before a noun. *Quis* means "what man?" or "Who?" and applies to both sexes;—*qui* means "which man," and has its feminine *quæ*. This distinction, however, is often disregarded, especially as mentioned in Obs. 1. But, in the neuter gender, *quid* is always used as a substantive, and governs its noun in the genitive; as, *Quid facinōris commisit?* "What crime has he committed?" Whereas, *quod* is always used as an adjective, and agrees with its noun; as, *Quod factus commisit?*

*Notes.*—*Quid* is often used elliptically thus: *Quid?* "why?" is for *propter quod?*—As an interrogative interjection at the beginning of a sentence, *Quid?* is for *Quid ais?* *Quid censes?* So also the expressions *Quid vērō?* *Quid igitur?* *Quid enim?* &c., are to be supplied. After *Quid postea?* *Quid tum?* supply *sequitur*. *Quid quod* may be supplied thus: *Quid dicam de eo quod?* "What shall I say about this, that, &c.?" With *Quid multa?* *Quid plēne?* &c., supply *dicam*, "Why should I say much?" &c.

3. *Cujus, a, um?* "whose?" used instead of the genitive of *quis*, is defective. The parts in use are as follows:

	Singular.			Plural.	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>N.</i> <i>cujus</i> ,		<i>cuja</i> ,	<i>cujum</i> ,	<i>N.</i> <i>cuji</i> ,	<i>cujæ</i> ,
<i>Ac.</i> <i>cujum</i> ,		<i>cujam</i> ,	—	<i>Ac.</i> —	<i>cujau</i> .
<i>Ab.</i> —		<i>cujā</i> ,	—		

4. *Cujas*, "of what country," is declined like an adjective of one termination (99-1). Nom. *cujas*, gen. *cujātis*, &c.

---

### § 35. VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

128.—The INDEFINITE PRONOUNS are such as denote persons or things indefinitely. Besides the interrogatives used indefinitely (127-1), they are

*Aliquis*, some one.

*Siquis*, if any one.

*Nēquis*, lest any, no one.

*Quisque*, each one, every one.

*Quisquam*, any one.

*Quispiam*, some one.

*Unusquisque*, each one.

*Quīdam*, a certain one.

*Quilibet*, } any one you please  
*Quivis*, }

(For the inflection of these, see 130-1, 2, 3.)

---

### § 36. VII. PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

129.—The Patrial Pronouns are those which have reference to one's country. They are *nostras*, "of our country;" *vestras*, "of your country." They are both adjectives of one termination. Nom. *nostras*, gen. *nostrātis*, &c. (99-1.)

---

### § 37. COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

130.—The Compound Pronouns all belong to some of the classes enumerated above.

131.—In the compounds of *qui* and *quis*, *qui* is always the first part of the word compounded; *quis* is sometimes the first part, and sometimes the last.

1. The compounds of *qui* are *quicumque*, "whoever," "who-soever;" *quīdam*, "some;" *quilibet*, *quivis*, "any one," "whom you please." They are declined by adding the termination to the different cases and numbers of *qui*.

QUICUNQUE, *whoever, whosoever, whatsoever.*

Singular.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> quicunque,	quæcunque,	quodcunque,
<i>G.</i> cujuscunque,	cujuscunque,	cujuscunque, &c.

Plural.

<i>N.</i> quicunque,	quæcunque,	quæcunque,
<i>G.</i> quorumcunque,	quarumcunque,	quorumcunque, &c.

So,

Quidam,	quædam,	quiddam, or quoddam.
Quilibet,	quælibet,	quidlibet, or quodlibet.
Quivis,	quævis,	quidvis, or quodvis.

*Note.*—Before *dam*, *m* is changed into *n*; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, &c.

2. The compounds of *quis*, when *quis* is put first, are *quisnam*? “who?” *quispiam*, *quisquam*, “any one;” *quisque*, “every one;” and *quisquis*, “whoever, whosoever.”

QUISNAM, *who, which, what?*

Singular.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> quisnam,	quænam,	quidnam, or quodnam,
<i>G.</i> cuiusnam,	cuiusnam,	cuiusnam,
<i>D.</i> cuinam,	cuinam,	cuinam,
<i>Ac.</i> quemnam,	quamnam,	quidnam, or quodnam,
<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>Ab.</i> quonam,	quanam,	quonam.

Plural.

<i>N.</i> quinam,	quænam,	quænam,
<i>G.</i> quorumnam,	quarumnam,	quorumnam,
<i>D.</i> quibusnam,	quibusnam,	quibusnam,
<i>Ac.</i> quosnam,	quasnam,	quænam,
<i>V.</i> —	—	—
<i>Ab.</i> quibusnam,	quibusnam,	quibusnam.

So decline :

Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quidpiam, or quodpiam.
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quidquam, or quodquam.
Quisque,	quæque,	quidque, or quodque.
Quisquis,	—	quidquid, or quicquid.

*Obs.* 1. *Quisquam* has *quenquam* in the accusative, without

the feminine. The plural is scarcely used; *quicque* is also used for *quidque*. *Quisquis*, "whoever," has no feminine termination except in the ablative; and the neuter, only in the nominative and accusative. It is used as an indefinite adjective pronoun; and also instead of *quicui*, not in use, as a double relative of the same meaning as *quicunque*. 131-1. The following are the parts in use :

	Singular.	
	Masc.	Fem.
N.	quisquis,	—
Ac.	quemquem,	—
Ab.	quōquo,	quāqua,
		quōquo.

The plural has the nominative masculine *quicui*, and the dative *quibusquibus*. *Quisquis* is sometimes used for the feminine.

3. The compounds of *quis*, when *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative singular feminine, and in the nominative and accusative plural neuter. These are :

Aliquis, <i>some</i> .	Numquis, <i>whether any?</i>
Ecquis, <i>whether any?</i>	Siquis, <i>if any</i> .
Nēquis, <i>lest any</i> .	

The last three are often written separately; as, *ne quis*, *num quis*, *si quis*. These pronouns are thus declined :

	Singular.	
	Masc.	Fem.
N.	aliquis,	aliquā,
G.	alicujus,	alicujus,
D.	alicui,	alicui,
Ac.	aliquem,	aliquam,
V.	aliquis,	aliqua,
Ab.	aliquō,	aliquā,
		aliquō.
	Plural.	
N.	aliqui,	aliquæ,
G.	aliquōrum,	aliquārum,
D.	aliquibus,	aliquibus,
Ac.	aliquos,	aliquas,
V.	aliqui,	aliquæ,
Ab.	aliquibus,	aliquibus.

*Note.*—*Ecquis* and *siquis* have sometimes *quæ* in the nominative singular feminine.

*Obs. 2.* Some of these are twice compounded; as, *ecquisnam*, *ecquænam*, *ecquidnam*, or *ecquodnam*, "who?" *unusquisque*, *unaquæque*, *unumquidque*, or *unumquodque*, "every one;" genitive *uniuscujusque*, &c. The former is scarcely declined beyond the nominative singular, and the latter wants the plural.

*Obs. 3.* All these compounds want the vocative, except *quisque*, *aliquis*, *quilibet*, and *quicumque*. They have seldom, if ever *queis*, but *quibus* in the dative and the ablative plural.

## § 38. THE VERB.

132.—A VERB is a word used to express the *act, being, or state*, of its subject.

*Obs. 1.* The use of the verb, in simple propositions, is to affirm. That of which it affirms, is called its *subject*, and, if a noun or pronoun, it is usually in the nominative case. But when the verb is in the infinitive, its subject is put in the accusative.

1. Verbs are of two kinds, *Transitive*, and *Intransitive*.

*Note.*—These two classes comprehend all the verbs in any language. According to this division, *Transitive* verbs include those only which denote transitive action; i. e. action *passing over* from, or done by, one person or thing to another; and *Intransitive* verbs, those which have nothing transitive in their meaning, but which represent their subject in a certain state or condition, and nothing more. For this purpose, not only are the terms *Transitive* and *Intransitive* more expressive and appropriate than *Active* and *Neuter*, but their use relieves the term "Active," to be employed solely as the name of the form called the *Active Voice*; and the term "Neuter," to be appropriated to the gender of nouns.

2. A TRANSITIVE verb expresses an act done by one person or thing to another. It has two forms, called the *Active*, and the *Passive* voice. 135.

3. AN INTRANSITIVE verb expresses *being*, or a *state of being*, or *action confined to the actor*. It is commonly without the passive form.

*Obs. 2.* The verbs that express *being* simply, in Latin, are *sum*, *fio*, *existo*, signifying, in general, "to be," or "exist." The state of being expressed by intransitive verbs may be a state of rest, as *dormio*, "I sleep;" or of motion, as *cādo*, "I fall;" or of action, as *curro*, "I run."

*Obs. 3.* The action expressed by an intransitive verb does not, like the action expressed by a transitive verb, *pass over* from the agent or actor to an object. It has no immediate relation to any thing beyond its subject, which it represents in a certain state or condition, and nothing more; and hence they may always be distinguished thus:—A transitive verb always requires an object to complete the sense; as, *āmo te*, "I love thee;"—the intransitive verb does not, but the sense is complete without such an object; as, *sedeo*, "I sit;" *curro*, "I run."

*Obs. 4.* Many verbs considered intransitive in Latin, are translated by verbs considered transitive in English; as, *placeo*, "I please;" *obedio*, "I obey;" *crēdo*, "I believe;" &c.

*Obs. 5.* Many verbs are used sometimes in a transitive, and sometimes in an intransitive sense. Such are *fugio*, *inclino*, *timeo*, &c.; as, *fūge dextrum littus* (tr.), "avoid the right hand shore;" *tempus fūgit* (intr.), "time flies;" *timeo Danaos* (tr.), "I dread the Greeks;" *timeo* (intr.), "I am afraid."—In some, the transitive and intransitive are distinguished by a difference in form and conjugation; thus, *jacio*, *jaceo*; *pendo*, *pendeo*; *albo*, *albeo*; *fūgo*, *fugio*; *plāco*, *placeo*; *sēdo*, *sedeo*; &c.

*Obs. 6.* Verbs usually intransitive assume a transitive sense, when a word of signification similar to that of the verb itself is introduced as its object; as, *vivēre vitam*, "to live a life;" *jurāre jusjurandum*, "to swear an oath."

*Obs. 7.* When we wish to direct the attention, not so much to any particular act of the subject of discourse, as to the employment or state of that subject, the object of the act—not being important—is omitted, and the transitive verb assumes the character of an intransitive; thus, in the sentence, *puer lēgit*, "the boy reads," nothing more is indicated than the present state or employment of *puer*, "the boy," and the verb has obviously an intransitive sense: still, an object is necessarily implied, as he who reads must read something. But when we say *puer lēgit Homērum*, "the boy reads Homer," the attention is directed to a particular act, terminating on a certain object, "*Homērum*," and the verb has its proper transitive sense.

## § 39. DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERBS.

183.—Though the division of verbs into *Transitive* and *Intransitive* comprehends all the verbs in any language, yet, from something peculiar in their form or signification, they are characterized by different names, expressive of this peculiarity. The most common of these are the following, viz: *Regular, Irregular, Deponent, Common, Defective, Impersonal, Redundant, Frequentative, Inceptive, and Desiderative.*

1. **REGULAR VERBS** are those in which the secondary parts are formed from the primary, according to certain rules. 184.

*Note.*—Under these are included *Transitive, Intransitive, Deponent, and Common* verbs belonging to the four conjugations.

2. **IRREGULAR VERBS** are those in which some of the secondary parts are not formed from the primary, according to rule. 221.

3. **DEPONENT VERBS** under a passive form have an active signification. 207-1.

4. **COMMON VERBS** under a passive form have an active or passive signification. 207-2.

5. **DEFECTIVE VERBS** are those in which some of the parts are wanting. 222.

6. **IMPERSONAL VERBS** are used only in the third person singular. 223.

7. **REDUNDANT VERBS** have more than one form of the same part. 225.

8. **FREQUENTATIVE VERBS** express repeated action. 227-1.

9. **INCEPTIVE VERBS** mark the beginning or continued increase of an action. 227-2.

10. **DESIDERATIVE VERBS** denote desire or intention of doing. 227-3. The three last are always derivatives. 226.



## § 40 INFLECTION OF VERBS.

134.—To the inflection of Verbs belong *Voices*, *Moods*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

1. The VOICES, in Latin, are two, *Active* and *Passive*.

2. The MOODS are four, the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

3. The TENSES are six, the *Present*, *Imperfect*, *Perfect*, *Pluperfect*, *Future*, and *Future-Perfect*.

4. The NUMBERS are two, *Singular* and *Plural*.

5. The PERSONS are three, *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

6. Besides these, to the Verb belong, *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*.

7. The CONJUGATION of a verb is the arrangement of its different moods, tenses, &c., according to a certain order. Of these, in Latin, there are four, called the *First*, *Second*, *Third*, and *Fourth Conjugations*. 184—1—3.

*Obs.* A few verbs in Latin are of more than one conjugation, and a few have some of their parts belonging to one conjugation, and others to another.

## § 41. VOICE.

135.—VOICE is a particular form of the verb which shows the relation of the *subject*, or thing spoken of, to the action expressed by the verb.

The transitive verb, in Latin, has two voices, called the *Active* and the *Passive*.

1 The ACTIVE VOICE represents the subject of

the verb as acting on some object; as, *āmo te*, "I love thee."

2. The PASSIVE VOICE represents the subject of the verb as acted upon; as, *amātur*, "he is loved"

### 136.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. In both voices, the act expressed by the verb is the same, but differently related to the subject of the verb. In the *active* voice, the subject is the actor; in the *passive*, it is acted upon, as in the above examples. Hence, the same idea may be expressed with equal propriety in either voice, by simply changing the object of the active voice into the subject of the passive: thus, by the active voice, *Cæsar vicit Galliam*, "Cæsar conquered Gaul;" by the passive, *Gallia victa est a Cæsare*, "Gaul was conquered by Cæsar."

This property of the transitive verb, enables the speaker or writer not only to vary his form of expression at pleasure, but also, by means of the passive form, to direct the attention to the *act* and the *object* acted upon, when the actor either is unknown, or, it may be, unimportant or improper to be mentioned: thus, "America *was discovered* and *inhabited* before the days of Columbus." So also the attention may be directed by means of the active voice to the act and the actor, without regard to the object. See 132, Obs. 7.

2. Intransitive verbs, from their nature, do not admit a distinction of voice. They are generally in the form of the active voice, but are frequently used in the third person singular, passive form, as impersonal verbs. 223-3. Deponent intransitives, however, have the form of the passive.

3. The passive voice, in Latin, is often used in a sense similar to the middle voice in Greek, to express actively what its subject does to, or for itself; as, *dōnec pauci, qui prælio superfuērant, paludibus abderentur*, "till the few who had survived the battle, *concealed themselves* in the marshes." Tac. The following are examples of the same kind: *Columba—FERUR in arva volans*. VIRG.—*Nunc spicula vertunt infensi; facta pariter nunc pace FERUNTUR*. Id.—*E scopulo multâ rix arte revulsus—râtem Sergestus agēbat*. Id.—*Quis ignōrat, ii, qui mathematici vocantur, in quantâ obscuritate rerum—VERSENTUR*. Cic.—*Cum igitur vehementius INVEHERETUR in causam princē*

*pum consul Philippus. Id.—Cum omnes in omni genere scelerum VOLUTENTUR. Id.*

Circumdat nequidquam humeris, et inutile ferrum  
CINGITUR, ac densos fertur moriturus in hostes. VING.

In all such constructions, the words “*a se*” may be understood after the verb.

## § 42. MOODS.

137.—Mood is the *mode* or *manner* of expressing the signification of the verb.

138.—The moods, in Latin, are four; namely, the *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

139.—I. The INDICATIVE MOOD asserts the action or state expressed by the verb, simply as a fact, and generally in an independent clause; as, *scribo*, “I write;” *tempus fugit*, “time flies.”

140.—Obs. 1. The indicative mood is sometimes used in dependent clauses with *si*, *nisi*, *etsi*, *tametsi*, *etiamsi*, to assert a fact as a condition or supposition; as, *si quid melius habes, arcesse*. Or with *ut* or *quum*, “when,” signifying time past; as, *Tempus fuit quum homines vagabantur. Ut inquinavit arcus tempus aureum.* HOR.

141.—Obs. 2. The indicative followed by *si non*, *ni*, *nisi*, is sometimes used potentially, to express, not what did take place, but what would have taken place if something else had not happened; as, *Tenus Ægyptum penetravit, nisi exercitus sequi recusasset*, “He would have penetrated as far as Ægypt, if the army had not refused to follow him.” 624.

142.—II. The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD represents the action or state expressed by the verb, not as a fact, but only as a conception formed by the mind. It is generally used in dependent clauses in various ways, as follows:

1st. It represents the action or state expressed by it as *conditional* or *contingent*.

Thus used, it corresponds to the English subjunctive, or to the indicative used subjunctively (An. and Pr. Gr., 386); as, *si redeat, videbimus*, "if he return, we shall see him."

2d. It represents an action or state, as what *may, can, will; might, could, would, or should*, take place in certain circumstances.

Thus used, it corresponds to the English potential (An. and Pr. Gr., 380); as, *edāmus ut vivāmus, non vivimus ut edāmus*, "we eat that we may live—not live that we may eat;" *signum datum crederes*, "you would suppose that the signal had been given."

3d. It is used to express a fact in a dependent proposition, connected with the leading verb by an adverb, conjunction, relative, or indefinite term.

Thus used, it is commonly rendered by the indicative in English; as, *nescit qui sim*, "he knows not who I am."

143.—*Obs. 3.* The subjunctive mood is sometimes used in an independent proposition, in order to soften the assertion made; as, *Nemo istud tibi concēdat*, "nobody probably would concede that to you." (625).

144.—*Obs. 4.* The subjunctive is used also in independent propositions, to express a wish, desire, or command; as, *utinam sapēres*, "O that thou wert wise;" *quod bene vertat*, "may it turn out well;" *sic eat*, "thus let her go;" *facias*, "do it." See *Obs. 5.*

145.—*Obs. 5.* When this mood is used in independent propositions, in a potential, optative, or imperative sense, still it ought to be regarded as strictly subjunctive, having the primary or leading clause evidently understood, on which the meaning of the mood in each case depends. Thus

I may write," *licet mihi ut, or est ut scribam*; "I shall, or will write," *futurum est, or erit ut scribam*; "I should write," *oportet, æquum est ut, or est cur scriberem*; "I should have written," *oportebat, &c., ut scripsissem*; "O that they were wise," *peropto utinam saperent*; "may it turn out well,"

*precor quod bene vertat*; "do it," *fac ut facias*; "let me do it," *sine ut faciam*, &c.

Hence, it follows that the particular English auxiliary by which this mood should be translated, depends, not upon the form of the Latin verb, seeing *scribērem* for example, means equally, "I might, could, would, or should write," but upon the ellipsis to be supplied. What this is, must ways be gathered from the connection and sense of the passage.

146.—*Obs. 6.* From these observations, it will be manifest that the Latin subjunctive is in much more extensive use than either the subjunctive and potential mood in English, or the subjunctive and optative mood in Greek. Indeed, the proper use and management of this mood, constitute one of the greatest difficulties in this language. For the construction of this mood, see § 139.

147.—*Obs. 7.* When the ideas of *liberty, power, will, obligation, duty*, &c., involved in the auxiliaries *may, can, will, shall, might, could, would, should*, &c., are to be expressed in an absolute, independent, and emphatic manner, the subjunctive mood is not used, but separate verbs expressing these ideas in the indicative mood. These are such as *licet, vōlo, nōlo, possum, debeo*, &c., thus :

We will go,	<i>Ire volūmus.</i>
They will not go,	<i>Ire nōlunt.</i>
I may come,	<i>Mihi ventūre licet.</i>
I can read,	<i>Legere possum.</i>
	<i>Legere debes.</i>
Thou shouldst read,	<i>Tibi legendum est.</i>
	<i>Te legere oportet.</i>
It might have been done,	<i>Fieri potuit.</i>
(absolutely and sometimes contingently.)	

148.—*Obs. 8.* The future indicative is frequently used in dependent and hypothetical clauses, and consequently in a subjunctive sense; as, *si jubēbis faciam*, "if you order me, I will do it;" equivalent to *si jubeas*, &c.

149.—III. The IMPERATIVE MOOD commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits; as, *scribe*, "write thou;" *īto*, "let him go."

150.—*Obs. 9.* The present subjunctive is very often used instead of the imperative, especially in forbidding, after *ne*,

*nemo, nullus, &c.*; as, *valeas*, “farewell;” *ne noceas puero*, “hurt not the boy.” Obs. 4 and 5. Besides this, the future and future perfect indicative, and the perfect subjunctive, are also used imperatively. See 167–1, 169–3, and 173–4.

151.—*Obs.* 10. The imperative mood has two forms in the second person, both singular and plural, distinguished in their meaning as present and future. The first, or shorter form commands to do presently; as, *scribe*, “write now;”—the second, or longer form commands to do afterwards, or when something else shall have been done; as, *scribito*, “write hereafter.” This distinction, however, is not always observed.

152.—IV. The INFINITIVE MOOD expresses the meaning of the verb in a general manner, without any distinction of person or number; as, *scribere*, “to write;” *scripsisse*, “to have written;” *scribi*, “to be written.”

## § 43. TENSES.

153.—TENSES are certain forms of the verb which serve to point out the distinctions of time.

154.—Time is naturally divided into the *Present*, *Past*, and *Future*; and an action may be represented either as *incomplete* and *continuing*, or as *completed* at the time spoken of. This gives rise to six tenses, which are expressed in Latin by distinct forms of the verb; thus,

PRESENT.	Action continuing; as, <i>scribo</i> , “I write, I am writing.”	<i>Present.</i>
	Action completed; as, <i>scripsi</i> , “I have written.”	<i>Perfect.</i>
PAST.	Action continuing; as, <i>scribēbam</i> , “I was writing.”	<i>Imperfect.</i>
	Action completed; as, <i>scripsēram</i> , “I had written.”	<i>Pluperfect.</i>
FUTURE.	Action continuing; as, <i>scribam</i> , “I shall or will write.”	<i>Future.</i>
	Action completed; as, <i>scripsēro</i> , “I shall have written.”	<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>

155.—In order better to express the time and the state of the action by one designation, these tenses, arranged in this order, might properly be denominated the *Present*, the *Present-perfect*; the *Past*, the *Past-perfect*; the *Future*, and the *Future-perfect*. An. and Pr. Gr. 400.

## § 44. TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

156.—The tenses of the indicative mood, in Latin, are six: the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, the *Pluperfect*, the *Future*, and the *Future-perfect*.

157.—I. The PRESENT tense expresses what is going on at the present time; as, *scribo*, "I write," or "I am writing;" *dōmus œdificātur*, "the house is building."

This tense is rendered with all the variety of the present tense in English; as, *I write, do write, am writing*;—interrogatively, *do I write? am I writing?* Like the English present also it is used:

1. To express what is habitual or always true; as, *qui cito dat, bis dat*, "HE who gives promptly, gives twice."

2. To express a general custom, if still existing; as, *apud Parthos signum dātur tympano*, "among the Parthians, the signal is given by the drum."

3. In historical narration, it is used with great effect for the past tense, to represent a past event as if it were present before us; thus (Livy), *dicto parvère, desiliunt ex equis, provolant in primum*, &c., "they obeyed, they dismount, they fly forward to the front," &c.

4. To denote an action which has continued for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bella gero*, "for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war." Also after *dum* it is used to express a past event which had some continuance; as, *dum in Sicilia sum, nulla statua dejecta est*, "so long as I was in Sicily," &c.

5. With certain adverbs of time, it is sometimes used, as in English, to denote what is yet future; as, *quam mox navigo Ephesum*, "as soon as I sail, or shall sail, for Ephesus."

6. In the passive voice, the present tense represents its subject as at present acted upon, or as the object of an action present and continuing, and is usually rendered into English by the verb *to be*, and the perfect participle, as *amātur*, "he is loved," and this rendering will always be correct when the

English verb in the present passive expresses *continuance*; as, *he is loved, feared, hated, respected, &c.*

158.—*Obs.* But there are many verbs in which this rendering of the present would be incorrect, as it does not express the present receiving of an action, but rather the present and continuing *effect* of an act, which act itself is now past. In all such cases, it is more properly the rendering of the *perfect* than of the *present*, and it is often so used. Thus, *dōmus ædificāta est*; *opus peractum est*; *epistōla scripta est*, may be properly rendered, “the house is built;” “the work is finished;” “the letter is written;” because in the English, as well as in Latin, the building of the house, the finishing of the work, and the writing of the letter, are represented as acts now past, and which are present only in their effects. The proper rendering of such verbs in the present passive, in English, is by the verb *to be*, and the present participle in *ing* in the passive sense; thus, *dōmus ædificātur*, “the house is building;” *opus peragitur*, “the work is finishing;” *epistōla scribitur*, “the letter is writing.” When this mode of expression is not authorized, and when the other would be improper, it will be necessary to express the precise idea of the present by some other form of expression. See An. and Pr. Eng. Gr., App. V, I and II, p. 235.—Principles of Eng. Gr., App. XIX, p. 211.

159.—II. The IMPERFECT tense represents an action or event as passing and still unfinished at a certain time past, expressed or implied; as, *dōmum ædificābat*, “he was (then) building a house;” *ibam forte viā sacrā*, “I was accidentally (viz. at the time spoken of,) going along the *via sacrā*.”

160.—This tense, strictly speaking, corresponds to the past-progressive in English (An. and Pr. Eng. Gr., 474-2.—Principles of Eng. Gr., 199-2). It is often rendered, however, by the past tense in its ordinary form; and should always be so, when the verb expresses a *continued* act or state; as, *amābat*, “he loved;” *timēbat*, “he feared.” It is used in a variety of ways, as follows:

1. It is used to denote what was usual or customary at some past time; as, *scribēbam*, “I was accustomed to write.”

2. It is used to denote an action which had existed for some time, and was still existing at a certain past time; as, *tot an-*



*nos bella gerēbam*, for so many years I had been, and then still was waging war."

3. Sometimes it denotes an action desired, intended, or attempted, but not accomplished; as, *Porsēna eum terrēbat*, "Porsena attempted to frighten him."

4. It is sometimes used hypothetically, instead of the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive; as, *anceps certamen erat, nisi equites supervenissent*, "the battle would have been doubtful, unless, &c." 141, and 624-5.

5. The same observations made in 158, in reference to the present passive, are applicable in all their extent to the imperfect; as, *amabātur*, "he was loved;" *dōmus ædificabātur*, "the house was building," not "was built," nor "was being built;" *opus peragebātur*, "the work was finishing," &c.

161.—III. The PERFECT tense is used in two different senses, *Definite* and *Indefinite*.

162.—The *Perfect-definite* represents an action or event as completed at the present time, or in a period of time of which the present forms a part; as, *scripsi*, "I have written;" *hujus ad memoriam nostram monumenta mansērunt duo*, "two monuments of him have remained to our time."

163.—The *Perfect-indefinite* represents an action or event simply as past; as, *scripsi*, "I wrote."

164.—The first, or *Perfect-definite*, corresponds to the English present-perfect (An. and Pr. Gr., 407);—the second, or *Perfect-indefinite*, corresponds to the English past tense (An. and Pr. Gr., 415). In this sense, it is commonly used in historical narratives like the Greek aorist; thus, *Cæsar exercitum finibus Italiæ admovit, Rubicon transiit, Rōmam occupavit*. "Cæsar marched his army," &c.

1. This tense, used indefinitely, is sometimes coupled with the imperfect, the former denoting a transitory, the latter a continued action; thus, *Conticuere omnes, intentique ora TENEBANT*, "All were silent, and with eager attention kept their eyes fixed upon him." VIRG.

2 It is sometimes used like the present, to express what is

true at any time; thus, *Felix qui potuit rerum cognoscere causas*, "Happy that man who was able to investigate the causes of things!" VIRG.

3. It is sometimes used in the sense of the pluperfect, viz. in narratives after such conjunctions as *postquam*, *ubi*, *ubi primum*, *ut* (when), *ut primum*, *quum*, *quum primum*, *simul ut*, *simul ac*, &c., having the general meaning of the English "as soon as," when followed by a verb denoting past time; as, *Quæ postquam evoluit—ligavit*, "After he had separated these things,—he bound them," &c. OVID.

4. It is also used poetically for the imperfect and the pluperfect of the subjunctive; as, *nec veni, nisi*, &c., "nor would I have come, unless," &c. (141, and 624–5.)

5. In the passive form, this tense is compound, consisting of the perfect participle of the verb, and the present or perfect tense of *sum* as an auxiliary; as, *amatus sum*, or *amatus fui*, "I have been loved."

*Notes.*—In all compound tenses, the participle must be in the same gender and number with the nominative to the verb.

165.—IV. The PLUPERFECT tense represents an action as completed at, or before, a certain past time expressed or implied; as, *scripsēram*, "I had written."

166.—This tense corresponds to the past-perfect in English, and is rendered by it. It bears the same relation to the perfect, that the imperfect does to the present.

1. The pluperfect is sometimes used, especially by the poets, for the perfect indicative, and also for the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *dixēram a principio, ut de republicâ sileretur*, CIC., "I have said from the beginning," &c.; *Si mens non læva fuisset, impulerat*, &c., VIRG., "he would have impelled." (141, & 624–5.) The same idiom is found in English, "he had impelled," for "he would have impelled."

2. In the passive form, this tense, like the perfect, is compound, consisting of the perfect participle, and the imperfect or pluperfect of *sum* used as an auxiliary; as *amatus ēram*, or *amatus fuēram*, "I had been loved."

*Notes.*—In these compound forms, the participle seems to be considered sometimes as little different from an adjective. In such cases, *sum* becomes the verb, and is rendered by its own tense; as, *opus peractum est*, "the work is finished;" *finitus jam labor erat*, "the labor was now finished."

167.—V. The FUTURE tense expresses what will take place in *future time*; as, *scribam*, "I shall, or will write."

1. This tense is sometimes used in the sense of the imperative; as, *liques vīna*, "filtrate the wine." HOR.

2. The participle in *rus*, with the verb *sum*, is frequently used instead of the future, especially if purpose or intention is signified; as, *scripturus sum*, "I am going to write." (214-8.)

3. In the passive voice, the future tense expresses the future enduring of an act that will be going on hereafter; as, *dōmus ædificabitur*, "the house will be building."

168.—VI. The FUTURE-PERFECT intimates that an action or event will be completed at, or before a certain time yet future; as, *scripsēro*, "I shall have written;" viz, at, or before, some future time or event.

1. This tense, sometimes called the future subjunctive, properly belongs to the indicative mood, both in signification and construction. For the future subjunctive, see 170-1.

2. Though the proper rendering of this tense be *shall have* yet, generally, the *have*, or the *shall*, and frequently both, are omitted; as, *qui Antonium oppresserit, is bellum confecerit*, "he who shall cut off Antony, shall put an end to the war."

3. This tense is also used imperatively; as, *meminēris tu*, "remember thou;" *ille vidērit*, "let him see to it."

4. The future perfect, in the passive voice, has two forms made up of the perfect participle, and *ēro*, or *fuēro*. The first denotes the enduring of an act that will be completed in future time indefinitely; as, *dōmus ædificata ērit*, "the house will be built;" the second denotes the enduring of an act to be completed at, or before, a certain future time; as, *dōmus ædificata fuērit*, "the house will have been built."

## § 45. TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

169.—The tenses of the subjunctive mood are the *Present*, the *Imperfect*, the *Perfect*, and the *Pluperfect*.

170.—1. There is no distinct form of a future in the subjunctive; all the tenses of this mood sometimes incline to a future signification. But, when a future subjunctive is required, the future participle in *rus*, with the verb *sum* in the subjunctive present, is used; as, *haud dubito quin facturus sit*, "I doubt not that he will do it."

2. The tenses of the subjunctive mood, in Latin, like those of the potential, in English, are much less definite, in respect of time, than the tenses of the indicative, being modified by the time and meaning of the verbs, with which they stand connected.

3. All the tenses of the subjunctive mood, are often rendered like the corresponding tenses of the indicative, 142, 1st. and 3d.

171.—I. The PRESENT subjunctive is generally rendered by *may* or *can*, expressing present liberty, or ability; as, *scribam*, "I may write. But,

1. This tense is often used in the sense of the imperative mood, to express a command, entreaty, or exhortation; as, *āsem*, "let me love." This use is commonly elliptical, 144, and 145.

2. After *quāsi*, *tāquam*, and the like, it is sometimes rendered as the imperfect, or perfect indefinite of the indicative; as, *quāsi intelligant*, "as if they understood."

3. When a question is asked, it is frequently rendered as the indicative; as, *Elōquar an sileam?* "shall I speak, or be silent?" Sometimes by *should*; as, *singula quid referam*, "why should I relate every thing?" Sometimes by *would*; as, *In facinus jurasse putes*, "you would think they had sworn to commit wickedness."

172.—II. The IMPERFECT subjunctive is commonly rendered by the signs *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*, expressing past liberty, power, will, or obligation; as, *scriberem*, "I might, could, would, or should write."

1. This tense may relate either to what is past, or present, or future; as, *si fata fuissent ut cadērem*, "if my destiny had been that I should fall;" *si possem, sanior essem*, "If I could, I

would be wiser;" *post hæc præcipitem dārem*, "afterwards, I would throw him down headlong."

2. Sometimes, the imperfect is rendered as the pluperfect; as, *si quis dicēret, nunquam putārem*, &c., "if any one had said it, I never would have thought," &c.

3. After a verb or clause denoting hindrance, the subjunctive imperfect, and sometimes the present, with *quominus*, *ne*, may often be rendered by *from* with the present participle; as,

*Si te tua infirmitas valetudinis tenuit, quo minus ad lûdos venires*, "If your weak state of health has prevented you from coming to the games." So, *Ne quis impedirētur quo minus ejus rebus frueretur*, "That no one might be hindered from enjoying," &c. NEP.—*Impeditus ne portāret*, "Being hindered from carrying." SALL. Jug., 39.—*Me impedit quo minus—vestrum jus defendam*, "Shall hinder me from defending your right." CIO.

4. In historical narration, after *ut* or *quum* (*cum*), "when," or other words denoting time, the imperfect subjunctive is translated like the perfect indefinite or aorist; or, when it expresses a continued action, like the perfect indicative; as, *cum ab his quæreret*, "when he inquired of these;" *cum id ultro polliceretur*, "since of his own accord he promised that;" *cum summus mons teneretur*, "when the top of the mountain was occupied."

173.—III. The PERFECT subjunctive is used to denote an act or event spoken of as already past, or which will be past at some future time, but about which there is at present some contingency or uncertainty, in the mind of the speaker.

This tense is commonly rendered by the signs *may have*; as, *fortasse scripsērim*, "perhaps I may have written," implying, "if so, I have at present forgotten it."

This general idea is expressed with much variety in English, according as the tense stands connected with other words in the sentence. This will be best explained by a few examples.

1. It is sometimes rendered like the present; as, *ut sic dixērim*, "that I may so speak." Sometimes like the imperfect; as, *ubi ego audivērim?* "where should I have heard it?" *fortasse erravērim*, "perhaps I might be in an error."

2. This tense sometimes inclines very much to a future

signification, and is rendered by *should, would, could, can, will, shall*; as, *Citius crediderim*, "I should sooner believe." JUV.—*Libenter audierim*, "I would gladly hear." CIO.—*Ciceronem cuicumque eorum facile opposuerim*, "I could easily match Cicero with any of them;"—*non facile dixerim*, "I cannot well tell;"—*nec tamen exclusërim alios*, "and yet I will not exclude others."—*Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, "If any thing however trifling escape you, I shall be undone." TER.

3. After *quäsi, tanquam*, and the like, it is sometimes rendered by *had*; as, *quäsi affuerim*, "as if I had been present;" *perinde ac si jam vicërint*, "just as if they had already conquered."

4. It is sometimes used in concessions; as, *parta sit pecunia*, "suppose the money were gotten." Sometimes as the imperative, with the idea of urgency; as, *hæc dicta sint patribus*, "let these things be told quickly to the fathers."

174.—IV. The PLUPERFECT subjunctive denotes an action or event contingent at some past time, but regarded as to be perfected before another action or time subsequent to it, and connected with it; as,

*Quodcunque jussisset me facturum esse dixi*, "I said (then) that I would do whatever he should order." Here his *ordering* was contingent at the time referred to, (then); but it was to take place before the doing connected with it. So, *Id respondentur se facturos esse, cum ille vento Aquilone Lemnum venisset*, "They replied that they would do that, when he should return to Lemnos with a north wind." In such constructions, the leading verb is usually in the past tense, or in the present used for the past. It is variously rendered by *would, could, might, had, might have, could have, would have, should have, or ought to have*; as, *si jussisset, paruissem*, "if he had commanded, I would have obeyed." Hence, observe:

1. That though the action or state is often future in respect to the time of the leading verb, yet it is past with regard to the action or state dependent on it.

2. After *quum*, it is used in the sense of the pluperfect, to express an action antecedent to another past action connected with it, as *Cæsar quum hæc dixisset, profectus est*, "when

Cæsar had said these things, he departed.” Thus used, *quum* with the pluperfect, may be elegantly rendered by the perfect participle in English; thus the above example may be rendered, “Cæsar, *having said* these things, departed.”

### § 46. TENSES OF THE IMPERATIVE.

175.—The Imperative mood, in Latin, has only one tense, namely, the present. Still the act from the nature of this mood is necessarily future; as, *scribe*, “write thou.” The command is present; the act commanded, future. Still the two forms of the second person mark a distinction of time. See 151, Obs. 10.

The other tenses used imperatively, are the future and future-perfect indicative, and the present and perfect subjunctive; which see.

### § 47. TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

176.—The tenses of the Infinitive are four, the *Present*, the *Perfect*, and the *Future*, and, in the active voice, the *Future-perfect*.

In Latin, the tenses of the infinitive express its action as past, present, or future, not with regard to the present time, as in the other moods, but with regard to the time of the leading verb, on which it is dependent.

177.—The infinitive is used in two different ways; viz: without a subject, or with it.

178.—I. The infinitive without a subject, follows a verb, or adjective, and is always translated in the same way, whether the preceding verb be present, past, or future; thus:

#### ACTIVE VOICE.

##### PRESENT.

<i>Dicitur scribere,</i>	He is said to write, or to be writing (now).
“ <i>scripsisse,</i>	“ to have written (now).
“ <i>scripturus esse,</i>	“ to be about to write (now).
“ <i>scripturus fuisse,</i>	“ to have been about to write (before now).

## PAST.

<i>Dicitur scribere,</i>	He was said to write, or to be writing (then).
" <i>scripsisse,</i>	" to have written, &c.

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PRESENT.

<i>Domus dicitur ædificari,</i>	The house is said to be building (now).
" <i>ædificata esse,</i>	" to be built (now).
" <i>ædificata fuisse,</i>	" to have been built (before now).
" <i>ædificatum tri.</i>	" to be about to be built (now).

## PAST.

*Domus dicebatur ædificari,* The house was said to be building (then), &c.

*Note.*—When the participle in *ing*, of the English verb, has not a passive sense, the present infinitive passive must be translated differently; as, *amari*, "to be loved."

179.—II. The infinitive, with a subject, is usually translated by a distinct proposition, dependent on the preceding verb; and the translation of the same tense of the infinitive must differ according to the tense of the verb on which it depends, as follows :

1. The PRESENT Infinitive represents the action, or state, expressed by the verb, as present and going on at the time of the leading verb, and, consequently, must be rendered into English, in the time of the leading verb; as, *dicit se scribere*, "he says that he is writing;"—Pass., *dōmum ædificari*, "that the house is building;"—*dixit se scribere*, "he said that he was writing;"—Pass., *dōmum ædificari*, "that the house was building." As an exception, see No. 5 below.

2. The PERFECT Infinitive represents the action, or state, expressed by the verb, as past at the time of the leading verb, and must be rendered accordingly; i. e., after the present, by the English present-perfect, or past; as, *dicit se scripsisse*, "he says that he has written." or, "that he wrote;"—Pass., *dōmum ædificatam esse*, "that the house is built;"—*ædificatam fuisse*, "has been built;"—After a past tense (or the present used for the past, 143-3), by the English pluperfect; as, *dixit se scripsisse*, "he said that he had written."—Pass., by the imperfect, or pluperfect; as, *dōmum ædificatam esse*, "that the house was built;" *ædificatam fuisse*, "had been built."

3. The FUTURE Infinitive represents the action, or state, expressed by the verb as future at the time of the leading



verb, and must be rendered accordingly; as, *dicat se scripturum esse*, "he says that he *will* write;"—Pass., *dōmum ædificātum tri*, "that the house *will* be built;"—*dixit se scripturum esse*, "he said that he *would* write;"—Pass., *dōmum ædificātum tri*, "that the house *would* be built." For all these, see 180.

4. The future infinitive active is compound, being made up of *esse*, or *fuisse*, and the participle in *rus*, agreeing in gender, number, and case, with the accusative before it, or with the nominative of the leading verb. With *esse*, it corresponds to the future indicative; with *fuisse*, to the future-perfect; as,

*Dicit eos scriptūros esse,*

He says that they will write.

*Dixit se scripturum esse,*

He said that he would write.

*Dicit se scripturum fuisse,*

He says that he would have written.

*Dixit eam scripturam fuisse,*

He said that she would have written.

*Dicitur scripturus esse,*

He is said to be about to write.

Note 1.—*Esse* and *fuisse*, in the future infinitive, are generally understood; thus, *dixit se scripturum*; and so of others.

5. When the leading verb is in the future tense, the infinitive mood will be properly translated in its own tense, not in that of the leading verb; as, *dicet se scribere*, "he will say that he is writing," *dicet se scripsisse*, "he will say that he has written;" *dicet se scripturum esse*, "he will say that he will write;" *se scripturum fuisse*, "that he would have written." So also in the passive voice.

6. The perfect infinitive passive is made up of *esse* or *fuisse*, and the perfect participle in *us*, agreeing in gender, number and case with the accusative before it, or with the nominative of the leading verb, when that is in the passive voice; as, *dicat litteras scriptas esse*, "he says that letters were written;" *litteræ dicuntur scriptæ esse*, "letters are said to have been written," &c. *Esse* and *fuisse* are sometimes understood. See Note 1 above.

7. The future infinitive passive is also a compound tense, consisting of the former supine, and *tri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo*; as, *scriptum tri*, "to be about to be written."

8. The future infinitive of deponent verbs (207) is made with *esse* or *fuisse*, and the participle in *rus*, as in the active voice (No. 4 above), and not like the future infinitive passive.

9. When the verb in the active voice has no supine, and consequently no participle in *rus*, there can, of course, be no future infinitive. In this case, the want of it is supplied by

the future infinitive of *sum*; viz. *futūrum esse*, or *fōre* followed by *ut*, and the subjunctive in the present or imperfect, as the leading verb may require. Thus, *dixit fōre ut lugeret*, "he said that he would mourn;" *dicit fōre ut lugeat*, "he says that he will mourn." 678.

*Note 2.*—This form of expression is often used in both the active and the passive voice, even when the verb has the regular form of the future infinitive.

10. *Fōre*, the infinitive of *sum*, is used with all participles in *us*; as, *Commissum cum equitātu praelio fōre vidēbat*. *CÆS.*—*Deinde addis, te fōre ventūrum*. *Cic.*—*Mittendos fōre legātos*. *LIV.*

11. The infinitive mood with a subject, i. e. with an accusative before it, is usually rendered as the indicative, the particle *that* being commonly placed before it. The following examples will illustrate the method of translating the different tenses of the infinitive, when preceded by the leading verb in present, past, or future time.

#### 180.—INFINITIVE ACTIVE

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1 <i>Dicit me scribere,</i>           | He says that I write, or am writing.           |
| 2 <i>Dixit me scribere,</i>           | He said that I wrote, or was writing.          |
| 3 <i>Dicet me scribere,</i>           | He will say that I am writing.                 |
| 4 <i>Dicit me scripsisse,</i>         | He says that I wrote, or did write.            |
| 5 <i>Dixit me scripsisse,</i>         | He said that I had written.                    |
| 6 <i>Dicet me scripsisse,</i>         | He will say that I have written, or did write. |
| 7 <i>Dicit me scriptūrum esse,</i>    | He says that I will write.                     |
| 8 <i>Dixit me scriptūrum esse,</i>    | He said that I would write.                    |
| 9 <i>Dicet me scriptūrum esse,</i>    | He will say that I will write.                 |
| 10 <i>Dicit me scriptūrum fuisse,</i> | He says that I would have written.             |
| 11 <i>Dixit me scriptūrum fuisse,</i> | He said that I would have written.             |
| 12 <i>Dicet me scriptūrum fuisse,</i> | He will say that I would have written.         |

#### INFINITIVE PASSIVE

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 13 <i>Dicit litteras scribi,</i>        | He says that letters are written, or writing.     |
| 14 <i>Dixit litteras scribi,</i>        | He said that letters were written, or writing.    |
| 15 <i>Dicet litteras scribi,</i>        | He will say that letters are written, or writing. |
| 16 <i>Dicit litteras scriptas esse,</i> | He says that letters are, or were written.        |
| 17 <i>Dixit litteras scriptas esse,</i> | He said that letters were, or had been written.   |
| 18 <i>Dicet litteras scriptas esse,</i> | He will say that letters are, or were written.    |

- 19 *Dicit litteras scriptas fuisse*, He says that letters have been written.  
 20 *Dixit litteras scriptas fuisse*, He said that letters had been written.  
 21 *Dicet litteras scriptas fuisse*, He will say that letters have been written.  
 22 *Dicit litteras scriptum iri*, He says that letters will be written.  
 23 *Dixit litteras scriptum iri*, He said that letters would be written.  
 24 *Dicet litteras scriptum iri*, He will say that letters would be written.

*Note 3.*—When the preceding verb is of the imperfect, or pluperfect tense, the English of the infinitive is the same as when it is of the perfect indefinite, i. e. is the same as the infinitive after *dixit*, in the preceding table.

*Note 4.*—As the perfect definite (162) connects the action completed with the present time, the infinitive after it, in this sense, will generally be translated as it is after the present; as, *DIXIT me scribere*,—*scripsisse*,—*scripturum esse*, “he has said that I am writing,—was writing,—will write,” i. e. as it is in Examples Nos. 1, 4, and 7. With *dixit* used indefinitely, the infinitive would be rendered as in Examples Nos. 2, 5, and 8.

*Note 5.*—Because memory always refers to something past, the infinitive present after *memini*, “I remember,” is translated by the past tense; as, *memini me dicere*, “I remember that I said,” (not “that I say”). *Memini me dixisse* is also a proper formula to express the same thing.

*Exc. 1.* When the present infinitive expresses that which is always true, it must be translated in the present, after any tense (157-1); as, *doctus erat Deum gubernare mundum*, “he had been taught that God governs the world.”

*Exc. 2.* When the present infinitive expresses an act subsequent to the time of the governing verb, it is translated, after any tense, by the potential, with *should*, *would*; as, *necesse est (fuit, fuérat) te ire*, “it is (was had been) necessary that you should go.”

## 181.—§ 48. NUMBER AND PERSON.

1. Every tense of the verb has two NUMBERS, the singular, and the plural, corresponding to the singular, and the plural of nouns and pronouns.

2. In each number, the verb has three PERSONS, called *first*, *second*, and *third*. The first asserts of the person speaking; the second, of the person spoken to; and the third, of the person or thing spoken of. In the *Imperative*, there are only two persons, the second, and the third.

### TABLE OF PERSONAL ENDINGS.

The following table shows the personal endings, both singular and plural, of all regular verbs, in all conjugations, in

all the tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, except the perfect indicative active, and the compound tenses in the passive voice :

ACTIVE VOICE.		PASSIVE VOICE.	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. —, m,	mus,	1. r,	mur,
2. s,	tis,	2. ris, or re,	mini,
3. t,	nt.	3. tur,	ntur.

3. The subject or nominative of the verb in the first person singular, is always *ego*; in the plural, *nos*;—in the second person singular, *tu*; in the plural, *vos*. These are seldom expressed, being sufficiently indicated by the termination of the verb; as, *scribo*, “I write;” *scribimus*, “we write;” *scribis*, “thou writest;” *scribitis*, “you write.”

*Obs.* Verbs in the first person plural, or in the second person singular, are sometimes used instead of the third person with an indefinite subject; as, *quam multa facimus causâ amicorum*, “how many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends!”—*cernēres*, “you would see,” i. e. “one, a person, or any person, would see.” SALL.

The subject of the verb in the third person, is any person or thing spoken of, whether it be expressed by a noun, pronoun, infinitive, gerund, or clause of a sentence; as, *vir scribit*, “the man writes;” *illi legunt*, “they read;” *ludere jucundum est*, “to play is pleasant;” *incertum est quam longa vita futura sit*, “how long our life will be, is uncertain.”

4. Two or more nouns or pronouns together may be the subject of one verb. If these happen to be of different persons, the verb takes the first person, rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *ego, et tu, et ille scribimus*, “I, and thou, and he write.”

5. Pronouns, participles, or adjectives used substantively, or having nouns understood to them, are of the third person. *Qui* takes the person of the antecedent. *Ipsē* may be joined to any person, according to the sense.

6. To verbs also belong *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*

## 182.—§ 49. PARTICIPLES.

1. **PARTICIPLES** are parts of the verb which contain no affirmation, but express the meaning of the verb considered as a general quality or condition of an object; as, *amans*, "loving;" *doctus*, "learned."

2. Participles belong partly to the verb, and partly to the adjective. From the former, they have *signification*, *voice*, and *tense*; from the latter, *declension*; those in *ns* are of the third declension, and declined like *prudens* (99-2): all others are of the first and second, and declined like *bonus* (98-1). In construction, they have the government of the verb, and the concord, or agreement of the adjective (§ 98).

3. When the idea of time is separated from the participle, it becomes a participial or verbal adjective, and is capable of comparison; as, *doctus*, *doctior*, *doctissimus*, "learned, more learned, most learned."

4. To the same class, also, belong participles whose meaning is reversed or modified by composition with words, or participles never combined with other parts of the same verb; as, *innocens*, *indoctus*, *impransus*, *nefandus*, &c. The perfect participle with the negative prefix *in*, frequently denotes a passive impossibility, usually expressed in Latin by adjectives in *ilis* or *bilis*; as, *invictus miles*, "an invincible soldier;" *incorruptus civis*, "an incorruptible citizen."

5. The time of the participle, like that of the infinitive, is estimated from the time of the leading verb; i. e. the accompanying action or state expressed by the participle is present, past, or future, at the time indicated by the leading verb. with which it is connected; thus, *vidi eum venientem*, "I saw him coming;" *Numa, Curibus natus, rex creatus est*, "Numa, born at Cures, was made king;" *elephantes amnem transiturus minimos præmittunt*, "elephants, about to cross a river, send the smallest first."

*Note 1.*—The perfect participle, both of deponent and common verbs, often expresses an action nearly, or entirely, contemporaneous with that of the leading verb. In such cases, it is better rendered, into English, by the present participle in *ing*, than by its ordinary rendering; as, *Hoc facinus rex miratus juvenem dimisit*, "The king, *admiring* this act, dismissed the youth." *Liv.*—*Arbitratus in bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit.* *Cæs.*—*Hac arte Pollux—erectus, arces attigit igneas.* *Hor.*—*Columba jussuque refert Delopis sagittam.* *Virg.*—*Pueri bis seni quemque secuti.* *agmina parvulo.* *Virg.* So also the perfect participle of the active verb see No. 8, *Note 3.*

6. The future passive participle in *dus*, sometimes expresses bare futurity; as, *his* (scil. *ventis*) *quoque habendum aëra permisit*, "to these also, he gave the region of the air to be possessed." But, in conjunction with the verb *sum*, and frequently also in other constructions, it denotes *necessity*, *propriety*, or *obligation*, and hence, by inference, *futurity*; as, *Delenda est Carthāgo*, "Carthage must be destroyed." *Facta narrābz dissimulanda tibi*, "you were relating facts which you should have concealed."

7. The participle in *dus*, of transitive verbs, is often used in the oblique cases, in the sense of the gerund. Thus used, it is called a *Gerundive* participle, and agrees with its substantive in gender and number, and both take the case which the gerund would have in the same place; thus, *tempus petendæ pācis*, by the gerund, is *petendi pācem*, "time of seeking peace;" *rērum repetundārum causā*, "for the sake of demanding redress;" by the gerund, *repetundi res*.

*Note 2.*—Gerunds and gerundives of the third and fourth conjugations, often have *undus*, &c., instead of *endus*, as in the preceding examples.

8. The Latin language has no perfect participle in the active voice, nor present participle in the passive. The want of the former is made up in two ways: *First*, by the perfect participle passive, in the case absolute; as, *Cæsar, his dictis, profectus est*, "Cæsar (these things being said, i. e.), having said these things, departed;" and *Secondly*, by *quum*, with the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Cæsar, quum hæc dixisset, profectus est*, "Cæsar (when he had said, i. e.), having said these things, departed."

*Note 3.*—The want of the present participle passive, is made up either by the perfect participle, or by the future participle in *dus*, both of which appear to be sometimes used in a present sense; as, *Notus evolat piceâ tectus caligine*, "Notus flies forth (being) covered with pitchy darkness." OVID.—*Volvenda dies en attulit ultro*, "Lo! revolving time (lit. time being rolled on) hath of itself brought about." VIRG.—Or by the gerundive form of expression, as in No. 7; see also No. 5, *Note 1*.

9 Transitive verbs have four participles, of which the present in *ns*, and the future in *rus*, belong to the active voice; the perfect in *tus*, *sus*, or *xus*, and the future in *dus*, to the passive.

10. Intransitive verbs have two participles, namely, the present in *ns*, and the future in *rus*; frequently also the future passive in *dus*, and also the perfect passive.

11. Neuter passive verbs have commonly three participles; namely, the present, perfect, and future in *rus*. 213.

12. Deponent verbs of a transitive signification, have generally four participles; those of an intransitive signification commonly want the future in *dus*, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally.

13. Common verbs have generally four participles, of which the perfect only is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *adeptus victoriam*, "having obtained the victory;" *victoriâ adeptâ*, "the victory being obtained." The rest are active. 207, Obs. 2.

14. Some intransitive verbs, though they have no passive, yet have participles of the perfect passive form, but still with an intransitive signification; such are, *cœnâtus*, "having supped;" *pransus*, "having dined;" *jurâtus*, "having sworn."

### 183.—§ 50. GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

1. The GERUND is a kind of verbal noun, used only in the singular number. It represents the action or state expressed by the verb as a thing now going on, and at the same time, if in the nominative, or in the accusative before the infinitive, as the subject of discourse; and if in the oblique cases, as the object of some action or relation. They are construed in all respects as nouns, and also govern the case of their verbs. § 147.

In meaning and use, the gerund resembles the English present participle, used as a noun (see Eng. Gr., 195; An. and Pr. Eng. Gr., 462), and the Greek infinitive with the article prefixed. See Gr. Gr., § 173.

2. SUPINES are defective verbal nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and the ablative singular.

The supine in *um* has an active signification, and governs the case of the verb. 682.

The supine in *u* has usually a passive signification, and governs no case.

## 184.—§ 51. CONJUGATION OF REGULAR VERBS.

1. REGULAR VERBS are those in which the secondary parts are formed from the primary, according to certain rules, 185.

2. The CONJUGATION of a verb, is the regular combination and arrangement of its several voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

3. Of regular verbs, in Latin, there are four conjugations, called the *First, Second, Third, and Fourth*. These are distinguished from each other, by the vowel before *re*, in the present infinitive active; thus,

The <i>First Conjugation</i>	has	<i>a</i> long	before <i>re</i> of the infinitive.
The <i>Second</i>	"	has	<i>ē</i> long before <i>re</i> of the infinitive.
The <i>Third</i>	"	has	<i>ē</i> short before <i>re</i> of the infinitive.
The <i>Fourth</i>	"	has	<i>i</i> long before <i>re</i> of the infinitive.

*Exc. Dāre*, and its compounds of the first conjugation, have *ā* short.

4. The primary tenses, or parts of the verb in the active voice, from which all the other parts are formed, are four; namely, *o* of the present indicative, *re* of the present infinitive, *i* of the perfect indicative, and *um* of the supine. The giving of these parts, in the order just mentioned, is called *conjugating the verb*; thus,

	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>1st. Supine.</i>
<i>1st Conj.</i>	Amo,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum.
<i>2d</i> "	Monēo,	monēre,	monuī,	monitum.
<i>3d</i> "	Rēgo,	regere,	rexī,	rectum.
<i>4th</i> "	Audīo,	audire,	audivī,	auditum.

The manner of conjugating each verb being accurately ascertained from the Dictionary, the other tenses may be formed with certainty by the rules laid down in the next section.\*

---

\* Though general rules may be, and have been, laid down, to form the primary tenses from the general root, or stem of the verb, yet there is such a multitude of exceptions in the third conjugation, (and some in the others also,) which it is impossible to bring under any rule, that it will be found indispensable, after all, to learn the conjugation of each verb from the dictionary, or from the table of irregular conjugations (§ 81). For this reason, they are here omitted in the text as useless for any practical purpose. The principal methods proposed are in substance the two following;



## 185 —§ 52. FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE ACTIVE VOICE.

### I. Indicative Mood.

1. The *Present* is a primary tense.
2. The *Imperfect* is formed from the present by changing :  
In the 1st Conjugation, *o* into *ābam*; as, *ām-o*, *am-ābam*,  
“ 2d “ *eo* into *ēbam*; as, *mon-eo*, *mon-ēbam*,  
“ 3d and 4th “ *o* into *ēbam*; as,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rēg-o,} \\ \text{audi-o,} \end{array} \right. \text{reg-ēbam,} \text{audi-ēbam.}$
3. The *Perfect* is a primary tense.
4. The *Pluperfect*, in all conjugations, is formed from the

*First.* The general root or stem that runs through the whole verb, consists of the letters preceding the infinitive terminations, *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ere*, *-ire*.

To form the primary tenses, there is added to the general root as follows :

	<i>Pr. Ind.</i>	<i>Pr. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>1st. Supine.</i>
In the 1st Conj.	-o,	-āre,	-āvi,	-ātum.
“ 2d “	-eo,	-ēre,	-ui,	-itum.
“ 3d “	-o, & -io,	-ere,	-i, & -si,	-tum, & -sum.
“ 4th “	-io,	-ire,	-ivi,	-itum.

In the perfect tense of the third conjugation, observe :

1. If the root of the verb ends with a vowel, the termination added is *s*; as, *acuo*, root *acu*, perfect *acui*.
2. If the root of the verb ends with a consonant, the usual termination is *si*, which, in uniting with the root, causes the following changes, viz :  
1st. If the letter preceding *si* be *c*, *g*, *h*, or *qu*, it unites with the *s*, and forms *x*; as, *dūco* (*duo-si*), *duxi*; *finḡo* (*finḡ-si*), *finxi*; *traho* (*trah-si*), *traxi*.  
*cōquo* (*cōqu-si*), *cōxi*.
- 2d. The letter *b* before *si* is changed into *p*; as, *scribo*, *scripsi*.
- 3d. When *d* precedes *si*, either the *d* or the *s* is rejected; as, *defendo*, *defendī*, *claudio*, *clausi*.
- 4th. The *s* is dropped in many verbs which cannot be brought under any definite rule; as, *lego*, *legi*; *ēmo*, *ēmi*.

In the supine of the third conjugation, observe :

1. When the root of the verb ends in a vowel, the supine adds *tum*, and lengthens the vowel preceding it; as, *acuo*, *acūtum*.
2. When the root ends with a consonant, the supine adds *tum*, sometimes *sum*. In uniting with the root, the following changes for the sake of euphony take place, viz :  
1st The letter *b* before *tum* is changed into *p*; as, *scribo*, *scriptum*.  
2d. The letters *g*, *h*, and *qu*, before *tum*, are changed into *c*; as, *rēgo*, *rectum*, *trahc*, *tractum*; *cōquo*, *coctum*.

perfect, by changing *i* into *eram*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-eram*; *monu-i*, *monu-eram*, &c.

5. The *Future* is formed from the present by changing—  
In the 1st Conjugation, *o* into *ābo*; as, *ām-o*, *am-ābo*.  
“ 2d “ *eo* into *ēbo*; as, *mon-eo*, *mon-ēbo*.  
“ 3d and 4th “ *o* into *am*; as,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{rēg-o,} \quad \text{rēg-am.} \\ \text{audi-o,} \quad \text{audi-am.} \end{array} \right.$

6 The *Future perfect*, in all conjugations, is formed from the perfect, by changing *i* into *ero*; as, *amāv-i*, *amav-ero*; *monu-i*, *monu-ero*, &c.

## II. The Subjunctive Mood.

7. The *Present Subjunctive* is formed from the present in

1. The letter *g* before *sum*, when a vowel precedes, unites with the *s*, and forms *x*; as, *figo* (*fig-sum*), *fianum*; when *r* precedes, the *g* is rejected; as, *tergo*, *tersum*.

4th. The letter *d* before *sum* is rejected; as, *defendo*, *defensum*.

*Secondly.* The general root being found as before; then, to form the *second* root, in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, (i. e. the root of the perfect tense,) add *av* for the first, *u* for the second, and *it* for the fourth; as, *ām*, *āmav*; *mon*, *monu*; *aud*, *audiv*.

To form the third root, (i. e. the root of the supine,) in the same conjugations, add to the general root the syllables *ātu*, *itū*, and *itū*; as, *am*, *amātu*; *mon*, *monitū*; *aud*, *auditū*.

The three roots being thus found, the primary tenses are formed as follows, viz:

1. From the first root, the present indicative is formed,

In the 1st Conjugation, by adding -o,	as, <i>am</i> , <i>ām-o</i> .
“ 2d “ “ -eo,	as, <i>mon</i> , <i>mon-eo</i> .
“ 3d “ “ -o, or -io,	as, <i>reg</i> , <i>reg-o</i> .
“ 4th “ “ -io,	as, <i>aud</i> , <i>aud-io</i> .

2. From the same root, the present infinitive is formed,

In the 1st Conjugation, by adding -āre,	as, <i>am</i> , <i>am-āre</i> .
“ 2d “ “ -ēre,	as, <i>mon</i> , <i>mon-ēre</i> .
“ 3d “ “ -ere,	as, <i>reg</i> , <i>reg-ere</i> .
“ 4th “ “ -ire,	as, <i>aud</i> , <i>aud-ire</i> .

3. From the second root, in all conjugations, the perfect is formed by adding *i*; as, *amāv-i*, *monu-i*, *audiv-i*.

4. From the third root in all conjugations, the first supine is formed by adding *m*; as, *amātu-m*, *monitū-m*, &c.

The third conjugation is so irregular in the formation of its roots, that no rules are attempted.

The first of these methods is substantially that offered in the Grammar of Zumpt. The second is the plan of Andrews and Stoddard, which they carry out by applying it to all the tenses, secondary as well as primary.

dicative,—in the first conjugation, by changing *o* into *em*; as, *ām-o*, *ām-em*;—in the second, third, and fourth, by changing *o* into *an*; as, *monē-o*, *monē-am*; *rēg-o*, *rēg-am*; *audi-o*, *audi-am*.

8. The *Imperfect Subjunctive*, in all conjugations, is formed from the present infinitive, by adding *m*; as, *amāre*, *amārem*; *monēre*, *monērem*; *regere*, *regērem*, &c.

9. The *Perfect Subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *erim*; as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-erim*; *monu-i*, *monu-erim*, &c.

10. The *Pluperfect Subjunctive* is formed from the perfect indicative by changing *i* into *issem*; as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-issem*; *monu-i*, *monu-issem*, &c.

### III. *The Imperative Mood.*

11. The *Present Imperative* is formed from the present infinitive, by taking away *re*; as, *amāre*, *āmā*; *monēre*, *mōnē*; *regere*, *rēgē*; *audire*, *audi*.

### IV. *The Infinitive Mood.*

12. The *Present Infinitive* is a primary tense.

13. The *Perfect Infinitive* is formed from the perfect indicative, by changing *i* into *isse*; as, *amāv-i*, *amāv-isse*; *monu-i*, *monu-isse*, &c.

14. The *Future Infinitive* is a compound tense, made up of *esse* or *fuisse*, and the future participle in *rus*; as, *esse* or *fuisse* *amatūrus*, *-a*, *-um*; *esse* or *fuisse* *monitūrus*, *-a*, *-um*, &c.

### V. *Participles, Gerunds, and Supines.*

15. The *Present Participle* is formed from the present indicative by changing,

<i>o</i> ,	in the 1st Conjugation,	into <i>ans</i> ; as, <i>ām-o</i> , <i>ām-ans</i> .
<i>eo</i> ,	" 2d "	into <i>ens</i> ; as, <i>mon-eo</i> , <i>mōn-ens</i> .
<i>o</i> ,	" 3d and 4th "	into <i>ens</i> ; as, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{rēg-o}, \textit{rēg-ens}. \\ \textit{audi-o}, \textit{audi-ens}. \end{array} \right.$

16. The *Future Participle* is formed from the former supine by changing *um* into *ūrus*; as, *amāt-um*, *amat-ūrus*; *monit-um*, *monit-ūrus*, &c.

17. The *Gerund* is formed from the present indicative by changing,

o, in the 1st Conjugation, into *andum*; as, *ām-o, am-andum.*  
 eo, " 2d " into *endum*; as, *mon-eo, mon-endum.*  
 o, " 3d and 4th " into *endum*; as,  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} rēg-o, rēg-endum. \\ audi-o, audi-endum. \end{array} \right.$

18. The *Former Supine* is a primary part of the verb.

19. The *Latter Supine* is formed from the former by dropping *m*; as, *amātum, amātu; monitum, monitu.*

## 186.—§ 53. FORMATION OF THE TENSES IN THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. In the *Indicative* mood, the *present* passive is formed from the present active by adding *r*; as, *āmo, āmor; moneo, moneor, &c.*;—the imperfect and the future passive, from the same tenses in the active voice, by changing *m* into *r*; as, *amābam, amābar*;—or adding *r* to *bo*; as, *monēbo, monēbor, &c.*

2. In the *Subjunctive* mood, the *present* and the *imperfect* passive are formed from the same tenses in the active voice, by changing *m* into *r*; as, *āmem, āmer; moneam, monear, &c.*

3. The *perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative*, and the *perfect and pluperfect subjunctive*, are compound tenses, made up of the perfect participle passive, and the verb *sum* as an auxiliary, as exhibited in the paradigm of these tenses.

4. The *Imperative* passive, in all verbs, is formed by adding *re* to the imperative active; as, *āmā, amāre; mōnē, monēre, &c.* Hence, the imperative passive is like the present infinitive active.

5. The *Present Infinitive* passive is formed from the present infinitive active, by changing *re* in the first, second, and fourth conjugations, into *ri*; as, *amā-re, amā-ri; monē-re, monē-ri, audi-re, audi-ri*; and by changing *ēre* in the third conjugation into *i*; as, *reg-ēre, rēg-i*. But *arcesso* has *arcessiri*.

The *Perfect Infinitive* is a compound tense, made up of the perfect participle, and *esse* or *fuisse* prefixed; as, *esse* or *fuisse amātus, a, um, &c.*

The *Future Infinitive* is also a compound tense, made up of the former supine and *iri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo*; as, *amātum iri*, *monitum iri*, &c.

6. The *Perfect Participle* is formed from the former supine, by changing *um* into *us*; as, *amāt-um*, *amāt-us*; *monit-um*, *monit-us*, &c.

The *Future Participle* is formed as the active gerund (185-17), by putting *dus* instead of *dum*; as, gerund, *amandum*, participle, *amandus*; gerund, *monendum*, participle, *monendus*, &c.

### 187.—§ 54. THE IRREGULAR VERB SUM.\*

The irregular verb *sum* is sometimes called a *substantive* verb, as it denotes being, or simple existence; as, *sum*, "I am," "I exist." Sometimes it is called *auxiliary*, because it is used as an auxiliary verb in the inflection of the passive voice. It is conjugated thus:

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>
<i>Sum,</i>	<i>esse,</i>	<i>fui.</i>

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE, *am*.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. <i>Ego Sum,</i> †	<i>I am,</i>
	2. <i>Tu Es,</i>	<i>Thou† art, or you are,</i>
	3. <i>Ille Est,</i>	<i>He is;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. <i>Nos Sūmus.</i>	<i>We are,</i>
	2. <i>Vos Estis,</i>	<i>Ye, or you are,</i>
	3. <i>Illi Sunt,</i>	<i>They are.</i>

\* This verb, being irregular, properly belongs to § 88, but is inserted here, because, as an auxiliary, it is much used in the inflection of regular verbs.

† In the Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative moods, every part of the verb must have its nominative expressed or understood. See 181-8. The nominatives *ego*, *tu*, *ille*, of the singular, and *nos*, *vos*, *illi*, of the plural, are here prefixed in the present tense, to show their place and their use; but in the following tenses, and in the following conjugations, they are omitted. Still they are to be regarded as understood, and may be supplied at pleasure.

† See 118, Note 2. In the plural, "you" is much more common than "ye," which is now seldom used.

IMPERFECT, *was*.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Eram,	<i>I was,</i>
	2. Eras,	<i>Thou wast, or you were,</i>
	3. Erat,	<i>He was;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Erāmus,	<i>We were,</i>
	2. Erātis,	<i>Ye, or you were,</i>
	3. Erant,	<i>They were.</i>

PERFECT Definite, *have been*; Indefinite, *was*.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fui,	<i>I have been,</i>
	2. Fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been,</i>
	3. Fuit.	<i>He has been;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuīmus,	<i>We have been,</i>
	2. Fuistis,	<i>Ye have been,</i>
	3. Fuērunt, or fuēre,	<i>They have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had been*.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuēram,	<i>I had been,</i>
	2. Fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been,</i>
	3. Fuērat,	<i>He had been;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuerāmus,	<i>We had been,</i>
	2. Fuerātis,	<i>Ye had been,</i>
	3. Fuērant,	<i>They had been.</i>

FUTURE, *shall, or will*.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Ero,	<i>I shall, or will be,</i>
	2. Eris,	<i>Thou shalt, or wilt be,</i>
	3. Erit,	<i>He shall, or will be;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Erimus,	<i>We shall, or will be,</i>
	2. Eritis,	<i>Ye shall, or will be,</i>
	3. Erunt,	<i>They shall, or will be.</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have been*.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuēro,	<i>I shall, or will have been,</i>
	2. Fuēris,	<i>Thou shalt, or wilt have been,</i>
	3. Fuērit,	<i>He shall, or will have been;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuerīmus,	<i>We shall, or will have been,</i>
	2. Fuerītis,	<i>Ye shall, or will have been,</i>
	3. Fuērint,	<i>They shall, or will have been.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Sim,	<i>I may, or can be,</i>
	2. Sis,	<i>Thou mayst, or canst be</i>
	3. Sit,	<i>He may, or can be;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Simus,	<i>We may, or can be,</i>
	2. Sitis,	<i>Ye may, or can be,</i>
	3. Sint,	<i>They may, or can be.</i>

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Essem,	<i>I might, &amp;c., be,</i>
	2. Esses,	<i>Thou mightst, &amp;c., be,</i>
	3. Esset,	<i>He might, &amp;c., be;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Essēmus,	<i>We might, &amp;c., be,</i>
	2. Essētis,	<i>Ye might, &amp;c., be,</i>
	3. Essent,	<i>They might, &amp;c., be.</i>

PERFECT, *may have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuërim,	<i>I may have been,</i>
	2. Fuëris,	<i>Thou mayst have been,</i>
	3. Fuërit,	<i>He may have been;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuerīmus,	<i>We may have been,</i>
	2. Fuerītis,	<i>Ye may have been,</i>
	3. Fuërint,	<i>They may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Fuissem,	<i>I might, &amp;c., have been,</i>
	2. Fuisses,	<i>Thou mightst, &amp;c., have been</i>
	3. Fuisset,	<i>He might, &amp;c., have been;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Fuissēmus,	<i>We might, &amp;c., have been,</i>
	2. Fuissētis,	<i>Ye might, &amp;c., have been,</i>
	3. Fuissent,	<i>They might, &amp;c., have been</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Es, or Esto,	<i>Be thou,</i>
	3. Esto,	<i>Let him be;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Este, or estôte,	<i>Be ye,</i>
	3. Suntō,	<i>Let them be.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD

PRES.	Esse,	To be (177).
PERF.	Fuisse,	To have been.
FUT.	Esse futūrus, a, um,	To be about to be.
F. PERF.	Fuisse futūrus, a, um,	To have been about to be.

## PARTICIPLE

FUTURE.	Futūrus, a, um,	About to be.
---------	-----------------	--------------

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Imperative.	Infinitive.	Participle.
PRES.	sum,	sim,	es, or esto.	esse	
IMP.	ēram,	essem,		fuisse,	
PERF.	fui,	fuērīm			
PLUP.	fuēram,	fuissem.			
FUT.	ēro,			esse futūrus,	futūrus.
F-PERF.	fuēro.			fuisse futūrus.	

*Obs. 1.* The compounds of *sum*; namely, *adsum*, *absūm*, *desūm*, *insum*, *intersūm*, *obsum*, *præsum*, *subsum*, *supersūm*, are conjugated like the simple verb; but *insum*, and *subsum*, want the perfect, and the tenses formed from it. *Prōsum*, and *possum* from *pōtis* and *sum*, are very irregular. 221–1, 2.

*Obs. 2.* Instead of *Essem*, *fōrem* is sometimes used, and also *fōre*, instead of *fuisse*.

*Obs. 3.* The participle *ens* is not in use, but appears in two compounds, *absens*, and *præsens*. Also, the supine and gerund are wanting, but the inflection in the persons and numbers is regular.

*Note.*—The great irregularity of this verb arises from the different parts being formed from different themes or roots, viz: the parts beginning with *e* from *eo*, the root of the Greek *εἶμι*, and those beginning with *f* from *fuo*, the same as the Greek *φύω*. In ancient times, this verb was conjugated *fua*, *fuere*, *fui* (*fūvi*), *fūtum*. *Fuere* was contracted *fōre*, and *fuērem*, *fōrem*; and from *fūtum*, was formed *futūrus*. Hence, also, the ancient forms *fuērīm*, *fuēro*, &c.

188.—§ 55. EXERCISES ON THE VERB *SUM*.

1. Give the designation of the verb.—conjugate it;—give the tense, mood, person, number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order; thus,—*Sum*, verb intransitive, irregular, found in the



present indicative, active, first person singular, "I am;"—*Fuit*, verb in transitive, irregular, found in the perfect indicative, active, third person singular: definite, "he has been;" indefinite, "he was."\*

*Est*, *erat*, *erit*, *fuëram*, *fuërim*, *fuëro*, *sit*, *esset*, *fuisti*, *fui-*  
*mus*, *fuërunt*, *fuëre*, *erunt*, *sint*, *sūmus*, *erant*, *essent*, *fuissent*,  
*esse*, *esto*, *sunto*, *fuisse*, *es*, *eras*, *fuëras*, *fuistis*, *futūrus esse*,  
*futūrus*, *sint*, &c., *ad libitum*.

2 Translate the following English words into Latin, naming the part of the verb used; thus,—“I will be,” *ero*, in the future indicative, active, first person singular. The Latin word for *I, thou, he, we, you, they*, to be omitted or inserted at pleasure.†

We are, they were, you have been, thou hast been, they will be, he may be, I shall have been, to be, be thou, let them be, about to be, to be about to be, we should be, we should have been, I may have been, they will have been, they may have been, they have been, you were, thou wast, he is, they are, &c., *ad libitum*.

3. The verb *sum* forms the *copula* connecting the subject and the predicate in a simple proposition, the predicate of which is not a verb. Thus in the proposition: “*Man is mortal*,” *man* is the subject *mortal*, the predicate; and *is*, the copula. With the verb *sum* as a copula in different tenses, and the exercises § 23–1, form simple sentences; thus, *cāsa est* (*erat*, *fuit*, &c.) *parva*, “the cottage is, (was, has been, &c.) small;” plural, *cāsa sunt parvæ*, “the cottages are small.”

In this way, translate into English the following propositions (see p. 56)

*Poëta erat clārus*,—*opus magnum erit*,—*nubes densæ sunt*,—*æstas callida fuit*,—*urbis antiqua fuit*,—&c.

Translate the following English sentences into Latin:

Life is short,—the day was clear,—the boys are docile,—the shepherd will be faithful,—the apples are sweet,—&c.

\* In these and all following exercises on the verb, it will be of great importance, in order to form habits of accuracy, and as a preparation for future exercises in translating and parsing, to require the pupil, in this manner, to state every thing belonging to a verb, in the order here indicated, or in and other the teacher may direct, always, however, observing the same; any also, for the saving of time and unnecessary labor, to state them in the fewest words possible, and without waiting to have every word drawn from him by questions. Let it be observed, also, that the term *active* here has no reference to the class of the verb, but only to its form, being that of the active voice. 136–2.

† *N. B.* It will be a profitable exercise to require each pupil to write out the Latin for these and other English words that may be dictated,—carefully to mark the quantity of long and short vowels, and to pronounce them correctly after they are written.

189.—§ 56. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
<b>Amo,</b>	<b>amāre,</b>	<b>amāvi,</b>	<b>amātum,</b>	<b>To love.</b>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *love, do love, am loving.* 157.

<b>Sing.</b>	1. Am-o,	<i>I love, do love, am loving,</i>
	2. Am-as,	<i>Thou lovest, dost love, art loving.</i>
	3. Am-at,	<i>He loves, does love, is loving;</i>
<b>Plur.</b>	1. Am-āmus,	<i>We love, do love, are loving,</i>
	2. Am-ātis,	<i>Ye, or you love, do love, are loving,</i>
	3. Am-ant,	<i>They love, do love, are loving</i>

IMPERFECT, *loved, did love, was loving.* 159

<b>Sing.</b>	1. Am-ābam,	<i>I loved, did love, was loving,</i>
	2. Am-ābas,	<i>Thou lovedst, didst love, wast loving</i>
	3. Am-ābat,	<i>He loved, did love, was loving;</i>
<b>Plur.</b>	1. Am-abāmus,	<i>We loved, did love, were loving,</i>
	2. Am-abātis,	<i>Ye loved, did love, were loving,</i>
	3. Am-ābant,	<i>They loved, did love, were loving.</i>

PERFECT Def., *have loved*; Indef., *loved, did love.* 161.

<b>Sing.</b>	1. Am-āvi,	<i>I have loved, loved, did love,</i>
	2. Am-avisti,	<i>Thou hast loved, lovedst, didst love,</i>
	3. Am-āvit,	<i>He has loved, loved, did love;</i>
<b>Plur.</b>	1. Am-avimus,	<i>We have loved, loved, did love,</i>
	2. Am-avistis,	<i>Ye have loved, loved, did love,</i>
	3. Am-avērunt, or } -avēre,	<i>They have loved, loved, did love.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had loved.* 165.

<b>Sing.</b>	1. Am-avēram,	<i>I had loved,</i>
	2. Am-avēras,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
	3. Am-avērat,	<i>He had loved;</i>
<b>Plur.</b>	1. Am-averāmus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
	2. Am-averātis,	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
	3. Am-avērant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

FUTURE, *shall, or will love.* 167.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-ābo,	<i>I shall, or will love,</i>
	2. Am-ābis,	<i>Thou shalt, or wilt love,</i>
	3. Am-ābit,	<i>He shall, or will love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-ābimus,	<i>We shall, or will love,</i>
	2. Am-ābitis,	<i>Ye shall, or will love;</i>
	3. Am-ābunt,	<i>They shall, or will love.</i>

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have loved.* 168.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-avēro,	<i>I shall, or will have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avēris,	<i>Thou shalt, or wilt have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avērit,	<i>He shall, or will have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-averimus,	<i>We shall, or will have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye shall, or will have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avērint,	<i>They shall, or will have loved.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can love.* 171.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-em,	<i>I may, or can love,</i>
	2. Am-es,	<i>Thou mayst, or canst love.</i>
	3. Am-et,	<i>He may, or can love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-ēmus,	<i>We may, or can love,</i>
	2. Am-ētis,	<i>Ye may, or can love,</i>
	3. Am-ent,	<i>They may, or can love.</i>

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should love.* 172.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
	2. Am-āres,	<i>Thou mightst love,</i>
	3. Am-āret,	<i>He might love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
	2. Am-arētis,	<i>Ye might love,</i>
	3. Am-ārent,	<i>They might love.</i>

PERFECT, *may have loved.* 173.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-avērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avēris,	<i>Thou mayst have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avērit,	<i>He may have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-averimus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye may have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avērint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have.* 174.

<i>Sing.</i> 1.	Am-avissem,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
2.	Am-avisses,	<i>Thou mightst have loved,</i>
3.	Am-avisset,	<i>He might have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 1.	Am-avissēmus,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
2.	Am-avissētis,	<i>Ye might have loved,</i>
3.	Am-avissent,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Sing.</i> 2.	Am-ā, or am-āto,	<i>Love thou, 149.</i>
3.	Am-āto,	<i>Let him love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> 2.	Am-āte, or am-atōte,	<i>Love ye,</i>
3.	Am-anto,	<i>Let them love.</i>

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>PRES.</i>	Am-āre,	<i>To love 178 and 180.</i>
<i>PERF.</i>	Am-avisse,	<i>To have loved,</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Esse am-atūrus, a, um,	<i>To be about to love,</i>
<i>F.-PERF.</i>	Fuisse am-atūrus, a, um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

#### PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRES.</i>	Am-ans,	<i>Loving.</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Am-atūrus, a, um,	<i>About to love.</i>

#### GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Am-andi,	<i>Of loving,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Am-ando,	<i>To loving,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Am-andum,	<i>Loving,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Am-ando,	<i>With, from, &amp;c., loving.</i>

#### SUPINES.

<i>Former,</i>	Am-ātum,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Latter,</i>	Am-ātu,	<i>To be loved, to love.</i>

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles</i>
<i>PRES.</i>	Amo,	Amem,	Amā	Amāre,	Amans,
<i>IMP.</i>	Amābam,	Amārem,		Amāvisse,	
<i>PERF.</i>	Amāvī,	Amāverim,			
<i>PLUF.</i>	Amāveram,	Amāvissem.			
<i>FUT.</i>	Amābo,			Esse amatūrus,	Amatūrus.
<i>F.-PERF.</i>	Amāvero.			Fuisse amatūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect :

Cre-o,	cre-āre,	cre-āvi,	cre-ātum,	<i>To create.</i>
Rōg-o,	rog-āre,	rog-āvi,	rog-ātum,	<i>To ask.</i>
Vōc-o,	voc-āre,	voc-āvi,	voc-ātum,	<i>To call.</i>
Dōm-c,	dom-āre,	dom-ūi,	dom-ītum,	<i>To tame.</i>

## 190.—§ 57. EXERCISES ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION; ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation of the verb, conjugate it; give the tense,—mood,—voice,—person,—number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order; thus,—*Amo*, a verb transitive, first conjugation, *āre*, *amāre*, *amāvi*, *amātum*. It is found in the present indicative active, first person singular, “I love,” “I do love,” “I am loving.”

*Amābat*, *amavērat*, *āmet*, *amaveritis*, *amābunt*, *creavimus*, *creavērat*, *domuērat*, *domuisset*, *amavēro*, *domuēro*, *vocavērim*, *vocā*, *vocāre*, *domā*, *creavisse*, *domuisse*, *amatūrus*, *domitūrus*, *āmans*, *amandum*, *amātu*, *domitum*, *domābam*, *domābo*,—*creat*, *creāret*, *amāret*, *amavisti*, *amavēre*, *domuistis*, *amāto*, *amando*, *amavērunt*, *creāre*, *vocavērunt*, *vocavērint*, *vocābunt*, *vocarētis*, *domabitis*, &c., &c., *ad libitum*.

2. Translate the following English words into Latin, giving the part of the verb used; thus,—“I was loving,” *amābam*, in the imperfect indicative active, first person singular.

He will love, I might love, I had loved, I might have loved, he shall love, I may love, he created, I called, I may have called, he will tame, he has tamed, he would have tamed, love thou, let them love; to love, about to love, of loving, to have loved, they were loving, they have loved, thou hast created, thou hast tamed, &c., *ad libitum*.

3. The Infinitive with a subject. The infinitive, after another verb, and with an accusative before it as its subject, is translated, into English, in the indicative or potential mood; and the accusative in Latin is made the nominative in English; as, *dicit me amāre*, “he says that I love.” The accusatives are thus translated :

<i>Me</i> , that I;	<i>nos</i> , that we;	<i>homīnem</i> , that the man.
<i>Te</i> , that thou;	<i>vos</i> , that you;	<i>homīnes</i> , that the men.
<i>Illu</i> m, that he;	<i>illos</i> , that they;	<i>femīnas</i> , that the women.

Infinitives, after verbs of the present, past, and future tenses, are rendered as in the examples, 180, or according to the following rules; viz:

**RULE I.** *When the preceding verb is of the present or future tense, the present infinitive is translated as the present indicative; the perfect infinitive, as the perfect indicative; and the future infinitive, as the future indicative.* 180, Nos. 1, 4, 7; also 3, 6, 9.

**RULE II.** *When the preceding verb is in past time (i. e. in the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect tense), the present infinitive is translated as the imperfect, or perfect indicative; the perfect infinitive, as the pluperfect indicative; and the future infinitive, as the imperfect subjunctive.* 180, Nos. 2, 5, 8.

**RULE III.** *The future perfect of the infinitive with a subject, is always translated as the pluperfect subjunctive, whatever be the tense of the preceding verb.* 180, Nos. 10, 11, 12.

4. According to the preceding rules, and the examples referred to, translate the following sentences into English—observing that *dicit*, “he says,” is present time; *dixit*, “he said,” past; and *dicet*, “he will say,” future.

*Dicit* me vocāre,—te amāre,—nos amāvisse,—vos amatūros esse,—nos amatūros fuisse,—illos domāre,—te amatūrum esse,—illos rogatūros esse,—homīnes rogatūros fuisse.

*Dixit* me vocāre,—te amāre,—nos amāvisse,—nos amatūros esse,—nos amatūros fuisse,—vos domāre,—te amatūrum esse,—illum rogāvisse,—vos rogāre,—illam rogatūram esse.

*Dixit* nos vocāre;—*dicet* illum creāre;—*dicit* te creatūrum esse;—*dixit* se amatūrum (179, Note 1); *dicit* illos creatūros,—illum vocatūrum,—vos domitūros esse,—domitūros fuisse,—me rogāre,—te rogāvisse,—vos rogatūros, &c.

5. Translate the following English into Latin, taking care to put the participle of the future infinitive in the same gender, number, and case, as the accusative preceding it.

*He said* that I loved,—that I was calling. *He says* that they will tame—that I would have created,—that they will call,—that he loves. *He will say* that I love,—that I have loved,—that I will love. *He said* that I had called,—that they would have called,—that they tamed,—that they would tame,—that he would have tamed. *He says* that I am asking,—that they are asking,—that they are calling,—that we did call,—that they do ask,—that we will ask, &c.

191.—§ 58. PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Amor,	amāri,	amātus, <i>To be loved</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am loved.* 157-8.

<i>S.</i> 1. Am-or,	<i>I am loved,</i>
2. Am-āris, or -āre,	<i>Thou art loved,</i>
3. Am-atur,	<i>He is loved ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved,</i>
2. Am-amīni,	<i>Ye are loved,</i>
3. Am-antur,	<i>They are loved.</i>

IMPERFECT, *was loved.* 160-5.

<i>S.</i> 1. Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved,</i>
2. Am-abāris, or-abāre,	<i>Thou wast loved,</i>
3. Am-abatur,	<i>He was loved ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Am-abāmur,	<i>We were loved,</i>
2. Am-abamīni,	<i>Ye were loved,</i>
3. Am-abantur,	<i>They were loved.</i>

PERFECT, *have been loved, was loved, am loved.* 164-5.

<i>S.</i> 1. Am-ātus*sum, or fui,	<i>I have been loved, &amp;c.,</i>
2. Am-ātus es, or fuisti,	<i>Thou hast been loved,</i>
3. Am-ātus est, or fuit,	<i>He has been loved ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Am-āti sūmus, or fuīmus,	<i>We have been loved,</i>
2. Am-āti estis, or fuistis,	<i>Ye have been loved,</i>
3. Am-āti sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre,	<i>They have been loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *had been loved.* 166-2

<i>S.</i> 1. Am-ātus ēram, or fuēram,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
2. Am-ātus ēras, or fuēras,	<i>Thou hadst been loved.</i>
3. Am-ātus ērat, or fuērat,	<i>He had been loved ;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Am-āti erāmus, or fuerāmus,	<i>We had been loved,</i>
2. Am-āti erātis, or fuerātis,	<i>Ye had been loved,</i>
3. Am-āti ērant, or fuērant,	<i>They had been loved.</i>

\* See 164-5. *Note.*—*Fui* and *fuisti*, are very seldom found with the perfect participle. *Ero*, as well as *fuero*, is used in the future-perfect. 168-4.

**FUTURE, *shall, or will be loved.* 167-3.**

- |                                |                                      |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Am-ābor,          | <i>I shall, or will be loved,</i>    |
| 2. Am-abēris, <i>or</i> abēre, | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-abitur,                  | <i>He shall, or will be loved;</i>   |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Am-abimur,        | <i>We shall, or will be loved,</i>   |
| 2. Am-abimini,                 | <i>Ye shall, or will be loved,</i>   |
| 3. Am-abuntur,                 | <i>They shall, or will be loved.</i> |

**FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have been loved.* 168-4.**

- |                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Am-ātus fuēro,   | <i>I shall have been loved,</i>   |
| 2. Am-ātus fuēris,            | <i>Thou wilt have been loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-ātus fuērit,            | <i>He will have been loved;</i>   |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Am-āti fuerimus, | <i>We shall have been loved,</i>  |
| 2. Am-āti fueritis,           | <i>Ye will have been loved,</i>   |
| 3. Am-āti fuērint,            | <i>They will have been loved.</i> |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can be loved.***

- |                             |                                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Am-ēr,         | <i>I may, or can be loved,</i>        |
| 2. Am-ēris, <i>or</i> -ēre, | <i>Thou mayst, or canst be loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-etur,                 | <i>He may, or can be loved;</i>       |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Am-ēmur,       | <i>We may, or can be loved,</i>       |
| 2. Am-emini,                | <i>Ye may, or can be loved,</i>       |
| 3. Am-entur,                | <i>They may, or can be loved.</i>     |

**IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should be loved***

- |                                 |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Am-ārer,           | <i>I might be loved,</i>      |
| 2. Am-arēris, <i>or</i> -arēre, | <i>Thou mightst be loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-arētur,                   | <i>He might be loved;</i>     |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Am-arēmur,         | <i>We might be loved,</i>     |
| 2. Am-aremini,                  | <i>Ye might be loved,</i>     |
| 3. Am-arentur,                  | <i>They might be loved.</i>   |

**PERFECT, *may have been loved.***

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Am-ātus sim, <i>or</i> fuērim,    | <i>I may have been loved,</i>      |
| 2. Am-ātus sis, <i>or</i> fuēris,              | <i>Thou mayst have been loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-ātus sit, <i>or</i> fuērit,              | <i>He may have been loved;</i>     |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Am-āti simus, <i>or</i> fuerimus, | <i>We may have been loved,</i>     |
| 2. Am-āti sitis, <i>or</i> fueritis,           | <i>Ye may have been loved,</i>     |
| 3. Am-āti sint, <i>or</i> fuērint,             | <i>They may have been loved.</i>   |



PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been loved*.

- S. 1. Am-ātus essem, or fuisset, *I might have been loved,*  
 2. Am-ātus esses, or fuisses, *Thou mightst have been loved,*  
 3. Am-ātus esset, or fuisset, *He might have been loved;*  
 P. 1. Am-āti essēmus, or fuissēmus, *We might have been loved,*  
 2. Am-āti essētis, or fuissētis, *Ye might have been loved,*  
 3. Am-āti essent, or fuissent, *They might have been loved*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- Sing. 2. Am-āre, or-ātor, *Be thou loved,*  
 3. Am-ātor, *Let him be loved;*  
 Plur. 2. Am-amīni, *Be ye loved,*  
 3. Am-ātor, *Let them be loved.*

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

- PRES. Am-āri, *To be loved.* 178, and 180.  
 PERF. Esse, or fuisse am-ātus, *To have been loved.*  
 FUT. Am-ātum iri, *To be about to be loved.*

#### PARTICIPLES.

- PERF. Am-ātus, a, um, { *Loved, being loved, having been loved.*  
 FUT. Am-andus, a, um, { *To be loved, proper, or necessary to be loved.*

#### SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles</i>
PRES.	Amor,	Amer,	Amāre.	Amāri,	
IMP.	Amābar,	Amārer,			
PERF.	Amātus sum,	Amātus sim,		{ Esse, or Fuisse amātus,	{ Amātus.
PLUP.	Amātus eram,	Amātus essem.			
FUT.	Amābor,			Amātum iri.	Amandus
V. PERF.	Amātus fuero.				

After the same manner, inflect :

- Creor, creāri, creātus, *To be created.*  
 Rōgor, rogāri, rogātus, *To be asked.*  
 Vōcor, vocāri, vocātus, *To be called.*  
 Dōmor, domāri, domītus, *To be tamed.*

## 192.—§ 59. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation of the verb,—conjugate it ;—give the tense, mood, voice, person, number, and translation, of the following words, always following the same order ; thus,—*Amor*, verb transitive, first conjugation ; *amāre*, *amāvi*, *amātum*,—found in the present indicative passive, first person singular, “ I am loved.”

*Amabātur*, *amantur*, *amātus est*, *amabītur*, *amābar*, *amarētur*, *amentur*, *amātus sim*, *amātus fuēro*, *amāti fuērunt*, *amāti essēmus*, *amabamīni*, *amāris*, *amātus esset*, *amāti fuissent*, *amabuntur*, *amantor*, *amāre*, *amātus esse*, *amātus*, *amātum iri*, *amandus*, *amemīni*, *amaremīni*, *amantur*, *creātur*, *crearētur*, *vocabītur*, *domantur*, *vocātus sum* ; &c.

2. Translate the following English words into Latin, giving the part of the verb used ; thus, “ I am loved,” *āmor*, in the present indicative passive, first person singular.

He is loved, they are loved, I have been loved, they were created, he had been called, they will be tamed, I might be loved, they may have been loved, to be loved, to have been called, I had been called, being called, they are tamed, they have been tamed, he will be loved, they will have been loved, they may be called, I may be called, he might have been created, they will be loved, &c.

3. Translate the following sentences into English, according to the rules 190.

*Dicit eum amāri*,—*illos vocātos esse*,—*me vocātum iri*,—*te amātum iri*,—*me creāri*,—*eos domāri*,—*illum amātum fuisse*,—*nos domītos esse*,—*nos domītum iri*,—*illos amāri*,—*illos vocātum iri*.

*Dixit eum amāri*,—*illos vocātos esse*,—*me vocātum iri*,—*te amātum iri*,—*me creāri*,—*eos domāri*,—*illum amātum fuisse*,—*nos domītos esse*,—*nos domītum iri*,—*illos amāri*,—*illos vocātum iri*,—*te amāri*.

*Dicet eum amāri*, &c., as in the preceding.

4. Translate the following English into Latin, taking care that the principle of the perfect infinitive be put in the same gender, number, and case, as the accusative before it.

He says that I am loved,—that he was loved,—that he will be called,—that they were created,—that we were tamed. *He*

said that I was called,—that we were created,—that they had been created. *He will say* that I was loved,—that I will be loved,—that they will be called,—that you are called,—that he will be called. *He said* that they had been tamed, &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE AND THE PASSIVE VOICE.

5. Give the designation, &c., as directed No. 1. Amābo, amārem, amarētur, amātus sim, amant, vocātur, crearentur, domantur, domitum iri, creāri, amant, amabuntur, amarent, amavissent, amavērat, amētis, amātis, amabātis, amavēris, ama, amavisse, amandum, amātur, vocātum iri, vocātus es, vocāti erant, vocātus esset (*dicit se*, "he says that he"), amātūrum esse, (*dixit se*, "he said that he,") amāre, amāri, (*nos*, "that we,") vocātos esse, amanto, amābunt, amavistis, amavēre, amarētis, (*vos*, "that you,") rogāre, rogavisse, rogātos esse, rogātūros fuisse, rogābunt.

Conjugate and inflect the following verbs like *Amo*; viz :

Accūso, <i>I accuse.</i>	Certo, <i>I strive.</i>	Repāro, <i>I repair</i>
Æstimo, <i>I value.</i>	Cogīto, <i>I think.</i>	Rōgo, <i>I ask.</i>
Ambūlo, <i>I walk.</i>	Festīno, <i>I hasten.</i>	Servo, <i>I keep.</i>
Cūro, <i>I care.</i>	Navīgo, <i>I sail.</i>	Vīto, <i>I shun.</i>

193.—§ 60. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.	
Moneo,	monēre,	monui,	monitum,	<i>To advise</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *I advise, do advise, am advising.* 157.

S. 1. Mon-eo,	<i>I advise,</i>
2. Mōn-es,	<i>Thou advisest,</i>
3. Mōn-et,	<i>He advises;</i>
P. 1. Mon-ēmus,	<i>We advise,</i>
2. Mon-ētis,	<i>Ye advise,</i>
3. Mon-ent,	<i>They advise.</i>

IMPERFECT, *advised, did advise, was advising.* 159

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Mon-ēbam,   | <i>I advised,</i>      |
| 2. Mon-ēbas,             | <i>Thou advisedst,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ēbat,             | <i>He advised;</i>     |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Mon-ebāmus, | <i>We advised,</i>     |
| 2. Mon-ebātis,           | <i>Ye advised,</i>     |
| 3. Mon-ēbant,            | <i>They advised.</i>   |

PERFECT Def., *have advised;* Indef., *advised, did advise* 164

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Monu-i,    | <i>I have advised,</i>    |
| 2. Monu-isti,           | <i>Thou hast advised,</i> |
| 3. Monu-it,             | <i>He has advised;</i>    |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Monu-īmus, | <i>We have advised,</i>   |
| 2. Monu-istis,          | <i>Ye have advised,</i>   |
| 3. Monu-ērunt, or -ēre, | <i>They have advised.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *had advised.* 165.

- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Monu-eram,   | <i>I had advised.</i>      |
| 2. Monu-eras,             | <i>Thou hadst advised,</i> |
| 3. Monu-erat,             | <i>He had advised;</i>     |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Monu-erāmus, | <i>We had advised,</i>     |
| 2. Monu-erātis,           | <i>Ye had advised,</i>     |
| 3. Monu-erant,            | <i>They had advised.</i>   |

FUTURE, *shall, or will advise.* 167.

- |                          |                                    |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Mon-ēbo,    | <i>I shall, or will advise,</i>    |
| 2. Mon-ēbis,             | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt advise</i>  |
| 3. Mon-ēbit,             | <i>He shall, or will advise;</i>   |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Mon-ebīmus, | <i>We shall, or will advise,</i>   |
| 2. Mon-ebītis,           | <i>Ye shall, or will advise,</i>   |
| 3. Mon-ēbunt,            | <i>They shall, or will advise.</i> |

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have advised.* 168.

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <i>S.</i> 1. Monu-ēro,    | <i>I shall, or will have advised,</i>    |
| 2. Monu-ēris,             | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt have advised,</i> |
| 3. Monu-ērit,             | <i>He shall, or will have advised;</i>   |
| <i>P.</i> 1. Monu-erīmus, | <i>We shall, or will have advised,</i>   |
| 2. Monu-erītis,           | <i>Ye shall, or will have advised,</i>   |
| 3. Monu-ērint,            | <i>They shall, or will have advised.</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can* advise. 171.

S. 1.	Mon-eam,	<i>I may, or can advise,</i>
2.	Mon-eas,	<i>Thou mayst, or canst advise,</i>
3.	Mon-eat,	<i>He may, or can advise ;</i>
P. 1.	Mon-eāmus,	<i>We may, or can advise,</i>
2.	Mon-eātis,	<i>Ye may, or can advise,</i>
3.	Mon-eant,	<i>They may, or can advise.</i>

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* advise. 172.

S. 1.	Mon-ērem,	<i>I might advise,</i>
2.	Mon-ēres,	<i>Thou mightst advise,</i>
3.	Mon-ēret,	<i>He might advise ;</i>
P. 1.	Mon-erēmus,	<i>We might advise,</i>
2.	Mon-erētis,	<i>Ye might advise,</i>
3.	Mon-ērent,	<i>They might advise.</i>

PERFECT, *may* have advised. 173.

S. 1.	Monu-ērim,	<i>I may have advised,</i>
2.	Monu-ēris,	<i>Thou mayst have advised,</i>
3.	Monu-ērit,	<i>He may have advised ;</i>
P. 1.	Monu-erīmus,	<i>We may have advised,</i>
2.	Monu-erītis,	<i>Ye may have advised,</i>
3.	Monu-ērint,	<i>They may have advised.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* have advised. 174.

S. 1.	Monu-issem,	<i>I might have advised,</i>
2.	Monu-isses,	<i>Thou mightst have advised,</i>
3.	Monu-isset,	<i>He might have advised ;</i>
P. 1.	Monu-issēmus,	<i>We might have advised,</i>
2.	Monu-issētis,	<i>Ye might have advised,</i>
3.	Monu-issent,	<i>They might have advised.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2.	Mōn-e, or -ēto,	<i>Advise thou (149),</i>
3.	Mon-ēto,	<i>Let him advise ;</i>
P. 2.	Mon-ēte, or etōte,	<i>Advise ye or you,</i>
3.	Mon-ento,	<i>Let them advise.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mon-ère,	<i>To advise (178 and 180).</i>
PERF.	Monu-isse,	<i>To have advised,</i>
FUT.	Esse monitūrus,	<i>To be about to advise,</i>
F-PERF.	Fuisse monitūrus,	<i>To have been about to advise.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES	Mōn-ens,	<i>Advising,</i>
FUT.	Mon-itūrus,	<i>About to advise.</i>

## GERUNDS.

Nom.	Mon-endum,	<i>Advising,</i>
Gen.	Mon-endi,	<i>Of advising,</i>
Dat.	Mon-endo,	<i>To advising,</i>
Acc.	Mon-endum,	<i>Advising,</i>
Abl.	Mon-endo,	<i>With, &amp;c., advising.</i>

## SUPINES.

FORMER,	Mon-ītum,	<i>To advise,</i>
LATTER,	Mon-ītu,	<i>To be advised, or to advise</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicativa.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
PRES.	Moneo,	Moneam,	Mōnē.	Monēre,	Mōnens,
IMP.	Monēbam.	Monērem,			
PERF.	Monui,	Monuērim,		Monuisse,	
PLUP.	Monuēram,	Monuissē.			
FUT.	Monēbo,			Esse monitūrus,	Monitūrus.
F-PERF.	Monuēro.			Fuisse monitūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect.

Doc-ec.	doc-ère,	docu-i,	doc-tum,	<i>To teach.</i>
Jub-eo,	jub-ère,	juss-i,	jus-sum,	<i>To order.</i>
Vid-eo,	vid-ère,	vid-i,	vi-sum,	<i>To see.</i>

## 194.—§ 61. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation, &c., as directed 190-1.—Monēbo, monuit, monēret, monuērit, mōne, monuisse, mōnens, monendum, monēbat, mōnent, monento, monuisti, monuere,

monuerātis, monuissent.—Dōcent, jubēbat, jussérat, vidēret, videat, vidēbit, docuēris, dōce, doctūrus, jussūrus, vīsum, jussu, dōcens, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, &c., as directed 190-2.*—I have advised, I will advise, he may advise, I might advise, he will have advised, they advise, they had advised, they might have advised, thou hast advised, ye have advised, I did advise, he was advising.—He teaches, they taught, we had ordered, we would have ordered, I saw, I have seen, thou wilt see, he may see, they would have ordered, &c.

3. *Translate according to the rules 190-3, 4.*—*Dicit* (he says) me monēre,—nos monuisse,—illos monēre,—vos monitūros esse,—me monitūrum fuisse.—*Dixit* (he said) se monēre,—nos vidēre,—eum vidisse,—nos visūros esse,—me visūrum esse,—me visūrum fuisse,—vos vidisse,—se docēre,—nos docuisse,—vos doctūros esse,—illam (*that she*) visūram esse,—illum doctūrum esse, &c.

4. *As directed 190-3 and 5.* *He says that I advised; he said that I advised,—that I had advised,—that I would advise. He says that I will advise,—that I would have advised. He said that he (se) saw,—had seen,—would see,—would have seen. I advise that you should order. He says that I am advising,—that we will order, &c.*

## 195.—§ 62. PASSIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Moneor,	monēri,	monitus,	<i>To be advised.</i>

### PRESENT TENSE, *am advised.* 157-6.

<b>S.</b> 1. Mon-eor,	<i>I am advised,</i>
2. Mor-ēris, or -ēre,	<i>Thou art advised,</i>
3. Mon-ētur,	<i>He is advised;</i>
<b>P.</b> 1. Mon-ēmur,	<i>We are advised,</i>
2. Mon-emīni,	<i>Ye are advised,</i>
3. Mon-entur,	<i>They are advised.</i>

IMPERFECT, *was advised.* 160-5.

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> 1. Mon-ēbar,    | <i>I was advised,</i>     |
| 2. Mon-ebāris, or -ebāre, | <i>Thou wast advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ebātur,            | <i>He was advised;</i>    |
| <b>P.</b> 1. Mon-ebāmur,  | <i>We were advised,</i>   |
| 2. Mon-ebamini,           | <i>Ye were advised,</i>   |
| 3. Mon-ebantur,           | <i>They were advised.</i> |

PERFECT, *have been, was, am advised.* 164-5.

- |  |                                |
|--|--------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> 1. Mon-ītus sum, or fui,     | <i>I have been advised,</i>    |
| 2. Mon-ītus es, or fuisti,             | <i>Thou hast been advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ītus est, or fuit,              | <i>He has been advised;</i>    |
| <b>P.</b> 1. Mon-īti sūmus, or fuīmus, | <i>We have been advised,</i>   |
| 2. Mon-īti estis, or fuistis,          | <i>Ye have been advised,</i>   |
| 3. Mon-īti sunt, fuērunt, &c.,         | <i>They have been advised.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *had been advised.* 166-2.

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> 1. Mon-ītus ēram, or fuēram,    | <i>I had been advised,</i>      |
| 2. Mon-ītus ēras, or fuēras,              | <i>Thou hadst been advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ītus ērat, or fuērat,              | <i>He had been advised;</i>     |
| <b>P.</b> 1. Mon-īti erāmus, or fuerāmus, | <i>We had been advised,</i>     |
| 2. Mon-īti erātis, or fuerātis,           | <i>Ye had been advised,</i>     |
| 3. Mon-īti erant, or fuērant,             | <i>They had been advised.</i>   |

FUTURE, *shall, or will be advised.* 167-3.

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <b>S.</b> 1. Mon-ēor,     | <i>I shall, or will be advised,</i>    |
| 2. Mon-ebēris, or -ebēre, | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ebitur,            | <i>He shall, or will be advised,</i>   |
| <b>P.</b> 1. Mon-ebīmur,  | <i>We shall, or will be advised</i>    |
| 2. Mon-ebimini,           | <i>Ye shall, or will be advised,</i>   |
| 3. Mon-ebuntur,           | <i>They shall, or will be advised.</i> |

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have been advised.* 168-4.

- |                                |                                     |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> 1. Mon-ītus fuēro,   | <i>I shall have been advised,</i>   |
| 2. Mon-ītus fuēris,            | <i>Thou wilt have been advised,</i> |
| 3. Mon-ītus fuērit,            | <i>He will have been advised;</i>   |
| <b>P.</b> 1. Mon-īti fuerīmus, | <i>We shall have been advised,</i>  |
| 2. Mon-īti fuerītis,           | <i>Ye will have been advised,</i>   |
| 3. Mon-īti fuērint,            | <i>They will have been advised.</i> |



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may*, or *can* be advised.

- |      |                      |                               |
|------|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| S. 1 | Mon-ear,             | <i>I may be advised,</i>      |
| 2    | Mon-eāris, or -eāre, | <i>Thou mayst be advised,</i> |
| 3.   | Mon-eātur,           | <i>He may be advised ;</i>    |
| P. 1 | Mon-eāmur,           | <i>We may be advised,</i>     |
| 2.   | Mon-eamīni,          | <i>Ye may be advised,</i>     |
| 3.   | Mon-eantur,          | <i>They may be advised.</i>   |

IMPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* be advised.

- |       |                        |                                 |
|-------|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| S. 1. | Mon-ērer,              | <i>I might be advised,</i>      |
| 2.    | Mon-erēris, or -erēre, | <i>Thou mightst be advised,</i> |
| 3.    | Mon-erētur,            | <i>He might be advised ;</i>    |
| P. 1. | Mon-erēmur,            | <i>We might be advised,</i>     |
| 2.    | Mon-eremīni,           | <i>Ye might be advised,</i>     |
| 3.    | Mon-erentur,           | <i>They might be advised.</i>   |

PERFECT, *may* have been advised.

- |    |                            |                                      |
|----|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| S. | Monītus sim, or fuērim,    | <i>I may have been advised,</i>      |
|    | Monītus sis, or fuēris,    | <i>Thou mayst have been advised,</i> |
|    | Monītus sit, or fuērit,    | <i>He may have been advised ;</i>    |
| P. | Monīti sīmus, or fuerīmus, | <i>We may have been advised,</i>     |
|    | Monīti sītis, or fuerītis, | <i>Ye may have been advised,</i>     |
|    | Monīti sint, or fuērint,   | <i>They may have been advised.</i>   |

PLUPERFECT, *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should* have been advised.

- |    |                               |                                       |
|----|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| S. | Monītus essem, or fuissæm,    | <i>I might have been advised,</i>     |
|    | Monītus esses, or fuisses,    | <i>Thou mightst have been advised</i> |
|    | Monītus esset, or fuisset,    | <i>He might have been advised ;</i>   |
| P. | Monīti essēmus, or fuissēmus, | <i>We might have been advised,</i>    |
|    | Monīti essētis, or fuissētis, | <i>Ye might have been advised,</i>    |
|    | Monīti essent, or fuissent,   | <i>They might have been advised.</i>  |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |       |                    |                             |
|-------|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| S. 2. | Mon-ēre, or -ētor, | <i>Be thou advised,</i>     |
| 3.    | Mon-ētor,          | <i>Let him be advised ;</i> |
| P. 2. | Mon-emīni,         | <i>Be ye advised,</i>       |
| 3     | Mor-entor,         | <i>Let them be advised.</i> |

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Mon-ēri,	<i>To be advised (178-186),</i>
PERF.	Esse, or fuisse monītus,	<i>To have been advised,</i>
FUT.	Mon-ītum iri,	<i>To be about to be advised.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF.	Mon-ītus, a, um,	{ <i>Advised, being advised, or having been advised,</i>
FUT.	Mon-endus, a, um,	
		{ <i>To be advised, proper, or necessary to be advised.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
PRES.	Moneor,	Monear,	Monēre.	Monēri,	
IMP.	Monēbar,	Monērer,			
PERF.	Monītus sum,	Monītus sim,		{ Esse, or Fuisse monītus,	{ Monītus.
PLUP.	Monītus eram,	Monītus essem.			
FUT.	Monēbor,			Monītum iri.	Monendus.
F.-PERF.	Monītus fuēro.				

After the same manner, inflect :

Doceor,	docēri,	doctus,	<i>To be taught.</i>
Jubeor,	jubēri,	jussus,	<i>To be ordered.</i>
Videor,	vidēri,	visus,	<i>To be seen.</i>

## 196.—§ 63. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation, &c., as directed 192-1. Moneor, monētur, monebātur, monebītur, monītus est, monīti estis, moneāmur, monerētur, monītus fuēro, monēre, monēri, monītus, monītus esse, monendus. Viderētur, visus, visum iri, docerentur, doceantur, docemīni, doceamīni, jubebītur, jussi fuērunt, juberentur, jubētor, &c.

2. Translate the following into Latin, as directed 192-2: I was advised, he has been advised;—he may be advised, we will be advised, we were advised, I am advised, they might have been advised. Be ye advised, to be about to be advised, to be advised, he may have been seen;—they should be ordered, we will be seen, they will be taught, having been taught, necessary to be taught, let them be taught; they have been

ordered, we might have been ordered, to be about to be ordered, being ordered, they may have been ordered, &c.

PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

3. *Give the designation, &c., as directed 190-1, 192-1.* Monēbam, monuērat, monuērit, monēbunt, moneam, mōne, monēbar, monītus es, monuit, monēri, doctus sum, docear, docērer, docebitur, docento, docentor, docentur, jūbet, jussērunt, jussērint, jubēbo, juberentur, jussus esse, jūbe, video, vident, viderētur, vīde, vidistis, viderātis, vidērent, vidēro, videndum, vīdens, vīsturus, vidisse, vīsum iri, vidēri, monebuntur, moneantur, viderentur, jussērim, jubēbam, jubērer, videntur, docuērunt, dōce, dōcens.

4. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed 190-2, 192-2:* I am advised, he advises, they will advise, ye have advised, they will have advised, he will be advised, he is taught, he has taught, they will teach, I will see, they may see, they are seen, he has been seen, to order, to have been ordered, ordering, about to order, to have seen, I might see, I might have been seen, they will not (*non*) see, he will not see, I do not advise, he is teaching, he is not teaching, he will not order, I will order, &c.

5. *As directed 190-3, 192-4.* Dicit se monēre,—nos monuisse,—eum monitūrum esse,—vos vidēre,—eum vīsum iri. Dixit se monēre,—nos monuisse,—eum monitūrum esse,—vos vidēre,—eum vīsum iri. Dicit se monēre, &c.,—vos monuisse,—homīnes monitūros esse,—femīnam monitūram esse, vos jubēre.

6. *As directed 190-5.* He says that he advises,—that he will advise,—that we have advised. He said that I advised,—that he had advised,—that they would have advised,—that I would order,—would have ordered,—would not have ordered,—was 'aught,—had been taught,—would be taught, &c.

197.—§ 64. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Rēg o,	reg-ēre,	rex-i.	rect-um,	<i>To rule</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *rule, do rule, am ruling.* 157.

- S.* 1. Rēg-o, *I rule, do rule, am ruling,*  
 2. Rēg-is,\* *Thou rulest, dost rule, art ruling,*  
 3. Rēg-it, *He rules, does rule, is ruling;*
- P.* 1. Reg-īmus, *We rule, do rule, are ruling,*  
 2. Reg-ītis, *Ye rule, do rule, are ruling,*  
 3. Reg-unt, *They rule, do rule, are ruling.*

IMPERFECT, *ruled, did rule, was ruling.* 159.

- S.* 1. Reg-ēbam, *I ruled, did rule, was ruling,*  
 2. Reg-ēbas, *Thou ruledst, didst rule, wast ruling,*  
 3. Reg-ēbat, *He ruled, did rule, was ruling;*
- P.* 1. Reg-ebāmus, *We ruled, did rule, were ruling,*  
 2. Reg-ebātis, *Ye ruled, did rule, were ruling,*  
 3. Reg-ēbant, *They ruled, did rule, were ruling.*

PERFECT Def., *have ruled*; Indef., *ruled, did rule.* 161.

- S.* 1. Rex-i, *I have ruled, ruled, did rule,*  
 2. Rex-isti, *Thou hast ruled, ruledst, didst rule,*  
 3. Rex-it, *He has ruled, ruled, did rule;*
- P.* 1. Rex-īmus, *We have ruled, ruled, did rule,*  
 2. Rex-istis, *Ye have ruled, ruled, did rule,*  
 3. Rex-ērunt, or -ēre, *They have ruled, ruled, did rule.*

PLUPERFECT, *had ruled.* 165.

- S.* 1. Rex-eram, *I had ruled,*  
 2. Rex-eras, *Thou hadst ruled,*  
 3. Rex-erat, *He had ruled;*
- P.* 1. Rex-erāmus, *We had ruled,*  
 2. Rex-erātis, *Ye had ruled,*  
 3. Rex-erant, *They had ruled.*

FUTURE, *shall, or will rule.* 167.

- S.* 1. Rēg-am, *I shall, or will rule,*  
 2. Rēg-es, *Thou shalt, or wilt rule,*  
 3. Rēg-et, *He shall, or will rule;*
- P.* 1. Reg-ēmus, *We shall, or will rule,*  
 2. Reg-ētis, *Ye shall, or will rule,*  
 3. Reg-ent, *They shall, or will rule.*

\* *C* and *g* are hard before *a, o, u*, and soft like *s* and *j* before *e* and *i*. *ŕ*. Soft *g* is here marked in Italics, and sounds like *j*.

**FUTURE-PERFECT, shall, or will have ruled. 168.**

- |           |                |  |
|-----------|----------------|--|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Rex-ěro,    | <i>I shall, or will have ruled,</i>    |
|           | 2. Rex-ěris,   | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt have ruled.</i> |
|           | 3. Rex-ěrit,   | <i>He shall, or will have ruled ;</i>  |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Rex-erimus, | <i>We shall, or will have ruled,</i>   |
|           | 2. Rex-eritis, | <i>Ye shall, or will have ruled,</i>   |
|           | 3. Rex-erint,  | <i>They shall, or will have ruled.</i> |

**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**

**PRESENT TENSE, may, or can rule. 171.**

- |           |              |                                   |
|-----------|--------------|-----------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Rěg-am,   | <i>I may, or can rule,</i>        |
|           | 2. Rěg-as,   | <i>Thou mayst, or canst rule,</i> |
|           | 3. Rěg-at,   | <i>He may, or can rule ;</i>      |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Reg-āmus, | <i>We may, or can rule,</i>       |
|           | 2. Reg-ātis, | <i>Ye may, or can rule,</i>       |
|           | 3. Reg-ant,  | <i>They may, or can rule.</i>     |

**IMPERFECT, might, could, would, or should rule. 172.**

- |           |                |                           |
|-----------|----------------|---------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Reg-ěrem,   | <i>I might rule,</i>      |
|           | 2. Reg-ěres,   | <i>Thou mightst rule,</i> |
|           | 3. Reg-ěret,   | <i>He might rule ;</i>    |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Reg-erēmus, | <i>We might rule,</i>     |
|           | 2. Reg-erētis, | <i>Ye might rule,</i>     |
|           | 3. Reg-erent,  | <i>They might rule.</i>   |

**PERFECT, may have ruled. 173.**

- |           |                |                               |
|-----------|----------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Rex-ěrim,   | <i>I may have ruled,</i>      |
|           | 2. Rex-ěris,   | <i>Thou mayst have ruled,</i> |
|           | 3. Rex-ěrit,   | <i>He may have ruled ;</i>    |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Rex-erimus, | <i>We may have ruled,</i>     |
|           | 2. Rex-eritis, | <i>Ye may have ruled,</i>     |
|           | 3. Rex-erint,  | <i>They may have ruled.</i>   |

**PLUPERFECT, might, could, would, or should have ruled. 174.**

- |           |                 |                                 |
|-----------|-----------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Rex-issem,   | <i>I might have ruled,</i>      |
|           | 2. Rex-isses,   | <i>Thou mightst have ruled,</i> |
|           | 3. Rex-isset,   | <i>He might have ruled ;</i>    |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Rex-issēmus, | <i>We might have ruled,</i>     |
|           | 2. Rex-issētis, | <i>Ye might have ruled,</i>     |
|           | 3. Rex-issent,  | <i>They might have ruled.</i>   |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

S. 2.	Rēg-e, or -īto,	<i>Rule thou, (149.)</i>
3.	Rēg-īto,	<i>Let him rule;</i>
P. 2.	Rēg-īte, or itōte,	<i>Rule ye,</i>
3.	Rēg-unto,	<i>Let them rule.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Rēg-ēre,	<i>To rule (178-180),</i>
PERF.	Rex-isse,	<i>To have ruled,</i>
FUT.	Esse rectūrus,	<i>To be about to rule,</i>
F.-PERF.	Fuisse rectūrus,	<i>To have been about to rule.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Rēg-ens,	<i>Ruling.</i>
FUT.	Rect-ūrus, a, um,	<i>About to rule</i>

## GERUNDS.

Nom.	Rēg-endum,	<i>Ruling,</i>
Gen.	Rēg-endi,	<i>Of ruling,</i>
Dat.	Rēg-endo,	<i>To ruling,</i>
Acc.	Rēg-endum,	<i>Ruling,</i>
Abl.	Rēg-endo,	<i>With, &amp;c., ruling.</i>

## SUPINES.

FORMER,	Rect-um,	<i>To rule.</i>
LATTER,	Rect-u,	<i>To be ruled, or to rule.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imp.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>
PRES.	Rēgo,	Rēgam,	Rēge.	Rēgere,	Regens,
IMP.	Regēbam,	Regērem,			
PERF.	Rexi,	Rexērim,		Rexisse,	
PLUP.	Rexēram,	Rexissem.			
FUT.	Rēgam,			Esse rectūrus,	Rectūrus.
F.-PRES.	Rexēro.			Fuisse rectūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect :

Lēgo,	legēre,	lēgi,	lectum,	<i>To read.</i>
Scribo	scribēre,	scripsi,	scriptum,	<i>To write.</i>
Cædo,	cædēre,	cecidi,	cæsum,	<i>To slay.</i>

## 198.—EXAMPLE OF VERBS IN -IO, ACTIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Capio,	Capere,	cēpi,	captum,	<i>To take.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
PRES.	Capi-o,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
IMP.	Capi-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PERF.	Cēp-i,	-isti,	-it;	-īmus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, <i>or</i> -ēre.
PLUP.	Cep-eram,	-ēras,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	
FUT.	Capi-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F. P.	Cep-ero,	-ēris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Capi-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
IMP.	Cap-ērem,	-ēres,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-erētis,	-erent.
PERF.	Cep-erim,	-ēris,	-erit;	-erīmus,	-erītis,	-erint.
PLUP.	Cep-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Cāpe,	<i>or</i>	-īto,	-īto;	-īte,	<i>or</i>	-itōte,	-iunto
-------	-------	-----------	-------	-------	-------	-----------	---------	--------

## INFINITIVE

PRES.	Cap-ere,	FUT.	Esse captūrus,
PERF.	Cep-isse,	F. PERF.	Fuisse captūrus.

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Capiens,	FUT.	Captūrus, a, um.
-------	----------	------	------------------

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

<i>Nom.</i>	Capi-endum,	FORMER,	Captum,
<i>Gen.</i>	Capi-endi, &c.	LATTER,	Captu.

So also :

Rapic,	rapere,	rapui,	raptum,	<i>To seize</i>
Fugio,	fugere,	fūgi,	fugitum,	<i>To flee.</i>

## 199.—§ 65. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. *Give the designation, &c., as directed 190-1.*—Regēbam, rexiſti, rexeram, rēgam, regērem, rexēro, rexiſſet, rēge, rexiſſe, rēgens. Scribit, ſcribēbat, ſcripſit, ſcribēmus, ſcribāmus, lēgunt, legēret, lēget, lēge, legērunt, legērant. Capiunt, capiēbat, capiunto, capērem, cēpit, cepērim, cepēram, cepiſſem, cāpit, capēre, capiendum, &c.

2. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed 190-2.*—He rules, we are ruling, he has ruled, we will rule, they will have ruled, ye might rule, they may rule, we will rule, they were ruling, he had ruled, they might have ruled. He has read, they will read, we shall read, to have read, to have written, to write, writing, write thou, let them write.

3. *Translate according to the Rules 190-3, 4.* (*Dicit*, "he says,") me regēre,—me ſcribēre,—ſe rexiſſe,—nos rectūros eſſe,—illum ſcripſiſſe,—me ſcriptūrum fuiſſe,—vos lectūros eſſe,—me capēre,—vos cepiſſe,—vos captūros eſſe,—vos captūros fuiſſe. (*Dixit*, "he ſaid,") me regēre,—me rexiſſe,—me rectūrum eſſe, &c.

4. *As directed 190-5.*—*He ſays* that I rule,—that he ruled,—that we write,—that they will write,—that he is about to write. *He writes* that he rules,—that you are reading,—that you will write. *He ſaid* that he was writing,—that you had written,—that we would write,—would have written. He will ſay that I am ruling,—was ruling,—will rule, &c.

## 200.—§ 66. PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Rēg-or,	rēg-i,	rectus, <i>To be ruled.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *am ruled.* 157-6.

D	1. Rēg-or,	<i>I am ruled,</i>
	2. Reg-ēris, or -ēre,	<i>Thou art ruled,</i>
	3. Reg-itur,	<i>He is ruled;</i>
P.	1. Reg-īmur,	<i>We are ruled,</i>
	2. Reg-imīni,	<i>Ye are ruled,</i>
	3. Reg-untur,	<i>They are ruled.</i>



IMPERFECT, *was ruled*. 160-5.

- |           |                           |                         |
|-----------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Reg-ābar,              | <i>I was ruled,</i>     |
|           | 2. Reg-ebāris, or -ebāre, | <i>Thou wast ruled,</i> |
|           | 3. Reg-ebātur,            | <i>He was ruled ;</i>   |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Reg-ebāmur,            | <i>We were ruled,</i>   |
|           | 2. Reg-ebamini,           | <i>Ye were ruled,</i>   |
|           | 3. Reg-ebantur,           | <i>They were ruled.</i> |

PERFECT, *have been ruled, was ruled, am ruled*. 161-5

- |           |                                   |                              |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Rectus sum, or fui,            | <i>I have been ruled,</i>    |
|           | 2. Rectus es, or fuisti,          | <i>Thou hast been ruled,</i> |
|           | 3. Rectus est, or fuit,           | <i>He has been ruled ;</i>   |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Recti sūmus, or fuīmus,        | <i>We have been ruled,</i>   |
|           | 2. Recti estis, or fuistis,       | <i>Ye have been ruled,</i>   |
|           | 3. Recti sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre, | <i>They have been ruled.</i> |

PLUPERFECT, *had been ruled*. 166-2.

- |           |                               |                               |
|-----------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Rectus ēram, or fuēram,    | <i>I had been ruled,</i>      |
|           | 2. Rectus ēras, or fuēras,    | <i>Thou hadst been ruled.</i> |
|           | 3. Rectus ērat, or fuērat,    | <i>He had been ruled ;</i>    |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Recti erāmus, or fuerāmus, | <i>We had been ruled,</i>     |
|           | 2. Recti erātis, or fuerātis, | <i>Ye had been ruled,</i>     |
|           | 3. Recti ērant, or fuērant,   | <i>They had been ruled.</i>   |

FUTURE, *shall, or will be ruled*. 167-3.

- |           |                       |                                      |
|-----------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Reg-ar,            | <i>I shall, or will be ruled,</i>    |
|           | 2. Reg-ēris, or -ēre, | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be ruled,</i> |
|           | 3. Reg-ētur,          | <i>He shall, or will be ruled ;</i>  |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Reg-ēmur,          | <i>We shall, or will be ruled,</i>   |
|           | 2. Reg-emini,         | <i>Ye shall, or will be ruled,</i>   |
|           | 3. Reg-entur,         | <i>They shall, or will be ruled.</i> |

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have been ruled*. 168-4.

- |           |                    |  |
|-----------|--------------------|--|
| <b>S.</b> | 1. Rectus fuēro,   | <i>I shall, or will have been ruled,</i>   |
|           | 2. Rectus fuēris,  | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt have been ruled</i> |
|           | 3. Rectus fuērit,  | <i>He shall, or will have been ruled ,</i> |
| <b>P.</b> | 1. Recti fuerimus, | <i>We shall, or will have been ruled,</i>  |
|           | 2. Recti fueritis, | <i>Ye shall, or will have been ruled,</i>  |
|           | 3. Recti fuērint,  | <i>They shall, or will have been ruled</i> |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can be ruled.*

- S.** 1. Răg-ar, *I may, or can be ruled,*  
 2. Reg-ăris, or -ăre, *Thou mayst, or canst be ruled,*  
 3. Reg-ătur, *He may, or can be ruled ;*
- P.** 1. Reg-ămur, *We may, or can be ruled,*  
 2. Reg-amîni, *Ye may, or can be ruled,*  
 3. Reg-antur, *They may, or can be ruled.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

- S.** 1. Reg-ărer, *I might be ruled,*  
 2. Reg-erêris, or erêre, *Thou mightst be ruled*  
 3. Reg-erêtur, *He might be ruled ;*
- P.** 1. Reg-erêmur, *We might be ruled,*  
 2. Reg-ereîni, *Ye might be ruled,*  
 3. Reg-erentur, *They might be ruled.*

PERFECT, *may have been ruled.*

- S.** 1. Rectus sim, or fuërim, *I may have been ruled,*  
 2. Rectus sis, or fuëris, *Thou mayst have been ruled.*  
 3. Rectus sit, or fuërit, *He may have been ruled ;*
- P.** 1. Recti sîmus, or fuerîmus, *We may have been ruled,*  
 2. Recti sitis, or fuerîtis, *Ye may have been ruled,*  
 3. Recti sint, or fuërint, *They may have been ruled.*

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

- S.** 1. Rectus essem, or fuissem, *I might have been ruled,*  
 2. Rectus esses, or fuisses, *Thou mightst have been ruled.*  
 3. Rectus esset, or fuisset, *He might have been ruled ;*
- P.** 1. Recti essêmus, or fuissêmus, *We might have been ruled,*  
 2. Recti essêtis, or fuissêtis, *Ye might have been ruled,*  
 3. Recti essent, or fuissent, *They might have been ruled.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- S.** 2. Reg-ăre, or -ător, *Be thou ruled,*  
 3. Reg-ător, *Let him be ruled ;*
- F.** 2. Reg-imîni, *Be ye ruled,*  
 3. Reg-untor, *Let them be ruled,*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Rēg-i,	<i>To be ruled</i> (178 and 180),
PERF. Esse, or fuisse rectus,	<i>To have been ruled,</i>
FUT. Rectum Iri,	<i>To be about to be ruled.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PERF Rectus, a, um,	{ <i>Ruled, being ruled, having been ruled.</i>
FUT. Regendus, a, um,	
	{ <i>To be ruled, proper, or necessary to be ruled.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Part.</i>
PRES.	Rēgor,	Rēgar,	Regere.	Rēgi,	
IMP.	Regēbar,	Regērer,			
PERF.	Rectus sum,	Rectus sim,		Esse, or fuisse rectus,	Rectus,
PLUP.	Rectus ēram,	Rectus essem.			
FUT.	Rēgar,			Rectum Iri.	Regendus.
P.-PERF.	Rectus fuēro.				

After the same manner, inflect :

Lēgor,	lēgi,	lectus,	<i>To be read.</i>
Scribor,	scribi,	scriptus,	<i>To be written.</i>
Cædor,	cædi,	cæsus,	<i>To be slain.</i>

## 201.—EXAMPLE OF VERBS IN -IO.—PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
Capior,	cāpi,	captus, <i>To be taken.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
PRES. Capi-or,	{ -ēris, or -ēre,	{	-itur;	-imur,	-imini,	-iuntur.
IMP Capi-ēbar,	{ -ebāris, or -ebāre,	{	-ebātur;	-ebāmur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.
PERF. Captus sum, or fui; captus es, or fuisti, &c.						
PLUP. Captus ēram, or fuēram; captus ēras, or fuēras, &c.						
FUT. Capi-iar,	{ -ēris, or -ēre,	{	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emini,	-entur.
V.-P. Captus fuēro, captus fuēris, captus fuērit, &c.						

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<b>Pres.</b> Cap-iar,	{ -āris, or -āre,	{ -ātur,	-āmur,	-amini,	-antur.	
<b>Impr.</b> Cap-ērer,	{ -erēris, or -erēre,	{ -erētur;	-erēmur,	-eremini,	-erentur.	
<b>Pres.</b> Captus sim, or fuērim; captus sis, or fuēris, &c.						
<b>Pres.</b> Captus essem, or fuissem; captus esses, or fuisses, &c.						

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
<b>Pres.</b> Cap-ēre, or -itor,	-itor;	-imini,	-iuntor.	

## INFINITIVE

**Pres.** Cap-i,  
**Pres.** Esse, or fuisse captus,  
**Fut.** Captum iri.

## PARTICIPLES.

**Pres.** Captus, a, um.  
**Fut.** Capiendus, a, um.

So also: Rapior, rāpi, raptus, *To be seized.*

## 20A —§ 67. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation, &c., as directed 192-1.—Regitur, regētur, regimīni, rectus est, rectus fuērit, regērer, régat, régat, regere, reguntur, rectus, rectum iri, rectus esse, régi, regebatur, reguntur, regentur, rectus sim, rectus esset. Capiar, capiuntur, capiuntur, capiebatur, captus sum, &c.

2. Translate the following into Latin, as directed 192-2.—He is ruled, I was ruled, they will be ruled, they have been ruled, we might be ruled, he might have been ruled, they were ruled, ye had been ruled, to have been ruled, being ruled, to be ruled, let them be ruled. They are taken, they will be taken, let them be taken, they have been taken, he will be taken, they might be taken, be thou taken, &c.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

3. Give the designation, &c., as directed 190-1 and 192-1.—Regēbat, rexerunt, rexerat, réget, rexit, rexerint, légit, légit,

lēget, lēgat, legērit, scripsērit, scripsisse, scribitur, scriptus est, scriptum iri, lēgi, legēre, legisse, rexisse, lectus esse, legitor, rectus, rēgens, scriptūrus, scribendus, lectu, scribere, scripsēre, legēre, legēre, legimīni, capiunt, capiuntor, captus sum, capitur, capitor, cepērunt, cepērint, scriptum esse, rexi, rēgi, rēgam, regēret, &c.

4. *Translate the following into Latin, as directed 190-2, 192-2.*—I rule, I am ruled, he rules, they are ruled, they have ruled, they have been ruled, they will rule, he might rule, they might be ruled, we will read, he may have been taken, they will have been ruled, he might have written, to be ruled, rule thou, let him be ruled, they were writing, they might write, to have written, to have read, to have ruled, to have taken, they had written, had ruled, had read, had taken

### 203.—§ 68. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

#### ACTIVE VOICE

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Ind.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	
Audio,	audire,	audīvi,	audītum,	<i>To hear.</i>

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PRESENT TENSE, hear, do hear, am hearing. 157.**

<b>S.</b> 1. Aud-io,	<i>I hear, do hear, am hearing,</i>
2. Aud-is,	<i>Thou hearest, dost hear, art hearing,</i>
3. Aud-it,	<i>He hears, does hear, is hearing;</i>
<b>P.</b> 1. Aud-imus,	<i>We hear, do hear, are hearing,</i>
2. Aud-itis,	<i>Ye hear, do hear, are hearing,</i>
3. Aud-iunt,	<i>They hear, do hear, are hearing.</i>

**IMPERFECT, heard, did hear, was hearing. 159.**

<b>S.</b> 1. Audi-ebam,	<i>I heard, did hear, was hearing,</i>
2. Audi-ebas,	<i>Thou heardst, didst hear, wast hearing</i>
3. Audi-ebat,	<i>He heard, did hear, was hearing;</i>
<b>P.</b> 1. Audi-ebāmus,	<i>We heard, did hear, were hearing,</i>
2. Audi-ebātis,	<i>Ye heard, did hear, were hearing,</i>
3. Audi-ebant,	<i>They heard, did hear, were hearing.</i>

PERFECT Def., *have heard*; Indef., *heard, did hear*. 161.

- S.* 1. Audiv-i, *I have heard, heard, did hear,*  
 2. Audiv-isti, *Thou hast heard, heardst, didst hear,*  
 3. Audiv-it, *He has heard, heard, did hear;*
- P.* 1. Audiv-imus, *We have heard, heard, did hear,*  
 2. Audiv-istis, *Ye have heard, heard, did hear,*  
 3. Audiv-erunt, or, } *They have heard, heard, did hear*  
     -ère,

PLUPERFECT, *had heard*. 165.

- S.* 1. Audiv-eram, *I had heard,*  
 2. Audiv-eras, *Thou hadst heard,*  
 3. Audiv-erat, *He had heard;*
- P.* 1. Audiv-erāmus, *We had heard,*  
 2. Audiv-erātis, *Ye had heard,*  
 3. Audiv-erant, *They had heard.*

FUTURE, *shall, or will hear*. 167.

- S.* 1. Audi-am, *I shall, or will hear,*  
 2. Audi-es, *Thou shalt, or wilt hear,*  
 3. Audi-et, *He shall, or will hear;*
- P.* 1. Audi-āmus, *We shall, or will hear,*  
 2. Audi-ētis, *Ye shall, or will hear,*  
 3. Audi-ent, *They shall, or will hear.*

FUTURE-PERFECT, *shall, or will have heard*. 168.

- S.* 1. Audiv-ero, *I shall or will have heard,*  
 2. Audiv-eris, *Thou shalt, or wilt have heard,*  
 3. Audiv-erit, *He shall, or will have heard;*
- P.* 1. Audiv-erimus, *We shall, or will have heard,*  
 2. Audiv-eritis, *Ye shall, or will have heard,*  
 3. Audiv-erint, *They shall, or will have heard.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE, *may, or can hear*. 171.

- S.* 1. Audi-am, *I may, or can hear,*  
 2. Audi-as, *Thou mayst, or canst hear,*  
 3. Audi-at, *He may, or can hear;*
- P.* 1. Audi-āmus, *We may, or can hear,*  
 2. Audi-ātis, *Ye may, or can hear,*  
 3. Audi-ant, *They may, or can hear.*

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should hear.* 172

<i>S.</i> 1. Aud-irem,	<i>I might hear,</i>
2. Aud-ires,	<i>Thou mightst hear,</i>
3. Aud-iret,	<i>He might hear;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Aud-irēmus,	<i>We might hear,</i>
2. Aud-irētis,	<i>Ye might hear,</i>
3. Aud-irent,	<i>They might hear.</i>

PERFECT, *may have heard.* 173.

<i>S.</i> 1. Audiv-ērim,	<i>I may have heard,</i>
2. Audiv-ēris,	<i>Thou mayst have heard,</i>
3. Audiv-ērit,	<i>He may have heard;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Audiv-erīmus,	<i>We may have heard,</i>
2. Audiv-erītis,	<i>Ye may have heard,</i>
3. Audiv-erint,	<i>They may have heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should hear.* 174.

<i>S.</i> 1. Audiv-issem,	<i>I might have heard,</i>
2. Audiv-isses,	<i>Thou mightst have heard,</i>
3. Audiv-isset,	<i>He might have heard;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. Audiv-issēmus,	<i>We might have heard,</i>
2. Audiv-issētis,	<i>Ye might have heard,</i>
3. Audiv-issent,	<i>They might have heard.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>S.</i> 2. Aud-i, or -īto,	<i>Hear thou (149),</i>
3. Aud-īto,	<i>Let him hear;</i>
<i>P.</i> 2. Aud-īte, or -itōte,	<i>Hear ye, or you,</i>
3. Aud-iunto,	<i>Let them hear.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>PRES.</i>	Aud-ire,	<i>To hear (178-180),</i>
<i>PERF.</i>	Audiv-isse,	<i>To have heard,</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Esse auditūrus,	<i>To be about to hear,</i>
<i>F.-PERF.</i>	Fuisse auditūrus,	<i>To have been about to hear.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRES.</i>	Audiens,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>FUT.</i>	Aud-itūrus, a, um,	<i>About to hear.</i>

## GERUNDS.

<i>Nom.</i>	Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	Aud-iendi,	<i>Of hearing,</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	Aud-iendo,	<i>To hearing,</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	Aud-iendum,	<i>Hearing,</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	Aud-iendo,	<i>With, &amp;c., hearing.</i>

## SUPINES.

FORMER,	Audit-um,	<i>To hear,</i>
LATTER,	Audit-u,	<i>To be heard, or to hear.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles</i>
<b>PRÆS.</b>	Audio,	Audiam,	Audi.	Audire,	Audiens.
<b>IMP.</b>	Audiēbam,	Audīrem,			
<b>PERF.</b>	Audiui,	Audivērim,		Audivisse,	
<b>PLUP.</b>	Audivēram,	Audivissem.			
<b>FUT.</b>	Audiam,			Esse auditūrus,	Auditūrus.
<b>F.-PERF.</b>	Audivēro.			Fuisse auditūrus.	

After the same manner, inflect :

Munio,	munire,	munivi,	munitum,	<i>To fortify.</i>
Venio,	venire,	vēni,	ventum,	<i>To come.</i>
Vincio,	vincire,	vinxi,	vinctum,	<i>To bind</i>

## 204.—§ 69. EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation, &c., as directed 190-1.—Audio, audiunt, audivit, audiet, audirent, audi, audivisse, audivērant, audivērunt, muniant, munient, munivērunt, munivērint, muniunto, muniunt, venērat, venisset, vinxisti, vinxisse, vinciet, vincirent, vinciēbam, veniens, ventum, ventūrus, &c.

2. Translate the following into Latin, &c., as directed 190-2.—I have heard, he heard, they were hearing, we will hear, you might hear, they could have heard, hear thou, let them hear, to have heard, hearing, to be about to hear, he shall have come, they will bind, let them bind, to have bound, binding, of binding, with binding, he had come, he had bound, they will fortify, I was hearing, they would have heard, the men



(*homīnes*) may have heard, about to hear, of hearing, they had bound—may have bound—will have bound; bind ye, I have bound, to bind, to have bound, about to bind, binding, to have been about to fortify, to have fortified, &c.

3. *Translate according to the rule 190–3, 4.*—*Dicit* (*he says*) *me audire*,—*vos audire*,—*eos audivisse*,—*homīnem auditūrum esse*,—*homīnem auditūrum fuisse*,—*homīnes auditūros esse*,—*femīnam, f., (that the woman) ventūram esse*,—*ventūram fuisse*. *Dixit* (*he said*) *se (that he himself) ventūrum esse*—*eum (that he, viz. some other person, not himself) ventūrum fuisse*,—*nos ventūros esse*,—&c.

4. *As directed 190–5.*—*He says* that I hear,—that we hear,—that they have heard.—that they will hear,—that he (*himself*) will come,—that he (*some other*) will come,—that the men will come,—that the women will come. *He said* that he (*himself*) came,—that he (*another*) came,—that they had come,—that they would come,—that they would have come,—that the women would come,—would have come, &c. *He will say* that I hear,—that I heard,—that I will hear

## 205.—§ 70. PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
<i>Audior,</i>	<i>audiri,</i>	<i>auditus,</i>	<i>To be heard.</i>

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### PRESENT TENSE, *am heard.* 157–6.

<i>S.</i> 1. <i>Aud-ior,</i>	<i>I am heard,</i>
2. <i>Aud-iris, or -ire,</i>	<i>Thou art heard,</i>
3. <i>Aud-itur,</i>	<i>He is heard;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. <i>Aud-imur,</i>	<i>We are heard,</i>
2. <i>Aud-imīni,</i>	<i>Ye are heard,</i>
3. <i>Aud-iuntur,</i>	<i>They are heard.</i>

#### IMPERFECT, *was heard.* 160–5.

<i>S.</i> 1. <i>Audi-ēbar,</i>	<i>I was heard,</i>
2. <i>Audi-ebāris, or -ebāre,</i>	<i>Thou wast heard,</i>
3. <i>Audi-ebātur,</i>	<i>He was heard;</i>
<i>P.</i> 1. <i>Audi-ebāmur,</i>	<i>We were heard,</i>
2. <i>Audi-ebamīni,</i>	<i>Ye were heard,</i>
3. <i>Audi-eban'tur.</i>	<i>They were heard.</i>

**PERFECT, have been heard, was heard, am heard.** 164–5.

- |           |                                    |                              |
|-----------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> | 1. Auditus* sum, or fui,           | <i>I have been heard,</i>    |
|           | 2. Auditus es, or fuisti,          | <i>Thou hast been heard.</i> |
|           | 3. Auditus est, or fuit,           | <i>He has been heard;</i>    |
| <i>P.</i> | 1. Auditi sumus, or fuimus,        | <i>We have been heard,</i>   |
|           | 2. Auditi estis, or fuistis,       | <i>Ye have been heard,</i>   |
|           | 3. Auditi sunt, fuērunt, or fuēre, | <i>They have been heard.</i> |

**PLUPERFECT, had been heard.** 166–2.

- |           |                                |                               |
|-----------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> | 1. Auditus* ēram, or fuēram,   | <i>I had been heard,</i>      |
|           | 2. Auditus ēras, or fuēras,    | <i>Thou hadst been heard,</i> |
|           | 3. Auditus ērat, or fuērat,    | <i>He had been heard;</i>     |
| <i>P.</i> | 1. Auditi erāmus, or fuerāmus, | <i>We had been heard,</i>     |
|           | 2. Auditi erātis, or fuerātis, | <i>Ye had been heard,</i>     |
|           | 3. Auditi ērant, or fuērant,   | <i>They had been heard.</i>   |

**FUTURE, shall, or will be heard.** 167–3.

- |           |                        |                                      |
|-----------|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> | 1. Audi-ār,            | <i>I shall, or will be heard,</i>    |
|           | 2. Audi-ēris, or -ēre, | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt be heard,</i> |
|           | 3. Audi-ētur,          | <i>He shall, or will be heard;</i>   |
| <i>P.</i> | 1. Audi-ēmur,          | <i>We shall, or will be heard,</i>   |
|           | 2. Audi-ēmini,         | <i>Ye shall, or will be heard,</i>   |
|           | 3. Audi-entur,         | <i>They shall, or will be heard.</i> |

**FUTURE-PERFECT, shall, or will have been heard.** 168–4.

- |           |                     |   |
|-----------|---------------------|---|
| <i>S.</i> | 1. Auditus fuēro,   | <i>I shall or will have been heard,</i>     |
|           | 2. Auditus fuēris,  | <i>Thou shalt, or wilt have been heard</i>  |
|           | 3. Auditus fuērit,  | <i>He shall, or will have been heard;</i>   |
| <i>P.</i> | 1. Auditi fuerimus, | <i>We shall, or will have been heard,</i>   |
|           | 2. Auditi fueritis, | <i>Ye shall, or will have been heard,</i>   |
|           | 3. Auditi fuērint,  | <i>They shall, or will have been heard.</i> |

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**PRESENT TENSE, may, or can be heard.**

- |           |                        |                                       |
|-----------|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i> | 1. Audi-ar,            | <i>I may, or can be heard,</i>        |
|           | 2. Audi-aris, or -āre, | <i>Thou mayst, or canst be heard.</i> |
|           | 3. Audi-atur,          | <i>He may, or can be heard;</i>       |
| <i>P.</i> | 1. Audi-āmur,          | <i>We may, or can be heard,</i>       |
|           | 2. Audi-amini,         | <i>Ye may, or can be heard,</i>       |
|           | 3. Audi-antur,         | <i>They may, or can be heard.</i>     |

\* See 164–5. and Note.

IMPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should be heard.*

<b>S.</b> 1. Aud-irer,	<i>I might be heard,</i>
2. Aud-irēris, or -irēre,	<i>Thou mightst be heard,</i>
3. Aud-irētur,	<i>He might be heard ;</i>
<b>P.</b> 1. Aud-irēmur,	<i>We might be heard,</i>
2. Aud-iremīni,	<i>Ye might be heard,</i>
3. Aud-irentur,	<i>They might be heard.</i>

PERFECT, *may have been heard.*

<b>S.</b> 1. Audītus sim, or fuērim,	<i>I may have been heard,</i>
2. Audītus sis, or fuēris,	<i>Thou mayst have been heard,</i>
3. Audītus sit, or fuērit,	<i>He may have been heard ;</i>
<b>P.</b> 1. Audīti simus, or fuerīmus,	<i>We may have been heard,</i>
2. Audīti sītis, or fuerītis,	<i>Ye may have been heard,</i>
3. Audīti sint, or fuērint,	<i>They may have been heard.</i>

PLUPERFECT, *might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

<b>S.</b> 1. Audītus essem, or fuissem,	<i>I might have been heard,</i>
2. Audītus esses, or fuisses,	<i>Thou mightst have been heard,</i>
3. Audītus esset, or fuisset,	<i>He might have been heard ;</i>
<b>P.</b> 1. Audīti essēmus, or fuissēmus,	<i>We might have been heard,</i>
2. Audīti essētis, or fuissētis,	<i>Ye might have been heard,</i>
3. Audīti essent, or fuissent,	<i>They might have been heard.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<b>S.</b> 2. Aud-ire, or -itor,	<i>Be thou heard,</i>
3. Aud-itor,	<i>Let him be heard ;</i>
<b>P.</b> 2. Aud-imīni,	<i>Be ye heard,</i>
3. Aud-iuntor,	<i>Let them be heard.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b> Aud-iri,	<i>To be heard (178-180),</i>
<b>PERF.</b> Esse, or fuisse audītus,	<i>To have been heard,</i>
<b>FUT.</b> Audītum iri,	<i>To be about to be heard.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>PERF.</b> Audītus, a, um,	{ <i>Heard, being heard. having been heard.</i>
<b>FUT.</b> Audiendus, a, um,	
	{ <i>To be heard, proper, or necessary to be heard.</i>

## SYNOPSIS OF THE MOODS AND TENSES.

	<i>Indicative.</i>	<i>Subjunctive.</i>	<i>Imper.</i>	<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles</i>
<b>Pres.</b>	Audior,	Audiar,	Audire.	Audiri,	
<b>Imp.</b>	Audiēbar,	Audirer,			
<b>Perf.</b>	Auditus sum,	Auditus sim,		{ Esse, or fuisse auditus,	} Auditus
<b>Plup.</b>	Auditus eram,	Auditus essem.		Auditum iri.	
<b>Fut.</b>	Audiar,				Audiendus
<b>F-Perf.</b>	Auditus fuēro.				

After the same manner, inflect :

Munior,	muniri,	munitus,	<i>To be fortified.</i>
Polior,	poliri,	politus,	<i>To be polished.</i>
Vincior,	vinciri,	vinctus,	<i>To be bound.</i>

## 206.—§ 71. EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Give the designation, &c., as directed 192-1.—Audior, audiar, audiēbatur, auditus sum, audiētur, audimīni, audiemīni, audiamīni, audiremīni, auditus fuēris, audire, audiri, audiuntur, audiuntor, audientur, audiantur, auditi sunt, auditus erat, muniēbantur, munitus fuērit, munitus esse, munitus, munitur, vincitur, vinciētur, vinciātur, vincitor, venitur.

2. Translate the following into Latin, as directed 192-2.—He is heard, we were heard, he has been heard, they will be heard, ye may be heard, he should be heard, hear ye, to be heard, to be about to be heard, I was bound, he will be bound, they would be bound, we may have been bound, to be fortified, being fortified, to be about to be fortified, to have been fortified, &c.

## PROMISCUOUS EXERCISES ON THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

3. Give the designation, &c., as directed 190-1, 192-1.—Audiuit, audivēre, audiebātur, audirētur, audiuntur, audiuntor, muniēnt, munivērint, mūni, munire, munitor, muniens; veniat, ventum, veniendi, vēni, venēre, ventum erat, vinciunt, vinciuntor, vincirent, vinxisset, vinctus esset, vinctus fuērit, vēnit, vēnit, &c.

4. Translate the following words into Latin, as directed 190-2, 192-2.—I was heard, he heard, he has heard, we were heard

ye had been heard, they will be heard, they may be heard, they might have been heard, let them come, they should come, they will come, they will have come, I might have been bound, thou hast been bound, thou wilt be bound, thou art bound, thou wast bound, to be about to be bound, being bound, necessary to be bound, binding, &c.

5. *As directed* 190-3.—*Dicit* (*he says*) *se audire*,—*se audisse*,—*eum auditurum esse*,—*eos audituros fuisse*,—*eum auditum esse*,—*nos auditum iri*. *Dixit* (*he said*) *nos audiri*,—*vos auditos esse*,—*illos audituros esse*,—*feminas audituras fuisse*,—*feminas auditum iri*,—*vos vincere*,—*vos vinciri*, &c.

6. *Translate as directed* 190-5.—*He says* (*dicit*) that he was heard,—that he will hear,—that he bound,—that he was bound,—that he will come,—that we will not (*non*) come. *He said* (*dixit*) that he (*himself*) heard,—that he (*some other*) heard,—that we would hear,—that they would not be heard,—that we were bound,—that we had been bound,—that we would be bound,—that he had polished,—that they had been polished,—would be polished,—would have polished,—would not be polished;—to have been polished,—bound,—fortified,—proper to be fortified. *He will say* (*dicet*) that we will hear,—will be heard,—will be bound,—polished, &c.

## 207.—§ 72. DEPONENT AND COMMON VERBS.

1. DEPONENT VERBS\* are those which, under a passive form, have an active signification; as, *loquor*, "I speak;" *morior*, "I die."

2. COMMON VERBS are those which, under a passive form, have an active or passive signification, as, *crimīnor*, "I accuse," or "I am accused."

*Obs.* 1. All deponent verbs seem to have been originally passives. Hence, there are many verbs which, though found in the active voice, are used as deponents in the passive.

*Obs.* 2. In common verbs, the passive sense is generally

\* So called from *depono*, "I lay aside," because, though in the passive form, they have *laid aside* the passive sense.

confined to the perfect participle; thus, we can say *adeptus victorium*, "having obtained the victory;" or, *victoriâ adeptâ*, "the victory being obtained." Hence, *adipiscor* is called a common verb, though in all its parts, except the perfect participle, it is usually deponent, or has an active signification.

*Obs. 3.* Deponent verbs are conjugated and inflected like the passive voice of the conjugations to which they belong; except that they have also the participles, gerunds, supines and future of the infinitive, like the active voice. 182-12, 13.

## 208.—§ 73. EXAMPLE OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Miror,	mirâri,	mirâtus,	<i>To admire.</i>

[Inflected like *Amor*, 191.]

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Mir-or, -âris, or -âre, &c.,	<i>I admire, am admiring, &amp;c.</i>
<b>IMP.</b>	Mir-âbar, -abâris, or -abâre,	<i>I admired, was admiring.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Mirâtus sum, or fui, &c.,	<i>I have admired, I admired.</i>
<b>PLUP.</b>	Miratus eram, or fuëram,	<i>I had admired.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Mir-âbor, -abëris, or -abëre,	<i>I shall, or will admire.</i>
<b>F.-PERF.</b>	Mirâtus fuëro, &c.,	<i>I shall, or will have admired.</i>

### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Mir-er, -ëris, or -ëre, &c.,	<i>I may, or can admire,</i>
<b>IMP.</b>	Mir-ârer, -arëris, or -arëre,	<i>I might admire.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Mirâtus sim, or fuërim, &c.,	<i>I may have admired.</i>
<b>PLUP.</b>	Mirâtus essem, or fuisset,	<i>I might, &amp;c., have admired.</i>

### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Mir-âre. or -âtor, &c.,	<i>Admire thou, &amp;c. 149.</i>
--------------	-------------------------	----------------------------------

### INFINITIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Mirâri,	<i>To admire. 178-80.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Mirâtus esse, or fuisse,	<i>To have admired.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Mirâturus esse,	<i>To be about to admire.</i>
<b>F.-PERF.</b>	Mirâturus fuisse,	<i>To have been about to admire.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Mirans,	<i>Admiring.</i>
PERF.	Mirātus,	<i>Having admired.</i>
F. ACT.	Miratūrus, a, um,	<i>About to admire.</i>
F. PASS.	Mirandus, a, um,	} <i>To be admired, deserving, or proper to be admired.</i>

## GERUNDS.

Nom.	Mirandum,	<i>Admiring.</i>
Gen.	Mirandi, &c.,	<i>Of admiring.</i>

## SUPINES.

FORMER,	Mirātum,	<i>To admire.</i>
LATTER,	Mirātu,	<i>To be admired.</i>

SYNOPSIS of the moods and tenses, as in *Amor.* 191.

## 209.—§ 74. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Deponents of the second conjugation are few in number. Of these, *medeor*, "to heal," has no participle of its own. Instead of the perfect participle, *medicatus* is used. *Mecor* has *merui*, as well as *meritus sum*, in the perfect indicative. *Reo* has no imperfect subjunctive.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Polliceor,	pollicēri,	pollicitus,	<i>To promise.</i>

[Inflected like *Moneor.* 195.]

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Pollic-eor, -ēris, or -ēre, &c.,	<i>I promise, &amp;c.</i>
IMP.	Pollic-ēbar, -ebāris, or -ebāre, &c.,	<i>I promised, &amp;c.</i>
PERF.	Pollicitus sum, or fui, &c.,	<i>I have promised, &amp;c.</i>
PLUP.	Pollicitus eram, or fuēram, &c.,	<i>I had promised, &amp;c.</i>
FUT.	Pollic-ēbor, -ebēris, or -ebēre, &c.,	<i>I shall, or will promise</i>
F.-PERF.	Pollicitus ero or fuēro, &c.,	} <i>I shall, or will have promised.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Pollice-ar, -āris, or -āre, &c.,	<i>I may, or can promise, &amp;c.</i>
<b>IMP.</b>	Pollic-ērer, -erēris, or -erēre, &c.,	<i>promise.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Pollicitus sim, or fuērim, &c.,	<i>I may have promised, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PLUP.</b>	Pollicitus essem, or fuissem, &c.,	<i>have promised</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Pollic-ēre, or -ētor, &c.,	<i>Promise thou, &amp;c.</i>
--------------	----------------------------	------------------------------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Pollicēri,	<i>To promise. 178-180.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Pollicitus esse, or fuisse,	<i>To have promised.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Polliciturus esse,	<i>To be about to promise.</i>
<b>F.-PERF.</b>	Polliciturus fuisse,	<i>To have been about to promise</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<b>PRES.</b>	Pollicens,	<i>Promising.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Pollicitus,	<i>Having promised.</i>
<b>F. ACT.</b>	Polliciturus, a, um,	<i>About to promise.</i>
<b>F. PASS.</b>	Pollicendus, a, um,	<i>To be promised, &amp;c.</i>

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

<b>Nom.</b>	Pollicendum, <i>Promising.</i>	1. Pollicitum, <i>To promise.</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	Pollicendi, &c.	2. Pollicitu, <i>To be promised</i>

SYNOPSIS of the moods and tenses, as in 195.

## 210.—§ 75 DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Utor,	ūti,	ūsus,	<i>To use.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<b>PRES.</b>	Ut-or, -ēris, or -ēre, &c.,	<i>I use, do use, am using, &amp;c.</i>
<b>IMP.</b>	Ut-ēbar, -ebāris, or -ebāre, &c.,	<i>I used, did use, was using, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PERF.</b>	Usus sum, or fui, &c.,	<i>I have used, used, did use, &amp;c.</i>
<b>PLUP.</b>	Usus ēram, or fuēram, &c.,	<i>I had used, &amp;c.</i>
<b>FUT.</b>	Ut-ar, -ēris, or -ēre, &c.,	<i>I shall, or will use, &amp;c.</i>
<b>F.-PERF.</b>	Usus ēro, or fuēro, &c.,	<i>I shall, or will have used, &amp;c.</i>



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Ut-ar, -āris, or -āre, &c.,	<i>I may, or can use, &amp;c.</i>
IMP.	Ut-ērer, -erēris, or -erēre, &c.,	<i>I might, could &amp;c., use.</i>
PERF.	Usus sim, or fuērim, &c.,	<i>I may have used, &amp;c.</i>
PLUP.	Usus essem, or fuisset, &c.,	<i>I might have used, &amp;c.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Ut-ēre, or -itor, &c.,	<i>Use thou, &amp;c.</i>
-------	------------------------	--------------------------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Uti,	<i>To use. 178-180.</i>
PERF.	Usus esse, or fuisse,	<i>To have used.</i>
FUT.	Usturus esse,	<i>To be about to use.</i>
F.-PERF.	Usturus fuisse,	<i>To have been about to use.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Utens,	<i>Using.</i>
PERF.	Usus,	<i>Having used.</i>
F. ACT.	Usturus, a, um,	<i>About to use.</i>
F. PASS.	Utendus, a, um,	<i>To be used, &amp;c.</i>

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

Nom.	Utendum, <i>Using.</i>	1. Usum, <i>To use.</i>
Gen.	Utendi, <i>of using, &amp;c.</i>	2. Usu, <i>To be used, to use.</i>

SYNOPSIS of the moods and tenses, as in 200.

## 211.—§ 76. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Mejor,	metiri,	mensus,	<i>To measure.</i>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Met-ior, -iris, or -ire, &c.,	<i>I measure, am measuring.</i>
IMP.	Meti-ēbar, -ebāris, or -ebāre,	<i>I measured, was measuring.</i>
PERF.	Mensus sum, or fui, &c.,	<i>I have measured, measured.</i>
PLUP.	Mensus ēram, or fuēram, &c.,	<i>I had measured.</i>
FUT.	Meti-ar, -ēris, or -ēre, &c.,	<i>I shall, or will measure.</i>
F.-PERF.	Mensus ēro, or fuēro, &c.,	<i>I shall, or will have measured.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Meti-ar, -āris, or -āre, &c.,	<i>I may, or can measure.</i>
IMP.	Meti-rer, -rēris, or -rēre,	<i>I might, &amp;c., measure.</i>
PERF.	Mensus sim, or fuērim,	<i>I may have measured.</i>
PLUP	Mensus essem, or fuissem,	<i>I might, &amp;c., have measured.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Met-ire, or -itor, &c.,	<i>Measure thou, &amp;c.</i>
-------	-------------------------	------------------------------

## INFINTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Metiri,	<i>To measure. 178-180.</i>
PERF.	Mensus esse, or fuisse,	<i>To have measured.</i>
FUT.	Mensurus esse,	<i>To be about to measure.</i>
F. PERF	Mensurus fuisse,	<i>To have been about to measure.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Metiens,	<i>Measuring.</i>
PERF.	Mensus,	<i>Having measured.</i>
F. ACT	Mensurus, a, um,	<i>About to measure.</i>
F. PASS	Metiendus, a, um,	<i>To be measured, &amp;c.</i>

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

Nom.	Metiendum, <i>Measuring.</i>	1. Mensum, <i>To measure.</i>
Gen.	Metiendi, <i>Of measuring, &amp;c.</i>	2. Mensu, <i>To be measured.</i>

SYNOPSIS of the moods and tenses, as in 205.

## 212.—§ 77. EXERCISES ON DEPONENT VERBS.

- |                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Miror, <i>I admire.</i>      | 3. Utor, <i>I use.</i>       |
| 2. Polliceor, <i>I promise.</i> | 4. Metior, <i>I measure.</i> |

1. Give the designation\* of the verb,—conjugate it ;—give the tense, mood, person, number, and translation of the following words, always observing the same order ; thus,—*Miror*, verb transitive, deponent, first conjugation,

\* In parsing deponent verbs, it is necessary, in giving the designation, to state whether the verb, as there used, is *transitive* or *intransitive*. But in stating the part of the verb used, it is unnecessary to mention the *voice*, because deponent verbs have only the passive form.

*Miror, mirāri, mirātus.* It is found in the present indicative, first person singular; “*I admire, do admire, am admiring.*”

*Mirabātur, mirabītur, mirantur, mirabuntur, mirarentur, pollicītus sum, pollicītus erat, pollicītus fuērit, pollicerentur, utitur, ūsus est, ūti, usūrus, ūtens, utendum, uterētur, ūtar, metīris, metiuntur, metiuntor, metimīni, mensus erat, mensus sit, mensi fuērunt, utēre, utēre, pollicēre, pollicītus, pollicens.*

2. *Translate the following English words into Latin, naming the part of the verb used; thus, “I have admired,” mirātus sum, in the perfect indicative, first person singular.*

They will use, we shall measure, let them measure, about to use, we have used, they may have used, he will have used, they will promise, they would have promised, we might admire, I would have used, use thou, let them use, promise ye, let us use (171-1), let us admire, they have promised, promising, having promised, to measure, let us measure.

3. *Translate the following into English, according to the rules and examples 190-3, 4.—Dicit (he says) me mirāri,—vos pollicēri,—nos mirātos esse,—eos pollicītūros esse,—homīnes mensūros esse,—femīnas pollicītūras esse,—te ūti,—se mirāri,—eum mirāri,—me mensūrum esse,—vos usūros (179, Note 1). Dicitur (he is said) pollicītus esse (179-6). Dixit (he said) se mirāri,—nos pollicītos esse,—eos pollicītūros,—vos mensos esse,—femīnas mensūras,—eum pollicītum.*

4. *Translate the following into Latin, according to direction 190-5.—He says (dicit) that I am using,—that thou admirest,—that he has measured,—that we will promise,—that the men will measure,—that the women will use,—that you will measure,—that I would have used,—that they would have admired,—that they admired. He said (dixit) that I was using,—had been using,—that you were measuring,—that he measured,—that they had promised,—that they would use.*

## 213.—§ 78. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS.

1. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS are those which, with an intransitive meaning throughout, have a passive form in the perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect indicative, and in the

perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; but an active form in the other tenses. They are the following:

*Second Conjugation.*

Audeo,	audēre,	ausus,	<i>To dare.</i>
Gaudeo,	gaudēre,	gavisus,	<i>To rejoice.</i>
Soleo,	solēre,	solitus,	<i>To be wont.</i>

*Third Conjugation.*

Fido,	fidēre,	fisus,	<i>To trust.</i>
-------	---------	--------	------------------

So also the compounds of *fido*, *confido*, "I trust," and *diffido*, "I distrust," which have also *confidi*, and *diffidi*, in the perfect. Neuter-passives are inflected thus

SECOND CONJUGATION.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	
Audeo,	audēre,	ausus,	<i>To dare.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Aud-eo, -es, -et, &c.,	<i>I dare, do dare, am daring.</i>
IMP.	Aud-ēbam, -ēbas, ēbat, &c.,	<i>I dared, was daring, &amp;c.</i>
PERF.	Ausus sum, or fui, &c.,	<i>I have dared, dared, did dare</i>
PLUP.	Ausus ēram, or fuēram,	<i>I had dared.</i>
FUT.	Aud-ēbo, -ēbis, -ēbit, &c.,	<i>I shall, or will dare.</i>
F.-PERF.	Ausūs fuēro, &c.,	<i>I shall have dared.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Aud-eam, -eas, -eat, &c.,	<i>I may, or can dare.</i>
IMP.	Aud-ērem, -ēres, -ēret, &c.,	<i>I might, could, &amp;c., dare</i>
PERF.	Ausus sim, or fuērim, &c.,	<i>I may have dared.</i>
PLUP.	Ausus essem, or fuissem, &c.,	<i>I might, &amp;c., have dared.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRES	Aud-ē, or -ēto, &c.,	<i>Dare thou, &amp;c.</i>
------	----------------------	---------------------------

INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES.	Audēre,	<i>To dare. 178-180.</i>
PERF.	Ausus esse, or fuisse,	<i>To have dared.</i>
FUT.	Ausūrus esse,	<i>To be about to dare.</i>
F.-PERF.	Ausūrus fuisse,	<i>To have been about to dare.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	Audens,	<i>Daring.</i>
PERF.	Ausus, a, um,	<i>Having dared.</i>
F. ACT.	Ausûrus, a, um,	<i>About to dare.</i>
F. PASS.	Audendus, a, um,	{ <i>To be dared, &amp;c. (seldom used.)</i>

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

Nom.	Audendum, <i>Daring.</i>	1. Ausum, <i>To dare.</i>
Gen.	Audendi, &c., <i>Of daring.</i>	2. Ausu, <i>To be dared, to dare</i>

2. The following verbs are called *Neutral Passives*, namely, *fio*, "I am made," or "I become;" *vapûlo*, "I am beaten;" *veneo*, "I am sold." They have an active form, but a passive signification, and serve as passives to *facio*, *verbëro*, and *vendo*. *Fio* has the passive form in the preterite tenses. 221.

## 214.—§ 79. GENERAL REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

1. The perfect and pluperfect active, in both the indicative and subjunctive, are often shortened by a syncope, as follows:

1st. In the first conjugation, *avi* and *ave* often drop *vi* and *ve* before *s* or *r*, and circumflect the *a*; thus, for *amavisti*, *amavissem*, *amavëram*, *amavëro*, *amavërim*, &c., we often have *amâsti*, *amâssem*, *amâram*, *amâro*, *amârim*, &c. Also in the second and third conjugations, *evi* drops *vi* in the same situation; as *complësti*, for *complëvistî*; *delëram*, for *delevëram*; *decrësssem*, for *decrevissem*; &c. But *ovi* is syncopated only in the preterite verb *nôvi*, and the compounds of *moveo*; as, *nôrant*, for *novërant*; *nôsse*, for *novisse*; *commôssem*, for *commovissem*, &c.

2d. In the fourth conjugation, *ivi* frequently loses *vi* before *s*; as, *audisti*, for *audivistî*; *audissem*, for *audivissem*. Sometimes the *v* only is dropped between two vowels; as, *audii*, for *audîvi*; *audiëram*, for *audivëram* &c. And so also with other preterites of the same form, with the tenses derived from them; as, *petii*, for *petîvi*; *iëram*, for *ivëram*; &c.

2. The perfect indicative active, third person plural, has two forms, *ërunt*, *ëre*. Both forms have the same meaning; the first is more common with the earlier, and the second, with the later writers.

3. In the passive voice, there are two forms of the second person singular, namely *ris* and *re*. The termination *re* is rarely used in the present indicative; in the other tenses, *re* is more common than *ris*, especially in Cicero.

4. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, *facio*, and *fēro*, are usually written *dic*, *duc*, *fac*, *fer*; also in their compounds, except in those of *facio*, which change *a* into *i*; as, *confice*, *perficie*, &c.

5. In the old forms of the language, the present infinitive passive was lengthened, especially among the poets, by adding *er*; as, *amarier*, for *amāri*; *legier*, for *lēgi*; &c.

6. The terminations *rimus* and *ritis* in the future-perfect indicative, and perfect subjunctive, have the *i* sometimes long, and sometimes short. It is marked short in the preceding paradigms. The pupil may be accustomed to give it both ways.

7. In the passive voice, the perfect and pluperfect have two forms. Of these, the perfect participle with *fui* and *fuēram* expresses the completion of past action more emphatically than when joined with *sum* and *ēram*. Thus, *pransus sum*, means "I have dined, I have just dined;" *pransus fui*, means "I have dined some time ago." 182-14.

8. The verb *sum*, through all its tenses, with the future participle in *rus*, is used to express the intention, at the time referred to, of doing a thing presently; or that the action is, or was, or will be, on the point of being done. When this idea is to be conveyed, this form of expression is used in preference to the future, which simply denotes that an act will be effected in future time. This, which is inflected as follows, is sometimes called the—

## FIRST PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRÆS. Amatūrus (a, um) sum,	<i>I am about to love.</i>
IMP. Amatūrus ēram,	<i>I was about to love.</i>
PERF. Amatūrus fui,	<i>I have been about to love.</i>
PLUP. Amatūrus fuēram,	<i>I had been about to love.</i>
FUT. Amatūrus ēro	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>

(*Amatūrus fuēro* is not used.)

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PRES. Amatūrus sim,	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
IMP. Amatūrus essem,	<i>I might, &amp;c., be about to love.</i>
PERF. Amatūrus fuërim,	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
PLUP. Amatūrus fuisset,	<i>I might, &amp;c., have been about to love.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PRES. Amatūrus esse,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
PERF. Amatūrus fuisse,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

9. In like manner, the future participle in *dus*, expressing *propriety* or *necessity* of doing at the time referred to, is joined with all the tenses of the verb *sum*, and thus forms what is called the—

## SECOND PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

Thus, PRES. Amandus sum,	<i>I deserve, or ought to be loved, &amp;c.</i>
IMP. Amandus eram,	<i>I deserved, or ought to be loved, &amp;c.</i>

And so forth through all the other tenses, as with the participles in *rus*, No. 8. In analyzing such expressions, however, it is better to parse each word of the compound separately, and combine them by the rules of syntax. A stronger necessity is expressed by the gerund, with the verb *est*; thus, *scribendum est mihi epistolam*, is “I MUST write a letter,” i. e. I am COMPELLED to do it; whereas, *scribenda est mihi epistola*, means simply, “I should write a letter.” See Syntax, 700.

10. The future infinitive passive is a compound of *iri*, the present infinitive passive of *eo*, “to go,” used impersonally, and the supine in *um*; so that *amatum iri*, literally is “to be going to love.

11. The verbal adjective in *bundus* is rendered like the present participle, but with increased strength; thus, *errans*, “wandering;” *errabundus*, “wandering to and fro;” *moriens*, “dying;” *moribundus*, “in the agonies of death;” &c.

12. The meaning and use of the gerundive participle already mentioned 182-7, will be more fully explained in Syntax, 707-711.

## § 80. COMPOUND VERBS.

215.—Verbs are compounded chiefly with prepositions, which modify the simple verb according to their respective meanings; thus, *eo*, “I go,” in composition with different prepositions, is modified by them; as, *adeo*, “I go to;” *abeo*, “I go from;” *exeo*, “I go out;” *ineo*, “I go in;” &c. In the formation of compounds, due regard must be paid to the following—

## GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound verbs form the perfect and supine in the same manner as simple verbs; as, *āmo*, *amāre*, *amāvī*, *amātum*; *red-āmo*, *red-amāre*, *red-amāvī*, *red-amātum*.

2. Simple verbs which double the first syllable in the perfect, drop the reduplication in the compounds; as, *pello*, *pe-pūli*; *re-pello*, *re-pūli*. Except *præ-curro*, *re-pungo*, and the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, and *posco*.

3. Compound verbs which change *a* of the present into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *facio*, *per-ficio*; supine, *perfectum*. Except verbs ending in *do*, *go*; with the compounds of *habeo*, *placeo*, *salio*, *sapio*, and *statuo*.

4. Verbs which are defective in the perfect, likewise want the supine.

5. The following changes, which happen to the preposition, and to the simple verb, in a state of composition, merit attention.

1st. *A* is used in composition before *m* and *r*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and *d*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*. Before *fēro* and *fugio*, it becomes *au*; as, *aufēro*, *aufugio*. *Ab* is used before *c* and *t*; as, *absēdo*, *abstūli*.

2d. *Ad* changes *d* into the first letter of the simple verb beginning with *a*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*; as, *accurro*, *afficio*, *aggēro*. In some writers, it remains unaltered; as, *adficio*.

3d. *Am* (i. e. *ambi*, from *dupl*, *circum*), before *c*, *q*, *f*, *h*, is changed into *an*; as, *anguīro*, *anhēlo*. Sometimes it assumes its own *b*; as, *ambio*.

4th. *Circum* remains unaltered. The *m* is sometimes changed; as, *circundo* for *circumdo*; or omitted; as, *circueo* for *circumex*.

5th. *Con*, before a vowel or *h*, drops the *n*; as, *coaleo*, *cohībeo*; before *l*, its *n* becomes *l*; and before *b*, *m*, *p*, it becomes *m*; and before *r*, it changes *n* into *r*; as, *colligo*, *combūbo*, *commeo*, *compāro*, *corripia*. With *aro*, *b* is inserted after *con*, making *combūro*.



6th. *Di* is used before *d, g, l, m, n, v*; as, *diduco, digladiator*. *Dis* and sometimes *di* are used before *r*; as, *dirumpo, dirumpo*; likewise before *j*; as, *disjudico, dijudico*. *Dis* is used before *c, p, q, s, t*; as, *discumbo, dispello*. Before *sp* and *st*, *s* is removed; and before *f*, it is changed into *f*; as, *dispicio, disto, diffiteor*. Before a vowel, it assumes *r*; as, *dirimo, from amo*.

7th. *E* is found before *b, d, g, l, m, n, r*, and before *j* and *v*; as, *ebibo, alio, ejicio, evêho*. *Ex* is used before vowels, and also before *h, c, p, q, t, s*; as, *exaro, exhibeo, excutio*; before *f*, *x* becomes *f*; as, *efficio*.

8th. *In* sometimes changes *n* into the first letter of the simple verb; as, *illudo*; but before *b, m, p*, it changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbibo, immineo, impleo*.

9th. *Ob* generally remains unaltered. The *b* is sometimes omitted, as in *emitto*; or changed into the first letter of the simple verb, as *offero*.

10th. *Re* assumes *d* before *d*, also before a vowel, or *h*; as, *reddo, reddimo, redeo, redhibeo*. *Pro*, likewise, sometimes inserts *d*, as in *prodeo*.

11th. *Sub* changes *b* into the initial consonant of the simple word, before *c, j, g, m, p, r*; as, *succedo, suffero, suggero*. *Submitto* and *summitto, submoveo* and *summoveo*, are both used.

12th. *Trans* is generally contracted into *tra*, before *d, j, n*; as, *trado, trahio, trano*; and sometimes before *l* and *m*; as, *traluceo, trameo*. *Post* becomes *pos* in *postuli*. Few if any changes take place in the other prepositions. Other prefixes consist of verbs, as in *calefacio*, of *caleo*; of adverbs, as in *benefacio*, from *bene*; of participles and adjectives, as in *mansuefacio* from *mansuetus*, *magnifico* from *magnus*; of substantives, as in *significa* from *signum*; of a preposition and noun, as in *animadverto*, from *ad* and *animus*, with *verto*.

## § 81. LIST OF VERBS IRREGULAR IN THE PERFECT AND SUPINE.

[Owing to the irregularity of many verbs in the perfect and supine in the third conjugation, and of not a few in the other conjugations also, no rules that could be given would be of much practical utility. The only effectual way to attain accuracy and readiness in the conjugation of verbs, is, to commit the primary parts, or the conjugation accurately from the Dictionary. To be able to do this, as soon as possible, is of great importance to every scholar; and it is not a task of so great difficulty as might be supposed. The following list contains all the simple verbs that vary, in the perfect and supine,

from the general rule. By committing a portion of these to memory every day, to be recited with the ordinary lesson, and repeating this exercise in revisals till the whole is inwrought into the memory, much future labor will be saved; and this can be done in a few weeks, without at all interfering with the regular recitations. When the composition of a verb changes its form, it is noticed at the foot of the page, to which reference is made by numbers.]

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

216.—RULE. Verbs of the first conjugation have *avi* in the perfect, and *atum* in the supine; as,

Amo,	amāre,	amāvi,	amātum,	To love.
Mūto,	mutāre,	mutāvi,	mutātum,	To change.

### EXCEPTIONS.

The tenses of some verbs included in the lists of Exceptions are also found, especially in the earlier authors, conjugated according to the General Rules. The form here given is that which is in common use

<i>Pres</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Do, <sup>1</sup>	dāre,	dēdi,	dātum,	To give.
Sto, <sup>2</sup>	stāre,	stēti,	stātum,	To stand.
Lāvo,	{ lavāre, lavēre,	{ lāvi,	{ lōtum, lautum, lavātum,	{ To wash.
Pōto,	potāre,	potāvi,	{ pōtum, or potātum,	{ To drink.
Jūvo, <sup>3</sup>	juvāre,	jūvi,	jūtum,	To assist.
Cūbo, <sup>4</sup>	cubāre,	cubui,	cubitum,	To lie.

<sup>1</sup> *Circundo*, "to surround;" *perundo*, "to ruin;" *satisdo*, "to give surety;" and *venundo*, "to sell," are conjugated like *do*. The other compounds belong to the third conjugation, and have *didī* in the perfect, and *ditum* in the supine; as, *abdo*, *abdere*, *additum*, *abdidī*, "to hide;" *reddo*, *reddidī*, *redditum*, "to give back."

<sup>2</sup> The compounds of *sto* have *stīti* in the perfect, and *stātum* in the supine as, *consto*, *constiti*, *constātum*, "to stand together." Some of the compounds have occasionally *stītum* in the supine; as, *præsto*, *præstiti*, *præstitum*, or *præstātum*, "to stand before," "to excel." *Adsto*, "to stand by;" *insto*, "to urge on," and *resto*, "to remain over and above," have no supine. *Aniesto*, "to stand before;" *circumsto*, "to stand round;" *intersto*, "to stand between;" and *supersto*, "to stand over," have *stīti* in the perfect; and the first two, and probably the others also, want the supine. *Disto*, "to be distant," and *substo*, "to stand under," have neither perfect nor supine.

<sup>3</sup> The supine *jūtum* is doubtful, as the future participle is *juvaturus*. *Adjuvo* has *adjūtum* only, and *adjuturus*.

<sup>4</sup> In the same manner, those compounds are conjugated which do not assume an *m*; as, *accubo*, "to lie next to;" *excubo*, "to watch;" *incubo*, "to lie upon;" *recubo*, "to lie down again;" *secubo*, "to lie apart." The compounds which assume an *m* belong to the third conjugation, and have *vi* and *itum* in the perfect and supine; as, *incumbo*, *incubui*, *incubitum*, "to lie upon."

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Dōmo,</i>	<i>domāre,</i>	<i>domui,</i>	<i>domitum,</i>	<i>To subdue.</i>
<i>Sōno,<sup>5</sup></i>	<i>sonāre,</i>	<i>sonui,</i>	<i>sonitum,</i>	<i>To sound.</i>
<i>Tōno,<sup>6</sup></i>	<i>tonāre,</i>	<i>tonui,</i>	<i>tonitum,</i>	<i>To thunder.</i>
<i>Vēto,<sup>7</sup></i>	<i>vetāre,</i>	<i>vetui,</i>	<i>vetitum,</i>	<i>To forbid.</i>
<i>Crēpo,<sup>8</sup></i>	<i>crepāre,</i>	<i>crepui,</i>	<i>crepitum,</i>	<i>To make a noise.</i>
<i>Mico,<sup>9</sup></i>	<i>micāre,</i>	<i>micui,</i>	_____	<i>To glitter.</i>
<i>Frico,<sup>10</sup></i>	<i>fricāre,</i>	<i>fricui,</i>	<i>frictum,</i>	<i>To rub.</i>
<i>Seco,</i>	<i>secāre,</i>	<i>secui,</i>	<i>sectum,</i>	<i>To cut.</i>
<i>Neco,<sup>11</sup></i>	<i>necāre,</i>	<i>{ necāvi, or necui,</i>	<i>{ necatum,</i>	<i>To kill.</i>
<i>Lābo,</i>	<i>labāre,</i>	_____	_____	<i>To fall, or faint.</i>
<i>Nexo,</i>	<i>nexāre,</i>	_____	_____	<i>To bind.</i>
<i>Plico,<sup>12</sup></i>	<i>plicāre,</i>	_____	_____	<i>To fold.</i>

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

217.—**RULE.** Verbs of the Second Conjugation have *ui* in the perfect, and *itum* in the supine; as,

<i>Moneo,</i>	<i>monēre,</i>	<i>monui,</i>	<i>monitum,</i>	<i>To advise.</i>
<i>Habeo,<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>habēre,</i>	<i>habui,</i>	<i>habitum,</i>	<i>To have.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

Intransitives which have *ui* in the perfect, want the supine; as, *splendui*, "to shine;" *madeo*, *madui*, "to be wet."

<sup>5</sup> The future participle is *sonaturus*.

<sup>6</sup> *Intōno* has *intonātus* in the perfect participle.

<sup>7</sup> *Vēto* has sometimes *vetāvi* in the perfect.

<sup>8</sup> *Discrepo*, "to differ," and *incrēpo*, "to chide," have sometimes *dei* and *atum*, as well as *ui* and *itum*. *Incrēpo* seldom has the latter form.

<sup>9</sup> *Emico*, "to shine forth," has *emicui*, *emicatum*; and *dimico*, "to fight," has *dimicāvi* (rarely *dimicui*), *dimicatum*.

<sup>10</sup> Some of the compounds of *frico* have the participles formed from the regular supine in *atum*; as, *confricātus*, *infricātus*.

<sup>11</sup> *Eneco*, "to kill," and *interneco*, "to destroy," have also *ui* and *atum*; the participle of *eneco* is usually *enectus*.

<sup>12</sup> *Duplico*, "to double;" *multiplico*, "to multiply;" *replico*, "to unfold;" and *supplico*, "to entreat humbly," have *dei* and *atum*. The other compounds of *plico* have either *ui* and *itum*, or *dei* and *atum*; as, *applico*, "to apply," *applicui*, *applicitum*, or *applicāvi*, *applicatum*. *Explico*, in the sense of *explain*, has *dei* and *atum*; in the sense of *unfold*, it has *ui* and *itum*.

<sup>1</sup> The compounds of *habeo* change *a* into *i*; as, *adhibeo*, *adhibui*, *adhibitum*, "admit;" *prohibeo*, *prohibui*, *prohibitum*, "to forbid."

The following Intransitives have *ui* and *itum*, according to the general rule :

Caleo, *to be hot.*

Careo, *to want.*

Jaceo, *to lie.*

Lateo,<sup>2</sup> *to lie hid.*

Liceo, *to be valued.*

Mereo, *to deserve.*

Coaleo, *to grow together.*

Doleo, *to grieve.*

Noceo, *to hurt.*

Pareo, *to appear.*

Placeo, *to please.*

Valeo, *to be in health.*

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Doceo,	docēre,	docui,	doctum,	<i>To teach.</i>
Teneo, <sup>3</sup>	tenēre,	tenui,	tentum,	<i>To hold.</i>
Misceo,	miscēre,	miscui,	{ mistum, or mixtum,	{ <i>To mix.</i>
Censeo, <sup>4</sup>	censēre,	censui,	censum,	<i>To think, to judge.</i>
Torreo,	torrēre,	torrui,	tostum,	<i>To roast.</i>
Sorbeo, <sup>5</sup>	sorbēre,	sorbui,	sorptum,	<i>To sup.</i>
Timeo,	timēre,	timui,	—	<i>To fear.</i>
Sileo,	silēre,	silui,	—	<i>To be silent.</i>
Arceo, <sup>6</sup>	arcēre,	arcui,	—	<i>To drive away.</i>
Taceo, <sup>7</sup>	tacēre,	tacui,	tacitum,	<i>To be silent.</i>
Prandeo, <sup>8</sup>	prandēre,	prandi,	pransum,	<i>To dine.</i>
Video,	vidēre,	vidi,	visum,	<i>To see.</i>
Sedeo, <sup>9</sup>	sedēre,	sēdi,	sessum,	<i>To sit.</i>
Strideo,	stridēre,	stridi,	—	<i>To make a noise.</i>
Freudeo,	frendēre,	frendi,	fressum,	<i>To gnash the teeth.</i>
Mordeo, <sup>10</sup>	mordēre,	momordi,	morsum,	<i>To bite.</i>
Pendeo,	pendēre,	pependi,	pensum,	<i>To hang.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The compounds of *lateo* want the supine ; as, *deliteo, delitui*, "to lurk ;" *perlateo, perlatui*, "to lie hid."

<sup>2</sup> The compounds of *teneo* change *e* into *i* ; as, *contineo, continui, contentum*, "to hold together." *Attineo*, "to hold ;" and *pertineo*, "to belong to," have no supine ; and *abstineo*, "to abstain from," seldom.

<sup>3</sup> *Censeo* has also *census sum* in the perfect, and *censitum* in the supine. *Accenseo*, "to reckon with," and *percenseo*, "to recount," want the supine ; and *recenseo*, "to review," has *recensum*, and *recensitum*.

<sup>4</sup> *Absorbeo*, "to sup up," and *exsorbeo*, "to sup out," have sometimes *absorpsi*, and *exsorpsi* in the perfect. The latter, with *resorbeo*, "to draw back," has no supine.

<sup>5</sup> The compounds of *arceo* have *itum* in the supine ; as, *exarceo, exercui, exercitum*, "to exercise."

<sup>6</sup> The compounds of *taceo* want the supine ; as, *conticeo, conticui*, "to keep silence ;" *reticeo, reticui*, "to remain silent," "to conceal."

<sup>7</sup> The participle *pransus* is used in the active sense of *having dined*.

<sup>8</sup> *Desideo*, "to sit idle ;" *dissideo*, "to disagree ;" *persideo*, "to continue ;" *præsidio*, "to sit before ;" *resideo*, "to sit down," "to rest ;" and *subsideo*, "to subside," want the supine.

<sup>9</sup> The compounds of *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*, do not double the first syllable of the perfect. See 215-2. *Impendo*, "to overhang," has *in* ; perfect or supine.

<i>1 res.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Spondeo,</i>	<i>spondere,</i>	<i>spondei,</i>	<i>sponsum,</i>	<i>To promise.</i>
<i>Tondeo,</i>	<i>tondere,</i>	<i>totoudi,</i>	<i>tousum,</i>	<i>To clip.</i>
<i>Moveo,<sup>11</sup></i>	<i>movere,</i>	<i>môvi,</i>	<i>môtum,</i>	<i>To move.</i>
<i>Foveo,</i>	<i>fovere,</i>	<i>fôvi,</i>	<i>fôtum,</i>	<i>To cherish.</i>
<i>Voveo</i>	<i>vovere,</i>	<i>vôvi,</i>	<i>vôtum,</i>	<i>To vow.</i>
<i>Faveo</i>	<i>savere,</i>	<i>sâvi,</i>	<i>sautum,</i>	<i>To favor.</i>
<i>Caveo,</i>	<i>cavere,</i>	<i>câvi,</i>	<i>cautum,</i>	<i>To beware of</i>
<i>Paveo,<sup>12</sup></i>	<i>pavere,</i>	<i>pâvi,</i>	—	<i>To be afraid.</i>
<i>Ferveo,<sup>13</sup></i>	<i>servere,</i>	<i>ferbui,</i>	—	<i>To boil.</i>
<i>Conniveo,</i>	<i>connivere,</i>	<i>connivi, or -ixi,</i>	—	<i>To wink.</i>
<i>Deleo,</i>	<i>delere,</i>	<i>delêvi,</i>	<i>delêtum,</i>	<i>To destroy.</i>
<i>Compleo,<sup>14</sup></i>	<i>complere,</i>	<i>complêvi,</i>	<i>complêtum,</i>	<i>To fill.</i>
<i>Fleo,</i>	<i>flere,</i>	<i>flêvi,</i>	<i>flêtum,</i>	<i>To weep.</i>
<i>Neo</i>	<i>nere,</i>	<i>nêvi,</i>	<i>nêtum,</i>	<i>To spin.</i>
<i>Vico,</i>	<i>viere,</i>	<i>viêvi,</i>	<i>viêtum,</i>	<i>To keep a vessel</i>
<i>Cio,<sup>14</sup></i>	<i>ciere,</i>	<i>(civi,)</i>	<i>citum,</i>	<i>To stir up.</i>
<i>Oleo,<sup>15</sup></i>	<i>olere,</i>	<i>olui,</i>	<i>(olûtum,)</i>	<i>To smell.</i>
<i>Suadeo,</i>	<i>suadere,</i>	<i>suâsi,</i>	<i>suâsum,</i>	<i>To advise.</i>
<i>Rideo,</i>	<i>ridere,</i>	<i>rîsi,</i>	<i>rîsum,</i>	<i>To laugh.</i>
<i>Maneo,</i>	<i>manere,</i>	<i>mansi,</i>	<i>mansum,</i>	<i>To stay.</i>
<i>Hæreo,</i>	<i>hæreere,</i>	<i>hæsi,</i>	<i>hæsum,</i>	<i>To stick.</i>
<i>Ardeo,</i>	<i>ardere,</i>	<i>arsi,</i>	<i>arsum,</i>	<i>To burn.</i>
<i>Tergeo,</i>	<i>tergere,</i>	<i>tersi,</i>	<i>tersum,</i>	<i>To wipe.</i>
<i>Mulceo,</i>	<i>mulcere,</i>	<i>mulsi,</i>	<i>mulsum,</i>	<i>To stroke.</i>
<i>Mulgeo,</i>	<i>mulgere,</i>	<i>mulsi,</i>	{ <i>mulsum, or</i> <i>muletum,</i> }	{ <i>To milk</i>
<i>Jubeo,</i>	<i>jubere,</i>	<i>jussi,</i>	<i>jussum,</i>	<i>To order.</i>
<i>Indulgeo,</i>	<i>indulgere,</i>	<i>indulsi,</i>	<i>indultum,</i>	<i>To indulge.</i>
<i>Torqueo,</i>	<i>torquere,</i>	<i>torsi,</i>	<i>tortum,</i>	<i>To twist.</i>
<i>Augeo,</i>	<i>augere,</i>	<i>auxi,</i>	<i>auctum,</i>	<i>To increase.</i>
<i>Urgeo,</i>	<i>urgere,</i>	<i>ursi,</i>	—	<i>To press.</i>
<i>Fulgeo,</i>	<i>fulgere,</i>	<i>fulsi,</i>	—	<i>To shine.</i>
<i>Turgeo,</i>	<i>turgere,</i>	<i>tursi,</i>	—	<i>To swell.</i>
<i>Algeo,</i>	<i>algere,</i>	<i>alsi,</i>	—	<i>To be cold.</i>

<sup>11</sup> Verbs in *veo* undergo a contraction in the supine. Intransitive verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *paveo, pâvi*, "to be afraid."

<sup>12</sup> *Ferveo, servi*, another form of this verb belonging to the third conjugation, is used in a few persons, and in the present infinitive.

<sup>13</sup> The other compounds of the obsolete verb *pleo* are conjugated in the same way; as, *expleo, impleo, repleo, suppleo*.

<sup>14</sup> *Cio* is the perfect of *cio* of the fourth conjugation, having *citum* or *citum* in the supine. The compounds, in the sense of *calling*, are generally conjugated according to this form; as, *excito, excitum*.

<sup>15</sup> The compounds of *oleo*, which retain the sense of the simple verb, have *vi* and *tum*; as, *oboleo, obolui, obolûtum*, "to smell strongly." The compounds which adopt a different signification, have *vi* and *itum*; as, *exoleo, exolevi, exolêtum*, "to fade;" *obsoleo, obsolevi, obsoletum*, "to grow out of use;" *inoleo, inolevi, inolêtum*, or *inolitum*, "to come into use." *Aboleo*, "to abolish;" *as abolevi, abolitum*; and *adoleo* to grow up, "to burn" (as a sacrifice), *adolevi, adultum*.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Lugeo,	lugēre,	luxi,	_____	To mourn.
Luceo,	luçēre,	luxi,	_____	To shine.
Frigeo,	frigēre,	frixi,	_____	To be cold.

The following verbs want both perfect and supine :

Aveo, to desire.  
 Denseo, to grow thick.  
 Flaveo, to be yellow.  
 Glabreo, to be smooth.  
 Hebeo, to be blunt.  
 Lacteo, to grow milky.

Liveo, to be black and blue.  
 Mæreo, to be sorrowful.  
 Renideo, to shine.  
 Polleo, to be powerful.  
 Scaeto, to flow out.

### 218.—THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation form the perfect and supine variously.

#### IO.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Facio, <sup>1</sup>	facēre,	fēci,	factum,	To do, to make.
Jacio, <sup>2</sup>	jacēre,	jēcī,	jactum,	To throw.
Aspicio, <sup>3</sup>	aspicēre,	aspexi,	aspectum,	To behold.
Allicio,	allicēre,	allexi,	allectum,	To allure.
Fodio,	fodēre,	fodi,	fossum,	To dig.
Fugio,	fugēre,	fūgi,	fugitum,	To fly.
Capio, <sup>4</sup>	capēre,	cēpi,	captum,	To take.
Rapio,	rapēre,	rapui,	raptum,	To seize.
Sapio,	sapēre,	sapui,	_____	To taste, to be wise.
Cupio,	cupēre,	cupivi,	cupitum,	To desire.
Pario, <sup>5</sup>	parēre,	pepēri,	{ partum, or paritum, }	To bring forth.

<sup>1</sup> *Facio*, when compounded with a preposition, changes *a* into *i*; as, *afflow*, *affeci*, *affectum*, "to affect." In the other compounds, the *a* is retained. A few compounds end in *ficio* and *fior*, and belong to the first conjugation; as, *amplifico*, "to enlarge;" *sacrifico*, "to sacrifice;" *gratifico*, "to gratify;" and *ludifico*, "to mock."

<sup>2</sup> The compounds of *jacio* change *e* into *i*; as, *abjicio*, *abjēci*, *abjectum*.

<sup>3</sup> The compounds of the obsolete verbs *specio* and *laicio* have *eci* and *ectum*; except *elicio*, "to draw out," which has *elēvi* and *elōitum*.

<sup>4</sup> The compounds of *capio*, *rapio*, and *sapio*, change *e* into *i*; as, *accipio*, *accēpi*, *acceptum*, "to receive;" *abripio*, *abripui*, *abreptum*, "to carry off;" *conspicio*, *conspēxi*, "to be in one's senses."

<sup>5</sup> The compounds of *pario* have *perui* and *pertum*, and belong to the fourth conjugation; as, *aperio*, *aperire*, *aperui*, *apertum*, "to open." So *operio*, "to shut," "to cover." But *comperio* (which also has a deponent form in the present indicative and infinitive, *comperior*, *comperiri*), "to know a thing for certain," has *compēri*, *compertum* and *reperio*, "to find," has *repēri*, *reperitum*.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Quatio, <sup>4</sup>	quatere,	(quasai),	quassum,	To shake.
UO.				
Acuo,	acuere,	acui,	actum,	To sharpen.
Arguo,	arguere,	argui,	argutum,	To show, to prove.
Batuo,	batuere,	batui,	batutum,	To beat.
Exuo,	exuere,	exui,	exutum,	To put off clothes
Imbuo,	imbuere,	imbui,	imbutum,	To moisten, to wet
Induo,	induere,	indui,	indutum,	To put on clothes
Minuo,	minuere,	minui,	minutum,	To lessen.
Spuo, <sup>7</sup>	spuere,	spui,	sputum,	To spit.
Statuo,	statuere,	statui,	statutum,	To set, to place.
Sternuo,	sternuere,	sternui,	sternutum,	To sneeze.
Suo,	suere,	sui,	sutum,	To sew, to stitch.
Tribuo,	tribuere,	tribui,	tributum,	To give, to divide.
Fluo,	fluere,	fluxi,	fluxum,	To flow.
Struo,	struere,	struxi,	structum,	To build.
Luo, <sup>8</sup>	luere,	lui,	lutum,	To pay, to wash.
Ruo, <sup>9</sup>	ruere,	ruì,	ruitum,	To rush, to fall.
Metuo,	metuere,	metui,	_____	To fear.
Pluo,	pluere,	plui,	_____	To rain.
Congruo,	congruere,	congrui,	_____	To agree.
Ingruo,	ingruere,	ingrui,	_____	To assail.
Annuo, <sup>10</sup>	annuere,	annui,	_____	To assent.

## BO.

Bibo,	bibere,	bibi,	bibitum,	To drink.
Scabo,	scabere,	scabi,	_____	To scratch.
Lambo,	lambere,	lambi,	_____	To lick.
Scribo,	scribere,	scripsi,	scriptum,	To write.
Nubo, <sup>11</sup>	nubere,	nupsi,	nuptum,	To veil, to be married
Glubo,	glubere,	_____	_____	To strip, to flay

## OO.

Dico,	dicere,	dixi,	dictum,	To say.
Duco,	ducere,	duxi,	ductum,	To lead.

<sup>4</sup> The compounds of *quatio* take the form *cutio*, and have *cussi* and *cussum*; as, *concutio*, "to shake violently," *concussi*, *concussum*.

<sup>7</sup> *Respuo*, "to spit out," "to reject," has no supine.

<sup>8</sup> The compounds of *luo* have *lutum* in the supine; as, *abluo*, *ablui*, *ablutum*, "to wash away," "to purify."

<sup>9</sup> The compounds of *ruo* have *rutum* in the supine; as, *diruo*, *dirui*, *dirutum*, "to overthrow." *Corruo*, "to fall together," and *irruo*, "to rush in furiously," have no supine.

<sup>10</sup> The other compounds of the obsolete *nuo*, as *abnuo*, "to refuse;" *ianuo*, "to nod with the head;" and *renuo*, "to deny," likewise want the supine. *Abnuitorus*, future participle from *abnuo*, is found.

<sup>11</sup> *Nupta sum*, another form of the perfect, is sometimes used instead of *nupsi*.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Vinco,	vincēre,	vici,	victum,	<i>To overcome.</i>
Parco, <sup>12</sup>	parcēre,	{ peperi, or parai,	{ parsum, or paritum,	<i>To spare.</i>
Ico,	icēre,	ici,	ictum,	<i>To strike.</i>

## SCO.

Cresco,	crescēre,	crēvi,	crētum,	<i>To grow.</i>
Nosco, <sup>13</sup>	noscēre,	nōvi,	nōtum,	<i>To know.</i>
Quiesco,	quiescēre,	quievi,	quietum,	<i>To rest.</i>
Scisco,	sciscēre,	scivi,	scitum,	<i>To ordain.</i>
Suesco,	suescēre,	suēvi,	suētum,	<i>To be accustomed.</i>
Pasco, <sup>14</sup>	pascēre,	pāvi,	pastum,	<i>To feed.</i>
Disco,	discēre,	didici,	_____	<i>To learn.</i>
Posco,	poscēre,	poposci,	_____	<i>To demand.</i>
Glisco, <sup>15</sup>	gliscēre,	_____	_____	<i>To glitter, to grow.</i>

## DO

Accendo,	accendēre,	accendi,	accensum,	<i>To kindle.</i>
Cūdo,	cūdēre,	cūdi,	cūsum,	<i>To forge.</i>
Defendo,	defendēre,	defendi,	defensum,	<i>To defend.</i>
Edo, <sup>16</sup>	edēre,	ēdi,	esum,	<i>To eat.</i>
Mando,	mandēre,	mandi,	mansum,	<i>To chew.</i>
Prehendo,	prehendēre,	prehendi,	prehensum,	<i>To take hold of.</i>
Scando,	scandēre,	scandi,	scansum,	<i>To climb.</i>
Divido,	dividēre,	divisi,	divisum,	<i>To divide.</i>
Rādo,	radēre,	rāsi,	rāsum,	<i>To shave.</i>
Claudo, <sup>17</sup>	claudēre,	clausi,	clausum,	<i>To close.</i>
Plaudo, <sup>18</sup>	plaudēre,	plausi,	plausum,	<i>To applaud.</i>
Lūdo,	ludēre,	lūsi,	lūsum,	<i>To play.</i>
Trūdo,	trudēre,	trūsi,	trūsum,	<i>To thrust.</i>
Lædo, <sup>19</sup>	lædēre,	læsi,	læsum,	<i>To hurt.</i>

<sup>12</sup> The forms *parsi* and *parcitum* are seldom used.

<sup>13</sup> The future participle is *noscitūrus*, from *noscitum*, the old form of the supine. *Agnosco*, "to own," has *agnōvi*, *agnitum*; and *cognosco*, "to know," has *cognōvi*, *cognitum*.

<sup>14</sup> *Compesco*, "to feed together," "to restrain;" and *dispesco*, "to separate," have *compescui*, and *dispescui*, without the supine.

<sup>15</sup> *Fatisco*, "to be weary," likewise wants both perfect and supine; and also all inceptive verbs, unless when they adopt the tenses of their primitives; as, *ardesco*, "to grow hot," *arui*, *arsum*. 227, Obs. 4.

<sup>16</sup> All the compounds of *edo* are conjugated in the same manner, except *comēdo*, "to eat up," which has *comēsum*, or *comestum*, in the supine. See § 88, 9.

<sup>17</sup> The compounds of *claudio* change *au* into *u*; as, *conclūdo*, *conclūsi*, *conclūsum*, "to conclude." *Circumclaudio* is found in Cæsar.

<sup>18</sup> The compounds of *plaudo*, except *ap-plaudo* and *circum-plaudo*, change *au* into *o*; as, *explōdo*, *explōsi*, *explōsum*, "to reject."

<sup>19</sup> The compounds of *lædo* change *æ* into *i*; as, *allido*, *allisi*, *allisum*, "to dash against."



<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Rôdo,</i>	<i>rodere,</i>	<i>rôai,</i>	<i>rôsum,</i>	<i>To guess.</i>
<i>Vado,</i> <sup>20</sup>	<i>vadere,</i>	_____	_____	<i>To go.</i>
<i>Cêdo,</i>	<i>cedere,</i>	<i>ceasi,</i>	<i>cessum,</i>	<i>To yield.</i>
<i>Pando,</i>	<i>pandere,</i>	<i>pandi,</i>	{ <i>passum, or</i>	{ <i>To open.</i>
			{ <i>pansum,</i>	
<i>Fundo,</i>	<i>fundere,</i>	<i>fûdi,</i>	<i>fûsum,</i>	<i>To pour forth.</i>
<i>Scindo,</i>	<i>scindere,</i>	<i>scidi,</i>	<i>scissum,</i>	<i>To cut.</i>
<i>Findo,</i>	<i>findere,</i>	<i>fidi,</i>	<i>fissum,</i>	<i>To cleave.</i>
<i>Tundo,</i> <sup>21</sup>	<i>tundere,</i>	<i>tutûdi,</i>	{ <i>tunsun, or</i>	{ <i>To beat.</i>
			{ <i>tûsum,</i>	
<i>Câdo,</i> <sup>22</sup>	<i>cadere,</i>	<i>cecidî,</i>	<i>câsum,</i>	<i>To fall.</i>
<i>Cædo,</i> <sup>22</sup>	<i>cædere,</i>	<i>cecidî,</i>	<i>cæsum,</i>	<i>To cut, to kill</i>
<i>Tendo,</i> <sup>24</sup>	<i>tendere,</i>	<i>tetendi,</i>	{ <i>tensum, or</i>	{ <i>To stretch.</i>
			{ <i>tentum,</i>	
<i>Pendo,</i>	<i>pendere,</i>	<i>pependi,</i>	<i>pensum,</i>	<i>To hang.</i>
<i>Crêdo,</i> <sup>25</sup>	<i>credere,</i>	<i>credidi,</i>	<i>credîtum,</i>	<i>To believe.</i>
<i>Vendo,</i>	<i>vendere,</i>	<i>vendidi,</i>	<i>vendîtum,</i>	<i>To sell.</i>
<i>Abcondo,</i>	<i>abcondere,</i>	<i>abcondi,</i>	<i>abcondîtum,</i>	<i>To hide.</i>
<i>Strido,</i>	<i>stridere,</i>	<i>stridi,</i>	_____	<i>To creak.</i>
<i>Rûdo,</i>	<i>rudere,</i>	<i>rûdi,</i>	_____	<i>To bray (as an ass).</i>
<i>Sido,</i> <sup>26</sup>	<i>sidere,</i>	<i>sidi,</i>	_____	<i>To sink down</i>

## GO.

<i>Cingo,</i>	<i>cingere,</i>	<i>cinxi,</i>	<i>cinctum,</i>	<i>To surround.</i>
<i>Fligo,</i> <sup>27</sup>	<i>figere,</i>	<i>fixi,</i>	<i>flictum,</i>	<i>To dash.</i>
<i>Jungo,</i>	<i>ungere,</i>	<i>junxi,</i>	<i>junctum,</i>	<i>To join.</i>
<i>Lingo,</i>	<i>ungere,</i>	<i>linxi,</i>	<i>linctum,</i>	<i>To lick.</i>
<i>Mungo,</i>	<i>ungere,</i>	<i>munxi,</i>	<i>munctum,</i>	<i>To wipe the nose.</i>
<i>Plango,</i>	<i>plangere,</i>	<i>planxi,</i>	<i>planetum,</i>	<i>To beat.</i>

<sup>20</sup> The compounds of *vado* have the perfect and supine; as, *evado, evâi, evâsum*, "to escape."

<sup>21</sup> The compounds of *tundo* have *tûdi* and *tûsum*; as, *contundo*, "to bruise," *contûdi, contûsum*. See 215, Rule 2. Some of the compounds have also a perfect participle formed from *tunsun*; as, *obtunsus* and *retunsus*, from *obtundo* and *retundo*.

<sup>22</sup> The compounds of *cado* want the supine; as, *accido, accidî*, "to happen;" except *incido, incidî, incidum*, "to fall in;" *occido, occidî, occidum*, "to fall down;" and *recido, recidî, recidum*, "to fall back."

<sup>23</sup> The compounds of *cædo* change *c* into *t*; as, *accido, accidî, accidum*, "to cut about;" *decido, decidî, decidum*, "to cut off."

<sup>24</sup> The compounds of *tendo* have generally *tentum* in the supine, except *artendo*, "to stretch out," and *ostendo*, "to show," which have also *tensum*, the latter, almost always.

<sup>25</sup> The other compounds of *do* which belong to the third conjugation have also *didî* and *ditum*; as, *condo, condidî, conditum*, "to build." *Abcondo* has sometimes *abcondidî*. See page 167, Note 1.

<sup>26</sup> The compounds of *sido* adopt the perfect and supine of *sedeo*; as, *consido, consedî, consessum*, "to sit down."

<sup>27</sup> The compounds of *figo* are conjugated in the same way, except *profigo*, "to dash down," which is a regular verb of the first conjugation.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Rêgo</i> , <sup>22</sup>	<i>regère.</i>	<i>rexī,</i>	<i>rectum,</i>	<i>To rule.</i>
<i>Stinguo</i> , <sup>23</sup>	<i>stinguère,</i>	<i>stinxi.</i>	<i>stinctum,</i>	<i>To dash out.</i>
<i>Sûgo,</i>	<i>augère,</i>	<i>suxi,</i>	<i>suctum,</i>	<i>To suck.</i>
<i>Têgo,</i>	<i>tegère,</i>	<i>texi,</i>	<i>tectum,</i>	<i>To cover.</i>
<i>Tinguo,</i>	<i>tinguère,</i>	<i>tiuxi,</i>	<i>tinctum,</i>	<i>To dip.</i>
<i>Unguo,</i>	<i>unguère,</i>	<i>unxi,</i>	<i>unctum,</i>	<i>To anoint.</i>
<i>Surgo,</i>	<i>surgère,</i>	<i>surrexi,</i>	<i>surrectum,</i>	<i>To rise.</i>
<i>Pergo,</i>	<i>pergère,</i>	<i>perrexi,</i>	<i>perrectum,</i>	<i>To go forward</i>
<i>Stringo,</i>	<i>stringère,</i>	<i>strinxi,</i>	<i>strictum,</i>	<i>To bind.</i>
<i>Fingo,</i>	<i>figère,</i>	<i>finxi,</i>	<i>fictum,</i>	<i>To feign.</i>
<i>Pingo,</i>	<i>pingère,</i>	<i>pinxi,</i>	<i>pictum,</i>	<i>To paint.</i>
<i>Frango</i> , <sup>20</sup>	<i>frangère,</i>	<i>frēgi,</i>	<i>fractum,</i>	<i>To break</i>
<i>Ago</i> , <sup>31</sup>	<i>agère,</i>	<i>ēgi,</i>	<i>actum,</i>	<i>To do to drive</i>
<i>Tango,</i>	<i>tangère,</i>	<i>tetigi,</i>	<i>tactum,</i>	<i>To touch.</i>
<i>Lêgo</i> , <sup>32</sup>	<i>legère.</i>	<i>lēgi,</i>	<i>lectum,</i>	<i>To gather. to read.</i>
<i>Pungo</i> , <sup>33</sup>	<i>pungère,</i>	<i>pupūgi,</i>	<i>punctum,</i>	<i>To prick.</i>
<i>Pango</i> , <sup>34</sup>	<i>pangère,</i>	<i>panxi,</i>	<i>pactum,</i>	<i>To drive in.</i>
<i>Spargo</i> , <sup>35</sup>	<i>spargère,</i>	<i>sparsi,</i>	<i>sparsum,</i>	<i>To spread.</i>
<i>Mergo,</i>	<i>mergère,</i>	<i>mersi,</i>	<i>mersum,</i>	<i>To dip. to plunge</i>
<i>Tergo,</i>	<i>tergère,</i>	<i>tersi,</i>	<i>tersum,</i>	<i>To wipe.</i>
<i>Figo,</i>	<i>figère,</i>	<i>fixi,</i>	<i>fixum,</i>	<i>To fix.</i>
<i>Frigo,</i>	<i>frigère,</i>	<i>frixi,</i>	{ <i>frixum, or</i>	{ <i>To fry.</i>
			<i>frictum,</i>	
<i>Vergo,</i>	<i>vergère,</i>	—	—	<i>To lie toward.</i>

<sup>22</sup> The compounds of *rêgo* change *e* into *i*; as, *dirigo, direxi, directum*, "to direct;" *corrigo, correxi, correctum*, "to correct."

<sup>23</sup> *Stinguo, tinguo*, and *unguo*, are also written *stingo, tingo, ungo*.

<sup>20</sup> The compounds of *frango* and *tango* change *a* into *i*; as, *confringo, confrēgi, confractum*, "to break to pieces;" *attingo, attingi, attactum*, "to touch gently."

<sup>31</sup> *Circumêgo*, "to drive round;" *perêgo*, "to finish;" and *coêgo* (contracted *côgo*), "to collect," retain the *a*; the other compounds change *a* into *i*; as, *abigo, abēgi, abactum*, "to drive away." *Dêgo* (for *deêgo*), "to live," "to dwell;" *prodigo*, "to lavish" or "squander;" and *satêgo*, "to be busy," want the supine. *Ambigo*, "to doubt," has neither perfect nor supine.

<sup>32</sup> *Lêgo*, when compounded with *ad, per, præ, re*, and *sub*, retains the *e*, as, *allego*, "to choose." The other compounds change *e* into *i*; as, *colligo*, "to collect." *Diligō*, "to love;" *intelligō*, "to understand," and *negligo*, "to neglect," have *eci* and *ectum*. *Negligo* has sometimes *neglēgi* in the perfect.

<sup>33</sup> The compounds of *pungo* have *punxi* in the perfect; as, *compungo*, "to sting," *compunxi, compunctum*. *Repungo*, "to prick again," has *repupūgi* and *repunxi*.

<sup>34</sup> *Pango*, in the sense of "to bargain," has *pepigi*; the present is rarely used in this meaning; but instead of it, *paciscor* is commonly employed. The compounds which change *a* into *i* have *pēgi* and *pactum*; as, *compingo*, "to fasten together," *compēgi, compactum*. *Oppango*, "to fasten to," has also *pēgi* and *pactum*. Of the other compounds which retain *a*, the perfect and supine are not found.

<sup>35</sup> The compounds of *spargo* change *a* into *e*; as, *aspergi, aspersi, aspersum*, "to besprinkle."

<i>Pres</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Clango,	clangere,	clanxi,	_____	To sound a trumpet.
Ningo,	ningere,	ninxi,	_____	To snow.
Ango,	angere,	anxi,	_____	To vex.

## HO.

Trāho,	trahere,	traxi,	tractum	To draw
Vēho,	vehere,	vexi,	vectum,	To carry.
Mejo, <sup>36</sup>	mejere,	minxi,	mictum.	To make water

## LO

Cōlo, <sup>37</sup>	colere	colui,	cultum,	To till, to inhabit.
Consūlo,	consulere,	consului,	consultum,	To consult.
Alo,	alere,	alui,	{ alitum, or altum, }	To nourish.
Mōlo,	molere,	molui,	molitum,	To grind.
Antecello, <sup>38</sup>	antecellere,	antecellui,	_____	To excel.
Pello,	pellere,	pepuli,	pulsum,	To drive away.
Fallo, <sup>39</sup>	fallere,	fefelli,	falsum,	To deceive.
Vello, <sup>40</sup>	vellere,	velli, or vulsi,	vulsum,	To pull.
Sallo,	sallere,	salli,	salsum,	To salt.
Psallo,	psallere,	psalli,	_____	To play on an instru-
Tollo, <sup>41</sup>	tollere,	sustuli,	sublatum,	To lift up. [ment]

## MO.

Frēmo,	fremere,	fremui,	fremitum,	To rage, to roar
Gēmo,	gemere,	gemui,	gemitum,	To groan.
Vōmo,	vomere,	vomui,	vomitum,	To vomit.
Trēmo,	tremere,	tremui,	_____	To tremble.
Dēmo,	demere,	dempsi,	demptum,	To take away.
Prōmo,	promere,	prompsi,	promptum,	To bring out.
Sūmo,	sumere,	sumpsi,	sumptum,	To take up.
Cōmo,	comere,	compsi,	comptum,	To deck, to dress.
Emo, <sup>42</sup>	emere,	emi,	emptum,	To buy.

<sup>36</sup> *Mingo* is also used as the present of *minxi*.

<sup>37</sup> *Cōlo*, when compounded with *cō*, changes *o* into *u*; as, *occolō*, "to hide." *Accolō*, "to dwell near," and *circumcōlo*, "to dwell round," have *nc* supine.

<sup>38</sup> The other compounds of the obsolete *cello* likewise want the supine; except *percello*, *percūli*, *perculsum*, "to strike," "to astonish." *Recello*, likewise, wants the perfect.

<sup>39</sup> *Refello*, *refelli*, "to confute," wants the supine.

<sup>40</sup> *Vello*, when compounded with *de*, *di*, or *per*, has usually *velli* in the perfect. The other compounds take either form indifferently.

<sup>41</sup> *Attollo* and *extollo*, "to raise up," have no perfect or supine of their own; but those of *affero* and *effero*, which agree with them in meaning, are sometimes assigned to them.

<sup>42</sup> *Demo*, *promo*, and *sūmo*, are compounds of *ēmo*. The other compounds change *e* into *i*, and are conjugated like the simple verb; as, *adimo*, *adame*, *ademptum*, "to take away."

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Præm</i> , <sup>43</sup>	<i>præmère</i> ,	<i>pressi</i> ,	<i>pressum</i> ,	<i>To press</i>
NO.				
<i>Pōno</i> ,	<i>ponère</i> ,	<i>pōsui</i> ,	<i>positum</i> ,	<i>To place.</i>
<i>Gigno</i> ,	<i>gignere</i> ,	<i>genui</i> ,	<i>genitum</i> ,	<i>To beget.</i>
<i>Cāno</i> , <sup>44</sup>	<i>canere</i> ,	<i>cecini</i> ,	<i>cantum</i> ,	<i>To sing.</i>
<i>Tenno</i> , <sup>45</sup>	<i>temnere</i> ,	-----	-----	<i>To despise.</i>
<i>Sperno</i> ,	<i>spernere</i>	<i>spēvi</i> ,	<i>spretum</i> ,	<i>To disdain.</i>
<i>Sterno</i> , <sup>46</sup>	<i>sternere</i> ,	<i>strāvi</i> ,	<i>stratum</i> ,	<i>To lay flat.</i>
<i>Sino</i> ,	<i>sinere</i> ,	<i>sivi</i> , or <i>sii</i> ,	<i>situm</i> ,	<i>To permit.</i>
<i>Lino</i> ,	<i>linere</i> ,	<i>livi</i> , or <i>lēvi</i> ,	<i>litum</i> ,	<i>To anoint.</i>
<i>Cerno</i> , <sup>47</sup>	<i>cernere</i> ,	<i>crēvi</i> ,	<i>cretum</i> ,	<i>To see, to decree.</i>

## PO, QUO.

<i>Carpo</i> , <sup>48</sup>	<i>carpere</i> ,	<i>carpei</i> ,	<i>carptum</i> ,	<i>To pluck.</i>
<i>Clēpo</i> ,	<i>clepere</i> ,	<i>clepsi</i> ,	<i>cleptum</i> ,	<i>To steal.</i>
<i>Rēpo</i> ,	<i>repere</i> ,	<i>repsi</i> ,	<i>reptum</i> ,	<i>To creep.</i>
<i>Scalpo</i> ,	<i>scalpere</i> ,	<i>scalpsi</i> ,	<i>scalptum</i> ,	<i>To engrave.</i>
<i>Sculpo</i> ,	<i>sculpere</i> ,	<i>sculpsi</i> ,	<i>sculptum</i> ,	<i>To carve.</i>
<i>Serpo</i> ,	<i>aerpere</i> ,	<i>serpsi</i> ,	<i>serptum</i> ,	<i>To creep.</i>
<i>Strēpo</i> ,	<i>strepere</i> ,	<i>strepui</i> ,	<i>strepitum</i> ,	<i>To make a noise.</i>
<i>Rumpo</i> ,	<i>rumpere</i> ,	<i>rūpi</i> ,	<i>ruptum</i> ,	<i>To break.</i>
<i>Cōquo</i> ,	<i>coquere</i> ,	<i>coxi</i> ,	<i>coctum</i> ,	<i>To boil.</i>
<i>Linquo</i> , <sup>49</sup>	<i>linquere</i> ,	<i>liqui</i> ,	-----	<i>To leave.</i>

## RO.

<i>Quæro</i> , <sup>50</sup>	<i>quærere</i> ,	<i>quæsi</i> ,	<i>quæsitum</i> ,	<i>To seek.</i>
<i>Tëro</i> ,	<i>terere</i> ,	<i>trivi</i> ,	<i>tritum</i> ,	<i>To wear.</i>
<i>Verro</i> ,	<i>verrere</i> ,	<i>verri</i> ,	<i>versum</i> ,	<i>To sweep.</i>
<i>Uro</i> ,	<i>urere</i> ,	<i>ussi</i> ,	<i>ustum</i> ,	<i>To burn.</i>

<sup>43</sup> The compounds of *præmo* change *e* into *i*; as, *comprimo*, *compressi*, *compressum*, "to press together."

<sup>44</sup> The compounds of *cāno* have *cinui* and *centum*; as, *concino*, *concinui*, *concentum*, "to sing in concert." Of *accino*, "to sing to," and *intercino*, "to sing between or during," no perfect or supine is found.

<sup>45</sup> *Contemno*, "to despise," has *contempsi*, *contemptum*.

<sup>46</sup> *Consterno* and *externo*, when they signify "to alarm," are regular verbs of the first conjugation. The other compounds are conjugated like *sterno*; as, *insterno*, *instrāvi*, *instratum*, "to spread upon."

<sup>47</sup> The perfect *crēvi* is used in the sense of "to declare one's self heir," or "enter on an inheritance." In the sense of "seeing," *cerno* has properly neither perfect nor supine.

<sup>48</sup> The compounds of *carpo* change *a* into *e*; as, *discerpo*, *discerpsi*, *discerptum*, "to tear in pieces."

<sup>49</sup> The compounds of *linquo* have *lictum* in the supine; as, *relinquo*, *reliqui*, *relictum*, "to forsake;" so *delinquo*, "to fail."

<sup>50</sup> The compounds of *quæro* change *a* into *i*; as, *acquiro*, *acquisivi*, *acquisitum*, "to acquire."

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
Curro, <sup>51</sup>	currere,	cucurri,	cursum,	<i>To run.</i>
Gero,	gerere,	gessi,	gestum,	<i>To carry.</i>
Furo, <sup>52</sup>	furere,	-----	-----	<i>To be mad.</i>
Sero, <sup>53</sup>	serere,	sēvi,	sātum,	<i>To sow.</i>

## SO.

Arcesso,	arcessere,	arcessivi,	arcessitum,	<i>To call, or send for.</i>
Capesso,	capessere,	capessivi,	capessitum,	<i>To take.</i>
Facesso,	facessere,	facessivi,	facessitum,	<i>To do, go away.</i>
Lacesso,	lacessere,	lacessivi,	lacessitum,	<i>To provoke.</i>
Viso,	visere,	visi,	-----	<i>To go to visit.</i>
Incesso,	incessere,	incessi,	-----	<i>To attack.</i>
Depso,	depere,	depui,	depotum,	<i>To knead.</i>
Pinso,	pinsere,	{ pinsui, or pinai,	{ pinsum, pistum, or pinsitum,	{ <i>To bake.</i>

## TO.

Flecto,	flectere,	flexi,	flexum,	<i>To bend.</i>
Plecto,	plectere,	plexi & plexui,	plexum,	<i>To plait.</i>
Necto,	nectere,	nexi & nexui,	nexum,	<i>To tie, or knit.</i>
Pecto,	pectere,	pexi & pexui,	pexum,	<i>To dress, or comb.</i>
Meto,	metere,	messui,	messum,	<i>To reap.</i>
Peto,	petere,	petivi,	petitum,	<i>To seek.</i>
Mitto,	mittere,	misi,	missum,	<i>To send.</i>
Verto, <sup>54</sup>	vertere,	verti,	versum,	<i>To turn.</i>
Sterto,	stertere,	stertui,	-----	<i>To snore.</i>
Sisto, <sup>55</sup>	sistere,	stīti,	stātum,	<i>To stop.</i>

## VO, XO.

Vivo,	vivere,	vixi,	victum,	<i>To live.</i>
Solvo,	solvere,	solvi,	solūtum,	<i>To loose.</i>

<sup>51</sup> *Curro*, when compounded with *circum*, *re*, *sub*, and *trans*, seldom takes the reduplication. The other compounds sometimes take the reduplication, and sometimes not.

<sup>52</sup> See 222-4.

<sup>53</sup> The compounds of *sero* which retain the sense of "planting" and "sowing," have *sēvi* and *situm*; as *consēro*, *consēvi*, *consitum*, "to plant together." Those which adopt a different signification have *serui* and *sertum*; as, *asserō*, *asserui*, *assertum*, "to claim." The latter class of compounds properly belongs to the old verb *stero*, "to knit," "to plait."

<sup>54</sup> The compounds of *verto* are conjugated in the same manner, except *revertor*, "to return," which is often used as a deponent verb; and *disvertor*, "to turn aside," and *prævertor*, "to outrun," which are likewise deponent, but want the perfect participle.

<sup>55</sup> *Sisto*, "to stand still" (an intransitive verb), has neither perfect nor supine. The compounds have *stīti* and *stitum*; as, *assistō*, *astiti*, *astitum*, "to stand by." But these are seldom found in the supine.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Volvo,</i>	<i>volvère,</i>	<i>volvi,</i>	<i>volūtum,</i>	<i>To roll.</i>
<i>Texo,</i>	<i>texere,</i>	<i>texui,</i>	<i>textum,</i>	<i>To weave.</i>

## 219.—FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**RULE.**—Verbs of the fourth conjugation have *ivi* in the perfect, and *itum* in the supine; as,

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>Sup.</i>	
<i>Audio,</i>	<i>audire,</i>	<i>audivi,</i>	<i>auditum,</i>	<i>To hear.</i>
<i>Munio,</i>	<i>munire,</i>	<i>munivi,</i>	<i>munitum,</i>	<i>To fortify.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS.

<i>Singultio,</i>	<i>singultire,</i>	<i>singultivi,</i>	<i>singultum,</i>	<i>To sob.</i>
<i>Sepelio,</i>	<i>sepelire,</i>	<i>sepelivi,</i>	<i>sepultum,</i>	<i>To bury.</i>
<i>Venio,</i>	<i>venire,</i>	<i>vēni,</i>	<i>ventum,</i>	<i>To come.</i>
<i>Veneo,<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>venire,</i>	<i>venii,</i>	—	<i>To be sold.</i>
<i>Salio,<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>salire,</i>	<i>salui, or salii,</i>	<i>saltum,</i>	<i>To leap.</i>
<i>Amicio,</i>	<i>amicire,</i>	{ <i>amicui, or</i>	{ <i>amicum,</i>	<i>To clothe.</i>
<i>Vincio,</i>	<i>vincire,</i>	{ <i>amixi,</i>	{ <i>vincum,</i>	<i>To tie.</i>
<i>Sancio,</i>	<i>sancire,</i>	{ <i>saxi, or</i>	{ <i>sanctum, or</i>	<i>To ratify.</i>
<i>Cambio,</i>	<i>cambire,</i>	{ <i>sancivi,</i>	{ <i>sancitum,</i>	
<i>Sepio,</i>	<i>sepire,</i>	<i>campsi,</i>	<i>campsum,</i>	<i>To change money</i>
<i>Sepio,</i>	<i>sepire,</i>	<i>sepsi,</i>	<i>septum,</i>	<i>To enclose.</i>
<i>Haurio,</i>	<i>haurire,</i>	<i>hausi,</i>	{ <i>haustum, or</i>	<i>To draw out.</i>
<i>Sentio,</i>	<i>sentire,</i>	<i>sensi,</i>	<i>hausum,</i>	
<i>Raucio,</i>	<i>raucire,</i>	<i>sensum,</i>	<i>rausum,</i>	<i>To feel.</i>
<i>Sarcio,</i>	<i>sarcire,</i>	<i>rausi,</i>	<i>rausum,</i>	<i>To be hoarse.</i>
<i>Farcio,<sup>3</sup></i>	<i>farcire,</i>	<i>sarsi,</i>	<i>sartum,</i>	<i>To mend, or repair.</i>
<i>Fuleio,</i>	<i>fuleire,</i>	<i>farsi,</i>	<i>ſartum,</i>	<i>To cran.</i>
<i>Ferio,</i>	<i>ferire,</i>	<i>fulsi,</i>	<i>fulum,</i>	<i>To prop.</i>
		—	—	<i>To strike.</i>

The following verbs have the perfect formed regularly, but want the supine:

*Cæcutio,* *to be dim-sighted.*

*Dementio,* *to be mad.*

*Ferocio,* *to be fierce.*

*Glosio,* *to cluck as a hen.*

*Gestio,* *to show one's joy by the gestures of the body.*

*Ineptio,* *to play the fool.*

(For desiderative verbs which belong to this conjugation, see 227-8.)

<sup>1</sup> *Veneo* is a compound of *venum* and the irregular verb *eo*, the tense of which it follows in its inflection. 221-3.

<sup>2</sup> The compounds of *salio* have generally *sui*, sometimes *sili*, or *siliu*, in the perfect, and *sultum* in the supine; as, *transilio*, *transilui*, *transilli*, or *transilivi*, *transultum*, "to leap over." *Abultum*, *circumultum*, and *præultum*, are scarcely used.

<sup>3</sup> The compounds of *farcio* change *a* into *e*; as, *refercio*, *referui*, *referbum*, "to fill up."

## § 82. LIST OF DEPONENT VERBS IRREGULAR IN THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE.

220.—**RULE.** Depone it and common verbs form the perfect participle in the same manner as if the active voice existed. 207, *Obs.* 3.

To this rule, there are no exceptions in the first conjugation.

### EXCEPTIONS IN THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Reor,	rēri,	rātus,	To think
Misereor, <sup>1</sup>	miserēri,	misertus,	To pity.
Fateor, <sup>2</sup>	fatēri,	fassus,	To confess
Medeor,	medēri,	_____	To heal.

### EXCEPTIONS IN THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Labōr,	labi,	lapsus,	To slide.
Uleiscor	uleisci,	ultus,	To revenge.
Utor,	ūti,	ūsus,	To use.
Lōquor, <sup>3</sup>	lōqui,	loquūtus (locūtus),	To speak.
Sēquor,	sēqui,	sequūtus (secūtus),	To follow.
Quēror,	quēri,	questus,	To complain.
Nītor, <sup>4</sup>	nīti,	nisus, or nixus,	To strive.
Adiscor,	pacisci,	pactus,	To bargain.
Gradior,	grādi,	gressus,	To go.
Proficiscor,	proficisci,	profectus,	To go a journey.
Nanciscor,	nancisci,	nactus,	To obtain.
Patior,	pāti,	passus,	To suffer.
Apiscor, <sup>5</sup>	apisci,	aptus,	To get.
Comminiscor,	comminisci,	commentus,	To devise.
Fruor,	frui,	frūtus, or fructus,	To enjoy.
Obliviscor,	oblivisci,	oblītus,	To forget.
Expergiscor,	expergisci,	experrectus,	To awake.
Morior, <sup>6</sup>	mōri,	mortuus,	To die.

<sup>1</sup> *Misereor* has also *miserītus* in the perfect participle.

<sup>2</sup> The compounds of *fāteor* change *a* into *i*, and have *fessus*; as, *confiteor*, *confessus*, "to confess." *Diffiteor*, "to deny," wants the perfect participle.

<sup>3</sup> *Lōquor* and *sēquor* have likewise *locūtus* and *secūtus* in the perfect participle.

<sup>4</sup> *Nītor*, when compounded with *con*, *in*, *ob*, *re*, *sub*, has *nixus* oftener than *nisus*. *Adnītor*, "to lean to," has either, indifferently. *Enītor*, in the sense of "to bring forth," generally takes *enixa* in the participle.

<sup>5</sup> *Adipiscor* and *indipiscor*, "to obtain," have *adeptus* and *indeptus*.

<sup>6</sup> *Morior* seems to have originally belonged to the fourth conjugation. The infinitive *morīri* occurs in Plautus and Ovid; and *morimur*, with the *p*-vowel long, is also found. The imperative is *morere*. This verb, with *nascor* and *orior*, has *-itūrus* in the future participle; as, *moritūrus*, *nascitūrus*, *oritūrus*.

Nascor, <sup>1</sup>	nasci,	nātus,	To be born.
Orior, <sup>2</sup>	oriri,	ortus.	To rise.

The following verbs want the perfect participle :

Defetiscor, -i, to be weary.	Reminiscor, -i, to remember.
Irascor, -i, to be angry.	Ringor, -i, to grin like a dog.
Liquor, -i, to melt.	Vescor, -i, to feed.

#### EXCEPTIONS IN THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Metior,	metiri,	mensus,	To measure.
Ordior,	ordini,	orsus,	To begin.
Experior,	experiri,	expertus,	To try.
Opperior,	opari,	opertus,	To wait.

### § 83. IRREGULAR VERBS.

221.—IRREGULAR VERBS are those in which some of the secondary parts are not formed from the primary, according to the rules for regular verbs.

The irregular verbs are six; namely, *sum*, *eo*, *queo*, *volo*, *fero*, and *fio*. Their compounds are irregular, also.

*SUM* has been inflected already, 186. After the same manner are inflected its compounds, *ad-*, *ab-*, *de-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-sum*; as, *adsum*, *adesse*, *adfui*, &c. *Insum* wants the perfect.

1. *PROSUM*, "to do good," inserts *d* where the simple verb begins with *e*. It is inflected thus :

Prōsum,	prodesse,	profui,	To do good.
---------	-----------	---------	-------------

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Prōsum,	prōdes,	prōdest;	prosūmus,	prodestis,	prōsunt.
IMP.	Prod-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
PER.	Profu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	{ -erunt, <sup>1</sup> -ere.
PLU.	Profu-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
FUT.	Prod-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erunt.
F.P.	Profu-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

<sup>1</sup> *Nascor* is passive in signification. It has not the active voice.

<sup>2</sup> *Orior* has *orirer*, and always *orirētur* in the imperfect subjunctive, according to the fourth conjugation. Likewise in the compounds *adorirētur*, *exorirētur*; and not *adorerētur*, *exorerētur*. The present follows the third, though *oriris* and *critur*, with the penult long, are also found.



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PR.	Prō-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-simus,	-sītis,	-sint.
IMP.	Prod-essem,	-esses,	-esset;	-essēmus,	-essētis,	-essent.
PER.	Profu-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erimus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
PLU.	Profu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR.	2. Prō-es, <i>or</i> prod-esto,	2. Prod-este, <i>or</i> prod-estote,
	3. Prod-esto;	3. Pro-sunto.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR.	Prod-esse.	FUT.	Esse pro-futūrus, a, um.
PER.	Pro-fuisse.	F.P.	Fuisse pro-futūrus, a, um.

## PARTICIPLES.

Pro-futūrus, a, um.

2. POSSUM is compounded of *pōtis*, "able," and *sum*, "I am." It is thus inflected :

Possum,      posse,      potui,      *I can, I am able.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Possum,	pōtes,	pōtest;	possūmus,	potestis,	possunt.
IMP.	Pot-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
PER.	Potu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt. or -ēre
PLU.	Potu-eram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-erant.
FUT.	Pot-ero,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erimus,	-erītis,	-ērunt.
F. P.	Potu-ero,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PR.	Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-simus,	-sītis,	-sint.
IMP.	Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-sēmus,	-sētis,	-sent.
PER.	Potu-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erimus,	-erītis,	-ērint.
PLU.	Potu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR.	Posse.	PER.	Potuisse. ( <i>The rest wanting.</i> )
-----	--------	------	--

3. *Eo*,            *Ire*,            *Ivi*,            *Itum*,            *To go*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR. <i>Eo</i> ,	<i>is</i> ,	<i>it</i> ;	<i>Imus</i> ,	<i>Itis</i> ,	<i>eunt</i> .
IMP. <i>Ibam</i> ,	<i>ibas</i> ,	<i>ibat</i> ;	<i>ibāmus</i> ,	<i>ibātis</i> ,	<i>ibant</i> .
PER. <i>Ivi</i> ,	<i>ivisti</i> ,	<i>ivit</i> ;	<i>ivimus</i>	<i>ivistis</i> ,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{ivērunt}, \\ \textit{or ivēre} \end{array} \right.$
PLU. <i>Ivērām</i> ,	<i>ivēras</i> ,	<i>ivērat</i> ;	<i>iverāmus</i>	<i>iverātis</i> ,	
FUT. <i>Ibo</i> ,	<i>ibis</i> ,	<i>ibit</i> ;	<i>ibimus</i> ,	<i>ibitis</i> ,	<i>ibunt</i> .
F.P. <i>Ivēro</i> ,	<i>ivēris</i> ,	<i>ivērit</i> ;	<i>iverimus</i> ,	<i>iveritis</i> ,	<i>ivērint</i> .

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR. <i>Eam</i> ,	<i>eas</i> ,	<i>eat</i> ;	<i>eāmus</i> ,	<i>eātis</i> ,	<i>eant</i> .
IMP. <i>Irem</i> ,	<i>ires</i> ,	<i>iret</i> ;	<i>irēmus</i> ,	<i>irētis</i> ,	<i>irent</i> .
PER. <i>Ivērim</i> ,	<i>ivēris</i> ,	<i>ivērit</i> ;	<i>iverimus</i> ,	<i>iveritis</i> ,	<i>ivērint</i> .
PLU. <i>Ivissem</i> ,	<i>ivisses</i> ,	<i>ivisset</i> ;	<i>ivissēmus</i> ,	<i>ivissētis</i> ,	<i>ivissent</i> .

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR.	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{I, or} \\ \textit{Ito,} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>Itō</i> ;	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Ite, or} \\ \textit{itōte,} \end{array} \right\}$	<i>eunto</i> .
-----	---	--------------	---	----------------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR. <i>Ire</i> .	FUT. <i>Esse itūrus, a, um</i> .
PER. <i>Ivisse</i> .	F.-P. <i>Fuisse itūrus, a, um</i> .

## PARTICIPLES.

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

PR. <i>Iens</i> , <i>Gen. euntis</i> .	<i>Eundum</i> .	1. <i>Itum</i> .
FUT. <i>Itūrus, a, um</i> .	<i>Eundi, &amp;c.</i>	2. <i>Itu</i> .

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-*, *ab-*, *ex-*, *co-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *re-d-*, *sub-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *ante-*, *pro-d-eo*; only in the perfect, and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *adeo*, *adire*, *adii* (seldom *adivi*), *aditum*, "to go to;" perf. *adii*, *adiisti*, or *adisti*, &c., *adiēram*, *adiērim*, &c. So likewise *veneo*, *venii*, —, "to be sold" (compounded of *vēnum* and *eo*). But *ameo*, *ire*, *ivi*, *-itum*, "to surround," is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

\**Eo*, like other intransitive verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form; thus, *it*, "he is going," *ivit*, "he is gone;" *ivērat*, "he was gone;" *ivērit*, "he may be gone," or "shall be gone." So, *venit*, "he is coming;" *venit*, "he is

come;" *venērat*, "he was come;" &c. In the passive voice, these verbs, for the most part, are used only impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, "he is going;" *ventum est ab illis*, "they are come." We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally; as, *pericūla adeuntur*, "—are undergone." *Cic. Libri sibyllini aditi sunt*, "—were looked into." *Liv. Flūmen pedibus transiri potest. Cæs. Inimicitie subeuntur. Cic.*

*Queo*, "I can," and *nequeo*, "I cannot," are conjugated in the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds, and the participles are seldom used.

#### 4. *Vōlo, velle, volui, To will, to be willing, to wish.*

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Vōl-o,	vis,	vult;	volūmus, vultis,	vōlunt.
IMP.	Vol-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus, -ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Volu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus, -istis,	} -ērunt, or -ēre.
PLU.	Volu-ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus, -erātis,	
FUT.	Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus, -ētis,	-ent.
F.-P.	Volu-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus, -erītis,	-ērint.

##### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Vēlim,	vēlis,	vēlit;	velimus, velitis,	velint.
IMP.	Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus, vellētis,	vellent.
PER.	Volu-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus, -erītis,	-ērint.
PLU.	Volu-issem, -isses,	-isset;	-issēmus, -issētis,	-issent.	

##### INFINITIVE MOOD.

##### PARTICIPLE.

PR.	Velle.	PER.	Voluisse.	PR.	Vōlens.
-----	--------	------	-----------	-----	---------

#### 5. *Nōlo, nolle, nolui, To be unwilling (from non vōlo).*

##### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Nōlo,	non-vis, non-vult;	nolūmus, non-vultis,	nōlunt.
IMP.	Nol-ēbam,	-ēbas, -ēbat;	-ebāmus, -ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Nolu-i,	-isti, -it;	-imus, -istis,	} -ērunt, or -ēre.
PLU.	Nolu-ēram,	-ēras, -ērat;	-erāmus, -erātis,	
FUT.	Nōl-am,	-es, -et;	-ēmus, -ētis,	-ent.
F.-P.	Nolu-ēro,	-ēris, -ērit;	erīmus, -erītis,	-ērint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Nōlin,	nōlis,	nōlit;	nolimus,	nolitis,	nōlint.
IMP.	Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollēmus,	nollētis,	nollent.
PER.	Nolu-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-ērīnt.
PLU.	Nolu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis.	-issent.

## IMPERATIVE

## INFINITIVE

## PARTICIPLE

PR.	{ Nōli, or Nolito, }	{ nolite, or nolitōte. }	PR. Nolle.	PR. Nōlens.
			PER. Noluisse.	(The rest wanting)

— — —

6. Mālo, malle, malui, *To be more willing (māgis vōlo)*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Māl-o,	māvis,	māvult;	malūmus,	mavultis,	mālunt.
IMP.	Mal-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Malu-i,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, or -ēre.
PLU.	Malu-ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērant.
FUT.	Māl-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F.-P.	Malu-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-ērīnt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Mālim,	mālis,	mālit;	malimus,	malitis,	mālint.
IMP.	Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallēmus,	mallētis,	mallent.
PER.	Malu-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-ērīnt.
PLU.	Malu-issem,	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR. Malle.	PER. Maluisse.	(The rest not used.)
------------	----------------	----------------------

7. Fēro, ferre, tūli, lātum, *To carry, to bring, or suffer.*

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Fēro,	fers,	fert;	ferīmus,	fertis,	fērunt.
IMP.	Fer-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ebāmus,	-ebātis,	-ēbant.
PER.	Tūli,	-isti,	-it;	-imus,	-istis,	{ -ērunt, or -ēre.
PLU.	Tul-ēram,	-ēras,	-ērat;	-erāmus,	-erātis,	-ērant.
FUT.	Fēi-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
F.-P.	Tul-ēro,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-ērīnt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Fēr-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
IMP.	Fer-rem,	-res,	-ret;	-rēmus,	-rētis,	-rent.
PER.	Tul-ērim,	-ēris,	-ērit;	-erīmus,	-eritis,	-erint.
PLU.	Tul-issem.	-isses,	-isset;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Fer, <i>or</i> ferto,	ferto;	ferte, <i>or</i> fertōte,	ferunto.
-----	-----------------------	--------	---------------------------	----------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR.	Ferre.	FUT.	Esse latūrus, a, um.
PER.	T-lisse.	F.-P.	Fuisse latūrus, a, um.

## PARTICIPLES.

## GERUNDS.

## SUPINES.

PR.	Fērens.	N.	Ferendum.	1.	Lātum.
FUT.	Latūrus, a, um.	G.	Ferendi, &c.	2.	Lātu.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, ferri, lātus, *To be brought.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Fēror,	{ ferris, or ferre,	{ fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.	
IMP.	Fer-ēbar,	{ -ebāris, or -ebāre,	{ -ebātur; -ebāmur, -ebamini, -ebantur.	
PER.	Lātus sum, or fui, lātus es, or fuisti, lātus est, or fuit, &c.			
PLU.	Lātus eram, or fuēram, lātus eras, or fuēras, &c.			
FUT.	Fērar,	{ ferēris, or ferēre,	{ ferētur; ferēmur, feremini, ferentur.	
F.-P.	Lātus fuēro, lātus fuēris, lātus fuērit, &c.			

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR.	Fērar,	{ ferāris, or ferāre,	{ ferātur; ferāmur, feramini, ferantur
IMP.	Ferrer,	{ ferrēris, or ferrēre,	{ ferrētur; ferrēmur, ferremini, ferrentur.
PER.	Lātus sim, or fuērim, lātus sis, or fuēris, &c.		
PLU.	Lātus essem, or fuissem, lātus esses, or fuisses, &c.		

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR.	Ferre, <i>or</i> fertor,	fertor;	ferimini,	feruntur.
-----	--------------------------	---------	-----------	-----------

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

## PARTICIPLES.

PR.	Ferri.	PER.	Lātus, a, um.
PER.	Esse, <i>or</i> fuisse lātus, a, um.	FUT.	Ferendus, a, um.
FUT.	Lātum iri.		

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro, attūli, allātum*; *aufēro, abstūli, ablātum*; *diffēro, distūli, dilātum*; *confēro, contūli, collātum*; *infēro, intūli, illātum*; *uffēro, obtūli, oblātum*; *effēro, extūli, elātum*. So, *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-, præ-, re-fēro*. In some writers, we find *udfēro, adtūli, adlātum*; *conlātum*; *inlātum*; *obfēro, &c.*, for *affēro, &c.*

*Obs. 1.* The greater part of the preceding verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nōlo* is contracted for *non vōlo*; *mālo*, for *māgis vōlo*; *fēro, fers, ferl, &c.*, for *fērus, fērit, &c.* *Fēror, ferris* or *ferre, fertur*, for *ferrēris, &c.*

8. *Fio, fiēri, factus, To be made, or done; to become.*

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

PR. *Fio, fis, fit; fīmus, fītis, fiunt.*  
 IMP. *Fiēbam, fiēbas, fiēbat; fiēbāmus, fiēbātis, fiēbant.*  
 PER. *Factus sum, or fui, factus es, or fuisti, &c.*  
 PLU. *Factus eram, or fuēram, factus eras, or fuēras, &c.*  
 FUT. *Fiam, fies, fiet; fiēmus, fiētis, fient.*  
 F.-P. *Factus fuēro, factus fuēris, &c.*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

PR. *Fiam, fias, fiat; fiāmus, fiātis, fiant.*  
 IMP. *Fiērem, fiēres, fiēret; fierēmus, fierētis, fiēreat.*  
 PER. *Factus sim, or fuērim, factus sis, or fuēris, &c.*  
 PLU. *Factus essem, or fuissem, factus esses, or fuisses, &c.*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PR.  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Fi, or} \\ \text{Fito,} \end{array} \right\} \text{fīto; } \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{fite, or} \\ \text{litōte,} \end{array} \right\} \text{fiunto.}$

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

PR. *Fiēri.*  
 PER. *Esse, or fuisse factus, a. um.*  
 FUT. *Factum iri*

#### PARTICIPLES.

FUT. *Faciendus, a. um.*  
 PER. *Factus, a. um.*

#### SUPINE

2. *Factu.*

*Obs. 2.* The third person singular of *fio* is often used impersonally; as *fit*, "it happens;" *fiēbat*, "it happened."

*Obs. 3.* *Fio* is used as the passive of *facio*, from which it takes the participles. The compounds of *facio* which retain a *have fio* in the passive; as, *calefacio*, "I warm;" *calefio*, "I become warm," "I am warmed," &c. But those compounds which change *facio* into *ficio* have the regular passive in *ficior*; as, *conficio*, *conficior*, &c.

9. To irregular verbs may be added *ēdo*, "to eat." Though this is a regular verb of the third conjugation, it has an irregular form resembling *sum* in the present indicative, imperfect subjunctive, the imperative, and the present infinitive; thus,

*Edo, edere, or esse, ēdi, ēsum, To eat.*

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

**PR.** *Edo, { ēdis, { ēdit, { edimus, { editis, { edunt.*  
          *or es, { or est; }*

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

**IMP.** *{ Edērem, edēres, edēret, ederēmus, ederētis, edērent.*  
          *{ or essem, esses, esset; essēmus, essētis, essent.*

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

**PR.** *{ Ede, or edito, edito; edite, or editote, } edunt*  
          *{ Es, or esto, esto; este, or estote, }*

### § 84. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

222.—DEFECTIVE VERBS are those in which some of the parts are wanting.

1. These three, *ōdi*, *cœpi*, and *memini*, are used only in the preterite tenses, that is, in the perfect, and the tenses derived from it; and for this reason, they are called **PRETERITE VERBS**.

*Obs. 1.* *Cœpi* has a present, as well as a perfect signification; and hence *cœpēram* has the sense of the imperfect, as well as of the pluperfect; and *cœpēro*, of the future, as well as of the future perfect; thus, *cœpi*, "I begin," or "I have begun;" *cœpēram*, "I began," or "I had begun;" *cœpēro*, "I shall begin," or "I shall have begun;" and so of the subjunctive.

*Obs. 2.* *Odi* and *memini* have the sense only of the present, imperfect, and future; as, *ōdi*, "I hate;" *odēra n*, "I hated;" *odēro*, "I will hate."

2. The parts of these verbs in use are as follows, through all their persons and numbers; viz:

*Odi*,            *odēram*,    *odēro*,        *odērim*,        *odissem*,        *odisse*.

PARTICIPLES, *ōsus*, *ōsūrus*.

*Cepi*,            *cepēram*,    *cepēro*,        *cepērim*,        *cepissem*,        *cepisse*.

PARTICIPLES, *ceptus*, *ceptūrus*.

*Memini*,        *meminēram*, *meminēro*, *meminērim*, *meminissem*, *meminisse*.

IMPERATIVE, *memento*, *mementōte*.

3. The verb *nōvi* is also used as a preterite, having like *ōdi* and *memini* only the sense of the present, the imperfect, and future. It differs from the others, however, in having a present, *nosco*, which properly has an inceptive sense, meaning "I begin to know," "I learn;" hence *nōvi*, "I have learned," that is, "I know."

The parts of *nōvi* in use are as follows; viz;

*Nōvi*,            *novēram*,    *novēro*,        *novērim*,        *novissem*,        *novisse*;  
*Contracted*, *nōram*,        ————,        *nōrim*,        *nāssem*,        *nōsse*.

4. There are many verbs, not usually considered among defectives, which want certain tenses, or numbers, or persons; thus, *do*, "I give," has neither *dor* nor *der*. *Fari*, "to speak," with its compounds, is used only by the poets, and by them chiefly in the third person, *fātur*; the imperative *fāre*; and the participle *fātus*. The ablative gerund, *fando*, occurs in a passive sense.

*Furēre*, "to be mad," wants the first person singular, and the second person plural of the present, and probably all the future of the indicative, the imperative, and also the perfect and supine.

5. The following defective verbs are those which most frequently occur. *Aio*, "I say;"—*inquam*, "I say," which is used only between words quoted, and never stands at the beginning;—*fōrem*, "I should be;" the same as *essem*;—*āve*, and *salve*, "hail;"—*Cedo*, "tell thou," or "give me;"—*quæso*, "I beseech," originally the same as *quæra*. It is used commonly as an interjection.



The parts of these verbs remaining are the following .

1. AIO, *I say, I affirm.*

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Aio,	aīa,	aīt;	_____	_____	aunt.
	<i>IMP.</i>	Aiēbam,	aiēhus,	aiēbat;	aiēbāmus,	aiēbātis,	aiēbant.
	<i>PER.</i>	_____	aisti,	aīt.	_____	_____	_____
<i>Sub.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	_____	aiaa,	aiaa.	_____	_____	aiaant,
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	_____	aī.	_____	_____	_____	_____
<i>P'art.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Aiēna.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

2. INQUAM, *I say*

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Inquam,	inquia,	inquit;	inquīmus,	inquītis,	inquunt.
	<i>IMP.</i>	_____	_____	inquiebāt;	_____	_____	inquiebant.
	<i>PER.</i>	_____	inquisti,	inquit.	_____	_____	_____
	<i>FUT.</i>	_____	inquies,	inquiet.	_____	_____	_____
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	_____	inque,	inquitō;	_____	inquitē	_____
<i>Part.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Inquiens.	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

3. FÖREM, *I should be.*

<i>Sub.</i>	<i>IMP.</i>	Förem,	förea,	föret;	_____	_____	förent.
<i>Inf.</i>	<i>FUT.</i>	Före,	to be about to be,	same as futurum esse.	_____	_____	_____

4. AVE, *hail.*

<i>Imp.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Ave, or avēto;	avēte, or avetōte.	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Avēre
-------------	------------	----------------	--------------------	-------------	------------	-------

5. SALVE, *hail.*

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>FUT.</i>	Salvēbia.	_____
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Salve, or salvēto;	salvēte, or salvetōte.
<i>Inf.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Salvēre.	_____

6. CEDO, *tell, give.*

<i>Imp.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Cēdo;	cēdo, or cedite, contracted, cetta.
-------------	------------	-------	-------------------------------------

7. QUÆSO, *I beseech.*

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>PR.</i>	Quæso;	quæstimus
-------------	------------	--------	-----------

6. *Ausim*, *faxim*, and *fazo*, sometimes called defective verbs, are properly old forms of tenses; *ausim* being put for *ausērim*, from *audeo*, "to dare" and *faxim* and *fazo*, for *fecērim* and *fecēro*, from *facio*. So also *age* and *agite*, "come," are imperatives from *āgo*, in a somewhat different sense, just as *ave*, "hail," is an imperative from *aves*, "to be well."

223.—§ 85. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

1. IMPERSONAL VERBS are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a personal *subject* or nominative before them.

2. Impersonal verbs, when translated literally into English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*; as, *delectat*, "it delights;" *dēcet*, "it becomes;" *contingit*, "it happens;" *evenit*, "it comes to pass;" &c. They are inflected thus:

	1st. Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
<i>Ind. PR.</i> Delectat,	Dēcet,	Contingit,	Evenit,	
<i>IMP.</i> Delectābat,	Decēbat,	Contingēbat,	Eveniēbat,	
<i>PER.</i> Delectāvit,	Decuit,	Contigīt,	Evenit,	
<i>PLU.</i> Delectāverāt,	Decuērat,	Contigērat,	Evenērat,	
<i>FUT.</i> Delectābit,	Decēbit,	Continget,	Eveniet,	
<i>F-P.</i> Delectāverit.	Decuērit.	Contigērit.	Evenērit.	
<i>Sub. PR.</i> Delectet,	Decet,	Contingat,	Eveniat,	
<i>IMP.</i> Delectāret,	Decēret,	Contingēret,	Eveniēret,	
<i>PER.</i> Delectāverit,	Decuērit,	Contigērit,	Evenērit,	
<i>PLU.</i> Delectavisset.	Decuisset.	Contigisset.	Evenisset.	
<i>Inf. PR.</i> Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingēre,	Evenire,	
<i>PER.</i> Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.	

3. Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, "it is fought;" *favētur*, "it is favored;" *curritur*, "it is run;" *venitur*, "it is come;" from *pugno*, *juveo*, *curro*, and *venio*. Thus,

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj
<i>Ind. PR.</i>	Pugnātur,	Favētur,	Curritur,	Venitur,
<i>IMP.</i>	Pugnabātur,	Favebātur,	Currebātur,	Veniēbātur,
<i>PER.</i>	Pugnātum est, <sup>1</sup>	Fautum est, <sup>1</sup>	Cursum est, <sup>1</sup>	Ventum est, <sup>1</sup>
<i>PLU.</i>	Pugnātum erat, <sup>2</sup>	Fautum erat, <sup>2</sup>	Cursum erat, <sup>2</sup>	Ventum erat, <sup>2</sup>
<i>FUT.</i>	Pugnabitur,	Favebitur,	Currētur,	Veniētur,
<i>F-P.</i>	Pugnātum erit. <sup>3</sup>	Fautum erit. <sup>3</sup>	Cursum erit. <sup>3</sup>	Ventum erit. <sup>3</sup>
<i>Sub. PR.</i>	Pugnētur,	Faveatur,	Currātur,	Veniātur,
<i>IMP.</i>	Pugnārētur,	Faverētur,	Currerētur,	Venirētur,
<i>PER.</i>	Pugnātum sit, <sup>3</sup>	Fautum sit, <sup>3</sup>	Cursum sit, <sup>3</sup>	Ventum sit, <sup>3</sup>
<i>PLU.</i>	Pugnātum esset. <sup>4</sup>	Fautum esset. <sup>4</sup>	Cursum esset. <sup>4</sup>	Ventum esset. <sup>4</sup>
<i>Inf PR.</i>	Pugnāri,	Favēri,	Curri,	Veniri,
<i>PER.</i>	Pugnātum esse, <sup>5</sup>	Fautum esse, <sup>5</sup>	Cursum esse, <sup>5</sup>	Ventum esse,
<i>FUT.</i>	Pugnātum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

4. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; namely,

*Dēcet*, *decuit*, &c.,

*It becomes, it became, &c.*

*Lībet*, *libuit* or *libitum est*, &c.,

*It pleases, it pleased, &c.*

<sup>1</sup> or *fuit*.

<sup>2</sup> or *fuērat*.

<sup>3</sup> or *fuērit*.

<sup>4</sup> or *fuisset*.

<sup>5</sup> or *fuisset*.

<i>Licet, licuit or licitum est, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>It is lawful, it was lawful, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Misæret, misæruit or miseritum est, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>It pities, it pitied, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Oportet, oportuit, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>It behooves, it was incumbent on, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Piget, piguit or pigitum est, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>It grieves, it grieved, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Pœnitet, pœnituit, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>It repents, it repented, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Pudet, puduit or puditum est, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>It shames, it shamed, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Tædet, tæduit or tæsum est, &amp;c.,</i>	<i>It wearies, it wearied, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Liquet,</i>	<i>It appears. (This verb has no perf.)</i>

But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations.

5. Under impersonal verbs, may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *fulgurat*, "it lightens;" *fulminat, tonat*, "it thunders;" *grandinat*, "it hails;" so, *gêlat, pluit, ningit, lucescit, advesperascit, &c.*

6. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before personal verbs, as their nominative, after the impersonals, in the case which they govern; as,

<i>Placet mihi,</i>	<i>It pleases me, or I please.</i>
<i>Placet tibi,</i>	<i>It pleases thee, or thou pleases.</i>
<i>Placet illi,</i>	<i>It pleases him, or he pleases.</i>
<i>Placet nobis,</i>	<i>It pleases us, or we please.</i>
<i>Placet vobis,</i>	<i>It pleases you, or you please.</i>
<i>Placet illis,</i>	<i>It pleases them, or they please.</i>

So, *pugnatur a me, — a te, — ab illo, &c.*, "it is fought by me," — "by thee," — "by him;" that is, I fight, thou fightest, he fights, &c. Hence, as the meaning of a transitive verb may be expressed by either the active or the passive voice, so, when an intransitive verb is translated by a verb considered transitive in English (132, *Obs.* 4), the English passive form of that verb is expressed, in Latin, by the passive used impersonally: thus, actively, *faveo tibi*, "I favor you;" passively, *favetur tibi a me*, "you are favored by me," and so of others.

7. Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, "let it delight." In the passive voice, their participles are used only in the neuter gender. The gerunds and supines are but seldom used.

## 224.—§ 86. EXERCISES ON IMPERSONALS.

(For the meaning of the impersonals used in the following exercises, see 223, Nos. 2, 3, 4.)

1. Give the designation, the place found, the translation; thus, *delectat*, a verb impersonal, first conjugation, found in the present indicative, active: "it delights."

*Delectābit*, *decēbat*, *decēbit*, *decēret*, *contingit*, *continget*, *contigit*, *contigērit*, *evēnit*, *evēnit*, *eveniet*, *eveniat*, *pugnabātur*, *pugnātum est*, *pugnētur*, *pagnarētur*, *favētur*, *fautum sit*, *fautum fuērit*, *ventum est*, *ventum ērit*;—*libet*, *libuit*, *licitum est*, *misēret*, *miseritum est*, *pīget*, *pūdet*, *fulgūrat*, *tōnat*, *grandinābat*, *grandinābit* *ninxit*, &c.

2. Give the designation, &c., as in No. 1, and translate as the word following the impersonal requires, according to 223-6; thus, *delectat me*, *delectat*, a verb impersonal, first conjugation, present indicative, active: "it delights me," or "I delight."

*Delectābit me*, *te*, *illum*, *nos*, *vos*, *illos*; *dēcet vos*, *decēret vos*; *plācet tibi*; *favētur vōbis*, *favebitur nōbis* (a *te*, *by you*); *pugnabitur ab illis*; *venitur a te*, *ventum est ab illis*,—a *vōbis*,—a *nōbis*,—ab *illo*,—a *te*,—a *me*; *pīget me*; *licet mihi*, *licēbit vōbis*, *licitum est illis*; *misēret me*, *miseruit te*; *placuit vōbis*,—*nobis*,—*illis*; *misēret nos*, &c.

3. Render the following English into Latin, by the impersonals; thus, "I delight," *delectat me*, literally, "it delights me."—*N. B.* The noun or pronoun, after *misēret*, *venit*, *pūdet*, *taedet*, *pīget*, *dēcet*, *delectat*, and *oportet*, must be put in the accusative, 419 and 423. Other impersonals are followed by the dative of the object, when they have one; and when they express any thing done by another, the agent or doer, when expressed, is put in the ablative preceded by *a* or *ab*, as in 223-6.

EXERCISES.—It becomes, it has repented, it is fought, it pleases, it is favored; it becomes me, I repent (it repents me), I fight (it is fought by me), you are favored (it is favored to you), you are favored by me; I repented, they have repented, you will repent; they are favored by us,—by you,—by me, &c.; we are favored by them,—by you; they come (it is come by them). they have come, we will come; we run, we will run; if (*si*) you please, if they please; it was allowed to us, we were allowed; it delights us, or we are delighted, they are delighted; it thunders, it lightens, it hailed, &c.

## § 87. REDUNDANT VERBS.

**225** — **REDUNDANT VERBS** are those which have more than one form of the same part, or which have different forms to express the same sense; as, *assentio* and *assentior*, "to assent;" *fabrico* or *fabricor*, "to frame;" *mereo* and *mereor*, "to deserve;" *ēdis* and *es*, "thou eatest;" *ēdit* and *est*, "he eats;" from *ēdo*, &c.

Redundant verbs, in Latin, are chiefly those which are used in two different conjugations; for example,

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and sometimes of the third; as, *lāvo*, *lavāre*; and *lāvo*, *lavēre*, "to wash."

2. Some are usually of the second conjugation, and sometimes of the third; as,

<i>Ferveo</i> , <i>fervēre</i> ;	<i>and</i>	<i>fervo</i> , <i>fervēre</i> , <i>to boil</i> .
<i>Fulgeo</i> , <i>fulgēre</i> ;	"	<i>fulgo</i> , <i>fulgēre</i> , <i>to shine</i> .
<i>Strideo</i> , <i>stridēre</i> ;	"	<i>strido</i> , <i>stridēre</i> , <i>to creak</i> , &c.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and sometimes of the fourth; as,

<i>Fodio</i> , <i>fodēre</i> ;	<i>and</i>	<i>fodio</i> , <i>fodire</i> , <i>to dig</i> .
<i>Sallo</i> , <i>sallēre</i> ;	"	<i>sallio</i> , <i>sallire</i> , <i>to salt</i> , &c.

4. *Cieo*, *ciere* is commonly of the second conjugation, but sometimes it is *cio*, *cire* in the fourth, "to stir up."

## § 88. DERIVATIVE VERBS.

Verbs are derived either from *nouns*, or from other *verbs*.

**226.**—I. Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as, *cæno*, "to sup;" *laudo*, "to praise;" *fraudo*, "to defraud;" *lapido*, "to throw stones;" *opëror*, "to work," &c., from *cæna*, *laus*, *fraus*, *lāpis*, *opus*, &c.

But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitatives*; as, *patrisco*, *Græcor*, *bubūlo*, *cornitor*, &c. "I imitate," or "resemble my father,"—"a Grecian,"—"an owl,"—"a crow;" from *pāter*, *Græcus*, *būbo*, *cornix*.

227.—II. Verbs derived from other verbs, are chiefly the following; viz.:

1. FREQUENTATIVES. These express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *atu* into *ito*, in the verbs of the first conjugation; and *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; thus,

	<i>Last Sup.</i>		<i>Freq.</i>
1st. Clāmo, to cry;	clamātu,	hence	clamīto, to cry frequently.
2d. Terreo, to frighten;	terrītu,	"	terrīto, to frighten often.
3d. Verto, to turn;	versu,	"	versō, to turn frequently.
4th. Dormio, to sleep;	dormītu,	"	dormīto, to sleep often.

In like manner, deponent verbs form frequentatives in *or*, as, *mīnor*, "to threaten;" of which in the active voice, the latter supine would be *minātu*, and hence *minītor*, "to threaten frequently," "—ever and anon."

*Obs. 1.* Some frequentatives are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nāto*, from *no*; *noscīto*, from *nosco*; *scītor* or rather *sciscītor*, from *scio*; *pavīto*, from *paveo*; *sector*, from *sēquor*; *loquītor*, from *lōquor*. So *querīto*, *fundīto*, *agīto*, *fluīto*, &c., which formed regularly would be *quæsīto*, *fuso*, *acto*, *fluxo*, &c.

*Obs. 2.* From frequentative verbs are also formed other frequentatives; as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursīto*; *pello*, *pulso*, *pulsīto*, or, by contraction, *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *capīto*; *cāno*, *canto*, *cantīto*; *defendo*, *defenso*, *defensīto*; *dīco*, *dicto*, *dictīto*; &c.

*Obs. 3.* Frequentatives do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning with greater force.

2. INCEPTIVE VERBS. These mark the beginning or continued increase of an action or state. They are formed by adding *eo* to the second person singular of the present indicative; thus,

1st	<i>Conj.</i>	Lābo,	lābas;	<i>Inceptive,</i>	labasco.
2d	"	Caleo,	cāles;	"	calesco.
3d	"	Trēmo,	trēmīs;	"	tremisco
4th	"	Obdormio,	o'dormīs;	"	obdormisco.

*Notes.*—But all verbs in *eo* are not inceptive. Inceptives are also formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvénis*.

*Obs. 4.* All inceptives are intransitives, and of the third

conjugation. They properly want both the perfect and the supine, unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. **DESIDERATIVE VERBS** are those which signify a *desire*, or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine by adding *rio*, and shortening *u*; as, *coenaturio*, "I desire to sup," from *coeno*, last supine, *coendū*. They are all of the fourth conjugation, and want both perfect and supine, except these three; viz.: *esurio*, *esurire*, *esurivi*, *esuritum*, "to desire to eat;" *parturio*, *parturire*, *parturivi*, "to be in travail;" and *nupturio*, *nupturire*, *nupturivi*, "to desire to be married."

4. **DIMINUTIVES**, which represent an action as little or insignificant. They are formed from the present by changing *o*, *eo*, and *io*, into *illo*; and they are all of the first conjugation; as, *canto*, *cantillo*, *conscribo*, *conscribillo*, *sorbeo*, *sorbillo*.

5. Some verbs in SSO are called **INTENSIVE**; as, *capesso*, "I take;" *facesso*, "I do;" *petesso*, or *petisso*, "I seek earnestly."

## § 89. ADVERBS.

228.—AN ADVERB is a word joined to a *verb*, an *adjective*, or another *adverb*, to modify it, or to denote some circumstance respecting it.

229.—Adverbs may be considered in respect of *Signification*, *Derivation*, and *Comparison*.

### I. THE SIGNIFICATION OF ADVERBS.

230.—In respect of signification, adverbs may be arranged, in Latin, under the following heads:

1 **ADVERBS OF PLACE**, comprehending those which signify:

- 1st. *Motion or rest in a place*; as, *ubi*, "where;" *hic*, "here;" *illic*, "there;" *intus*, "within;" *foris*, "without;" *ubique*, "every where;" &c.
- 2d. *Motion to a place*; as, *quo?* "whither?" *huc*, "hither;" *illuc*, *isthuc*, "thither;" *ad*, "to that place;" *alio*, "to another place;" &c.
- 3d. *Motion from a place*; as, *unde*, "whence;" *hinc*, "hence;" *illinc*, *induc*, "thence;" *supernus*, "from above;" &c.

4th *Motion through or by a place*; as, *quid?* "which way?" *tunc* "this way;" *alià*, "another way;" &c.

2. ADVERBS OF TIME; as, *nunc*, "now;" *hodie*, "to-day;" *tunc*, "then;" *nūper*, "lately;" *mox*, "by and by;" *semper*, "always;" &c.

3. ADVERBS OF QUANTITY; as, *pārum*, "little;" *multum*, "much;" *pene*, "almost;" *quanto*, "how much;" &c.

4. ADVERBS OF QUALITY; as, *bēne*, "well;" *māle*, "ill;" *fortiter*, "bravely;" and many others derived from adjectives or participles.

5. ADVERBS OF MANNER (viz. of action or condition), including those which express *exhortation, affirmation, negation, granting, forbidding, interrogation, doubt, contingency, &c.*; as, *profecto*, "truly;" *non*, *haud*, "not;" *cūr?* "why?" *quāre*, "wherefore;" &c.

6. ADVERBS OF RELATION, or such as express circumstances of *comparison, resemblance, order, assemblage, separation, &c.*; as, *potius*, "rather;" *ita*, *sic*, "so;" *simul*, "together;" *seorsum*, "apart;" &c.

## II. DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

231.—The *Simple* and *Primitive* adverbs are but few in number; as, *non*, "not;" *ibi*, "there;" *mox*, "presently;" *tunc*, "then;" &c.

232.—The *Derivative* adverbs are numerous, and are formed in the following manner:

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declensions, generally end in *e*; as, *alte*, "highly," from *altus*; *libère*, "freely," from *liber*. Sometimes they end in *o*, *um*, or *ter*; as, *tūto*, "safely," from *tūtus*, *tantum*, "so much," from *tantus*; *dūre* and *duriter*, "hardly," from *dūrus*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the third declension generally end in *ter*; as, *feliciter*, "happily," from *fēlix*. Sometimes in *e*; as, *facile*, "easily," from *facilis*; and one ends in *o*, namely, *omnino*, "altogether," from *omnis*.

The neuter gender of adjectives is often used adverbially; as, *recente*, "recently," for *recenter*; *torva*, "sternly," for *torve*; *dulce*, "sweetly," for *dulciter*; thus, Horace, *dulce ridens*, "sweetly smiling;" &c.

3. Adverbs derived from nouns generally end in *im* or *itus*; as, *virtūm*, "man by man," from *vir*; *funditus*, "from the ground," from *fundus*.

Many adverbs in *im*, however, are derived from participles; as, *sensim*, "by degrees," from *sensus* (*sentio*, "I perceive"). A few in *itus* are derived from adjectives; as, *antiquitus*, from *antiquus*; &c.



4. Adverbs are formed by composition in various ways; two or more words forming a phrase, or part of a sentence, and syntactically combined, being formed into one word; as, *hodie*, "to-day," from *hoc die*; *scilicet*, "truly," from *scire licet*; *quomodo*, "how," from *quo modo*; *quamobrem*, "wherefore," from *quam ob rem*; &c.

*Obs. 1.* The adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express in one word what would otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, "wisely," for *cum sapientia*; *semper*, "always," for *in omni tempore*; &c. Indeed, similar phrases, used to express circumstances of time, place, manner, order, and the like, constitute what may be called adverbial phrases, or clauses, though the words of which they consist are to be parsed separately, and combined according to the rules of syntax.

*Obs. 2.* Some adverbs are used to denote time, place, or order, according as the connection requires; as, *ubi*, "where," or "when;" *inde*, "from that place," "from that time," "after that," "next;" *hactenus*, "hitherto," "thus far," applied indifferently to place, time, or order.

*Obs. 3.* Some adverbs of time, apply indifferently to the past, the present, or the future; as *jam*, "already," "now," "by and by;" *olim*, "long ago," "sometime hereafter." Some adverbs of place are equally various in their use; as, *esse peregrē*, "to be abroad;" *ire peregrē*, "to go abroad;" *redire peregrē*, "to return from abroad."

### III. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

233.—Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. The positive commonly ends in *e*, *o*, or *ter*; the comparative, in *ius*; and the superlative, in *ime*; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Super.</i>
<i>Alte, highly;</i>	<i>altius,</i>	<i>altissime.</i>
<i>Fortiter, bravely;</i>	<i>fortius,</i>	<i>fortissime.</i>
<i>Acrius, sharply;</i>	<i>acrius,</i>	<i>acerrime.</i>
<i>Libere, freely;</i>	<i>liberius,</i>	<i>liberrime.</i>
<i>Tuto, safely;</i>	<i>tutius,</i>	<i>tutissime.</i>

234.—The following adverbs are compared irregularly, like the actives from which they are derived; viz

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comp.</i>	<i>Super.</i>
<i>Bene, well;</i>	<i>melius,</i>	<i>optime.</i>
<i>Facile, easily;</i>	<i>facilius,</i>	<i>facillime.</i>
<i>Male, badly;</i>	<i>pejus,</i>	<i>missime.</i>
<i>Multum, much</i>	<i>plus,</i>	<i>plurimum.</i>
<i>Parm, little;</i>	<i>minus,</i>	{ <i>minime.</i> <i>minimum.</i>
<i>Prope, near;</i>	<i>propius,</i>	<i>proxima.</i>

*Positive wanting.*

Māgis, *more*, maxīme; ocius, *more swiftly*, ocissīme; prius, *sooner* primo or primum; potius, *rather*, potissimum.

*Comparative wanting.*

Pēne, *almost*, penissīme; nūper, *lately*, nuperrīme nōve or novīter  
vix, *scarcely*, vixissīme; merito, *deservingly*, meritissīma.

*Superlative wanting.*

Satis, *enough*, satius; ceteris, *otherwise*, secius.

Two Adverbs not derived from adjectives are also compared; namely  
diu, "long," diutius, diutissīme; and sæpe, "often," sæpius, sæpiissīme.

§ 90. PREPOSITIONS.

235.—A PREPOSITION is a word which shows the relation between a noun or pronoun following it, and some other word in the sentence.

The preposition, as its name imports, stands before the noun or pronoun which it governs.—In Latin,

1. *Twenty-eight Prepositions govern the Accusative; viz:*

Ad, <i>to, at, towards.</i>	Inter, <i>between, among, during.</i>
Apud, <i>at, near, with.</i>	Intra, <i>within.</i>
Ante, <i>before</i> (of time, place, or rank).	Juxta, <i>near, beside.</i>
Adversus, } <i>against, towards.</i>	Ob, <i>for, on account of, before.</i>
Adversum, }	Pēnes, <i>in the power of.</i>
Circa, } <i>around, about.</i>	Per, <i>through, during, by.</i>
Circum, }	Pōne, <i>behind.</i>
Circiter, <i>about</i> (of time indefinitely).	Post, <i>behind, after, since.</i>
Cis, } <i>on this side, within.</i>	Præter, <i>besides</i> (passing by), <i>beyond, besides, except.</i>
Ultra, }	Propter, <i>near, on account of.</i>
Contra, <i>against, opposite.</i>	Secundum, <i>along, according to.</i>
Erga, <i>towards.</i>	Supra, <i>above.</i>
Extra, <i>beyond, out of.</i>	Trans, <i>across, over, beyond.</i>
Infra, <i>beneath.</i>	Ultra, <i>beyond.</i>

2. *Fifteen Prepositions govern the ablative ; viz :*

A, {	E, {
Ab, { <i>from, by, after, &amp;c.</i>	Ex, { <i>out of, from, after, by.</i>
Abs, {	Palam, <i>before, with the know-</i>
Absque, <i>without.</i>	ledge of.
Clam, <i>without the know-</i>	Præ, <i>before, in comparison with,</i>
ledge of.	on account of.
Cōram, <i>before, in presence of.</i>	Pro, <i>before, for, according to</i>
Cum, <i>with.</i>	Sine, <i>without.</i>
De, <i>concerning, of, over.</i>	Tenus, <i>as far as, up to.</i>

3. *Four Prepositions govern the Accusative or Ablative ; viz :*

With the Accusative :	With the Ablative :
In <i>into, towards, against.</i>	In, <i>upon, in, among.</i>
Suo, <i>under (motion to),</i>	Sub, <i>under (motion or rest),</i>
about.	at, near.
Sūper, <i>above, over, beyond.</i>	Sūper, <i>upon, concerning.</i>
Subter, <i>under.</i>	Subter, <i>under.</i>

## 236.—OBSERVATIONS.

1. *A* is used before consonants ; *ab*, before vowels, and *h, j, r, s*, and sometimes *l* ; *abs*, before *t* and *qu*. *E* is used before consonants.

2. *Tenus* is placed after its case ; and also *cum*, when joined to *me, te, se, quo, qui*, and *quibus* ; as, *mecum, &c.* *Clam* sometimes governs the accusative ; as, *clam patre, or patrem.*

3. The adverbs *præpe*, "nigh ;" *usque*, "as far as ;" *versus*, "towards," are often followed by an accusative governed by *ad* understood, and sometimes expressed. So also *præcul*, "far," is followed by the ablative governed by *a*, understood.

4. Prepositions not followed by their case, are to be regarded as adverbs.

5. Prepositions are sometimes combined ; as, *ex adversus cum idem*. Cic. *In ante diem*, "till the day." Id. *Ex ante diem*, "from the day." But prepositions compounded together, commonly become adverbs or conjunctions ; as, *propalam, profluvius, insuper, &c.*

6. A preposition with its case is often used as an adverbial phrase ; as, *ex animo*, "earnestly ;" *ex adverso*, "opposite ;" *ex improvviso*, "suddenly ;" *extempore*, "off-hand." *Quamobrem (quam ob rem)*, "wherefore ;" *quæ propter (quæ propter)* ; *quocirca (quod circa)*, &c.

7. Prepositions are either primitive ; as, *ad, apud, ante, &c.* ; or derivative ; as, *adversum*, from the adjective *adversus* ; *secundum*, from *secundus*. They are either simple ; as, *ad, ante, abs* ; or compound ; as, *ex adversum, absque* ; or inseparable ; as, *am, di* or *dis*, &c. 239-2.

## § 91. PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

237.—1. Prepositions are often prefixed to other words, especially to verbs, the meaning of which they generally modify by their own; thus,

238.—1. *A*, *ab*, *abs*, "from;" *as*, *duco*, "I lead;" *abduco*, "I lead away," or "from;" sometimes it denotes privation; *as*, *amens*, "mad."

2. *Ad*, "to;" *as*, *adducq* 'I lead to.' It is sometimes intensive; *as*, *adāmc*, "I love greatly"

3. *De*, in composition generally signifies "downward;" *as*, *descendo*, "I go down;" *decido*, "I fall down." Sometimes it is intensive; *as*, *deāmo*, "I love greatly;" sometimes it denotes privation; *as*, *despēro*, "I despair" *dēmens*, "mad."

4. *E* or *ex*, "out of," "from;" *as*, *exeo*, "I go out." It is sometimes intensive; *as*, *exōro*, "I beg earnestly;" sometimes privative; *as*, *exsanguis*, "pale;" *exspes*, "hopeless."

5. *In*, "into," "in," "against;" *as*, *infēro*, "I bring in;" *irruo*, "I rush against or upon." With adjectives it generally reverses the signification. *as*, *infidus*, "unfaithful;" *indignus*, "unworthy." In some compounds, it has contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; *as*, *invocātus*, "called upon;" "not called upon;" *immulātus*, "changed," "unchanged."

6. *Per*, "through," is commonly intensive, especially with adjectives; *as*, *perfacilis*, "very easy." With *quam*, it is strongly intensive; *as*, *per quam facilis*, "exceedingly easy." In *perfidus*, "perfidious," it is negative.

7. *Præ*, "before," with adjectives is intensive; *as*, *præclārus*, "very clear," "very renowned."

8. *Pro* denotes "forth;" *as*, *produco*, "I lead forth."

9. *Sub* often diminishes the signification; *as*, *rideo*, "I laugh;" *subrideo*, "I smile;" *albus*, "white;" *subalbus*, "whitish." Sometimes it denotes motion upwards; *as*, *subriigo*, "I raise up;" sometimes concealment; *as*, *rapio*, "I take;" *subripio*, "I take secretly," "I steal."

*Note*.—Prepositions frequently seem to add nothing to the words, with which they are compounded.

*Obs.* 1. In combining with the simple word, some prepositions frequently undergo a change of form, chiefly for the sake of euphony, for which see 2.6-5.

## INSEPARABLE PREPOSITIONS.

239.—2. The following syllables, *am*, *di*, or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, are called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are never found, except in compound words. Their general signification is as follows :

<i>Am</i> ,	<i>about, around ;</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>Ambio,</i>	<i>to surround.</i>
<i>Di, or dis,</i>	<i>asunder ;</i>	"	<i>Divello,</i>	<i>to pull asunder</i>
<i>Re,</i>	<i>back, again ;</i>	"	<i>Relëgo,</i>	<i>to read again</i>
<i>Se,</i>	<i>apart, or aside ;</i>	"	<i>Sepôno,</i>	<i>to lay aside.</i>
<i>Con,</i>	<i>together ;</i>	"	<i>Coneresco,</i>	<i>to grow together.</i>

*Obs.* 1. Some of these syllables, in combining with the simple word, sometimes vary their form (215-5), and, also, further modify its signification ; as

1st. *Am* adds to the verb the general idea of round, round about.

2d. *Dis*, or *di*, sometimes reverses the meaning of the simple word ; as, *facilis*, "easy," *difficilis*, "difficult;" *fido*, "I trust," *diffido*, "I distrust." Sometimes it increases it ; as, *cupio*, "I desire;" *discupio*, "I desire much."

3d. *Re* sometimes reverses the meaning of the simple word ; as, *clauso* "I shut;" *reclûdo*, "I open."

4th. *Se* has little variation of meaning. With adjectives, it denotes privation ; as, *secûrus*, "free from care."

5th. *Con* (for *cum*) conveys the idea of joint or combined action, and sometimes strengthens the meaning of the word with which it is compounded.

*Obs.* 2. The syllables *ne* and *ve* are also prefixed to words, and have a negative signification ; as, *fas*, "justice;" *nêfas*, "injustice," "impiety;" *scio*, "I know;" *nescio*, "I know not;" *sânus*, "healthy;" *vesânus*, "sickly."

## § 92. INTERJECTIONS.

240.—AN INTERJECTION is a word used in exclamations, to express an emotion of the mind ; as, *Oh ! hei ! heu !* "Ah !" "alas !"

Nouns and adjectives, in the neuter gender, are sometimes used as interjections ; as, *pax* ! "be still !" *mâlum* ! "with a mischief !" *infandum* ! "O shame !" *misèrum* ! "O wretched !" *nêfas* ! "O the villany !"

*Note.*—The same interjection is often used to express different emotions, according to its connection ; thus, *eah*, is used to express wonder, grief, joy, or anger

## § 93. CONJUNCTIONS.

241.—A CONJUNCTION is a word which connects words or sentences; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, “and;” *sed*, “but;” *etiam*, “also;” &c.

242.—Conjunctions, according to their different significations, may be divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVES, or such as connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *ac*, *atque*, *et*, *que*, “and;” *etiam*, *quodque*, “also;” and sometimes the negative *nec*, *nèque*, “nor,” “and not;” i. e. when they stand for *et*, and continue the negation.

2. DISJUNCTIVES, or such as connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *autem*, *sive*, *ve*, *vel*, “either,” “or;” and the negative *nève*, *neve*, “neither,” “nor.”

3. CONCESSIVES, or such as express a concession; as, *etsi*, *etiāsi*, *tametsi*, *licet*, *quāquam*, *quāvis*, “though,” “although.”

4. ADVERSATIVES, or such as express a condition; as, *at*, *atque*, *autem*, *ceterum*, *vèrum*, “but;” *tāmen*, *attāmen*, *veruntāmen*, “yet,” “although;” *vero*, “truly.”

5. CAUSALS, or such as express a cause or reason; as, *enim*, *etēnim*, *nam*, *namque*, “for;” *quando*, *quandoquidē*, “whereas,” “since;” *quia*, *quippe*, *quod*, “because;” *quoniam*, *quū* (or *cū*), “since;” *siquidē*, “if,” “indeed.”

6. ILLATIVES, or such as express an inference; as, *ergo*, *idcirco*, *proinde*, *quapropter*, *quādrē*, *quāmobrem*, *quocirca*, “therefore.”

7. FINALS, or such as denote a purpose, object or result; as, *ne*, “lest;” *quā*, “but that;” *quominus*, “that not;” *ut*, *utī*, “that.”

8. CONDITIONALS, or such as express a condition; as, *si*, *sin*, “if;” *nisi*, or *ni*, “unless;” *dummodo*, or *dum modo*, “provided that.”

9. SUSPENSIVES, or such as express doubt; as, *an*, *anne*, *annon*, *ne*, *necne*, *num*, *utrum*, “whether,” “whether or not.”

Obs. 1. Some words, as, *deinde*, “thereafter;” *denique*, “finally;” *ceterum* “but,” “moreover;” *videlicet*, “to wit;” &c.; may be considered either as adverbs or conjunctions, according as their modifying or connecting power prevails.

Obs. 2. *Autem*, *enim*, *vèro*, *quodque*, *quidē*, are never put first in clause or sentence. *Que*, *ve*, *ne*, are always annexed to another word. They are called *Enclitics*, because, when placed after a long syllable, they make the accent incline to that syllable; as, *dīsci*, *trōchi*; *discīve*, *trōchīve*.

Obs. 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, *idcirco*, *ideo*, *namque*, *neque*, or *nèque*, &c.

## PART THIRD.

---

### § 94. SYNTAX.

243.—**SYNTAX** is that part of Grammar which treats of the proper arrangement and connection of words in a sentence.

1. A *sentence* is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense; as, *Man is mortal*.

2. A *phrase* is two or more words rightly put together, but not making complete sense; as, *in truth, in a word*.

3. *Sentences* are of two kinds, *simple* and *compound*.

4. A *simple* sentence contains only a single affirmation; as, *Life is short*.

5. A *compound* sentence contains two or more simple sentences connected together; as, *Life, which is short, should be well employed*.

6. Every simple sentence consists of two parts, the *subject* and the *predicate*.

7. The *subject* is that of which something is affirmed. It is either in the nominative case before a finite verb, or in the accusative before the infinitive.

8. The *predicate* is that which is affirmed of the subject. It is either contained in the verb itself; as, *John reads*; or it consists of an intransitive verb, with an adjective or noun following it; as, *Time is short*; *they became poor*; *he is a scholar*. An. and Pr. Gr., 594.

9. Both the subject and predicate may be attended by other words called *adjuncts*, which serve to restrict or modify the meaning of the word with which they may stand connected; as, "An inordinate *desire* of admiration, often produces a contemptible *levity* of deportment."

10. When a compound sentence is so framed that the meaning is suspended till the whole be finished, it is called a *period*.

11. The analysis of sentences is the same in Latin as in English. See § 152, and "Analytical and Practical English Grammar," 591—657.

## 244.—§ 95. GENERAL PRINCIPLES OF SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a *verb* in the indicative, subjunctive, imperative, or infinitive mood; and a *subject* expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, must have a *substantive* expressed or understood, with which it agrees. § 98 and 144.

3. Every relative must have an antecedent, or word to which it refers, and with which it agrees. § 99.

4. Every subject-nominative has its own verb expressed or understood. § 100, 101, 102. The predicate-nominative is usually placed after the substantive verb. § 103.

5. Every finite verb, i. e. every verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mood, has its own nominative, expressed or understood (§ 101, 102), and when the infinitive has a subject, it is in the accusative. § 145. The infinitive without a subject, does not form a sentence or proposition. § 148.

6. Every oblique case is governed by some word, expressed or understood, in the sentence of which it forms a part; or is used, without government, to express certain circumstances. § 127.

## 245.—SYNOPSIS OF THE GOVERNMENT OF CASES.

## 7. The GENITIVE CASE is governed :

1st. By substantives, § 106, Rules VI, VII, and VIII.

2d. By adjectives, § 107. Namely, verbals, &c., R. IX.;—partitives, R. X.;—of plenty, or want, R. XI.

3d. By verbs, § 108. Namely, *Sum*, R. XII.—*Misereor*, &c. R. XIII.—*Recordor*, *memini*, &c., R. XIV.;—of accusing, &c., § 122, R. XXVII.;—of valuing, R. XXVIII.—Passive verbs, § 126, R. I and II.—Impersonals, § 113, Exc. I and II.

4th. By adverbs, § 135; and—

5th. It is used to express circumstances of place. § 130, R. XXXVI and XXXIX.

## 8. The DATIVE is governed :

1st. By substantives, § 110.

2d. By adjectives of profit or disprofit, &c., § 111, R. XVI.

3d. By verbs, § 112. Namely, *Sum* and its compounds, R. I.—*Est*, R. II.—Certain compound verbs, R. III and IV.—Verbs signifying to profit or hurt, &c., R. V.—Impersonals, § 113.—Verbs with two datives, § 114.—Verbs of comparing, &c., § 123.—Passive verbs, § 126, R. XXXII. and XXXIII.—Gerunds § 147.

4th. By adverbs, § 135.—Interjections, § 117



### 9. The ACCUSATIVE is governed :

- 1st. By transitive verbs signifying actively, § 116, R. XX.—To these belong *recordor*, *memini*, &c., § 108.—Verbs governing two cases, § 122; namely, of accusing, R. XXVII;—valuing, R. XXVIII;—comparing, &c., § 123;—asking and teaching, § 124;—loading, binding, &c., § 125.—By impersonal verbs, § 113, Exc. II and III.—By passive verbs, § 126, R. IV.
- 2d. By prepositions, § 136, R. XLVIII, L, LI, LII.
- 3d. It is used to express circumstances of limitation, § 128;—of place, § 130;—of time, § 131;—of measure, § 132.
- 4th. It is put before the infinitive as its subject, § 145.

10. The VOCATIVE is governed by the interjections *O*, *heu*, *proh*, &c. (§ 117); or is used without government, to denote the person addressed.

### 11. The ABLATIVE is governed :

- 1st. By nouns, § 118.
- 2d. By adjectives; viz. of plenty or want, § 107, R. XL.—*Dignus*, &c., § 119.—The comparative degree, § 120.
- 3d. By verbs, § 121; viz. of plenty and scarceness, R. XXV.—*Utor* *abūtor*, &c., R. XXVI.—Loading, binding, &c., § 125.—Passive verbs, § 126, R. V.
- 4th. By prepositions, § 136, R. XLIX, LI, LII.
- 5th. It is used without a governing word to express circumstances; viz. of limitation, § 128;—of cause, manner, &c., § 129;—of place, § 130;—namely, the place *in which*, R. XXXVI.; *from which*, R. XXXVIII. and XXXIX.;—of time, § 131, R. XL and XLI;—of measure, § 132, R. XLII, XLIII.—Of price, § 133.
- 6th. It is used as the case absolute, § 146, R. LX.

### 246.—CONSTRUCTION OF MOODS.

12. The *Indicative*, and the *Imperative* mood are used independently, and without government.

13. The *Subjunctive Mood* is, for the most part, dependent, and is used,

- 1st. After certain conjunctions, § 140.
- 2d. After the relative in certain connections, § 141, R. LV
- 3d. In oblique discourse, § 141, R. VI

14. The *Infinitive Mood* is used,

1st. Without a subject, or as a verbal noun, § 144, and R. LVI., LVII.

2d. With a subject in dependent and subordinate clauses, § 145, R. LVIII.

15. *Participles* are construed as adjectives; *Gerunds* and *Supines*, as nouns, §§ 146, 147, 148.

16. For the construction of adverbs and conjunctions, see § 134, and § 149.

## § 96. PARTS OF SYNTAX.

247.—The Parts of Syntax are commonly reckoned two: *Concord*, or agreement, and *Government*.

248.—CONCORD is the agreement of one word with another, in *gender*, *number*, *case*, or *person*.

249.—GOVERNMENT is that power which one word has in determining the *mood*, *tense*, or *case*, of another word.

### I. CONCORD.

250.—CONCORD, or agreement, is fourfold; viz.:

1. Of a substantive with a substantive;
2. Of an adjective with a substantive;
3. Of a relative with its antecedent;
4. Of a verb with its nominative, or subject.

## § 97 A SUBSTANTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

251.—RULE I. Substantives denoting the same person, or thing, agree in *case*; as,

<i>Cicero orator,</i>	Cicero the orator.
<i>Cicerōnis oratōris,</i>	Of Cicero the orator, &c.
<i>Urbs Athēnæ,</i>	The city Athens.
<i>Urbi Athēnis,</i>	To the city Athens.

252.—EXPLANATION.—Substantives thus used are said to be in **APPOSITION**. The second substantive is added, to express some *attribute*.

*description*, or *appellative*, belonging to the first, and must always be in the same member of the sentence; i. e., they must be both in the subject, or both in the predicate. A substantive predicated of another, though denoting the same thing, is not in apposition with it, and does not come under this rule. § 108.

This rule applies to all substantive words, such as personal and relative pronouns, adjectives used substantively, &c.

Nouns in apposition are often connected, in English, by such particles as *as*, *being*, *for*, *like*, &c.; as, *Pater misit me comitem*, "My father sent me *as* a companion," "*for* a companion," &c.

### OBSERVATIONS.

253.—*Obs. 1.* It is not necessary that nouns in apposition agree in gender, number, or person. In these respects, they are often different; as, *Magnum pauperies opprobrium*. *Hor.* *Alexin delicias domini*. *VIRG.*

254.—*Obs. 2.* Two or more nouns in the singular, have a noun in apposition in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius, tribuni plebis*, "Marcus Antonius, Caius Cassius, tribunes of the people." Also if the singular nouns be of different genders, the plural in apposition will have the masculine rather than the feminine, if both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum et Cleopatram reges* (not *reginas*), *legati missi*. *LIV.*

255.—*Obs. 3.* The substantive pronoun, having a word in apposition, is frequently omitted; as, *Consul dixi* (scil. *ego*), "(I) the consul said."

256.—*Obs. 4.* The possessive pronoun, being equivalent to the genitive of the personal, has a noun in apposition with it in the genitive: as, *pectus tuum, hominis simplicis*.

257.—*Obs. 5.* Sometimes the former noun denotes a *whole*, of which the noun in apposition expresses the *parts*; as, *Onerariæ, pars ad Ægimurum, aliæ adversus urbem ipsam delatæ sunt*, "The ships of burden were carried, *part* to Ægimurus,—*others* against the city itself" So, *Qui's que pro se queruntur*, "They complain *each* for himself"

258.—*Obs. 6.* A sentence or clause may supply the place of one of the substantives; as, *Cogitet oratorem institui, rem arduam*, "Let him consider that an orator is training, a difficult matter."

259.—*Obs. 7.* A demonstrative pronoun, in the neuter gender, sometimes refers to a phrase, or a dependent clause in apposition, and, in construction, takes the place of that clause, &c., either as the subject or the object of a verb; as, *Vetus nobilitas, majorum fortia facta, cognatorum et affinium spes, multæ clientelæ, omnia hæc præsidio adsunt*. *SALL., Jug. 85* *Hoc tibi persuadeas velim, me nihil omisisse. Exercitum supplicio cedere, id est dominum, non imperatorem esse.* *SALL., Jug, 85.*

### EXCEPTIONS.

260.—*Exc. 1.* Sometimes the latter substantive is put in the genitive as, *fons Timævi*, "the fountain of Timævus;" *amnis Eridani*, "the river Eridanus;" *arbor fici*, "the fig tree;" *nomen Mercurii est mihi*. Words thus construed may be referred to § 32.

261.—*Exc. 2.* A proper name after the generic term *nōmen*, or *cognōmen*, sometimes elegantly takes the case of the person in the dative; as, *Nōmen Arctūro est mihi*, "I have the name Arcturus." PLAUT. "So, *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo additur*. VIRG. *Cui Egerio inditum nōmen*. LIV *Mansit Silvii postea omnibus cognōmen*. Id. (438.)

262.—*Exc. 3.* The name of a town in the genitive, denoting *at a place* may have a noun of the third declension or plural number, in apposition with it in the ablative, and vice versa; as, *Corinthi Achaia urbs*, "At Corinth, a city of Achaia." This construction depends on the rule, 548, 549.

## § 98. AN ADJECTIVE WITH A SUBSTANTIVE.

263.—**RULE II.** An adjective agrees with its substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bonus vir*, a good man.

*Bona puella*, a good girl.

*Dulce pōnum*, a sweet apple.

*Bonos viros*, good men.

*Bonorum lēgum*, of good laws.

*Tuis donis*, with thy gifts.

264.—**EXPLANATION.**—This rule applies to all adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles; and requires that they be in the same gender, number, and case, with their substantives. 250–2. It applies also, when the substantive is in the subject, and the adjective in the predicate. 322. —The word "substantive," in this rule, includes personal and relative pronouns, and all words or phrases used as substantives.

### OBSERVATIONS.

265.—*Obs. 1.* Two or more substantives singular, unless taken separately, have an adjective plural, as,

*Vir et puer territi lupo*, A man and a boy terrified by a wolf.

266.—*Obs. 2.* If all the substantives be of the same gender, the adjectives will be of that gender, as in the example above. But if the substantives are of different genders, the adjective takes the masculine rather than the feminine, and the feminine rather than the neuter; as,

*Pater mihi, et mater mortui sunt*, My father and mother are dead. TER.

267.—*Obs. 3.* But if they denote things without life, the adjective is commonly neuter. And, if some of the substantives refer to things with life, and others to things without life, the adjective is either neuter, or takes the gender of the thing or things with life; as,

*Labor voluptasque sunt dissimilia natura*, Toil and pleasure are unlike in nature.

*Naves et captivi quæ ad Chium* The ships and captives *which* were  
*capta sunt.* taken at Chios.

*Numidæ atque militaria signa obs-* The Numidians and their military  
*curati sunt,* standards were partially concealed

Also, the neuter is used frequently when the nouns denoting things are of the same gender; as, *Postquam ira et avaritia imperio potentiōra erant.* Liv.

268.—*Obs.* 4. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood to the rest; as, *sociis et rege recepto*, VIRG., "Our companions and king being recovered."

*Note* 1.—These observations may, and sometimes do, hold good, even when one or more of the substantives are in the ablative, and connected with the others by *cum*; as, *Filiam cum filio accitos.*

269.—*Obs.* 5. When the substantive to which the adjective, or adjective pronoun, belongs may be easily supplied, it is frequently omitted, and the adjective, assuming its gender, number, and case, is often used as a substantive, and may have an adjective agreeing with it; as,

*Mortalis (hōmo),* a mortal.

*Ille (hōmo),* he.

*Superi (dii),* the gods above.

*Illi (homīnes),* they.

*Dextra (mānus),* the right hand.

*Hic (hōmo),* he.

*Sinistra (mānus),* the left hand.

*Hæc (femīna),* she.

*Omnia alia,* all other (things).

*Familiāris meus (amicus),* my intimate friend.

270.—*Obs.* 6. The adjective, especially when used as a predicate, without a substantive or definite object, is used in the neuter gender; as,

*Triste lūpus stabūlis,*

The wolf is *grievous* to the folds.

*Vacāre culpa est suāve,*

To be free from blame is *pleasant*.

*Lābor vincit omnia,*

Labor overcomes *all obstacles*

271.—*Obs.* 7. Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, when used substantively, take an adjective in the neuter gender (30); as,

*Suprēmum vāle dixit,* OVID,

He pronounced a last *farewell*

*Cras istud quando venīt,* MART.,

When does that *to-morrow* come!

*Excepto quod non simul esses,*  
 HOR.,

*That you were not present* being  
 excepted.

272.—*Obs. 8.* A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *populum late regem* (for *regnantem*), “a people of extensive sway;” *nemo* (for *nullus*) *miles Romanus*, “no Roman soldier.” Sometimes an adverb; as, *Hæri semper lenitas* (probably for *lenitas semper existens*, or the like). *TER.* So also adjectives are sometimes used as substantives, as, *maiores*, “ancestors;” *amicus*, “a friend;” *summum bonum*, “the chief good” (thing); &c.

273.—*Obs. 9.* These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cætera*, usually signify “the first part,” the “middle part,” &c., of any thing, and are placed before the substantive; as, *media nox*, “the middle of the night;” *summus mons*, “the top of the mountain.”

274.—*Obs. 10.* Some adjectives denoting the time or circumstances of an action are used in the sense of adverbs; as, *prior venit*, “he came first of the two;” *pronus cecidit*, “he fell forward;” *abiit sublimis*, “he went on high.”

275.—*Obs. 11.* *Alius*, though an adjective, is often used as a pronoun, and has this peculiarity of construction, that, when repeated with a different word in the same clause, it renders the one simple proposition to which it belongs equivalent to two, and it is to be so rendered; thus, *aliud aliis videtur optimum*, “one thing seems best to some, another seems best to others.” So, *duo reges, alius aliâ via, ille bello, hic pace, civitatem auxerunt*, “two kings, one in one way and another in another;” &c. Or the two simple sentences may be combined in a plural form; thus, “different things seemed best to different persons;” “two kings, each in a different way;” &c. The same is true when a word derived from *alius*, such as *aliunde*, *alter*, *aliô*, is put with it in the same clause; as, *aliis aliunde periculum est*, “there is danger to one person from one source, and to another from another;” or combined, “there is danger to different persons from different sources.”

276.—*Obs. 12.* When *alius* is repeated in a different clause, but in the same construction, the first is to be rendered “one,” the second, “another;” if plural, “some,” “others;” as, *aliud est maledicere, aliud accusare*, “it is one thing to rail at, another to accuse.” *Cic. Proferébant alii purpuram, thus alii*, “some brought forth purple, others incense.” Instead of *alii*—*alii*, &c., in the plural, we have sometimes *pars*—*alii*; *partim*—*alii*; sometimes *alii*—*pars*, *alii*—*partim*, “some—others,” &c.; and sometimes the first of the pair is omitted.

This remark is applicable to *alter*, remembering only that *alius* signifies ONE OF MANY; *alter*, ONE OF TWO; as, *quorum alter exercitum perdidit, alter vendidit*.

277.—*Obs. 13.* *Quisque*, with the superlative, is equivalent to *omnis* in the singular or plural, with the positive; thus, *optimus quisque*—*omnis bonus*, or *omnes boni*, “every good man,” or, “all good men.” With two superlatives, it expresses a sort of reciprocal comparison; as, *optimam quidque rarissimum*, “every thing is good in proportion as it is rare;” or “the best things are the rarest.”

## EXCEPTIONS.

278.—*Exc. 1.* An adjective is often put in a different gender or number from the substantive with which it is connected, tacitly referring to its meaning rather than to its form, or to some other word synonymous with it, or implied in it; as,

*Latium Capuâque agro mulctati*, "Latium and Capua were deprived of their land," i. e., the people of Latium, &c.; *Capita conjurationis virgissassi*,—"the heads (i. e., the leading men) of the conspiracy, &c."

279.—*Exc. 2.* A collective noun in the singular, if its verb is plural, has an adjective in the plural, and in the gender of the individuals which form the collection; as,

*Pars in flumen acti sunt*, "*A part were forced into the river.*" Sometimes it takes the gender of the individual in the singular; as, *pars arduus fûrit*, &c.

280.—*Exc. 3.* A plural noun or pronoun, used to denote one person, in comic writers, sometimes has an adjective or participle in the singular; as, *Nôbis presente*, "I being present."

281.—*Exc. 4.* The adjective pronouns *uterque*, *quisque*, &c., in the singular, are often put with nouns in the plural, to intimate that the objects are spoken of individually and distributively; as, *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt*, "They lead forth, each of them, his army from the camp;" *Quisque pro se queruntur*, "They complain, each one for himself." *Quisque*, in the singular, not only distributes plural nouns, but is in the nominative when the plural to be distributed is in the ablative absolute; as, *Multis sibi quisque imperium potentibus*. SALL. Jug., 18; or in the accusative, as the subject of the infinitive, as, *Affirmantes se .... quisque patriam .... relicturos*. *Alius* and *alter* are sometimes used in the same way; as, *Multa conjecta sunt aliud alio tempore*. Obs. 11. In this construction, there is a kind of apposition. 257.

282.—*Exc. 5.* When *ipse* qualifies a substantive pronoun in a reflexive sense, in any oblique case governed by a verb or preposition, it commonly takes the case of the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, instead of the case of the word which it qualifies; as, *Se ipse interfecit*, "He slew himself;" *Mihi ipse faveo*, "I favor myself;" *Credis mihi ipsum favere?* "Do you believe that I favor myself?" &c. See 118-3, *Note*.

283.—*Exc. 6.* The possessive pronoun, in any case, being equivalent to, and used for, the genitive of the substantive pronoun (121, Obs. 1), an adjective, qualifying the substantive pronoun implied in it, is put in the genitive; as, *In nostro omnium fletu*, "Whilst all of us are in tears;" *Meum solius vitium*, "The fault of me alone;" *Nostris ipsorum liberi*, "Our own children;" *Mea scripta timentia*.

## § 99. THE RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT.

284.—RULE III. The relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; as,

*Ego qui scribo,*  
*Tu qui legis,*  
*Vir qui loquitur,*  
*Viri qui loquuntur,*

I who write.  
 Thou who readest.  
 The man who speaks.  
 The men who speak.

285.—EXPLANATION.—The antecedent is the noun or pronoun going before the relative to which it refers. Sometimes, however, the relative and its clause are placed before the antecedent and its clause.

The infinitive mood or a part of a sentence is sometimes the antecedent, in which case the relative must be in the neuter gender.

## OBSERVATIONS.

286.—Obs. 1. Strictly speaking, the relative does not agree with the *antecedent*, but with the same word expressed or understood *after* the relative, and with which, like the adjective, it agrees in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, as well as *person*, thus, *diem dicunt, quâ (die)*, &c., “they appoint a day, on which (day),” &c. Hence, in connecting the antecedent and relative clause, the following variety of usage occurs, viz :

1st. The word to which the relative refers, is commonly expressed in the antecedent clause, and not with the relative; as, *Vir sapiens qui pauca loquitur*, “He is a wise man, who speaks little.”

2d. It is often elegantly omitted in the antecedent clause, and expressed with the relative, especially when the relative clause stands first: as, *In quem primum egressi sunt locum, Troja vocatur*, i. e., *locus in quem*, &c.

3d. Sometimes, when greater precision is required, it is expressed in both: as, *Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent*. Instead of the first substantive, the relative sometimes takes with it a substantive *explanatory* of the first; as, *Cum venissem ad Amānum, qui mons*, &c.—*Non longe a Tolosatium finibus sunt, quæ civitas (Tolosatum) est in provincia*; for, *qui sunt*, &c.—*Ante comitia, quod tempus haud longe aberat*; for, *quæ comitia haud*, &c.

4th. When the reference is of a general nature, and there is no danger of obscurity, the word to which the relative refers is understood in both clauses; as, *sunt quos juvat collegisse*, i. e. *sunt (homines) quos (homines) juvat*, &c.—*non habeo quod te accuserem*, i. e. *non habeo id quod te accuserem*. 492.

*Nota.*—The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demon-



strative pronoun in the clause following; as, *de qua re audiri, eam tibi narrābo*. In the clause preceding the relative, the demonstrative has sometimes the force of *tālis*, "such," and the relative, that of the corresponding *quālis*, "as;"—the two implying a sort of comparison; as, *Itaque ego is sum in illum, quem tu me esse vis*, "Therefore, I am towards him, such as you wish me to be." CIO.

To this construction may be referred such expressions as *qui tuus est amor*, equivalent to, *pro eo amore qui tuus est amor*, "such is your love;" literally, "in accordance with such love as yours is;"—*quæ tua est benevolentia*, "such is your benevolence," where the demonstrative *is, ea, id*, in the sense of "such," (123-2, b), is supplied with the antecedent understood.

287.—*Obs. 2. a.* The antecedent is sometimes implied in a preceding word; as, *omnes laudare fortūnas meas qui habērem, &c.*, "all were praising my fortune who had," &c., i. e. *fortūnas mei qui*; the possessive *meas* being equivalent to the genitive of *ego*. 121, *Obs. 1. Conjuravere pauci contra rempublicam, de qua (scil. conjuratione, implied in conjuravere) quam brevissime potero dicam*, "a few entered into a conspiracy against the republic, concerning which," &c.

*b.* The relative sometimes refers, not to a particular word, but to the whole antecedent proposition, or the idea expressed by it, in which case it takes the neuter gender; as, *Tu amas virtutem, quod (i. e. quam rem) valde laudo. Postrēmo, quod difficillimum inter mortales, gloriā invidiam vicisti*. SALL., Jug. Sometimes *id* is placed before *quod* referring to the same proposition; as, *Sive, id quod constat, Platōnis studiōsus audiendi fuit*. CIO.

288.—*Obs. 3.* When a relative refers to one or two nouns, denoting the same object, but of different genders, it may agree with either; as, *Flūmen est Arar quod, &c.* Here *quod* agrees with *flūmen*. *Ad flūmen Ossum perventum est, qui, &c.* Here *qui* agrees with *Ossum*.

289.—*Obs. 4.* When a word of a preceding proposition, or the proposition itself, is explained by a substantive after *esse, dicere, vocare, habere, &c.*, the relative (or demonstrative) pronoun between them, often takes, by attraction, the gender and number of the explanatory substantive following; as, *Thēbæ ipsæ quod Bæotiæ caput est*. LIV. *Idem velle et idem nolle, ea dēnum firma amicitia est*. SALL. But if the latter substantive is distinctive only, the relative follows the general rule; as, *gēnus hominum quod vocatur Helōtes;—ad eum locum, quem Amanīas pylas vocant, pervēnit*.

Also the participles of such verbs, as well as the relative, take the gender and number of the predicate substantive when near it, or immediately after it; as, *non omnis error stultitia est dicenda (for dicendus);—gens universa Venēti appellati*.

290.—*Obs. 5.* An adjective which properly belongs to the antecedent is sometimes placed in the relative clause, agreeing with the relative. This is the case, especially if the adjective be a numeral, a comparative, or superlative; as, *inter jocos, quos inconditos faciunt, for jocos inconditos, quos, &c.*, "amidst the rude jests which they utter;"—*nocte, quam in terris ultimam egit, for nocte ultimā, quam, &c.*, "the last night which he spent upon earth."

291.—*Obs.* 6. When a relative refers to two or more antecedents taken together, it agrees with them in gender and number, in all respects as the adjective does with several substantives, as stated 265, 266. But,

If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative plural takes the first person rather than the second, and the second person rather than the third.

292.—*Exc.* 1. The relative, sometimes, takes the gender and number, not of the antecedent noun, but of some one synonymous with it or implied in it; as, *eārum rerum quæ mortales prima putant*, "of those things which men deem most important." Here *quæ* seems to agree with *negotia*, considered synonymous with *rerum*.—*Daret ut catenis fatale monstrum quæ*. The antecedent is *monstrum*, but *quæ* agrees with *Cleopatra*, the monster intended.

293.—*Obs.* 7. The relatives *quicumque* and *quisquis* are sometimes used instead of *qui*, when a general or indefinite term is expressed or understood with the antecedent; as, *quæ sanari poterunt, quicumque ratione sanabo*, equivalent to *omni ratione quicumque* (*possum*), "what can be cured, I will cure by every means I can."

294.—This construction corresponds to that of the Greek ὅστις (Gr. Gram., § 135, 7), and, like it, these relatives often represent two cases; as, *quoscunque de te quæri audiui, quacunquē potui ratione placavi*. Here, *quoscunque* is both the object of *placavi*, and the subject of *quæri*; and *quacunquē* is equivalent to *omni ratione qua ratione*.—*Quidquid tetigerat aurum fiebat*. Here *quidquid* stands both as the nominative to *fiebat* and the accusative after *tetigerat*, and is equivalent to *omne quod tetigerat*, &c.

295.—*Obs.* 8. In the beginning of a sentence, or clause connected with what precedes, not by the relative itself, but by *quum* (*cum*), *scilicet*, *autem*, *quoniam*, or other conjunctive term expressed or understood, the relative assumes the character of a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and, as such, refers to some word, clause, or circumstance, already expressed thus,

- 1st. When the relative thus used stands *instead* of its noun, it is equivalent to *et ille, et hic, et is, et illi*, &c., and may be rendered "and he," "and she," "and they," &c.; as, *qui quum admitteret*, "and when he admitted;"—*ad quem quum venissent*, "and when they had come to him;"—*quem ut vidit*, "as soon as he saw him."
- 2d. When the relative thus used stands *with* its substantive, or has it understood, it is to be translated, as a demonstrative, by *this, that, these, those*, commonly preceded by *and*; as, *qui legati quum missi essent*, "and when these ambassadors had been sent;"—*quarum initium silvarum quum Cæsar pervenisset*, "and when Cæsar had come to the beginning of these woods;"—*quam quum Romanorum dux dare nollet*, "and when the Roman general would not grant this" (scil. *pacem*, "peace")

296.—To this construction belongs *quod*, in the beginning of a sentence apparently for *propter quod*, or *ad quod*, referring to something previously stated, and meaning "on account of," "with respect to," "as to, &c."

*this thing*," as, *quod diis gratias habeo*, "wherefore (i. e. on account of this thing), I give thanks to the gods;"—*quod scribis* (Cic.), "as to what you write."

## CASE OF THE RELATIVE.

297.—*Obs. 9.* The relative, in respect of case, is always to be considered as a noun and subject to the rules which determine the case of nouns.

298.—*Exc. 2.* The relative, after the manner of the Greek, is sometimes attracted into the case of its antecedent; as, *Cum agas aliquis eorum quorum consulisti*, &c., for *eorum quæ consulisti*, "When you do any of those things which you have been accustomed to do;" *Raptim quibus quisque poterat elatis*, for *(iis) quæ quisque*, &c., "Those things which each one could, being hastily snatched up."

299.—*Exc. 3.* The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative; as, *Urbem quam statuo vestra est*, for *urbs quam statuo*, &c., "The city which I am building is yours."

These are Greek constructions seldom used by Latin writers. See Greek Gr., § 185, *Exc. 9, 10.*

300.—*Obs. 10.* The relative adjectives *quot*, *quantus*, *qualis*, used in comparisons, and commonly rendered "as," are often construed in a manner similar to the relative (286), having their redditives, or corresponding adjectives *tot*, *tantus*, *talis*, expressed or understood in the antecedent clause; as, *Tanta multitudinis quantam capit urbs*, "Of as great a multitude as the city contains;" *Facies (talis), qualem decet esse sororum*, "The features, such as those of sisters ought to be." VIRG.

a. The noun, as well as the reditive, is very often omitted in the antecedent clause, and expressed in the relative clause (286-2d); as, *Quantâ potuit celeritate cucurrit*, changed to the common form, is *Tantâ celeritate quantâ potuit, cucurrit*, "He ran with as much speed as he could." In this way, are to be explained such clauses as *Quantum importunitatis habent*, "Such arrogance have they," in full form, *Pro tanto importunitatis quantum habent*.

b. When the relative adjective and its reditive refer to different substantives, each agrees with its own. But among the poets, the relative sometimes agrees with the substantive in the antecedent clause, and not with that in its own.

Sometimes the reditive is understood, and sometimes the relative.

*Note 1.* Instead of the relative adjectives *quot*, *quantus*, *qualis*, the conjunctions *ac*, *atque*, *et*, and the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, in the sense of "as,"

are sometimes used in comparative expressions; as, *Honos tali populo Romani voluntate, paucis est delatus ac mihi.* CIRC.

Note 2.—When *quot*, *quantus*, *qualis* are used as interrogatives, they have no corresponding antecedent term.

301.—Exc. 4. Instead of the ordinary construction, the relative adjective, with its noun, is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative pronoun understood, as in the following sentence: *Si hominibus bonarum rerum tanta cura esset, quanto studio petunt*, SALL., Jug.; instead of *quantum est studium quo aliena petunt*:—unless this be a case of anacoluthon, the latter part of the sentence being expressed as if the former, had been, *Si homines bonas res peterent, quanto studio*, &c., i. e., *tanto studio quanto*, &c. 300, a.

## § 100 CONSTRUCTION OF THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

302. The nominative case is used,

1. To express the subject of a proposition;
2. In apposition with another substantive in the nominative (§ 97), or predicated of it (§ 103);
3. In exclamations; as, *O vir fortis atque amicus!*

## § 101. THE VERB AND ITS NOMINATIVE.

303.—RULE IV. A Verb agrees with its nominative in number and person; as,

<i>Ego lægo,</i>	I read.	<i>Nos egimus,</i>	We read.
<i>Tu scribis,</i>	Thou writest.	<i>Vos scribitis,</i>	Ye write.
<i>Ille loquitur,</i>	He speaks.	<i>Illi loquuntur,</i>	They speak.

304.—EXPLANATION.—The subject of a finite verb, being a noun, a pronoun, an adjective used as a noun, or a gerund, is put in the nominative case. The subject may also be an infinitive mood or part of a sentence. To all of these the rule applies, and requires that the verb be in the same number and person as the subject, or nominative. For pers. n., see 85, and 118-1, 2.

### OBSERVATIONS.

305.—Obs. 1. The nominatives *ego*, *nos*, of the first person; and *tu*, *vos*, of the second, are generally omitted, being obvious from the terminations

tion of the verb; also the nominative of the third person, when it is an indefinite word, or may be easily supplied from the context; as, *ferunt*, "they say;" &c.

306.—*Obs. 2.* The subject is also omitted when the verb expresses the state of the weather, or an operation of nature; as, *fulgurat*, "it lightens;" *pluit*, "it rains;" *ningit*, "it snows."

307.—*Obs. 3.* Impersonal verbs are usually considered as without a nominative. Still, they will generally be found to bear a relation to some circumstance, sentence, clause of a sentence, or infinitive mood, similar to that between a verb and its nominative; as, *delectat me studere*, "it delights me to study," i. e. "to study delights me;"—*misæret me tui*, "I pity you," i. e. *conditio*, or *fortuna tui misæret me*, "your condition excites my pity." 662.

308.—*Obs. 4.* The verb is sometimes omitted when the nominative is expressed, and sometimes when it is understood; as, *nam ego Polydorus* (sc. *sum*), "for I am Polydorus;"—*omnia præclara rara* (sc. *sunt*), "all excellent things are rare;"—*tum ille* (sc. *respondit*), "then he replied;"—*verum hætenus hæc* (sc. *diximus*).

309.—*Obs. 5.* When the subject is an infinitive, or a clause of a sentence, the verb is in the third person singular; and, if a compound tense, the participle is put in the neuter gender; as, *incertum est quam longa nostrum cujusque vita futura sit*, "how long any of us shall live is uncertain."

310.—*Obs. 6.* The nominative is sometimes found with the infinitive, in which case *cæpit* or *cæperunt*, or some other verb, according to the sense, is understood; as, *omnes invidere mihi*, "every one envied me." The infinitive with the nominative before it, is so common in historical narrative, that it is called the *historical infinitive*. Thus used, it is translated as the imperfect or the perfect indefinite, for which tenses it seems to be used, and with which it is sometimes connected. 669.

311.—*Obs. 7.* *Videor*, in the sense of "I seem," is used throughout as a personal verb, but is often rendered impersonally; as, *videor esse liber* "it seems that I am free," literally, "I seem to be free."—Followed by the dative of a person, it means to *think, fancy, suppose*, with reference to the word in the dative, as the subject in English; as, *videor tibi esse*, "you think that I am," literally, "I seem to you to be;"—*tu vidæris mihi*, "I think that you;"—*videor illi*, "he thinks that I;" &c. If the third person singular, followed by an infinitive mood or connected clause, it is rendered impersonally, but still has the infinitive or clause for its subject. See 418.

## § 102. SPECIAL RULES AND OBSERVATIONS.

### I. Of agreement in Number and Person.

312.—**RULE I.** Two or more substantives singular, taken together, have a verb in the

plural; taken separately, the verb is usually singular; as,

(Taken together,)

*Fūror irāque mentem præcipitant,* Fury and rage hurry on my mind.

(Taken separately,)

*Si Socrātes aut Antisthēnes diceret,* If Socrates or Antisthenes should say

313.—*Obs. 1.* To both parts of this rule, however, and especially to the first, there are many exceptions. If one of the nominatives is plural, the verb is commonly plural. But sometimes the verb agrees with the nominative nearest it, and is understood to the rest, especially when each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, or when they denote things without life; as, *Mens enim, et ratio, et consilium, in sensibus est.*

When the nominatives are disjunctively connected by *aut, neque, &c.*, the verb is sometimes plural; and it is always so, when the substantives are of different persons; as, *Quod nēque ego, nēque Cæsar habiti essimus.* CIO. *Hæc si nēque ego, nēque tu fecimus.* TER.

314.—*Obs. 2.* A substantive in the nominative singular, connected with another in the ablative by *cum*, may have a plural verb; as, *Rēmo cum fratre Quirinus jūra dābunt.*

315.—*Obs. 3.* When the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is commonly plural, and takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicero valēmus,* "If you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well."

But sometimes the verb agrees with the nearest nominative, and is understood to the rest, and always so, when the verb has different modifications with each nominative; as, *Ego misere, tu feliciter vivis.*

316.—**RULE II.** 1. A collective noun expressing many as one whole, has a verb in the singular; as,

*Populus me sibilat,*  
*Senātus in curiam venit,*

The people hiss at me.  
The Senate came into the Senate-house.

2. But when it expresses many as individuals, the verb must be plural; as,

*Pars epulis ondrant mensas,*  
*Turba ruunt,*  
*Veniunt læve vulgus euntque.*

Part load the tables with food.  
The crowd rush.  
The fickle populace come and go.

317 — *Obs. 4.* To both parts of this rule, there are also exceptions, and in some cases, it seems indifferent whether the verb be in the singular or plural; sometimes both are joined with the same word; as, *Turba ex eo loco dilabebatur, refracturosque carcerem minabantur.*

318.—*Obs. 5.* *Uterque, quisque, pars....pars, alius...alius,* and *alter...alter*, on account of the idea of plurality involved, frequently have

the verb in the plural. This construction may be explained on the principle mentioned 281, where see examples; or 257.

### § 103. THE PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

**319.—RULE V.** The predicate substantive or adjective, after a verb, is put in the same case as the subject before it; as,

*Ego sum discipulus,*  
*Tu vocaris Joannes,*  
*Illa incēdit regina,*

I am a scholar.  
Thou art called John.  
She walks (as) a queen.

**320.—EXPLANATION.**—Under this rule, the nominative before the verb is the *subject* or thing spoken of; the nominative after it, is the *predicate*, or the thing asserted of the subject. The verb is the *copula* connecting the one with the other, and is usually a substantive verb (187), an intransitive verb, or a passive verb of naming, judging, appointing, &c., which, from its use, is called a *copulative verb*.

This rule applies to the accusative and dative before, and after, the infinitive of copulative verbs. See *Obs.* 5, 6, 7, 8, below.

#### OBSERVATIONS.

**321.—Obs. 1.** Any copulative verb between two nominatives of different numbers, commonly agrees in number with the former, or subject; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, “Her dowry is ten talents.” *TER. Omnia pontus erant*, “All was sea.” *OVIN.* But sometimes with the latter or predicate; as, *Amantium iræ, amoris integratio est*, “The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love.”

a. So also, when the nouns are of different genders, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or a participle, in the predicate, commonly agrees with the subject of the verb; as, *Oppidum appellatum est Possidonia*;—but sometimes with the predicate; as, *Non omnis error stultitiis dicenda est.* *CIC.*

b. The verb *esse* sometimes takes an adverb in the predicate, where, in English an adjective is commonly used; as, *omnia mæla abunde erant* “were abundant;”—*Românos laxius futûros*, “that the Romans would be more negligent;”—*ea res frustra fuit*, “that was of no avail.”

**322.—Obs. 2.** When the predicate is an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle without a substantive, it agrees with the subject before the verb according to *Rûle II* (263); except as noticed in the same section, *Obs.* 6 (270).

**323.—Obs. 3.** When the subject is of the second person, and the verb stands before the verb, the adjective or participle will usually be in

the nominative, according to the rule; as, *esto tu, Cæsar, amicus*; but sometimes it is put in the vocative; as, *Quiribus, Hector, ab óris expectáte vénis* (VIRG.), for *expectátus*. Hence the phrase, *Macte virtúte esto, for mactus*.

324.—*Obs. 4.* The noun *opus*, commonly rendered “needful,” is often used as a predicate after *sum*; as, *dux nobis opus est*, “a leader is wanted by us.”

*Note 1.*—Such expressions as *audívi hoc puer, —rempublicam defendi adolescens, —sapiens nil facit invitus*, belong more properly to Rules I. and II. than to this (251 and 263).

325.—*Obs. 5.* The accusative or dative before the infinitive under this Rule, requires the same case after it in the predicate; as,

<i>Novimus te esse fortem,</i>	We know that thou art brave.
<i>Mihi negligenti non esse licet,</i>	I am not allowed to be negligent

*Note 2.*—In this construction, the infinitive is sometimes omitted; as *novimus te fortem*, for *esse fortem*.

326.—*Obs. 6.* When the subject of the infinitive is the same with the subject of the preceding verb, it is often omitted, in which case the predicate after the infinitive is in the nominative agreeing with the preceding subject, or in the accusative agreeing with the subject of the infinitive understood; as, *cupio dici doctus*, or *cupio dici doctum*, i. e. *me dici doctum*, “I desire to be called learned.” The first of these is a Greek construction, and seldom used by Latin prose writers. See Gr. Gram., § 175, 3.

327.—*Obs. 7.* When the infinitive of such verbs has a dative before it, it may be followed either by a dative or an accusative; as, *licet mihi esse beato*; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, “I may be happy.” In the first case, *beato* agrees with *mihi*; in the second, *beatum* agrees with *me*, to be supplied as the subject of *esse*. Sometimes, when the sentence is indefinite, the dative also is understood; as, *licet esse beatum* (sc. *alicui*), “one may be happy.” The first of these forms also is a Greek construction. See Gr. Gram., § 175, *Obs. 5.*

328.—*Obs. 8.* This variety of case after the infinitive is admissible only with the *nominative*, *dative*, and *accusative*. The other cases before the infinitive have the accusative after it, agreeing with the subject of the infinitive understood; as, *interest omnium (se) esse bonos*

## 329.—§ 104. GOVERNMENT.

1. GOVERNMENT is the power which one word has over another dependent upon it, requiring it to be put in a certain case, mood, or tense.

2. The words subject to government are nouns and verbs.

3. The words governing or affecting these in their case, mood, or tense, are nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, and words indeclinable.



4. To the Syntax of nouns, belongs all that part of Syntax relating to the government of *case*. Every thing else in government belongs to the Syntax of the verb, § 187, et seq.

---

## SYNTAX OF THE NOUN.

330.—In this part of Grammar, under the term *noun* or *substantive*, is comprehended every thing used as such; namely, nouns, personal pronouns, adjective pronouns used personally, adjectives without substantives, gerunds, together with infinitives, and substantive clauses used as nouns.

The construction of the oblique cases depends, in general, upon the particular ideas expressed by the cases themselves, as they are stated No. 50, or as they are mentioned hereafter, under each case.

---

### § 105. CONSTRUCTION OF THE GENITIVE.

331.—The *Genitive*, as its name imports, with the meaning of the word, connects the idea of origin, and hence that of property or possession. It is used, in general, to limit the signification of another word, with which it is joined, by representing it as something originating with, possessed by, or relating to, that which the genitive or limiting word expresses; and it is said to be *governed* by the word so limited, i. e., the word limited requires the word limiting it to be put in the Genitive case.

The Genitive is governed by *Nouns*, *Adjectives*, and *Verbs*; and also is used to express circumstances of *place*, *quantity*, or *degree*.

---

### § 106. THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY NOUNS.

332.—**RULE VI.** One substantive governs another in the genitive, when the latter substantive limits the signification of the former; as,

*Amor gloriae,*  
*Lex naturæ,*

The love of glory.  
The law of nature.

333.—**EXPLANATION.**—Under this rule, the two substantives must be of *different signification*, and the one used to restrict the meaning of the

other. Thus, in the first example, *amor*, alone, means "love," in general, but the term *gloriæ*, joined with it, restricts its meaning here to a particular object, "glory," and so of other examples.

N. B. When a noun is limited by another of the *same signification*, it is put in the same case by Rule I (251).

## OBSERVATIONS.

334.—*Obs. 1.* When the governing noun expresses a feeling or act, &c., *inherent in*, or *exercised by*, the noun governed in the genitive, the genitive is said to be *subjective* or *active*. But when the governing noun denotes something of which the noun governed is the object, the genitive is then said to be *objective* or *passive*. Thus in the phrase *providentia Dei*, the genitive is necessarily *subjective* or *active*, because *providentia* expresses an act or operation of which God is the *subject*, and of which he cannot be the *object*. On the other hand, in the phrase *timor Dei*, "the fear of God," the genitive *Dei* is necessarily *objective* or *passive*, because *timor* denotes a feeling in some other subject of which God is the *object*, and cannot be the *subject*. Sometimes the meaning of both substantives is such, that the genitive may be either active or passive; thus, when the expression *amor Dei* means the love which God has to us, *Dei* is *active* or *subjective*; but when it means the love which we have to God, *Dei* is *passive* or *objective*. In such cases, the sense in which the genitive is used must be determined by the author's meaning.

335.—*Obs. 2.* Hence it often happens that a noun governs two substantives, one of which limits it *subjectively*, and the other *objectively*; as, *Agamemnonis belli gloria*, "Agamemnon's glory in war." *N.B.* Here, *Agamemnonis* limits *gloria* subjectively, and *belli* limits it objectively. So, *Illius administratio provinciarum*. *Cic.*

336.—*Obs. 3.* The governing noun is often omitted, but only, however, when the expression itself readily suggests the noun to be supplied; as, *ad Dianæ*, sc. *ædem*; or when it can be readily supplied from the preceding ing or following words.

337.—*Obs. 4.* Instead of the genitive of the personal pronoun governed by the noun, it is more common to use the possessive adjective pronoun agreeing with it; as, *meus pater*, rather than *pater mei*. So also, instead of the genitive of a noun, a possessive adjective is sometimes used; as, *causa regia*, for *regis causa*; *herilis filius*, for *filius heri*.

338.—*Obs. 5.* The dative is often used instead of the genitive, to limit a noun as to its object; as, *fratri ædes*, for *fratris*, "the house of my brother;"—*praesidium reis*, "a defence to the accused." For this construction, see 380 and 381.

339.—**RULE VII.** A substantive added to another, to express a property or quality belonging to it, is put in the genitive or ablative; as,

*Vir summæ prudentiæ*, or *summâ prudentiâ*,  
*Puer probæ indolis*, or *probâ indolē*,

A man of great wisdom.  
A boy of a good disposition.

340.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the latter substantive in the genitive or ablative must denote a *part* or *property* of the former, otherwise does not belong to this rule. The latter substantive, also, has commonly an adjective joined with it as in the preceding examples, though this is not essential to the rule; and sometimes it is found without it; as, *Homo nihili*.

341.—*Obs.* 6. There is no certain rule by which to determine when the genitive is to be used, or when the ablative, though in some phrases we find the genitive only is used; as, *vir imi subsellii*, "a person of the lowest rank;" *homo nullius stipendii*, "a man of no experience in war" (*SALL.*); *magni formica laboris*, &c. In others, the ablative only; as, *Et bono animo*, "Be of good courage." Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *adolescens eximia spe, summæ virtutis*. In prose, the ablative is more common than the genitive.

342.—*Obs.* 7. Sometimes, instead of the construction under this rule, the adjective is put with the former substantive; as, *Vir gravitate et prudentiâ præstans*. *CIC.* So, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, *præstanti ingenio*, *præstans ingenio*, and (poetically) *præstans ingenii*, are all used. And sometimes, when the adjective takes the case of the former substantive, the latter substantive, especially by the poets, is, by a Greek construction, put in the accusative instead of the genitive or ablative; as, *miles fractus membra*, instead of *membris*; *os humerosque similis deo*, instead of *ore humerisque similis deo*. For this use of the accusative, see 538.

### *Adjectives taken as Substantives.*

343.—RULE VIII. An adjective in the neuter gender, without a substantive, governs the genitive; as,

<i>Multum pecunia,</i>	Much money.
<i>Id negotii,</i>	That business.

344.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the adjective, without a substantive expressed, is regarded as a substantive, and so, capable of being limited by the genitive, as under Rule VI (332).

345.—*Obs.* 8. The adjectives thus used have a partitive character and are generally such as signify quantity; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*, *tantum*, *quantum*;—the pronouns *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *quod*, *quid*, with its compounds;—also *summum*, *ultimum*, *extrênum*, *dimidium*, *medium*, *aliud*, &c. To these may be added *nihil*, "nothing," which is always a substantive; and the adverbs *satis*, *pærum*, *abunde*, *affatim*, and sometimes *argutè*, in a substantive sense; as, *nihil pretii*, *satis eloquentiæ*, *sapientiæ pærum*. 595.

This rule applies also to several neuter adjectives in the plural, used in a partitive sense; as, *angusta viarum*, "the narrow parts of the road;" *opæca locorum*; *antiqua fœderum*; *cuncta camporum*; &c.

*Note.*—Such adjectives, followed by a genitive, are always either in the

Nominative or accusative; and, when in the accusative, are not dependent on a preposition.

346.—*Obs. 9* Most of these adjectives may have their substantives with which they agree; but the more common construction is with the genitive; as, *tantum spei*, "so much hope;"—*quid mulieris?* "what kind of a woman?"—*aliquid formæ*; *quid hoc rei est?* And sometimes the genitive after these neutrals is the genitive of an adjective used as a substantive; as, *aliquid novi*, *tantum boni*, &c.

347.—*Obs. 10.* *Quod* and *quicquid*, followed by a genitive, include the idea of universality; as, *quod agri*, "what of land," i. e. "all the land;" *quicquid civium*, "whatever of citizens," i. e. "all the citizens;" *quicquid deorum*, "all the gods."

348.—*Obs. 11.* *Opus* and *usus*, signifying "need," sometimes govern the genitive; as, *Argenti opus fuit*, "There was need of money." *Liv. Proæmi non semper usus est*, "There is not always need of an introduction." *Quint.* In general, these words govern the ablative. 456

## § 107. GENITIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

349.—*RULE IX.* Verbal adjectives, or such as imply an operation of mind, govern the genitive: as,

<i>Avidus gloriæ,</i>	Desirous of glory.
<i>Ignarus fraudis,</i>	Ignorant of fraud.
<i>Memor beneficiorum,</i>	Mindful of favors.

350.—*EXPLANATION.*—The genitive in this construction, as in § 106, is used to limit the application of the general term or adjective by which it is governed, and may be rendered by *of*, or, *in respect of*, prefixed; thus, in the first example, *avidus* expresses the possession of *desire* generally; the genitive *gloriæ* limits it to a certain object, "glory;" and so of the other examples.

### OBSERVATIONS.

351.—*Obs. 1.* Adjectives governing the genitive under this rule, are:

1<sup>st</sup> VERBALS in AX; as, *apax*, *edax*, *fërax*, *fûgax*, *pervicax*, *idnax*, &c.

2<sup>d</sup> PARTICIPLES in NS and TUS; as, *amans*, *appètens*, *cupiens*, *patiens*, *impatiens*, *sitiens*, *còlens*, *fugiens*, *intelligens*, *metuens*, *temperans*, *intemperans*; *consultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *inexpertus*, *insuetus*, *insultus*, &c.

Ad Adjectives denoting various affections of the mind; such as, 1. DESIRE and DISGUST; as, *avārus, avidus, cupidus, studiosus, fastidiosus*, &c., with many other verbals in *idus* and *osus*. 2. KNOWLEDGE and IGNORANCE; as, *callidus, certus, conscius, gnārus, peritus, prudens*, &c.;—*ignārus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, rūdīs*, &c. 3. MEMORY or FORGETFULNESS; as, *mēmor, immēmor*, &c. 4. CARE and NEGLIGENCE; as, *anxius, curiosus, sollicitus, providus, diligens*;—*incuriosus, securus, negligens*, &c. 5. FEAR and CONFIDENCE; as, *pavidus, timidus, trepidus*;—*impavidus, interritus*, &c. 6. GUILT and INNOCENCE; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus*;—*innoxius, innocens, insons*, &c.

4th. To these, may be added many other adjectives of similar signification, which are limited by, or govern such genitives as *anīmi, ingenīi, mentis, tra, militia, belli, laboris, rerum avi, mōrum, and fidei*.

352.—*Obs. 2.* Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles, but usually with some difference of meaning; as, *patiens algōris*, "capable of bearing cold;" *pātiens algōrem*, "actually bearing cold;" *āmans virtūtis*, "loving virtue,"—spoken of the disposition; *āmans virtutem*, "loving virtue,"—spoken of the act. So also, *doctus grammaticæ*, "skilled in grammar;" *doctus grammaticam*, "one who has studied grammar."

353.—*Obs. 3.* Many of these adjectives vary their construction; so that, instead of the genitive, they sometimes take after them,

- 1st. An infinitive clause; as, *Certus ire*, "determined to go." OVID. *Cantare periti*. VIRG. *Anxius quid opus facto sit*. SALL.
- 2d. An accusative with a preposition; as, *avidior ad rem*; *anīmā, capax ad præcepta*; *ad fraudem callidus*; *pōtens in res bellicōsas*, &c.
- 3d. An ablative with a preposition; as, *avidus in pecuniis*, "eager to regard to money;" *anxius de famā*; *sūper scelēre suspectus*; &c.
- 4th. An ablative without a preposition; as, *arte rūdīs*, "rude in art;" *regni crimīne insons*; *præstans ingenio*. 535.

354.—*Obs. 4.* Some adjectives usually governing the dative, sometimes govern the genitive; such as *similis, dissimilis*, &c. See 385.

355.—RULE X. Partitives and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

*Aliquis philosophōrum,*  
*Senior fratrum,*  
*Doctissimus Romanōrum,*  
*Quis nostrū?*  
*Una musarū,*  
*Octāvus sapientīum,*

Some one of the philosophers.  
 The elder of the brothers.  
 The most learned of the Romans.  
 Which of us?  
 One of the muses.  
 The eighth of the wise men.

**356.—EXPLANATION.**—A *partitive* is a word which signifies a part of any number of persons or things, in contradistinction to the whole. A word placed *partitively* is one which, though it does not signify a *part*, yet is sometimes used to *designate* a part from the whole; as, *expediti militum*, “the light armed (of the) soldiers.” The partitive, when an adjective, takes the gender of the whole, and governs it in the genitive plural; or, if a collective noun, in the genitive singular; and in this case, the partitive takes the gender of the noun understood; as, *doctissimus suæ ætatis*.

**357.—Obs. 5.** Partitives are such words as, *ulius, nullus, solus, alius, uter, uterque, neuter, alter, aliquis, quidam, quisque, quicumque, quis? qui? quot? tot, aliquot, nonnulli, plerique, multi, pauci, mediæ* &c.

Words are used partitively in such expressions as the following: *superi deorum; sancte deorum; degeneres canum; piscium feminae*. To which add *omnis, cunctus, nemo*; as, *omnes Macedonum; nem nostrum*.

**358.—Obs. 6.** The comparative with the genitive denotes one of two; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *major fratrum*, “the elder of two brothers;” *maximus fratrum*, “the eldest of (three or more) brothers.” So also, *uter, alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quis, alius*, and *nullus*, to more than two; as, *uter nostrum?* “which of us (two)?” *quis nostrum?* “which of us (three or more)?” *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used after partitives; seldom *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

**359.—Obs. 7.** The partitive is sometimes understood; as, *Fies nobilium tu quodque fontium* (sc. *unus*). Hor.

**360.—Obs. 8.** Instead of the genitive after the partitives, the ablative is often found governed by *de, e, ex*, or *in*; or the accusative with *inter* or *ante*; as, *unus e stoicis; ante omnes pulcherrimus; inter reges opulentissimus*.

**361.—RULE XI.** Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

*Plenus iræ* or *iræ*,

Full of anger.

*Inops rationis* or *ratione*,

Void of reason.

**EXPLANATION.**—As in Rule IX, the adjective here is a general term, but limited in its application by the genitive or ablative following it.

**362.—Obs. 9.** Among adjectives denoting *plenty* or *want*, a considerable variety of construction is found.

a. Some govern the genitive only; as, *benignus, exors, impos, impolens, irritus, liberalis, munificus*, &c.

b. Some govern the ablative only; as, *beatus, mutilus, turpidus, turgidus*.

c. Some govern the genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, egens, exheres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parcus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis, prosper, insatiatus, insatiabilis*.

d. Some govern the ablative more frequently; as, *abundans, alienus*

*cassus, extorris, firmus, festus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejuns, infirmus, liber, lucuples, latus, mactus, nudus, onustus, orbis, pollens, satius, tenuis, truncus, viduus.*

e. Some govern the genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *coquissus, dives, secundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimis, opulentus, plenus, potens, purus, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber.*

363.—Obs. 10. Many of these adjectives are sometimes limited by a preposition and its case; as, *Locus copiosus a frumento.* CIO. *Ab omni re paratus.* ID. *Parcus in victu.* PLIN. *In affectibus potentissimus.* QUINCE *Potens in res bellicas.* LIV. &c.

## § 108. THE GENITIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

364.—RULE XII. *Sum* governs the genitive of a person or thing to which its subject belongs as a possession, property, or duty; as,

*Est regis,  
Hominis est errare,*

*It belongs to the king.  
It is characteristic of man to err.*

365.—EXPLANATION.—The genitive in this construction is supposed to be governed by the adjective *proprius*, or the substantive *officium*, *minus*, *res*, *negotium*, *opus*, &c., understood. (When it is expressed, the genitive is governed by it according to Rule VI.) The verb is in the third person,—often has an infinitive or clause for its nominative, and may be rendered in any way by which the sense is expressed; such as, *it belongs to*;—*it is the property*—*the part*—*the duty*—*the peculiarity*—*the character of*, &c. The following are examples:

<i>Insapientis est dicere non putaram,</i>	<i>It is the part of a fool, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Militum est suo duci parere,</i>	<i>It is the duty of soldiers, &amp;c.</i>
<i>Laudare se vani est,</i>	<i>It is the mark of a vain man, &amp;c.</i>

So the following—*Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat* CIO. *Pecus est Melippei.* VIRG. *Hoc sunt hominis.* TER. *Pauperis est numerare pecus.* OVID. *Temeritas est florentis aetatis, prudentia senectutis* CIO. *Antiqui moris fuit.* PLIN.

366.—Obs. 1. Sometimes the genitive, in the predicate of a sentence, is governed by the preceding word repeated after the verb; as, *Hoc pecus est (pecus) Melippei.* *Hic liber est (liber) fratris.* Sometimes the genitive depends on some general word understood, but easily supplied in the mind; as, *Thucydides, qui ejusdem aetatis fuit sc. homo.* The same construction is sometimes used after *fio*, and some other verbs; as, *Asia*

*Romanorum facta est, sc. provincia, "Asia became (a possession or province) of the Romans."*

367.—*Obs. 2.* Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the nominative neuter of the possessive is commonly used, agreeing with *officium, munus, &c.*, understood; as, *tuum est*, "it is your duty," instead of *tui*; *meum est*, "it is my part," instead of *mei*. So also, instead of a genitive of a noun, an adjective derived from it may be used; as, *humanum est*; *regium est*; *et facere et pati fortia Romanum est*.

368.—*Obs. 3.* If the verb *be* in the infinitive, the possessive pronoun must be in the accusative; as, *scio tuum esse*, "I know it is your duty;" and if a substantive be expressed, the possessive must agree with it in gender, number, and case; thus, *has partes fuerunt tuæ* is equivalent to *tuum fuit*, or *tuorum partium fuit*, "it was your part."

369.—**RULE XIII.** *Miserèor, miseresco, and satùgo*, govern the genitive; as,

*Miserère civium tuorum,*  
*Satùgit rerum suarum,*

Pity your countrymen.  
He is busy with his own affairs

370.—**EXPLANATION.**—The genitive, in this construction, has been supposed to be governed by such a noun as *negotio, causa, re, &c.*, understood; governed by the prepositions *de, a, in*, or the like; as, *miserère de causa civium, &c.* We consider it better, however, to regard these genitives as governed directly by the verb, and expressing, as in Greek, the cause or origin of the feeling which the verb expresses. See *Gr. Gram.*, § 144, Rule XIV.

371.—*Obs. 4.* Many other verbs denoting some affection of the mind are sometimes followed by a genitive, denoting that with regard to which or on account of which, the affection exists. These are *ango, decipior, desipio, discrucior, fallo, fallor, fastidio, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, studeo, vereor, &c.* Thus, *Absurde facis qui angas te animi*. *PLAUT. Discrucior animi*. *TER. Fallēbar sermonis*. *PLAUT. Lætor malorum*. *VIRG. These verbs have commonly a different construction. Note 2. See No. 540.*

*Note 1.*—The first and second of these examples resemble the peculiar Greek construction, explained *Gr. Gram.*, § 148, *Obs. 2.*

372.—*Obs. 5.* Several verbs, especially among the poets, are found with the genitive, in imitation of the Greek construction (*Gr. Gram.*, § 144, Rules XVI and XVII). These are *abstineo, destino, desisto, quiesco, regno*; also, *adipiscor, condico, credo, frustror, furo, laudo, libero, levo, participo prohibeo*; thus, *Abstinento irarum*. *HOR. Destine querelarum*. *Id. Regnavit populorum*. *Id. Levas me laborum*. *PLAUT.*

*Note 2.*—All these verbs, however, in *Obs. 4* and *5*, have, for the most part, a different construction, being followed sometimes, as active transitive verbs, by the accusative, and more frequently, by the accusative or ablative with a preposition



373.—RULE XIV. *Recordor*, *memini*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the genitive or accusative; as,

*Recordor lectionis*, or *lectionem*, I remember the lesson.  
*Obliviscor injuriæ*, or *injuriam*, I forget an injury.

374.—EXPLANATION.—When these verbs are followed by an accusative, they are considered transitive, and fall under Rule XX. But when a genitive follows them, they are regarded as intransitive; and the genitive denotes that in regard to which the memory, &c., is exercised.

375.—Obs. 6. These verbs are often construed with an infinitive or some part of a sentence, instead of the genitive or accusative; as, *Memini videre virginem*. TER.

376.—Obs. 7. *Recordor* and *memini*, signifying “to remember,” are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*. *Memini*, signifying “to make mention of,” has a genitive or an ablative with *de*. *Ei venit in mentem*, being equivalent to *recordatur*, has a genitive after it; as, *Ei venit in mentem potestatis tuæ*.

N. B. For the genitive with verbs of *accusing*, see § 122;—with verbs of *valuing*, § 122, R. XXVIII.;—with Passive verbs, § 126;—with Impersonal verbs, § 113;—with Adverbs, § 135, denoting place, § 130, 548 and 558. .

### 377.—§ 109. CONSTRUCTION OF THE DATIVE.

1. The *Dative* is used to express the *remote object to which* any quality or action, or any state or condition of things tends, or to which they refer. This tendency is usually expressed in English by the words TO or FOR. Hence,

2. The dative, in Latin, is governed by *nouns*, *adjectives*, and *verbs*; or denotes the object to which they refer.

3. A use of the dative of the personal pronouns, common in Greek, and usually called the *dative redundant*, has also been imitated in Latin. See Gr. Gram., 517, *Rem*. The following are examples: *Quo tantum mihi dexter abis?* VIRG. *Fur mihi es.* PLAUT. *Tongilium mihi eduxit.* CIC. *Ubi nunc nobis deus ille magister?* VIRG. *Ecce tibi Sebosus.* CIC. *Sus mihi gladio hunc jugulo.*—But, though the dative thus used is said to be redundant, still it adds something to the meaning or emphasis of the expression, or shows that the person expressed in the dative has some relation to, or participation in, the fact expressed; thus, *Fur mihi es*, “(In my opinion,) you are a thief.”

§ 110.—DATIVE GOVERNED BY SUBSTANTIVES.

378.—RULE XV. Substantives frequently govern the dative of their object; as,

<i>Hostis virtutibus,</i>	An enemy to virtue.
<i>Exitium pecōri,</i>	Destruction to the flock.
<i>Obtemperantia legibus,</i>	Obedience to the laws.

379.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the governing substantive generally denotes an affection, or some advantage, or disadvantage, or act, which is limited, as to its object, by the dative following it, as in the preceding examples.

380—*Obs. 1. Rule.* The dative of the possessor is governed by substantives denoting the thing possessed; as,

<i>Ei venit in mentem,</i>	It came into his mind.
<i>Cui corpus porrigitur,</i>	Whose body is extended.

381.—*Obs. 2.* The dative in this construction is said to be used for, or instead of, the genitive, as in Rule VI. There are but few instances, however, in which the genitive under that rule could, with propriety, be changed for the dative. On the other hand, when the dative is used, the genitive would fail to express so precisely the idea intended. In this construction, the noun governing the dative is connected with a verb in such a way as clearly to show, that the dative is rather the object of that which is expressed by the verb and noun together, than under the government of the noun alone. Thus, in the first example, *ei* denotes the person to whom that which is expressed by *venit in mentem*, occurred. So, *corpus porrigitur* states what was done to the person represented by *cui*. The principle of this construction will be more manifest from what is stated 502

§ 111. THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES

382.—RULE XVI. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, govern the dative; as,

<i>Utilis bello,</i>	Useful for war.
<i>Similis patri,</i>	Like his father.

383.—EXPLANATION.—The dative under this rule, like the genitive under Rule IX, is used to limit the meaning of the adjective to a particular object or end, to which the quality expressed by it is directed. Thus, in the first example, *utilis* means “useful” in a general sense; *bello* limits the use

unless intended to a particular object, "war." The dative, thus used is ordered by its ordinary signs *to* or *for*, but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition, as in the last example.

## OBSERVATIONS.

384.—*Obs. 1.* To this rule belong adjectives signifying :

- 1st. Profit, or disprofit ; as, *benignus, bonus, commodus, felix* ;—*damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, &c.*
- 2d. Pleasure, or pain ; as, *acceptus, dulcis, gratus, jucundus, latus, suavis* ;—*acerbus, amarus, ingratus, molestus, &c.*
- 3d. Friendship, or hatred ; as, *æquus, amicus, blandus, cærus, deditus, fidus* ;—*adversus, asper, crudelis, infestus, &c.*
- 4th. Perspicuity, or obscurity ; as, *apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, notus* ;—*ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, obscurus, &c.*
- 5th. Propinquity ; as, *finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus, affinis, &c.*
- 6th. Fitness, or unfitness ; as, *aptus, appositus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus, ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, &c.*
- 7th. Ease, or difficulty ; as, *facilis, levis, obviu, perviu* ;—*difficilis, arduus, gravis*. Also those denoting propensity or readiness ; as, *pronus, proclivis, propensus, &c.*
- 8th. Equality, or inequality ; likeness, or unlikeness ; as, *æqualis, æquus, par, compar* ;—*inæqualis, impar, dispar, discors* ;—*similis, æmulus* ;—*dissimilis, alienus, &c.*
- 9th. Several adjectives compounded with CON ; as, *cognatus, congruus, consõnus, conveniens, continens, &c.*
- 10th. Verbal adjectives in BILIS ; as, *amabilis, terribilis, optabilis*, and the like.

385.—*Obs. 2.—Exc.* The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive ; viz : *affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius*, and *adversus* ; as, *similis tibi*, or *tui*.

*Consci*us and some other adjectives, govern the dative according to this rule, and, at the same time, a genitive by Rule IX. ; as, *Mens sibi conscius recti*, "a mind conscious to itself of rectitude." VIRG.

386.—*Obs. 3.* Adjectives signifying *motion* or *tendency* to a thing take after them the accusative with *ad*, rather than the dative ; as, *proclivus, pronus, propensus, velox, celer, tardus, piger, &c.* ; thus, *Piger ad pœnas*. OVID.

387.—*Obs. 4.* Adjectives signifying *usefulness* or *fitness*, and the contrary, often take the accusative with *ad* ; as, *utilis ad nullam rem*, "good - nothing."

388.—*Obs. 5.* *Propior* and *proximus* take after them sometimes the genitive, sometimes the dative, or the accusative governed by *ad* understood ; as, *propior caliginis aer* ; *propius vero* ; *proximus (ad) Pompeius*.

389.—*Obs. 6.* Some adjectives that govern the dative sometimes

instead of the dative, have an ablative with a preposition expressed or understood; as, *discors secum*; *alienum nostrā amicitia*.

390.—*Obs.* 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Jupiter idem omnibus*; *Invitum qui servat, idem facit cecidentibus*. In prose, *idem* is followed commonly by *qui*, *ac*, *atque*, *ut* or *quam*, 728.

## § 112. THE DATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

391.—**RULE XVII.** All verbs govern the dative of the object or end, to which the action, or state expressed by them, is directed; as,

<i>Finis venit imperio,</i>	An end has come to the empire.
<i>Animus redit hostibus,</i>	Courage returns to the enemy.
<i>Tibi sēris, tibi metis,</i>	You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself.

392.—**EXPLANATION.**—This rule may be considered as general, applying to all cases in which a verb is followed by a dative. When the verb is transitive active, it governs its remote object in the dative, not as that upon which the action is exerted, but as that to which it is directed, while, at the same time, it governs also its immediate object in the accusative (501). If intransitive, it will be followed by a dative only.

This rule, being applicable to all cases in which a dative follows a verb, is too general to be useful, as it could be applied correctly without much discrimination. It will therefore be of more advantage, when it can be done, to apply the special rules comprehended under it as follows:

### SPECIAL RULES.

393.—**I.** *Sum*, and its compounds, govern the dative (except *possum*); as,

<i>Præfuit exercitui,</i>	He commanded the army.
<i>Debemus omnibus prodesse,</i>	We ought to do good to all.

394.—**II.** The verb *Est*, signifying *to be*, or *to belong to*, governs the dative of the possessor; as,

<i>Hæc mihi liber,</i>	A book is to me, i. e. I have a book.
<i>Sunt mihi libri,</i>	Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
<i>Scio libros esse mihi,</i>	I know that books are to me, i. e.—that I have, &c.

395.—**EXPLANATION.**—In this construction, the dative expresses the person or thing, to or for which the subject spoken of, is, or exists. The verb will always be in the third person singular, or plural, in any tense, or

in the infinitive.—This very common Latin construction will be rendered correctly into English, by the verb “have,” instead of “is,” &c., of which the word in the dative, in Latin, becomes the subject or nominative in English, and the Latin nominative, the object, as is shown in the above examples.—For the verb *est* with the gerund, see 699.

396.—*Obs.* 1. The dative is used in a similar manner after *forem, suppetit; deum, deficio*, &c.; as, *Pauper non est cui rerum suppetit usus*, “He is not poor to whom the use of property is supplied,” i. e. who has the use of property. *HOR.* So, *si mihi cauda foret*.—*Abest* and *deest mihi*, as opposed to *est mihi*, mean, “I have not.”—So, *defuit ars vobis*,—*ac mihi non defuit*,—*nisi vinum nobis defecisset*,—&c.

*Note*.—An adjective, or participle, denoting willingness or unwillingness, agreeing with the dative after *est*, is sometimes put for a verb of like signification, having the word in the dative for its subject; thus, *Mihi volenti est*—*volo*; *tibi invito fuit*—*noluisti*, &c.; as, *Aliquid mihi volenti est*, “I like (or wish) a thing;” *Aliquid mihi invito est*, “I dislike a thing.” So, *Quibus bellum volentibus erat*, “Who wished for war,” *TAC.*, *Agr.*, 18;—*Neque plebi militia volenti esse putabatur*, “It was thought the Common people did not wish for war,” or, “That war would not be agreeable to the common people.”—This is a Greek construction, for which see Greek Grammar, § 148. *Obs.* 3.

397.—III. Verbs compounded of *satis*, *bene*, and *male*, govern the dative; as,

*Legibus satisfecit,*  
*Benefacere reipublicæ,*

He satisfied the laws.  
To benefit the state.

398.—*Obs.* 2. These compounds are often written separately, and the dative is governed by the combined force of the two words.

399.—IV. Many verbs compounded with these ten prepositions *ad*, *ante*, *con*,—*in*, *inter*, *ob*,—*post*, *præ*, *sub*, and *super*, govern the dative; as,

*Annuæ captis,*

Favor our undertakings.

400.—Verbs governing the dative under this rule are such as the following; viz.

1. *Accedo*, *accresco*, *accumbo*, *acquiesco*, *adho*, *adnato*, *adequillo*, *adhæreo*, *adsto*, *adstipulor*, *advolvor*, *affulgeo*, *allabor*, *allaboro*, *annuo*, *appareo*, *applaudo*, *appropinquo*, *arrideo*, *aspiro*, *assentior*, *assideo*, *assisto*, *assumam*, *assurgo*.

2. *Antecello*, *anteo*, *antesto*, *antevertō*.

3. *Collūdo*, *concerno*, *consōno*, *convivo*.

4. *Incumbo*, *indormio*, *indubito*, *inhio*, *ingemisco*, *inhæreo*, *insideo*, *insideo*, *insisto*, *insisto*, *insisto*, *insulto*, *invigilo*, *illacrymo*, *illūdo*, *immunior*, *immūdo*, *impendo*.

5. *Interuenio, intermīco, intereōdo, intereīdo, interjacio.*

6. *Obrēpo, obluco, obtreco, obstrēpo, obmurmūro, occumbo, occurro, curso obsto, obsisto, obuenio.*

7. *Postfēro, posthabeo, postpōno, postpūto, postscribo*, with an accusative.

8. *Præcēdo, præcurro, præeo, præideo, præluceo, præmitto, præsto, præualco, præuerto.*

9. *Succēdo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, subresco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrēpo.*

10. *Supervenio, supercurro, supersto.* But most verbs compounded with SUPER govern the accusative.

401.—*Obs. 3.* Some verbs compounded with *ab, de, ex, circum, ante, contra*; also compounds of *di* and *dis*, meaning generally “to differ,” are sometimes followed by the dative. These, however, chiefly fall under Rule XXXI, § 125.

402.—*Obs. 4.* Many verbs compounded with prepositions, instead of the dative, take the case of the preposition, which is sometimes repeated. Some intransitive verbs so compounded, either take the dative, or, acquiring a transitive signification by the force of the preposition, govern the accusative by Rule XX.; as, *Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt*, “The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in bravery.”

403.—V. Verbs govern the dative which signify to profit or hurt;—to favor or assist, and the contrary;—to command and obey, to serve and resist;—to threaten and to be angry; to trust.

404.—EXPLANATION.—Verbs governing the dative, under this and the preceding rule, are always intransitives or transitives used intransitively, and consequently it is applicable to the active voice only. The dative after passive verbs, does not come under these rules, but belongs to § 126, Rule XXXIII.

405.—*Obs. 5.* The verbs under this rule are such as the following :

1st. To profit or hurt; as,

*Proficio, prōsum, placeo, commōdo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, constādo, prospicere.* Likewise, *noceo, officio, incommōdo, displiceo, &c.*

2d. To favor or assist, and the contrary; as,

*Faveo, gratūlor, gratificor, grātor, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, auxiliōlor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor.* Likewise, *auxilior, adminiculor, subuenio, succurro, patrocinor, medcor, medicor, opitūlor.* Likewise, *derōgo, detraho, invideo, cernūlor.*

3d. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

*Imperō, præcipio, mando; modēror, for mōdum adhibeo.* Likewise, *parco, ausculto obediō, obsequor, obtemperō, mōrem gerō, morigēror obsecundo*

Likewise, *famŭlor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *repugnabŭto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refrāgor, adversor.*

4th. To threaten and to be angry; as,

*Minor, comminor, irascor, succenseo.*

5th. To trust; as, *Fido, confido, crēdo, diffido.*

To these, add, *nūbo, excello, hāreo, supplico, cēdo, despēro, opōror, precōlor, prevaricor; recipio*, "to promise;" *renuncio; respondeo*, "to answer," or "satisfy;" *tempēro, studeo; vāco*, "to be at leisure for;" *convictor*

*Exc.—Jubeo, jūvo, lædo, and offendo*, govern the accusative.

406.—*Obs. 6.* Many of these verbs, however, are variously construed, the same verb sometimes governing the dative according to this rule; and sometimes, taken in a transitive sense, governing the accusative by Rule XX. Sometimes they are followed by an accusative with a preposition, and sometimes by an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *impēdēre alicui*, or *alicuem*, or *in alicuem*, "to hang over;" *congruēre alicui, cum aliqua re inter se*, "to agree."

407.—*Obs. 7.* Many verbs, when they vary their construction, vary their meaning also; as, *Timeo tibi,—de te,—pro te*, signifies, "I fear for you," i. e. "for your safety;" but *timeo te*, means, "I fear you." "I dread you." *Consūlo tibi*, is "I consult for you," i. e. "for your safety." *Consūlo te*, means "I consult you, I ask your advice;" and so of others.

408.—*Obs. 8.* Verbs signifying *motion* or *tendency* to a thing, instead of the dative, have usually the preposition *ad* or *in* with the accusative, as, *clāmor it ad cælum*; seldom, and chiefly with the poets, *cælo*.

## § 113. DATIVE GOVERNED BY IMPERSONALS.

409.—RULE XVIII. An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

*Expēdit reipublicæ,*

It is profitable for the state.

410.—EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to the dative governed by the passive of all those verbs which, in the active voice, govern the dative only, according to Nos. 397, 399 and 403,—the passive of all intransitives being used only impersonally (223-3); thus, *favētur mihi*, "I am favored." not *ego favor*. When the passives of such verbs are used *personally*, then the verb is to be considered as used in a transitive sense. 406.

### OBSERVATIONS.

411.—*Obs. 1.* These verbs, *potest, capit, incipit, desinit, debet* and *olet*, before the infinitive of impersonals, become impersonal also; as, *non potest crēdi tibi*, "you cannot be believed."

412.—*Obs. 2.* Some verbs are used both personally and impersonally as, *doleo*, "I grieve;" *dōlet mihi*, "it grieves me," i. e. "I grieve." So also verbs commonly used impersonally sometimes have a subject in the nominative, and are, of course, used personally. This is the case especially with such nominatives as these—*id*, *hoc*, *illud*, *quid*, *quod*, *nihil*, &c.; as, *Nonne hæc te pudent?* "Are you not ashamed of these things?"

413.—*Obs. 3.* An infinitive mood or part of a sentence is commonly joined to an impersonal verb, which, in fact, may be regarded as its subject; as, *delectat me studere*, "it delights me to study," i. e. "to study delights me." 307 and 662.

414.—*Obs. 4.* The dative after impersonals is sometimes understood; as, *faciat quod libet* (sc. *sibi*)

415.—*Exc. I.* *Rēfert* and *Intērest* govern the genitive; as,

*Rēfert patris,*  
*Intērest omnium,*

It concerns my father.  
It is the interest of all.

416.—But, instead of the genitives *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, &c., the possessives *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are used; as,

*Non mea rēfert,*

It does not concern me.

417.—*Obs. 5.* The case and construction of these possessives are in much doubt. Some regard them as the accusative plural neuter agreeing with *negotia* or *commōda* governed by *ad*; as, *non (ad negotia) mea rēfert*. But as the final *a*, in this construction, is found in Terence to be long, others consider it in the ablative singular, feminine, agreeing with *re* or *causa* governed by *in*; as, *in mea re non rēfert*; while others suppose that *mea*, *tua*, &c., are abbreviations from *meam*, *tuam*, &c., agreeing with *rem*, and hence the final *a* long. *Non nostrum tantas componere lites*. It is more manifest that *rēfert*, in which *r* is long, is not from *rēfero*, but from *res* and *fēro*, and means, impersonally, "it profits," "it befits," "it concerns," &c. Sometimes it is used personally with *hoc*, *id*, or an infinitive, for its subject. It is equally obvious that if *mea* or *tua*, or *sua*, &c., agrees with some word understood, then the genitive under the rule may be governed by the same word, according to Rule VI.; i. e. if *mea rēfert* is for *mea negotia*, &c., *rēfert*, then *rēfert patris* may be for *rēfert negotia patris*, whether *negotia* in the accusative, or *re* in the ablative, be governed directly by the verb, or by a preposition understood.

418.—*Obs. 6.* Instead of the genitive, these verbs sometimes take the accusative with a preposition; as, *rēfert ad me*, for *rēfert mea*, i. e. *mei*. Sometimes they are used absolutely, without a case expressed.

419.—*Exc. II.* These five *Misēret*, *pōnitet*, *pūdet*, *tōdet*, and *pīget*, govern the accusative of



the immediate, with the genitive of the remote object; as,

*Miseret me tui,*  
*Pœnitet me peccati,*  
*Tædet me vitæ,*  
*Pudet me culpæ,*

I pity you.  
I repent of my sin.  
I am weary of life.  
I am ashamed of my fault.

420.—EXPLANATION.—These examples may be rendered literally thus: "It grieves me on account of you," i. e. *ergo*, or *causa tui*;—"It repents me of my sin";—"It wearies me of life";—"It shames me of my fault." For the method of rendering impersonal verbs in a personal form, as in the above examples, see 228-6.

421.—Obs. 7. The infinitive mood or part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *pœnitet me peccasse*, or *quod peccaverim*. *Non pœnitet me quantum profecerim*. *Miseret* is found with an accusative instead of the genitive; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me*. The accusative of the immediate object is sometimes omitted; as, *Scelerum si bene pœnitet* (scil. nos). HOR.

422.—Obs. 8. The preterites of these verbs, in the passive form, govern the same cases as the active; as, *Miseritum est me iudicium fortunarum*. TER. *Miserescit* and *miseretur* are sometimes used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*. TER. *Miseretur te fratrum*; *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*. CIC.

423.—Exc. III. *Dæcet*, *delectat*, *juvat*, and *oportet*, govern the accusative of a person with the infinitive; as,

*Delectat me studere,*  
*Non dæcet te ridere,*

It delights me to study.  
It does not become you to ~~s~~-old.

424.—Obs. 9. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvam parva dæcet*. HOR. *Dæcet* sometimes governs the dative; as, *Ita nobis dæcet*. TER.

425.—Obs. 10. *Oportet*, instead of the infinitive, elegantly takes the subjunctive with *ut*, "that," understood; as, *Sibi (ut) quisque consulat oportet*. CIC. When followed by the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* is understood, which, being supplied, makes the perfect infinitive.

426.—Obs. 11. *Fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*, *lætet*, when used impersonally are construed with the accusative and infinitive; as, *fugit me ad te scribere*. CIC.

## § 114. VERBS GOVERNING TWO DATIVES.

427.—RULE XIX. The verbs *sum*, *do*, *habeo*, and some others, with the dative of the object,

govern also the dative of the *end*, or *design*;  
as,

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Hæc mihi voluptati,</i>    | { It is to me for a pleasure, i. e.         |
|                                  | { It is, or brings, a pleasure to me.       |
| 2. <i>Hoc misit mihi muneri,</i> | This he sent as a present to me.            |
| 3. <i>Ducitur honori sibi,</i>   | { It is reckoned to you for an honor, i. e. |
|                                  | { It is reckoned an honor to you.           |

428.—EXPLANATION.—In these examples, it is manifest that the words *voluptati*, *honori*, and *muneri*, each express the *end* or *design* for which the thing spoken of, or referred to, *is*, *is reckoned*, *is sent*, to the *object* expressed by the other datives, *mihi* and *sibi*. See also 431.

The verb *sum*, with the dative of the *ad*, may be variously rendered, according to the sense, by such words as, *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, &c. For, the sign of the dative, is often omitted, especially after *sum*.

### OBSERVATIONS.

429.—Obs. 1. Verbs governing two datives under this rule, are chiefly *sum*, *fôre*, *fiô*, *habeo*, *do*, *verto*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *duco*; and a few others.

430.—Obs. 2. Instead of the dative of the *end*, the nominative after *est*, &c., or the accusative in apposition with the object of the preceding verb, expresses the same thing; as, *Amor est exitium pecçri*, for *exitio*; *Se Achilli comitem esse datum dicit*, for *comiti*. In the first example, *exitium* is the nominative after *est*, by Rule V. In the second, *comitem* is in apposition with *se*, by Rule I.

431.—Obs. 3. Intransitive verbs, such as *sum*, *fôre*, *fiô*, *eo*, *curro*, *proficior*, *venio*, *cêdo*, *suppedito*, are followed by two datives, as in the first example; transitive verbs in the active voice, besides the two datives, have an accusative expressed or understood by Rule XX., as in the second example; and in the passive voice, two datives, as in the third example, the one by Rule XXIX., and the other by this rule.

432.—Obs. 4. The dative of the *object* (commonly a person) is often to be supplied; as, *est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui*, &c., scil. *mihi*, *alicui*, *hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere, pignori*, scil. *alicui*, "to pledge;" *canere receptui*, scil. *suis militibus*, "to sound a retreat;" *habere curæ, questui, odio, voluptati, studio*, &c., scil. *sibi*.

433.—Obs. 5. To this rule is sometimes referred the forms of naming, so common in Latin; such as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*; *Cui cognomen Iulo additur*. The construction 261 is much better.

434.—Obs. 6. From constructions under this rule, should be distinguished those in which the second dative may be governed by another noun in the dative, according to 378.

N B. For the dative with the accusative, see § 123.

For the dative after the passive voice, see § 126.

For the dative after particles, see 598 and 600.—After  
*Hei* and *Va*, 453

## 435. —§ 115. CONSTRUCTION OF THE ACCUSATIVE.

1. The accusative, in Latin, is used to express the immediate object of a transitive active verb,—or, in other words, that on which its action is exerted, and which is affected by it.

2. It is used to express the object to which something tends or relates, in which sense it is governed by a preposition, expressed or understood. When used to express the remote object of a transitive verb, or certain relations of measure, distance, time, and place, the preposition is usually omitted.

## § 116. ACCUSATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

436.—RULE XX. A transitive verb in the active voice, governs the accusative; as,

*Ama Deum,*

Love God.

## SPECIAL RULES.

437.—I. A transitive deponent verb governs the accusative; as,

*Reverere parentes,*

Reverence your parents.

438.—II. An intransitive verb may govern a noun of kindred signification, in the accusative; as,

*Pugnare pugnam,*

To fight a battle.

439.—EXPLANATION.—These rules apply to all verbs which have an accusative as their immediate object; and that accusative may be any thing used substantively, whether it be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, or *clause of a sentence*. Intransitives under Rule II. are often followed by the ablative, with a preposition expressed or understood; as, *Ire* (in) *itinere*, *gaudere* (cum) *gaudio*, &c.

440.—Obs. 1. Verbs signifying to *name*, *choose*, *reckon*, *constitute*, and the like, besides the accusative of the object, take also the accusative of the *name*, *office*, *character*, &c., ascribed to it; as, *urbem Rōmā vocavit*, “he called the city *Rome*.” All such verbs, in the passive, have the same case after as before them. (320).

441.—Obs. 2. Verbs commonly intransitive, are sometimes used in a

transitive sense, and are therefore followed by an accusative under this rule; thus,

## TRANSITIVE.

*Abhorrere famam*, to dread infamy.  
*Abolere monumenta*, to abolish, &c.  
*Declinare ictum*, to avoid a blow.  
*Laborare arma*, to forge arms.  
*Morari iter*, to stop.

## INTRANSITIVE.

*Abhorrere a libris*, to be averse, &c.  
*Memoria abolevit*, memory failed.  
*Declinare loco*, to remove from, &c.  
*Laborare morbo*, to be ill.  
*Morari in urbe*, to stay in the city.

To these may be added *horrere, furere, vivere, ludere*; and verbs signifying to taste of, to smell of, &c.; as, *horrere aliquid*; *furere opus cordis*; *Bacchanalia vivunt*; *ludere pila*; *redolere vinum*; *pastillos Rufillus olet*, *Gorgonius hircum*; *mella herbam sapiunt*; *unguenta terram sapiunt*.

442.—*Obs. 3.* The accusative, after many intransitive verbs, depends on a preposition understood; as, *Morientem nomine clamat*; *Meas quæror fortunas*; *Num id lacrymat virgo*; *Quicquid delirant reges, plectuntur Achivi*; *Stygias juravimus undas*; *Maria ambulavisset, terram navigasset*, VIRG.; *Pascuntur vero sylvas*, ID.; *Ire exsequias*; *Ibo amicam meam*, PLAUT.; &c. In these, and similar sentences, the prepositions *ob, propter, circa, per, ad, in*, &c., may be supplied.

This construction of intransitive verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, hoc, multa, alia, pauca*, &c.

443.—*Obs. 4.* The accusative, after many verbs, depends on a preposition with which they are compounded. This is the case,

1st. With intransitive verbs; as, *Gentes quæ mære illud adjacent*, "the nations which border upon that sea." So, *ineunt prælium, adire provinciam, transcurrere mære, allôquor te*, &c. Thus compounded, many verbs seem to become transitive in sense, and so govern the accusative by this rule. In general, however, they fall under Rule LII.

2d. With transitive verbs, in which case two accusatives follow—one governed by the verb, and another by the preposition; as, *Omnem equitatum pontem transducit*, "He leads all the cavalry over the bridge;"—*Hellespontum copias trajecit*. Here also the second accusative falls under Rule LII.

*Note 1.*—After most verbs, however, compounded with prepositions governing the accusative, the preposition is repeated before it; as, *Cæsar se ad neminem adjunxit*.

444.—*Obs. 5. a.* The accusative after a transitive verb, especially if a reflexive pronoun, or something indefinite or easily supplied, is sometimes understood; as, *tum præra avertit*, scil. *se*; *flumina præcipitant*, scil. *se*; *faciam vitulâ*, scil. *sacra*; *bene fecit Silius*, scil. *hoc*.

*b.* Sometimes the verb which governs the accusative is omitted, especially in rapid or animated discourse; thus, the interrogative *quid* often stands alone for *quid ais?* *quid censes?* or the like. So also, *quid vero?* *quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* *Quid quod*, commonly rendered

"nay," "nay even," "but now," "moreover," may be resolved, thus, *Quis dicam de eo quod*. With *quid multa?* *quid plura?* *ne multa, ne plura.* *cil. verba*, supply *dicam*; as, *Quid dicam multa (verba)?* But, *quid postea?* *quid tum?* and the like, may be regarded as the nominative to *sequitur* understood; and the phrase *quid ita?* may be resolved by supplying the preceding verb or some part of *facio*.

445.—*Obs. 6. RULE.* The infinitive mood, or part of a sentence (439), is often used as the object of a transitive verb. instead of the accusative (665 and 670, Note); as,

<i>Da mihi fallere,</i>	Give me to deceive.
<i>Cupio me esse clementem,</i>	I desire to be gentle.
<i>Statuerunt ut naves conscenderent.</i>	They determined that they would embark.

*Note 2.*—In such constructions, the subject of the clause is sometimes, by a Greek idiom, put in the accusative as the object of the verb; as, *Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus sit*; instead of *Nosti quam tardus Marcellus sit*. So, *illum ut vivat optant*, instead of *ut ille vivat optant*; or *illum vivere optant*. Gr. Gram., § 150, *Obs. 4.*

446.—*Obs. 7.* A few cases occur in which the accusative is put after a noun derived from a verb, or the verbal adjectives in *bundus*; as, *Quia tibi hic receptio ad te est meum virum?* "Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you?" *PLAUT. Quid tibi hanc additio est. Id. Vitabundus castra. Liv.*

447.—*Obs. 8.* Many verbs considered transitive in Latin, are intransitive in English, and must have a preposition supplied in translating; as, *Ut cavēret me*, "That he should beware of me." On the other hand, many intransitive verbs in Latin, i. e. verbs which do not take an accusative after them, are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Fortūna favet fortibus*, "Fortune favors the brave."

N. B. For the Accusative governed by *Recordor*, &c., see 373;—with another accusative, 508;—governed by prepositions, 602, 607, 608, 613;—denoting *time*, 565, R. XLI.;—*place*, 553;—*measure* or *distance*, 573; in *exclamations*, 451.

## § 117. CONSTRUCTION OF THE VOCATIVE.

448.—The vocative is used to designate the person or thing addressed, but forms no part of the proposition with which it stands; and it is used either with, or without, an interjection.

449.—*RULE XXI.* The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh.* are construed with the vocative; as,

*O formōse puer!*

*O fair boy!*

450.—To these, may be added other interjections of calling or addressing; as, *ah, au, ehem, ehé, ého, éja, héu, héus, hui, io, ohe, and vah*, which are often followed by the vocative: as, *Heus Syre, Ohe libelle*.

451.—*Obs.* 1. In exclamations, the person or thing wondered at, is put in the accusative, either with or without an interjection; as, *Me miserum*, or, *Heu me miserum*, "Ah, wretch that I am!"—sometimes in the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amicus*, TER.; *Audi tu, populus Romanus*, LIV

452.—*Obs.* 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O miseræ gentis*, sc. *homines*, LUCAN.

453.—*Obs.* 3. The interjections *Hei* and *Væ*, govern the dative; as, *Hei mihi*, "Ah me!" *Væ vobis*, "Woe to you!"

454.—*Obs.* 4. *Ecce* and *en*, usually take the nominative; as, *Ecce nova turba atque rixa*. *En ego*.

## § 118. CONSTRUCTION OF THE ABLATIVE.

455.—The ablative is used in Latin generally, to express that from which something is separated or taken; or, as that *by* or *with* which, something is done, or exists. It is governed by *nouns, adjectives, verbs, and prepositions*, and also is used to express various relations of *measure, distance, time, and place*, &c.

### THE ABLATIVE AFTER NOUNS.

456.—**RULE XXII.** *Opus* and *usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

*Est opus pecuniâ,*  
*Nunc usus viribus,*

There is need of money.  
Now, there is need of strength.

457.—**EXPLANATION.**—The ablative, after these nouns, is probably governed by a preposition, such as *pro*, understood. In this sense, they are used only with the verb *sum*, of which *opus* is sometimes the subject, and sometimes the predicate; *usus*, the subject only.

### OBSERVATIONS.

458.—*Obs.* 1. *Opus*, in the predicate, is commonly used as an indeclinable adjective, in which case it rarely has the ablative; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, "We need a general," CIO. So, *Dices nummos mihi opus esse* CIO.; *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, CIO. In these examples, *opus*, as an indeclinable adjective, agrees with *dux, nummos, exempla*, by Rule II. This construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns, and is always used with those denoting quantity; as, *Quod non opus est, asse carum est*. Cato apud Sen.

459.—*Obs.* 2. *Opus* and *usus* are often joined with the perfect participle; as, *opus maturato*, "need of haste;" *opus consulto*, "need of deliberation," *usus facto*, "need of action." The participle has sometimes a

substantive joined with it after *opus*; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, "It behoved me to meet with Hirtius," CIO. Sometimes the supine is joined with it; as, *Ita dictu opus est*, TER.

460.—*Obs.* 3. *Opus* is often followed by the infinitive, or by the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Siquid forte, quod opus sit sciri*, CIO. *Nunc tibi opus est, agram ut te ad similes*, PLAUT. Sometimes it is absolutely without a case, or with a case understood; as, *Sic opus est; Si opus est*.

461.—*Exc.* *Opus* and *usus* are sometimes followed by the genitive, by Rule VI.; as, *Argenti opus fuit*, "There was need of money;" sometimes by an accusative, in which case an infinitive is probably understood; as, *Petro opus est cibum*; scil. *habere*, PLAUT.

## § 119. ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY ADJECTIVES.

[For the ablative governed by adjectives of plenty or want, see 361.]

462.—**RULE XXIII.** These adjectives *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *frētus*; also the participles *nātus*, *sātus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, denoting origin, govern the ablative; as,

<i>Dignus honore,</i>	Worthy of honor.
<i>Contentus parvo,</i>	Content with little.
<i>Præditus virtute,</i>	Endued with virtue.
<i>Captus oculis,</i>	Blind (injured in his eyes).
<i>Frētus viribus,</i>	Trusting in his strength.
<i>Ortus regibus,</i>	Descended from kings.

463.—**EXPLANATION.**—The ablative, after these adjectives and participles, is governed by some preposition understood; as, *cum*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, *in*, &c. Sometimes it is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, SALLUST.

464.—*Obs.* 1. Instead of the ablative, these adjectives often take an infinitive, or a subjunctive clause with *qui*, or *ut*; as, *Dignus amari*, VIRG.; *Dignus qui impèret*, CIO.; *Non sum dignus, ut fregam patulum in parietem*, PLAUT.

465.—*Exc.* *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Dignus avorum*, VIRG. For the ablative governed by adjectives of plenty or want, see 361.

## § 120.—THE ABLATIVE WITH THE COMPARATIVE DEGREE.

466.—**REM.** When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, such as, *quam*, *ac*, *atque*, &c., signifying "than," is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted. In the first, the

construction of the case falls under other rules; in the second, it falls under the following; viz.

467.—RULE XXIV. The comparative degree, without a conjunction, governs the ablative; as,

*Dulcior melle,  
Præstantior auro,  
Perennius ære,*

Sweeter than honey.  
More precious than gold.  
More durable than brass.

468.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative, under this rule, is supposed to be governed more properly by *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Unus præ cæteris fortior.*

### OBSERVATIONS.

469.—*Obs. 1.* Of these two modes of comparison, the ablative without a conjunction is commonly used, when the object is compared with the subject of a proposition, or with a word in the vocative or nominative, addressed; as, *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undâ? Neminem Romanorum eloquentiorem fuisse veteres judicârunt Cicerone; O fons Bandusiæ, splendidior vitro.* HOR. But when, in such a comparison, *quam* is used, the second substantive will be in the same case with the first, because, in the same construction; as, *Melior est certa pax, quam sperata victoria (est); Meliorem esse certam pacem putabat, quam speratam pacem (esse).*

*Note 1.*—The construction of the ablative without *quam*, is sometimes used, especially by the poets, when the first substantive is not the subject of a verb; as, *Ægæi monumentum ære perennius.* HOR.; *Our oldum sanguine viperino cautius vital?* HOR. This is always so, when the second object of comparison is expressed by a relative; as, *Hic Attalo, quo graviorem inimicum non habui, sororem in matrimonium dedit.* "He gave his sister in marriage to Attalus, than whom, &c."

470.—*Obs. 2.* When the object is compared with the predicate of a proposition, the conjunction *quam* is commonly used, and then there are two cases.

1st. If the verb after *quam* is not expressed, but may easily be supplied from the preceding clause, and if the first substantive is in the accusative, the second is put by attraction in the accusative also; as, *Ego hominem callidorem viâ neminem quam Phormionem,* instead of *quam Phormio est.*

2d. But if the verb after *quam* cannot be supplied from the preceding clause, the substantive must be in the nominative with *est, fuit, &c.*, expressed; as, *Meliorem quam ego sum, suppono tibi; Hæc sunt verba M. Varronis, quam fuit Clodius, doctioris; Argentum reddidisti L. Carridio, homini non gratiosiori quam Cn. Clodius est.* CIC.

471.—*Obs. 3.* *Quam* is frequently understood after *plus, minus,* and *amplius,* and sometimes after *major, minor,* and some other comparatives without a change of case; as, *Capta plus (quam) quinque millia hominum,*



"More than five thousand men were taken;" *Obseides ne minores (quam) octōniū dēniū annōrum.*

*Note.*—These words are also followed by the ablative without *quam*, according to the rule.

472.—*Obs. 4.* When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive mood, or a part of a sentence, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil turpius est quam mentiri.*

473.—*Obs. 5.* The comparative is often followed by the ablative of the following nouns, adjectives, and participles; viz. *opiniōne, spe, expectatiōne, fide, dicto, solito, æquo, credibili, justo*; as, *citius dicto, tumida æquora placat*, VIRG. These ablatives often supply the place of a clause; as, *gravius æquo*, equivalent to *gravius quam æquum est*.

These ablatives are sometimes omitted; as, *Liberius vivēbat, sc. æquo*, "He lived more freely than was proper;" i. e. "He lived too freely," or, "rather freely."

474.—*Obs. 6.* When one quality is compared with another, in the same subject, the adjectives expressing them are both put in the positive degree with *magis quam*, or in the comparative connected by *quam*; as, *ars magis magna quam difficilis. Triumphus clarior quam gratior*, "a triumph more famous than acceptable." Gr. Gr. 393-3.

475.—*Obs. 7.* The prepositions *præ, ante, præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *scelere ante alios inhumanior omnes*: also with a superlative; as, *ante alios carissimus*. *Pro* is used after *quam*, to express proportion; as, *Prælium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium*.

476.—*Obs. 8.* *Magis* and *minus* joined to the positive degree, are equivalent to the comparative; as, *O luce magis dilecta. Magis* and *plus* joined with a comparative, only strengthen it; as, *Nihil invenies magis hoc certius*.

477.—*Obs. 9.* *Inferior*, sometimes governs the dative; as, *vir nulla arte cuiquam inferior*; the ablative also is found, but it is usually followed by *quam*.

478.—*Obs. 10.* *Alius* is sometimes construed like comparatives, and sometimes, though rarely, is followed by the ablative; as, *non pūlesium sapiente bonoque beatum*.

479.—*Obs. 11.* The conjunction *ac*, or *atque*, in the sense of *than* is sometimes used after the comparative degree (728), instead of *quam* as, *Arctius atque hedera procerâ adstringitur vlex*, HOR.

## § 121. ABLATIVE GOVERNED BY VERBS.

480.—RULE XXV. Verbs of plenty and scarceness, for the most part govern the ablative; as,

*Abundat divitiis,  
Caret omni culpâ,*

He abounds in riches.  
He has no fault.

481.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative after such verbs, may be governed by a preposition understood;—sometimes it is expressed; as, *vinctus culpa*. Or it may be used to limit the verb, by showing in what respect its meaning is to be taken; as, “*he abounds IN RESPECT OF RICHES.*” (See R. XXXIV.) Instances of this construction, however, are so common as to warrant the rule here given.

482.—*Obs.* 1. Verbs of plenty are such as, *Abundo, artuo, exuberō, redundo, supposito, scatō, &c.*, of want, *careo, egeo, indigeo vāco, deficior, destitutor, &c.*

483.—*Exc.* 1. *Egeo*, and *indigeo*, sometimes govern the genitive; as, *Eget ariis*, “He needs money,” *HOR.*; *Non tam artis indiget, quam laboris*, *CIC.* So, also, some verbs denoting to fill, to abound, such as, *abundo, careo, saturo, scatō.*

484.—RULE XXVI. *Utor, abutor, frui, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative; as,

*Utitur fraude,*  
*Abutitur libris,*

He uses deceit.  
He abuses books.

485.—*Obs.* 2. To these, add *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fulo, vivo, victo, consto, labōro* (“to be ill”); *pascor, epūlor, nitor, &c.*

486.—*Exc.* 2. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, *Potiri urbis* “To get possession of the city;” *Potiri rerum* (never *rebus*), “To possess the chief command.” In such cases, the genitive may be governed by *imperio*, understood.

487.—*Exc.* 3. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epūlor*, and *pascor*, sometimes govern the accusative; as, *Potiri urbem*, *CIC.*; *Officia fungi, &c.*; and also, in ancient writers, *utor, abutor, and fruor*. *Depasco* and *depascor* have the accusative always.

N. B. For the ablative of the *adjunct*, see § 106, R. VII. —For the ablative governed by adjectives of *plenty*, or *want*, § 107, Rule XI.;—by verbs of *loading, binding, &c.*, § 125;—by passive verbs, § 126, Rule V;—by a *preposition*, § 136, R. XLIX., LI., LII.

For the ablative of *limitation*, see § 128;—of *cause, manner, &c.*, § 129;—of the *place where*, § 130, *Exc.*;—*from which*, § 130, 3;—of *time when*, § 131, R. XL.;—*How long*, R. XLI.;—of *measure*, § 132, R. XLII.;—of *excess*, R. XLIII.;—of *price*, § 133;—in the *case absolute*, § 146, R. LX.

## § 122. VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND GENITIVE.

488.—Many transitive verbs, with the accusative of the direct object, govern also another word, to which the action has an indirect or remote

reference, in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, or *ablative*, as the nature of that reference may require. All verbs under these rules, are transitive verbs in the active voice, or transitive deponents.

489.—**RULE XXVII.**—Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, and *admonishing*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

*Arguit me jurti,  
Mecipsum inertia condemno,  
Illum homicidii absolvunt,  
Monet me officii,*

He accuses me of theft.  
I condemn myself of laziness.  
They acquit him of manslaughter.  
He admonishes me of my duty.

490.—To this rule belong the following—

1. **ACCUSING**; as, *accuso*, *agere*, *prosecutio*, *arcesso*, *inquiro*, *arguo*, *coarguo*, *capto*, *inrepro*, *inreposito*, *urges*, *insimulo*, *interrogo*, *postulo*, *alligo*, *astringo*, *defero*, *compello*.

2. **CONDEMNING**; as, *damno*, *condemno*, *infamo*, *noto*, *convinco*, *prehendo*, *deprehendo*, *juicio*, *plector*.

3. **ACQUITTING**; as, *absolvō*, *libero*, *purgo*, and perhaps *solvō*.

4. **ADMONISHING**; as, *moneo*, *admoneo*, *commoneo*, *commonefacio*.

491.—*Obs.* 1. With many of these verbs, instead of the genitive of the crime or punishment, the ablative is used with, or without, a preposition; as, *Accusare de negligentia*, CIC.; *Liberare culpā*, Id. The ablatives *crimine* and *nomine* are often inserted before the genitive, which may be regarded as the full form of the construction; as, *Arcessere aliquem crimine ambitus*, Liv. Sometimes the punishment is put in the accusative after *ad* or *in*; as, *Damnare ad penam*,—*in metallum*, rarely in the dative; as, *damnatus morti*. *Multo* has always the ablative; as, *multare pœnâ pecuniâ, exiliis*, &c.

492.—*Obs.* 2. *Accuso*, *incuso*, *insimulo*, together with verbs of admonishing, instead of the genitive, are sometimes followed by the accusative, especially of the neuter pronouns *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, &c., and their plurals; as, *Si id me non accusas*, PLAUT.; *Eos hoc moneo*, CIC.; rarely by the accusative of nouns; as, *Sic me insimulare falsum facinus*, PLAUT.

493.—*Obs.* 3. Many verbs signifying to accuse, and among them some of the verbs enumerated under this rule, do not govern the genitive of the crime, but, as transitive active verbs, govern it in the accusative by Rule XX; as, *arguo culpam*; *eius avaritiam perdiamque accusat*. When thus construed, the immediate object of condemnation is the crime; in the other construction, it is the person.

494.—*Obs.* 4. Verbs of admonishing, instead of the genitive, are sometimes followed by the ablative with a preposition; as, *Oro ut Terentiam moneatis de testamento*; sometimes by an infinitive or clause; as, *Sic me monet succurrere Lauso Turnum*, VIRG.; *Monet ut suspiciones vitet*, CÆS.; *Immortalia ne speres monet annus*, HÆM.

495.—RULE XXVIII. Verbs of *valuing*, with their own case, and sometimes without a case, govern such genitives of degree as *magni*, *parvi*, *nihili*; as,

*Æstimo te magni,  
Mihī stētit plūris,  
Est parvi,*

I value you much  
It cost me more.  
It is of little value.

496.—EXPLANATION.—By its own case is meant the case which the verb usually governs. Verbs without case, as *sum*, *fiō*, *existo*, &c., have the genitive only. The adjectives *magni*, *parvi*, &c., may agree with *pretii*, *momenti*, or the like, understood, and the construction perhaps come under R. VII. If so, it would account for the ablative sometimes used after the same verbs. See 500.

497.—Verbs of valuing are such as *æstimo*, *existimo*, *dūco*, *facio*, *habeo*, *pendeo*, *pūto*, *tazo*, *sum*, *fiō*, *consto*, &c.; also *rēfert* and *intērest*.

498.—Among the genitives of degree governed by such verbs, are the adjectives *tanti*, *quanti*, *plūris*, *minōris*, *magni*, *plurimū*, *minimū*, *parvi*, *quantilibet*, &c., and the substantives *avis*, *floci*, *nauci*, *pili*, *teruncii*, *hujus*, &c. For the genitive of price, see 582.

499.—Obs. 5. *Æqui* and *bōni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consūlo*; as, *æqui boni que facio*, "I take this in good part."

500.—Obs. 6. Instead of the genitive, *æstimo*, and a few others, sometimes take the ablative. After *habeo*, *pūto*, *dūco*, the ablative with *pro* is common; as, *pro nihilo putāre*. *Rēfert* and *intērest*, with their own case (415), often take *nihil*, or a neuter accusative, or an adverb, instead of the genitive, to express degree; as, *mea nihil rēfert*; *multum intērest*. So also *nihil* is used with *æstimo* and *mōror*.

## § 123. VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND DATIVE.

501.—RULE XXIX. Verbs of *comparing*, *giving*, *declaring*, and *taking away*, govern the accusative and dative; as,

*Compāro Virgiliū Homēro,  
Sum cuique tribuō,  
Narras fabulā surdo,  
Eripuit me morti,*

I compare Virgil to Homer.  
Give every man his own.  
You tell a story to a deaf man.  
He rescued me from death.

502.—EXPLANATION.—This is a rule of very extensive application. When, together with the *thing done* (expressed by the transitive active verb

and *hæ* accusative), we express also the remote object *to which* it is done, that object will be put in the dative; thus, in the above examples, the verb and the accusative following it, express the *whole* of that which is represented as done *to*, or *with reference to*, the object expressed in the dative; i. e. *comparo Virgilium*, expresses all here said to be done (*Homero*) to Homer, “I compare Virgil to him.” *Narras fabulam* expresses all here said to be done (*surdo*) to the deaf man, “you tell a story to him;” and so *eripuit me*, together, express what is here done (*morti*) to death, “he rescued me from it;” and so of other examples. See this more fully illustrated, Gr. Gram., § 152, Obs. 3.

## OBSERVATIONS.

503.—Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, and some others, instead of the dative, often take a preposition and its case; as, *Comparare unam rem cum aliâ,—ad aliâ,—res inter se. Eripuit me morti,—morte,—a, or ex morte, &c.*

504.—Obs. 2. Instead of the accusative, these verbs have frequently an infinitive mood or a part of a sentence; as, *Da mihi fallere, Redde mihi dulce loqui, &c.*, HOR.; *Perfacile factu esse illis præbat; Itemque Dumnorigi, ut idem conarètur persuadet, CÆS.* This construction is especially common with such verbs as *aio, dico, inquam, persuadeo, respondeo, &c.*, when the thing said, replied, &c., though a sentence or a paragraph, is to be regarded as the accusative, and the word denoting the person or persons to whom said, is put in the dative.

505.—Obs. 3. Several verbs governing the accusative and dative are often construed differently; as, *circumdare mœnia oppido, or oppidion nentibus*, “to surround a city with walls;” *intercludere comœdum alicui, or aliquem comœdum*, “to intercept one’s provisions;” *induere, exuere vestem tibi, or, se vesti*. So the following, *Universos frumento donavit, NRP.*; and *Prædam militibus donat, CÆS.*; *Aspergere sœle carnes, or, aspergere sœlem carnibus, PLIN.*

506.—Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui (sc. se.), Cedere alicui (sc. locum), detrahère alicui (sc. laudem), &c.*

507.—Obs. 5. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as, *Ad prætorem hominem trazit*

## § 124. VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES.

508.—RULE XXX. Verbs of *asking*, and *teaching*, govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

*Poscimus te pacem,  
Docuit me grammaticam,*

We beg peace of thee.  
He taught me grammar

509.—EXPLANATION.—The first accusative, under this rule, belongs to Rule XX., the second may be governed by a preposition understood; or the reason of this rule may be, that most of the verbs under it, admit either of the nouns after them, as their immediate object.

## OBSERVATIONS.

510.—Obs. 1. Verbs of asking, which govern two accusatives, are *rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito*, &c.; of teaching, *doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio*. To these, may be added *celo*, to conceal; as *Antigonus iter omnes celat*, NEP. For two accusatives after verbs of naming, choosing, &c., see 440.

511.—Obs. 2. Verbs of asking, instead of the accusative of the person, often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Veniam oramus ab ipso*. So, also, instead of the accusative of the thing, many verbs, both of asking and teaching, sometimes take the ablative with *de*; as, *De itinere hostium senatum edocet*, SALL.; *Sic ego te eisdem de rebus interrogem*.

512.—Obs. 3. Some verbs of asking and teaching, are never followed by two accusatives, but by the ablative of the person, with a preposition; such as, *exigo, peto, quero, scitor, sciscitor*, and the following verbs of teaching, viz.: *imbuo, instituo, instruo*, and some others, are followed by the ablative of the thing, sometimes with, and sometimes without, a preposition; and sometimes they are otherwise construed.

513.—Obs. 4. Many other transitive active verbs, frequently, besides the accusative of a person, take also an accusative of *nil*, or of the neuter pronouns, *hoc, id, quid*, or of adjectives of quantity; as, *Fabius ea me monuit*, CIC.; *Nec te id consulo*, ID. These verbs, however, in their signification, generally resemble verbs under this rule; or the accusative of the thing may be governed by a preposition understood.

## § 125. VERBS GOVERNING THE ACCUSATIVE AND ABLATIVE.

514.—RULE XXXI. Verbs of *loading, binding, clothing, depriving*, and their contraries, govern the accusative and ablative; as,

*Onerat naves auro,*

He loads the ships with gold.

515.—EXPLANATION.—The accusative under this rule belongs to Rule XX. The ablative may be governed by a preposition understood.

## OBSERVATIONS.

516.—Obs. 1. Verbs of loading are *onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo, impleo, expleo, compleo*;—of unloading, *levo, exonero*, &c.;—of binding, *aringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo*, &c.;—of loos-

*ing, solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio, &c.*;—of depriving, *privo, privo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo*;—of clothing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corôno*;—of unclothing, *exuo, discingo, &c.*

To these may be added many other verbs, such as *mûto, dôno, mûnstra, remunerô, communicô, pasco, beo, impertior, dignor, afficio, prosêquor, assêquor, spargo, oblecto, &c.*, with which, however, in many cases, the ablative may come under Rules XXXIV. and XXXV.

517.—*Obs. 2.* These verbs are sometimes followed by the ablative with a preposition expressed; as, *Solvère aliquem ex catênis*, *Cic.* The ablative is sometimes understood; as, *complet naves, sc. viris*, *VIRG.*

518.—*Obs. 3.* Several of these verbs denoting to fill, likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescens suâ temeritatis implet*, "He fills the youth with his own rashness." Some of them also vary their construction; as, *induit se vestibus*, or, *vestes sibi*; *Abdicare magistratûm*, *SALL.* *Abdicare æ magistratû, Cic.* See 505.

## § 126. CONSTRUCTION WITH PASSIVE VERBS.

519.—**RULE XXXII.** Verbs that govern two cases in the active voice, govern the latter of these in the passive; as,

<i>Accûsor furti.</i>	I am accused of theft.
<i>Virgilius comparâtur Homëro.</i>	Virgil is compared to Homer.
<i>Doceor grammaticam,</i>	I am taught grammar.
<i>Nâvis onerâtur auro,</i>	The ship is loaded with gold.

This rule may be subdivided into the five following, which will be much more convenient in practice, than the general rule.

520.—**I.** Verbs of *accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing*, in the passive, govern the Genitive.

521.—**II.** Verbs of *valuing*, in the passive, govern such genitives as *magni, parvi, nihili, &c.*

522.—**III.** Verbs of *comparing, giving, declaring and taking away*, in the passive, govern the dative.

523.—**IV.** Verbs of *asking, and teaching*, in the passive, govern the accusative.

524.—**V.** Verbs of *loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and their contraries*, in the passive, govern the ablative.

525.—**EXPLANATION.**—This rule applies to the passive of all verbs under Rules XXVII. to XXXI. inclusive. In all of these, the "latter case" is that which, with the active voice, expresses the *remote*, and never the *immediate* object of the verb. In all constructions under this rule it must be

noticed, that that which was, or would be, the accusative after the verb in the active voice, must be its nominative in the passive, otherwise the construction does not belong to this rule. Thus, active, *Narras fabulam surdo*; passive, *Narratur fabula surdo*. Here, *fabulam*, the direct object of *narras*, is changed into the nominative or subject of *narratur*; and *surdo* remains the same in both sentences. The "latter case," in other words, the remote object of the active voice is never, in Latin, converted into the subject of the passive, except in a few instances, which are manifest Grecisms. See Greek Gram., § 154, Obs. 2. In English, however, there are some expressions in which this is allowed. See A. & Pr. Eng. Gr., 814.

Hence, where, in some cases, the Greek and the English idioms admit of two forms of expression, the Latin admits of only one, e. g. "This was told to me," or, "I was told this," is rendered into Latin by the first form: thus, *Hoc mihi dictum est*. But we cannot say, according to the second form, *Hoc dictus sum*.

526.—*Exc. to R. V.* In poetical language, with the passive verbs *induo*, *amicio*, *cingo*, *accingo*, *exuo*, *discingo*, the accusative of the article of dress, &c., is often used, instead of the ablative. Thus, instead of *induo veste*, the poets frequently say, *induo vestem*. Hence the expressions, *Induitur faciem cultumque Diānae*, OVID; *Induiturque aures aulli*, Id.; *Inutile ferrum cingitur*, VIRG.; *Putri laevo suspensi loculos tabulamque lacerto*, HOR. This resembles the Greek accusative, 538, 539.

527.—*Obs. 1.* When the active voice is followed by three cases (481), the passive has the two last; as, *hoc munus est mihi munerī*, "this was sent as a present to me." Here *munerī* is the dative of the end. R. XIX.

528.—**RULE XXXIII.** Passive verbs frequently govern the dative of the doer; as,

<i>Vix audior ulli,</i>	I am scarcely heard by any one.
<i>Scriberis Vario,</i>	You shall be described by Varian.
<i>Nulla audita mihi sororum,</i>	None of your sisters have been
	heard of by me.

529.—**EXPLANATION.**—This construction is used chiefly by the poets, and by them, as a substitute for another still more common; namely, that the voluntary agent, after the passive voice, is put in the ablative with *a*, or *ab* and so comes under Rule XLIX. as (in the active voice), *Clodius me diligit* "Clodius loves me;" (in the passive), *A Clodio diligor*, "I am loved by Clodius." The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *colitur linigra turba*.

530.—*Obs. 2.* After passive verbs, the principal agent or actor is usually expressed in the ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as, *laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis*, "he is praised by these, he is blamed by those." But,

The secondary agent, means, or instrument, after transitive verbs in the active or passive voice, or after intransitive verbs, is put in the accusative



with *per*; as, *Per Thraasybalum Lyci filium, ab exercitu recipitur* Nep.; but oftener in the ablative, by Rule XXXV.

531.—Obs. 3. The passive participle in *dus* has the agent or doer almost always in the dative; and besides, when it agrees with the subject of a sentence, conveys the idea of obligation or necessity; as, *Sēma omnibus calcanda est via lēti*, "The way of death (is to be, i. e.) must once be trod by all," Hor.; *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, "Diligence must be used by us" (i. e. we must use diligence), Cic.; *Cæsari omnia uno tempore erant agenda*, "All things had to be done by Cæsar at one time." 182-3.

532.—Obs. 4. The accusative of *place* or *time*, after intransitives in the passive voice, is not governed by the verb, but by a preposition understood, or comes under other rules; as, *itur Athēnas*, Rule XXXVII. *pugnatum est biduum*, R. XLI; *dormitur totam noctem*, R. XLI. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems*; *Noctes vigilantur amarus*; *Oceanus aditur*, Tac.

## § 127. CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

533.—In order to express some CIRCUMSTANCE connected with the idea of the simple sentence, words and phrases are often thrown in between the parts of a sentence in an adverbial manner, and which do not depend for their case on any word in the sentence to which they belong, but on a preposition, or adverb, or other word, understood; or are, by common usage, put in a particular case in certain circumstances, without government or dependence on any words either expressed or understood.

To this may be referred circumstances: 1. Of *limitation*;—2. Of *cause*, *manner*, &c.;—3. Of *place*;—4. Of *time*;—5. Of *measure*;—6. Of *price* as follows.

## § 128. CIRCUMSTANCES OF LIMITATION

534.—A particular qualification of a general expression, made in English by the phrase "in respect of," "with regard to," is expressed in Latin by the ablative, or, more briefly as follows:

535.—RULE XXXIV. *Respect wherein*, and the *part affected* are expressed in the ablative; as,

*Pietate filius,*  
*Jure peritus,*  
*Pedibus aeger,*

*In affection a son.*  
*Skilled in law.*  
*Lame in his feet.*

536.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative, under this rule, is used, to limit the signification of nouns, adjectives, and verbs, and may be variously

renders : to express the nature of the limitation intended ; as, *in*, *in respect of*, *with respect to*, *with regard to*, &c.

537.—*Obs* 1 The part affected, after adjectives and verbs, belongs to this rule, containing, as it does, a similar limitation of a general expression, as in the last of the examples above. The following are of a similar character: *Anxius animo*, TAC.; *Crine ruber*; *ore niger*, MART.; *Contremisco totâ mente et omnibus artibus*, CIC.; *Animoque et corpore torpet*, HOR.

538.—*Exc* 1. The part affected, in imitation of a Greek construction, is sometimes expressed in the accusative; as, *Nudus membra*, "Bare as to his limbs," VIRG. So, *sibila colla tumentem*, ID.; *explerimentem nequit*, ID.; *fractus membra*, HOR.; *tempora cinctus*, VIRG. This construction is in imitation of the Greek. See Gr. Gram., § 157, *Obs* 1.

539.—*Exc* 2. In like manner, a noun or pronoun, denoting that *in regard to* which, or *with respect to* which, any thing is, is said, or is done, is sometimes put in the accusative; as, *Nunc illos qui in urbe remanserunt*, "Now, *in regard to* those who remained in the city;" *Quod reliquum est*, "As to that which remains."

This construction is quite common with such accusatives as *id*, *hoc*, *aliquid*, *reliqua*, *cætëra*, *magnam partem*, *maximam partem*, and the like; as, *reliqua similis*; *cætëra egregium*; *meos libros magnam partem amisit*, &c. In such constructions, *ad*, meaning "in regard to," "in respect of," "as to," (Andrews' Lexicon, D. 1), is probably understood.

540.—*Exc* 3. After certain adjectives and verbs denoting an affection or state of mind, *respect wherein*, or the *part affected*, is, in imitation of the Greek, expressed in the genitive; as, *intëger vitæ*; *diversus mörum*; *discrucior animi*; *animi pendeo*; *recreabar animi*. See also 371.

541.—*Obs* 2. To this rule may be referred the matter of which any thing is made; as, *cere cavo clypeus*, "a shield of hollow brass." But here the preposition is commonly expressed; as, *templum de marmöre*. In imitation of the Greeks, the matter is sometimes put in the genitive; as, *cratëres argenti*, "goblets of silver." Gr. Gram., § 156, *Obs* 3.

## § 129. THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, &c.

42.—RULE XXXV. The *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, are put in the ablative; as,

*Palleo metu,*

*Fecit suo more,*

*Auro oströque decöri,*

*Scribo calämo,*

I am pale for fear.

He did it after his own way.

Decked with gold and purple

I write with a pen.

543.—EXPLANATION.—The ablative, in this rule, is probably governed by a preposition understood,—as there are numerous instances in which the preposition is expressed. The *cause* will be known by putting the question, “Why?” or “Wherefore?” the *manner*, by “How?” the *means*, by “By what means?” the *instrument*, by “Wherewith?”

544.—Obs. 1. The *cause* sometimes takes the prepositions *per*, *propter*, *ob*, with the accusative; or *de*, *e*, *ex*, *præ*, with the ablative; as, *de pulsus per invidiam*; *fessus de viâ*.

545.—Obs. 2. The *manner* is sometimes expressed by *a*, *ab*, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *per*; as, *de mōre suo*;—the *means* frequently by *per*, and *cum*; as, *cum meis copiis omnibus vexâvi Amanienses*. See 530.

546.—Obs. 3. The *instrument*, properly so called, seldom admits a preposition, though, among the poets, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *sub*, are sometimes used, as, *pectora trajectus ab ense*; *exercere solum sub vomere*.

### § 130. CIRCUMSTANCES OF PLACE.

547.—The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars:  
1. The place *where*, or *in which*;—2. The place *whither*, or *to which*;—  
3. The place *whence*, or *from which*;—4. The place *by*, or *through which*

*N. B.* The following rules respecting place, refer chiefly to the *names of towns*. Sometimes, though very seldom, the names of countries, provinces, islands, &c., are construed in the same way. With these, however, the preposition is commonly added.

#### 1. *The place WHERE, or IN WHICH.*

548.—RULE XXXVI. The name of a town, denoting the place *where*, or *in which*, is put in the genitive; as,

*Vixit Rōmæ,*  
*Mortuus est Milēti,*

He lived at Rome.  
He died at Miletus.

549.—Exc. But if the name of the town *where*, or *in which*, is of the third declension, or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

*Habitat Carthagine,*  
*Studuit Athēnis,*

He dwells at Carthage.  
He studied at Athens.

550.—Obs. 1. When the name of a town is joined with an adjective, or common noun in apposition, a preposition is commonly added; as, *Rōmæ in celebri urbe*; or, *in Rōmæ celebri urbe*; or, *in Rōmā celebri urbe*; or sometimes, *Rōmæ celebri urbe*. 262.

*Note.*—In this construction, the name of a town, in the third declension

frequently has the ablative singular in *i*; as, *Habitat Carthagīni*. *Puer Sicyōni jamdiu Dionysia*, PLAUT.; *Tībūri genitus*, SEXT.

551.—Obs. 2. The name of the town *where*, or *in which*, is sometimes, though rarely, put in the ablative when it is of the first or second declension; as, *Tyro rex decessit*, for *Tyri*, "The king died at Tyre," JUST.; *Hujus exemplar Rōmā nullum habemus*, VITRUV.

552.—Obs. 3. The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed before the ablative; as, *In Philippiis quidam nunciavit*, SEXT. *At*, or *near* a place is expressed by *ad*, or *apud* with the accusative; as, *ad*, or *apud Trojam*, "at, or near Troy."

## 2. The place WHITHER, or TO WHICH.

553.—RULE XXXVII. The name of a town denoting the place *whither*, or *to which*, is put in the accusative; as,

<i>Vēnit Rōmam</i> ,	He came to Rome
<i>Profectus est Athēnas</i> ,	He went to Athens.

554.—Obs. 4. Among the poets, the town *to which* is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Carthagīni nuncios mittam*, HOR.

555.—Obs. 5. After verbs of *telling*, and *giving*, when motion *to* is implied, the name of a town is sometimes put in the accusative; as, *Rōmā erat nunciatum*, "The report was carried to Rome;" *Messānam litēras dedit*.

## 3. The place WHENCE, or FROM WHICH.

556.—RULE XXXVIII. The name of a town *whence* or *from which*, *by* or *through which*, is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Discessit Corintho</i> ,	He departed from Corinth.
<i>Laodiceā iter fecit</i> ,	He went through Laodicea.

557.—Obs. 6. The place *by* or *through which*, however, is commonly put in the accusative with *per*; as, *Per Thēbas iter fecit*, NER.

## 4. Domus and rus.

558.—RULE XXXIX. *Domus* and *rus* are construed in the same way as names of towns, as,

<i>Mūnet dōmī</i> (548),	He stays at home
<i>Dōmum revertitur</i> (553),	He returns home.
<i>Dōmo arcessitus sum</i> (556),	I am called from home.

So also

<i>Vivit rūre</i> or <i>rūri</i> (548),	He lives in the country.
<i>Abiit rus</i> (553),	He is gone to the country.
<i>Rediit rūre</i> (556),	He has returned from the country.

559.—*Obs. 7.* *Hūmi, militiae, and belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive like names of towns; as, *jacet hūmi*, "he lies on the ground;" *dōmi et militiae* (or *belli*), "at home or abroad."

560.—*Obs. 8.* When *dōmus* is joined with an adjective, the preposition is commonly used; as, *in dōmo paternā*. So, *ad dōmum paternam, ex dōmo paternā*.—Except with *meus, tuus, suus, novus, vester, regius, avi alienus*; then it follows the rule. When *dōmus* has another substantive after it in the genitive, it may be with, or without, a preposition; as, *deprehensus est dōmi, dōmo, et in dōmo Cæsaris*.

561.—*Obs. 9.* *Rus, and rūra*, in the singular, joined with an adjective, are used with, or without, a preposition. But *rūra*, in the plural, is never without it.

562.—*Obs. 10.* The names of countries, provinces, and all other places except towns, are commonly construed with a preposition; as, *nātus in Italiā; abiit in Italiam; rediit ex Italiā; transit per Italiam, &c.* A few cases occur, however, in which names of countries, provinces, &c., are construed like the names of towns, without a preposition; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est, &c., Cæs.*

563.—*Pēto*, "I seek," or "go to," always governs the accusative as a transitive active verb, without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, "He went to Egypt."

564.—*Obs. 11.* The word containing an answer to the question *whither?* is often put by the poets in the accusative without a preposition; as, *Speluncam Dido dux et Trojānus eandem deveniunt*, *VIRG.* Likewise, the answer to the question *where?* or *whence?* in the ablative, without a preposition; as, *Silvisque agrisque visque corpōra fœda jacent*. So, *cadere nubibus; descendere cælo; currus carceribus missi*. See 611.

## § 131. CIRCUMSTANCES OF TIME.

565.—**RULE XL.** Time *when*, is put in the ablative; as,

*Venit hōrā tertiā,*                      He came at the third hour.

**RULE XL.** Time *how long*, is put in the accusative, or ablative; as.

*Mansit paucos dies,*                      He staid a few days.  
*Sex mensibus absuit,*                      He was absent six months.

566.—**EXPLANATION.**—A *precise* period or point of time, is usually put in the ablative,—continuance of time, not marked with precision, for the most part, in the accusative.

567.—*Note.*—It must be observed here, that the *point of time* under this rule, must coincide with the time of the verb with which it is connected.

ed; otherwise, the rule does not hold good;—thus, “He invited me to dine with him next day,” is properly rendered under this rule: *Serum postero die ut pranderem invitavit*; because *postero die* and *pranderem* are cotemporary. But, if we change the verb *pranderem* for a noun, *postere die* will not do in the ablative, but must be changed thus; *ad prandium me invitavit in posterum diem*. *Postero die*, in this sentence, would mean that the invitation was given next day, and would be rendered, in English, “Next day, he invited me to dinner.”

## OBSERVATIONS.

568.—*Obs. 1.* All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; such as, *in, de, ad, ante, circa, per, &c.* Sometimes *ad, or circa*, is understood before *hoc, illud, id, isthuc*, with *ætatis, temporis, horæ, &c.*, following in the genitive; as, (*ad*) *id temporis*, for *eo tempore, &c.*

569.—*Obs. 2.* Precise time, before or after another fixed time, is expressed by *ante*, or *post*, regarded as adverbs, either with the accusative or ablative; as, *aliquot ante annos; paucis ante diebus; paucos post dies, &c.*

570.—Sometimes *quam*, with a verb, is added to *ante*, or *post*; as, *Paucis post diebus quam Lūca discesserat*, “A few days after he had departed from Luca.” Sometimes *post* is omitted before *quam*; as, *Die vigesima quam creditus erat*.

571.—*Obs. 3.* Instead of *postquam*, we sometimes find *ex quo*, or *quam*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Octo diebus quibus has literas dabam*, “Eight days after I gave these letters.”

572.—*Obs. 4.* The adverb *abhinc* is used to express past time, joined with the accusative or ablative, without a preposition; as, *Factum est abhinc biennio*, or *biennium*, “It was done two years ago.”

## § 132. CIRCUMSTANCES OF MEASURE.

573.—RULE XLII. *Measure or distance* is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

<i>Murus est decem pēdes altus,</i>	The wall is ten feet high.
<i>Urbs distat, triginta millia, or</i>	} The city is distant thirty miles.
<i>triginta millibus passuum,</i>	
<i>Iter, or itinēre unusius diēi,</i>	One day's journey.

## OBSERVATIONS.

574.—*Obs. 1.* The accusative or ablative of measure, is put after such adjectives, and verbs of dimension, as *longus, lātus, crassus, profundus, altus; Pātet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are *pes, cubitus, ulnus, digitus, palmus, mille passuum*, a mile, &c.

575.—*Obs. 2.* The accusative or ablative of distance, is used only after verbs which express motion or distance: as, *eo, curro, duco, absum,*

*disto, &c.* The accusative, under this rule, may be governed by *ad* or *per*, understood, and the ablative by *a*, or *ab*.

576.—*Obs.* 3. When the measure of more things than one is expressed, the distributive numeral is commonly used; as, *Muri denos pedes alti*, "The walls are each ten feet high." Sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum*, is used in the genitive, governed by *ad mensuram*, understood. But the genitive is used to express the measure of things in the plural only.

577.—*Obs.* 4. The distance of the place where any thing is said to be done, is usually expressed in the ablative or in the accusative with a preposition; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe consedit*; or *ad sex millia passuum*. *Cæs.*

578.—*Obs.* 5. Sometimes the place from which distance is estimated is not expressed, though the preposition governing it is, and may be rendered *off*, *distant*, &c., as, *Ab sex millibus passuum absuit*; "He was six miles off, or distant" (scil. *Româ*, from Rome).

579.—**RULE XLIII.** The measure of *excess* or *deficiency*, is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Sesquipede longior,</i>	Taller by a foot and a half.
<i>Novem pedibus minor,</i>	Less by nine feet.
<i>Quanto doctior, tanto humilisior,</i>	The more learned, the more humble.

580.—*Obs.* 6. To this rule are to be referred the ablatives *tanto*, *quanto*, *quo*, *eo*, *hoc*, *aliquanto*, *multo*, *paulo*, *nikilo*, &c., frequently joined to comparatives, and sometimes to superlatives.

### § 133. CIRCUMSTANCES OF PRICE.

581.—**RULE XLIV.** The *price* of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

<i>Constitit talento,</i>	It cost a talent.
<i>Vendit hic auro patriam,</i>	This man sold his country for gold.

582.—*Exc.* But *tanti*, *quant*i, *pluris*, *minoris*, are used in the genitive; as,

<i>Quanti constitit?</i>	How much cost it?
<i>Non vendo pluri quam ceteri,</i>	I do not sell for more than others.

583.—*Obs.* 1. When joined with a noun, *tanti*, *quant*i, &c., are put in the ablative; as, *Quam tanto pretio mercatus est*. *Tanto*, *quanto*, and *pluri*, are sometimes, though rarely, found without a noun: as, *pluri venit*, "it is sold for more."

584.—*Obs.* 2. The ablative of price is often an adjective without a noun; as, *magno*, *permagno*, *parvo*, *paululo*, *minimo*, *plurimo*, *vili*, *nimie*. These refer, however, to some such noun as *pretio*, *are*, &c., understood. *Valeo* is found with an accusative.

## § 134. CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

585.—**RULE XLV.** Adverbs are joined to verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs, to modify and limit their signification ; as,

*Bene scribit,*  
*Fortiter pugnat,*  
*Egregie fidelis,*  
*Satis bene,*

He writes well.  
Fighting bravely.  
Remarkably faithful.  
Well enough.

## OBSERVATIONS.

586.—*Obs. 1.* Adverbs are sometimes joined with nouns ; as, *Homērus plane orator*, "Homer evidently an orator."

587.—*Obs. 2.* The adverb is usually placed near the word modified or limited by it.

*Negatives.*

588.—*Obs. 3.* Two negatives in Latin, as well as in English, destroy each other, or are equivalent to an affirmative ; as, *Nec non sensērunt*, "nor did they not perceive," i. e. *et sensērunt*, "and they did perceive." So, *Non poteram non exanimāri metu*. *Cic. Non sum nescius*, i. e. *scio* ; *haud nihil est*, "it is not nothing," i. e. "it is something ;" *nonnulli*, "not none," i. e. "some ;" *nonnunquam*, "not never," i. e. "sometimes ;" *non nemo*, "not nobody," i. e. "somebody," &c.

589.—*Obs. 4.* *Exc.* In imitation of the Greeks, however, two negatives in Latin, as well as in English, sometimes make a stronger negative ; as, *Nēque ille haud objiciet mihi*, "He will not by any means object to me ;" *Nra, te non nocitūrum homīni nemini*, &c. *Nēque*, and *nec*, and sometimes *non*, are especially thus used after a negative ; as, *Non me carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Linus*.

590.—*Obs. 5.* *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non modo*, or *non solum*, when followed in a subsequent clause by *ne quidem* ; as, *Mihi non modo irasci*, i. e. *non irasci*,) *sed ne dolere quidem impūne licet*. Sometimes, but rarely, it is omitted after *sed*, or *verum*, with *etiam* ; as, *Non modo ea futura timeo* (i. e. *non timeo*), *verum etiam fert sustinetque praesentia*. For *ut*, and *ut* with *timeo*, &c., see 683.

591.—*Obs. 6.* Certain adverbs are joined to adjectives, and also to adverbs, in all the degrees of comparison, for the purpose of imparting greater force to their signification ; as,

1st. To the positive are joined such adverbs as, *apprime*, *admodum*, *vehementer*, *maxime*, *perquam*, *valde*, *oppidō*, and *per*, in composition ; as, *gratum admodum*, "very agreeable ;" *perquam puerile*, "very childish ;" &c. In like manner, *pārūm*, *multum*, *nimium*, *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum* ; as, *pārūm firmus* ; *multum bonus*.

2d. To the comparative are joined, *paulo*, *nimio*, *aliquanto*, *eo*, *quo*, *hōc*, *impendio*, *nihilo* ; as, *Eo gravior est dolor quo culpa major*.—*Cic.* See 588. Sometimes, also, *pārūm*, *multum*, &c., as with the positive.



3d To the superlative are joined, *longe*, *quam*, *facile*, meaning "certainly," "undoubtedly;" also *tanto*, *quanto*, *multo*, &c.; as, *Facile doctissimus*, "certainly the most learned;" *longe bellicosissima* (sc. *gens*), "by far the most warlike;" *quam maximas potest copias armat*, "he arms as great forces as possible."

4th. *Quam*, (and also *ut*), is also used as an intensive word with the positive, but in a sense somewhat different, resembling an exclamation as, *Quam difficile est!* "how difficult it is!" *quam*, or *ut crudelis!* "how cruel!" *Flens quam familiariter*, "weeping how affectionately," i. e. *very affectionately*; *quam severe*, "how severely," i. e. *very severely*.

### § 135. CASES GOVERNED BY ADVERBS.

592.—RULE XLVI. Some adverbs of *time*, *place*, and *quantity*, govern the genitive; as,

*Pridie ejus diēi,*  
*Ubique gentium,*  
*Satis est verborum,*

The day before that day  
Every where.  
There is enough of words.

593.—1. Adverbs of time governing the genitive are, *interea*, *postea*, *inde*, *tunc*; as, *Interea loci*, "in the mean time;" *postea loci*, "afterwards;" *inde loci*, "then;" *tunc temporis*, "at that time."

594.—2. Of place, *Ubi*, and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique*, *ubique*, *ubiubi*, *quovis*, &c. Also, *eo*, *huc*, *hucine*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *longe*, *ibidem*, &c.; as, *unde terrarum* or *gentium*; *longe gentium*; *ibidem loci*. Also. *huc*, *eo*, and *quo*, expressing degree; as, *Eo audaciæ*,—*vecordiciæ*—*miseriarum*, &c., "to that pitch of boldness—madness—misery," &c.

595.—3. Of quantity, *abunde*, *affatim*, *largiter*, *nimis*, *satis*, *pärum*, *minime*; as, *abunde gloriæ*; *affatim divitiarum*; *largiter auri*; *satis eloquentiæ*; *sapientiæ pärum est illi*, or *habet*, "He has enough of glory, riches" &c. *minimè gentium*, "by no means."

596.—Obs. 1. *Ergo* (for the sake of), *instar*, and *partim*, also govern the genitive; as, *donari virtutis ergo*.

597.—Obs. 2. *Pridie* and *postridie*, govern the genitive or accusative; as, *Pridie Kalendarum*, or *pridie Kalendas*, sup. ante; *Postridie Kalendarum*, or *Kalendas*, sup. post.

598.—Obs. 3. *En* and *Ecce* govern the nominative or accusative; as, *En causa*, *Ecce homo* or *hominem*, sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce duas aras tibi*. VIRG. In such constructions, a verb may be understood. The dative may be referred to, 377-8.

599.—Obs. 4. Certain prepositions used adverbially by the poets, are followed by the dative; as, *Mihi clam est*, "it is unknown to me." *Contra nobis*.

600.—RULE XLVII. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

*Omnium optime loquitur,*  
*Convenienter naturæ,*  
*Venit obviam ei,*  
*Proxime castris* or *castra,*

He speaks the best of all.  
 Agreeably to nature.  
 He came to meet him.  
 Next the camp.

601.—EXPLANATION.—In the first example, *optime* is derived from *optimus*, which governs the genitive by Rule X. 855. *Convenienter* and *obviam*, are derived from *conveniens*, and *obvius*, which govern the dative by Rule XVI. 882; and *proxime* is derived from *proximus*, which governs the dative or accusative. (888.)

### § 136. CASES GOVERNED BY PREPOSITIONS.

602.—RULE XLVIII. Twenty-eight prepositions, *ad*, *apud*, *ante*, &c., govern the accusative; as,

*Ad patrem,*

To the father.

603.—RULE XLIX. Fifteen prepositions *a*, *ab*, *abs*, &c., govern the ablative; as,

*A patre,*

From the father.

604.—EXPLANATION.—The twenty-eight prepositions which govern the accusative are those contained in the list 220-1, and the fifteen governing the ablative are those in 220-2.

### OBSERVATIONS.

605.—Obs. 1. *Clam*, one of these fifteen, is sometimes followed by the accusative; as, *clam vos*, "without your knowledge." When followed by a genitive or dative, a substantive may be understood, or it may be regarded as an adverb; as, *clam patris*. TER. *mihi clam est*. PLAUT.

606.—Obs. 2. *Tenus* after a plural noun, commonly governs it in the genitive; as, *crûrum tenuis*. VIRG.

607.—RULE L. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super* and *subter*, denoting motion to, or tendency towards govern the accusative; as,

*Venit in Urbem,*  
*Amor in te,*  
*Sub jugum missus est,*  
*Incidit super agmina*

He came into the city.  
 Love towards thee.  
 He was sent under the yoke.  
 It fell upon the troops.

808.—RULE LI. The prepositions *in* and *sub* denoting *situation*, govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative; as,

*Jacet in terrâ,*  
*Mediâ in urbe,*  
*In poëtis,*  
*Sub montibus,*

He lies upon the ground.  
In the middle of the city.  
Among the poets.  
Under the walls.

609.—Obs. 3. To both of these rules there are some exceptions. Instances occur in which *in* and *sub* denoting *motion to*, or *tendency towards*, instead of the accusative, govern the ablative; as, *In conspectu meo audeat venire*; *sub jugo dictator hostem misit*. Others are found in which they govern the accusative when they denote *situation*; as, *Mihi in mentem fuit*. *Hostes sub montem consedissee*, &c.

610.—Obs. 4. The preposition *in* with the accusative, usually signifies *into*, *towards*, *until*, *for*, *against*; with the ablative *in*, *upon*, *among*. With both these cases, however, considerable variety of translation is necessary to convey correctly the idea of the original. The following are instances, "*In the case of*," *talis in hoste fuit Priamo*. VIRG. "*On account of*," *in quo facto domum revocatus*;—"*In sex mensibus*," "*within six months*;" *in dies*, "*from day to day*." So, *in horas*, "*from hour to hour*;" *in capita*, "*per head*;" *in pueritia*, "*during boyhood*;" *in hoc tempore*, "*at this time*," &c.

611.—Obs. 5. The preposition is frequently understood before its cases as, *devenire locos*. VIRG. *homo id ætatis*. CIC. *propior montem*. SALL. in which *ad* is understood. So, *Nunc id prodeco*, sc. *ob*;—TER. *Maria aspera juro*, sc. *per*. *Se lœco movere*, sc. *e*, or *de*. *Quid illo facias?* sc. *in* or *de*, "*what can you do in this case?*" *Ut patriâ expelleretur*, sc. *ex*. NER

612.—Obs. 6. Sometimes, but much more rarely, the case is omitted after the preposition; as, *circum Concordiæ*, sc. *ædem*. SALL. *multis post annis*, i. e. *post id tempus*.

613.—RULE LII. A preposition in composition often governs its own case; as,

*Adeamus urbem,*  
*Exeamus urbe,*

Let us go to the city.  
Let us go out of the city.

614.—EXPLANATION.—By "*its own case*" is meant the case it governs when not in composition. This rule only takes place when the preposition may be separated from the verb, and placed before the case without altering the sense. Thus, *adeamus urbem*, and *eamus ad urbem*, express the same thing.

615.—Obs. 7. The preposition is often repeated after the compound word; the case is then governed by the preposition repeated; as, *ex navibus expositi*. CÆS. *Nunquam accedo ad te, quin abs te abeam doctior*. TER.

Note.—Some verbs never have the preposition repeated after them; such as, *Affaris allôquor allatro*, *alluo*, *accôlo*; *circum* with *venio*, *eo*, *sto*, *cedo*

*volo* ; *deo, prætereo, abduco, affero, evertō*, &c. Some compounds with *inter*, and *præter*, commonly omit the preposition. The compounds of *in*, *ob*, and *sub*, generally take the dative those of *super*, generally the accusative.

616.—*Obs.* 8. Some verbs compounded with *e*, or *ex*, are followed by an accusative or ablative ; as, *exire tamen*. TER. *exire septis*. VIRG. Some words compounded with *præ*, take an accusative ; as, *Tibur aquæ præfluunt*. HOR. In some of these cases, however, the accusative may be governed by *præter* or *extra*, understood.

617.—*Obs.* 9. The case governed by the preposition in composition is sometimes omitted ; as, *Emittere servum*, sc. *manu*. PLAUT. *Evomere viram*, sc. *ore*. CIC. *Educere copias*, sc. *castris*. CÆS.

For the construction of interjections, see § 117.

## SYNTAX OF THE VERB.

### § 137. CONNECTION OF TENSES.

618.—The tenses in the indicative and subjunctive moods, so far as relates to their construction, may be divided into two classes, *Primary* and *Secondary*, as follows,

<i>Primary.</i>	<i>Secondary.</i>
Present.	Imperfect.
Perfect definite. 162.	Perfect indefinite. 163.
Futures.	Pluperfect.

With the primary tenses may be classed, the *Imperative Mood*.

Of these tenses, the *Primary* are used to express actions, &c., as present or future ; the *Secondary*, in the recital of these actions as past.

In the construction of sentences consisting of different members, the subjunctive mood, in the subordinate or secondary parts, usually corresponds, in time, to the tense in the primary, or leading part. Hence the following Rule.

619.—**RULE LIII.** Any tense of the subjunctive mood, may follow a tense of the *same class* in the indicative ; as,

PRES.	<i>Lêgo,</i>	} <i>ut discam,</i>	I read,	} <i>that I may learn.</i>
PERF. DEF.	<i>Lêgi,</i>		I have read,	
FUT.	<i>Lêgam,</i>		I will read,	
IMPER.	<i>Lêge, ut discas,</i>		Read, that you may learn.	
IMPERF.	<i>Lêgebam,</i>	} <i>ut discerem,</i>	I was reading,	} <i>that I might learn.</i>
PRES. INDEF.	<i>Lêgi,</i>		I read,	
PLUP.	<i>Lêgeram,</i>		I had read,	

620.—EXPLANATION.—In clauses connected, the present, the perfect, and periphrastic future with *sim* or *fuërim*, 214-8, in the subjunctive mood, may follow either the present, or the perfect definite, or the futures, of the indicative, or the imperative mood. In like manner, the imperfect, the pluperfect, and the periphrastic future with *essem* or *fuisssem*, in the subjunctive mood, may follow either the imperfect, or the perfect indefinite, or the pluperfect in the indicative.

621.—Obs. 1. When the present tense of the indicative is used in narration for the past, 157-8, it may be followed by the secondary tenses of the subjunctive, as *Legatos mittunt ut pacem impetrarent*.

622.—Obs. 2. Primary tenses are sometimes followed by secondary, and secondary by primary, in order to express actions whose time is different.

623.—Obs. 3. When the subjunctive follows an infinitive or participle in the primary clause, the class of tenses employed, usually corresponds to the time of the verb on which the infinitive or participle depends.

N. B. This rule and the observations under it, are to be regarded as stating only general principles, the deviations from which, in expressing the endless variety of relations among actions with reference to time, dependence, &c., can be learned only by practice and close attention to classic usage.

For the interchange of tenses in the same and in different moods, see observations on the tenses, §§ 44 and 45.

## 624.—§ 138. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. The indicative mood is used in Latin, to express what is actual and certain, in an absolute and independent manner; as, *vëni, vidi, vici*, "I came, saw, and conquered." It is also used in direct and independent interrogations; as, *Quid ägis?* "what are you doing?"

2. The indicative mood is used in conditional and dependent clauses, to denote, not what is contingent or uncertain, but what is supposed, or admitted as fact; as, *Si vâles, bënë est*, "if you are in health, it is well," i. e. "since you are in health."

3. Independent assertions made in English by *shall, will, can, may, ought*, and the like, are made in Latin by the indicative of verbs expressing these ideas; as, *volûmus ire*, "we will go," *dëbes facëre*, "you ought to do it," 147. In general, the verbs *oportet, necesse est, debeo, convënit, possum, licet*;—also, the expressions *par, fas, æquum, justum, consentaneum est*;—

and *cœquius, melius, utilius, optabilius est*, are put in the past tenses of the indicative, though translated by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive. Hence,

4. The indicative is used in the sense of the subjunctive, and translated by the potential in English, when an act, &c., though not performed, is expressed as what would have been proper, practicable, or advantageous; as, *Milōni optabilius fuit dāre jugulum P. Clodio*; "it would have been more desirable," &c., 164-4.

5. The past tenses of the indicative, are sometimes used for the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause, by which the description is rendered more animated; as, *pons sublicius iter hostibus dedit, ni, &c.* "the wooden bridge would have afforded a passage to the enemy, unless" &c; so, *actum erat de pulcherrimo imperio, nisi, &c.*, 140 and 625-4th.

The signification and use of this mood, in its several tenses, are specified § 44.

## § 139. CONSTRUCTION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

[For the character and meaning of this mood, in its several tenses, see § 42. II. and § 45.]

The subjunctive mood is used sometimes in independent, but, for the most part, in dependent propositions.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT PROPOSITIONS.

625. The subjunctive mood is used, apparently at least, in independent propositions:—

- 1st. To soften an assertion or statement; as, *nemo istud tibi concedat*, "no one would grant that to you;" *forsitan temere fecerim*, "perhaps I may have acted rashly;" *quis dubitet?* "who can doubt it?"
- 2d. To express a wish or desire, like the Greek Optative; as, *eāmus*, "let us go;" *moriāmur*, "let us die;" *nunc revertāmur*, "let us now return." In the second, and the third person, it is used to exhort or command; and, with a negative, to forbid; as, *faciat*, "let him do it;" *ipse vidērit*, "let him see to it himself." *Cic. Ne me attingas*, "do not touch me" *Ter. Emas quod necesse est* (171-1). *SEN.*

3d. To express a doubtful question; as, *quo eam?* "whither shall I go?" *quid aliud faceret?* "what else could he do?" (171-2). CIR.

4th. After the imperfect, and pluperfect subjunctive, in a conditional clause with *si, etsi, quāsi, etiāsi, tametsi, nī, nisi*, the subjunctive is used independently in the apodosis, or conclusion, in the same tenses, when the thing supposed did not exist. Also, after the present, and perfect in the sense of the imperfect or pluperfect; as, *si hic sis, aliter sentias*, "if you were here, you would think otherwise." TER. *Quos nī mea cūra resistat, jam flammæ tulērunt*. VIRG. In this construction, the conditional clause is sometimes omitted; as, *magno mercentur Atridæ (si possint)*. VIRG.

*Note*.—But, though in these and many similar expressions, the subjunctive appears to be used independently, it is easy to see, that in most cases, if not in all, it depends on an indicative or imperative understood, and which has been omitted for the sake of brevity (145).

#### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN DEPENDENT PROPOSITIONS.

626.—The subjunctive mood is used, for the most part, in dependent clauses, and is preceded by another verb in the indicative, imperative, or infinitive mood, expressed or understood, with which it is connected by a conjunction, a relative, or an indefinite term, and may generally be rendered by the potential in English (142-2d, and 143).

*Obs*.—The construction of the subjunctive mood, in Latin agrees, generally, with its construction in English and in Greek. Its use, however, is much more extensive in Latin, being employed in many cases in which the indicative is used in these languages. Its construction in dependent propositions, is subject to the following Rules.

#### § 140. SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER CONJUNCTIONS, &c.

627—RULE LIV. The conjunctions, *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam*, and *dummōdo*, &c., and words used indefinitely in dependent clauses, for the most part, require the subjunctive mood; as,

*Lēgo ut discam,*  
*Nescit qui sim,*

*I read that I may learn.*  
*He knows not who I am.*

**EXPLANATION.**—The conjunctions requiring the subjunctive mood, are those which imply *doubt, contingency, uncertainty*, and the like, as follows :

1. *Ut, quo*, “that,” *ne, quominus*, “that not,” referring to the *result, end, or design*, take the subjunctive ; thus,

1st. *Ut*, “that,” denoting a *result*, after such words as *sic, ita, adeo, tam, talis, tantum, is, ejusmodi*, is followed by the subjunctive.

2d. *Ut*, “that,” and *ne*, “that not,” denoting *purpose or design* ; or when “that” is equivalent to “in order that,” “so that,” take the subjunctive.

3d. After verbs signifying to *request, admonish, advise, commission, encourage, command*, and the like ; or to *endeavor, aim at, or accomplish* ; as, *facio, efficio, &c.* ; and sometimes to *permit, to wish, to be necessary, &c.*, *ut* and *ne* usually take the subjunctive.

4th. *Ut*, with the subjunctive, usually follows such impersonals as *fit, fieri non potest, accidit, incidit, occurrit, contingit, evenit, ita venit, rarum est, sequitur, futurum est, reliquum est, relinquitur, restat, superest, opus est, est* signifying *it happens, it occurs, it remains, &c.*

2. *Si* “if ;” *ut si, quasi, ac si, æque ac si, perinde ut si, uter ac si, velut si, tanquam, ceu*, “as if,” expressing a *condition or supposition*, commonly take the subjunctive.

3. *Ut, licet, etiam si, quamvis*, “although ;” *quin* for *qui non*, or *ut non*, or *quominus*, take the subjunctive.

4. *Antequam, priusquam*, “before ;” *dum, donec, quoad*, “until,” *modo, dum, dummodo*, “provided,” and the particles of wishing, *utinam, O si, ut* or *ut*, for *utinam*, commonly take the subjunctive.

5. Interrogative words used indefinitely in dependent clauses, or containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

The words thus used are, the particles *an, ne, num, utrum, anne, an non* ;—the adverbs *ubi, quo, unde, quorsum, quamdum, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, quemadmodum, quomodo, ut, quam, quantopere* ;—the adjectives *quantus, qualis, quot, quous, iter* ; *quis, qui, cujus, &c.*

**Note.**—In double questions, direct or indirect, expressed in English by “whether—or,” the first is commonly made by *utrum*, or the enclitic *ne*, and the second by *an*, or *anne*. The first particle, however, is often omitted, but must be supplied in translating, as, *id frustra an ob rem faciam*, (“whether”) I shall do this to no purpose or successfully.” The English “or not” is made, in the second part, by *necne* ; as, *di utrum sint necne sint queritur*. *Posset lege agi necne pauci quondam sciebant*. It is used also in direct questions ; as, *nunt hæc tua verba necne ?*

§28.—*Obs.* 1. Many of these conjunctions are used also with the indicative mood. In such cases, they are to be regarded merely as connectives, or used adverbially, denoting circumstances of time, manner, &c.

§29.—*Obs.* 2. Many other conjunctions are used, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive mood ; such as, *quum* (or



*sed*), *etsi*, *tametsi* (. *amenetsi*), *quanquam*, *si*, *sin*, *ne*, *nisi*, *siquidem*, *quod*, *quia*, &c. *Quoniam*, *quando*, and *quandoquidem*, usually have the indicative.

630.—*Obs. 3.* *Quum* (or *cum*), when it signifies *time*, merely, takes the indicative, and is translated *when*; as, *tempus fuit quum homines v agabantur*. When it denotes a *connection of thought*, implying dependence, it takes the subjunctive, and may be translated variously, according to the nature of the connection, *since*, *although*, *as soon as*, *seeing that*, &c.; as, *cum ea ita sint*, “*since these things are so*.”

631.—*Obs. 4.* In narration, *quum* is joined with the imperfect and the pluperfect subjunctive, even when it relates to *time*, but the event denoted by the subjunctive, usually relates to that expressed in the clause on which the subjunctive depends, not only in regard to *time*, but also, in some sense, as a *cause*; as, *cum sciret Clodius iter necessarium Miloni esse Lanuvium, Rōmā subito ipse profectus est*.

632.—*Obs. 5.* The conjunction *ut*, is elegantly omitted after *volo*, *nolo*, *rōgo*, *præcor*, *censeo*, *suadeo*, *licet*, *oportet*, *necesse est*, and the like. Also, after the imperatives *sine*, *fac*, or *facito*; as, *præcor venias*, “*I beg (that) you would come*,” *fac facias*, “*see (that) you do it*.” So also *ne* is omitted after the imperative *cave*; as, *cave facias*, “*See thou do it not*.”

633.—*Obs. 6.* After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut* is used in a negative sense, “*that not*,” and *ne*, in an affirmative sense, “*that*,” as, *timeo ut faciat*, “*I fear that he will not do it*.” *Timeo ne faciat*, “*I fear that he will do it*.” In a few examples, however, *ut* seems to have an affirmative, and *ne*, a negative meaning. *Ne non*, after *timeo*, *vereor*, is equivalent to *ut non* after other verbs; as, *timeo ne non impetrem*, “*I fear that I shall not obtain it*.”

634.—6. In oblique discourse (651 Exp.), the verb, in dependent clauses, takes the subjunctive after any conjunctive term.

## § 141. THE SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER THE RELATIVE.

635.—**RULE LV.** The relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod*, requires the subjunctive, when it refers to an *indefinite*, *negative*, or *interrogative* word,—to words implying *comparison*,—or assigns the *reason*, *cause*, or *end* of that which precedes,—and also in all cases of *oblique narration*.

This General Rule may be subdivided into the following

### SPECIAL RULES.

636 —**Rule 1.** When the relative *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* refers to

an *indefinite, negative, or interrogative* word, it requires the subjunctive mood; as,

<i>Sunt (homines) qui dicant,</i>	<i>Some people say.</i>
<i>Nemo est qui haud intelligat,</i>	<i>There is no one who does not understand.</i>
<i>Quis est qui utilia fugiat?</i>	<i>Who is there that shuns what is useful?</i>

637.—EXPLANATION.—This rule takes effect only when the antecedent is something indefinite, and when the relative clause is the predicate of the sentence, i. e. when it expresses what is affirmed or denied respecting the subject of the verb, and has for its antecedent, the indefinite, negative, or interrogative itself, and not any intervening word. These are indispensable conditions of this rule.

638.—*Obs.* 1. The indefinites referred to in this rule are the indefinite pronouns (127–1, and 128, except *quidam*), and the periphrastic expressions, *est qui*, “some one,” *sunt qui*, *fuērunt qui*, “some;” to which may be added the verbs *reperio*, *invenio*, *habeo*, *adsum*, *desum*, *venio*, and some others, used in a similar manner, by which indefinite expressions are formed nearly of the same import with *est qui*, *sunt qui*, &c.; as, *omnis aetas quod agat inveniet*.

639.—The negative antecedents most common under this rule are such as *nemo est*, *nullus est*, *unus non est*, *alius non est*, or *extat*, *nihil est*, *nec est*, or *non quisquam est*, *vix ullus est*, *nec ullus est*, *vix decimus quisque est*, (or any other ordinal used in a similar manner,) *non multi sunt*, *non multum est*; also, *non est*, or *nihil est*, meaning “there is no cause, or reason why;” and also after *non* or *nihil habeo*. After these last, *quod* “which,” must follow, governed by *propter* understood; as, *non est quod scribas*; “there is no reason why you should write.”

640.—The interrogative expressions in the antecedent clause under this rule are chiefly these: *Quis est?* *quantus est?* *uter est?* *ecquis est?* *numquis est?* *an quisquam est?* *an est aliquis?* *quotusquisque est?* *quid est?* *quot sunt?* *quam multi sunt?* And also, *quid est?* *numquid est?* “what cause?” as, *num quid est quod timeas?* “why should you fear?”

*Not.*—Interrogatives under this rule are of a general character, and usually imply a negation; as, *quis est qui faciat?* “who is there that does it?” i. e. “nobody does it.”

641.—*Rule II.* The relative is followed by the subjunctive, when the relative and antecedent clauses involve a comparison, or when the latter expresses the purpose, object, or design, of something expressed by the former; as,

*Dignus qui amitur*, “worthy to be loved.” *Quis tam esset amens qui scriper viveret?* “who would be so foolish as to live always?”

642.—EXPLANATION.—In all cases under this rule, the relative is equivalent to *ut*, with the personal pronoun representing the antecedent; i. e. it is used for *ut ego*, *ut tu*, *ut ille*, *ut nos*, *ut vos*, *ut illi*. In such cases, *ut* with the personal pronoun, is frequently used instead of the relative. Here, also, the relative clause must belong, not to the subject, but to the predicate of the sentence, for in such cases only can it be resolved into *ut ego*, &c.

643.—*Obs. 2.* The relative is used in this sense, and requires the subjunctive.

1st. When it comes after *dignus, indignus, idoneus*, and the like in the predicate; as, *patres, si dignum qui (ut ille) secum ab Romula numeretur, creantur, auctores fient.*

2d. When it follows *tam, tantus, adeo*; as, *quis est tam Lynceus, qui in tantis tenebris nihil offendat? i. e. ut in tantis, &c.* "who is so quick-sighted that he would not stumble in such darkness?"—In like manner when it follows *talis, ejusmodi, hujusmodi*, the subjunctive is commonly used; as, *est innocentia affectio talis anti mi qui nō ceat nemini.* Also, after *is, ille*, and *hic*, in the sense of *talis* (123—2. b.); as, *non tu is es qui nescias*, "you are not such a one as not to know." Sometimes, in such cases, *ut* takes the place of *qui*; as, *nēque enim is es, Catilina, ut te pudor revocarit, &c.*

3d. When it follows a comparative with *quam*; as, *major sum quam cui possit fortuna nocere.*

4th. When the relative clause expresses the *purpose, object*, or *design*, for which the person mentioned in the antecedent clause is *appointed*, or the thing spoken of is *possessed*, or *done*; as, *Lacedæmonii legatos Athēnas miserunt qui (i. e. ut illi) eum absentem accusarent.* In such sentences the relative and subjunctive may be properly rendered, *to, in order to*; thus, "the Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens, *to accuse* (or *in order to accuse*) him in his absence." Sometimes here also, *ut* takes the place of the relative; as, *missus sum ut (i. e. qui) te adducērem.*

644.—*Obs. 3.* When *qui* combines with its signification as a relative, or when the preceding clause implies a force equal to *so that, such that, the man to, such a man as*, it requires the subjunctive; as, *stultum est timere quod vitare non possis*, "it is foolish to fear that which (i. e. such a thing as) you cannot avoid." In all such cases, the antecedent clause conveys a vague and general idea, i. e. the person or things referred to are regarded as a *species* or class, rather than as individuals.

645.—*Rule III.* When the relative with its clause assigns the cause or reason of the action or event announced by the antecedent clause, it requires the subjunctive; as,

*Peccavisse mihi videor qui a te decesserim*, "I think that I have erred in having (or, because I) left you."

646.—*EXPLANATION.*—In all constructions of this kind, the relative is equivalent to *quum, quod, quia, or quoniam* *ego, tu, is, nos, &c.*, signifying "because," or "seeing that I," "thou," &c.

647.—*Obs. 4.* The relative has this force in the expressions *quippe qui, ut qui, utpote qui*, and consequently is followed by the subjunctive; as, *libros non contemno, eundem, qui ppe qui nunquam legērim*, "I do not, indeed, despise the books, for (or because) I have never read them."

648.—*Rule IV.* When *qui* possesses a power equal to *quamvis, or etsi* *is. or to si, modo, or dummodo*, "although—i—

provided that he, she, it," &c., it requires the subjunctive mood; as,

*Tu aquam pumice postūlas, qui ipse sitiāt,* "you demand water from a pumice stone, though itself is parched with thirst." *Lūco, consilii quamvis egregii quod non ipse afferret inimicus,* "Lūco was the enemy of any measure, however excellent, if (i. e. provided that) he himself did not propose it."

649.—*Rule V.* The relative *qui* takes the subjunctive after *enim* and *sōlus*; when they restrict the affirmation to a particular subject; as,

*Hec est una contentio quæ adhuc permansērit,* "this is the only dispute which has remained till this time."

650.—*Rule VI.* In *oblique* or *indirect* discourse, the relative requires the subjunctive mood; as,

*Socrātes dicere solēbat, omnes in eo quod scirent sātis esse eloquentes,* "Socrates was accustomed to say, that all were eloquent enough in that which they knew."

651.—*EXPLANATION.*—Discourse is said to be *direct*, when a writer or speaker delivers his own sentiments,—*oblique*, when a person relates in his own language, what another speaker or writer said; an example will best illustrate this distinction.—Tacitus introduces Galgacus, addressing the Caledonian army as follows: "When I contemplate the causes of the war, and the necessity to which we are reduced, great is my confidence that this day, and this union of yours, will prove the beginning of universal liberty to Britain." This is the *direct* discourse. If, instead of introducing Galgacus himself, to speak his own speech, the historian had only told us what he said, he would have used the *oblique* or *indirect* style, thus: Galgacus said, "that when he contemplated the causes of the war, and the necessity to which they (the Roman army) were reduced, his confidence was great, that that day, and that union of theirs, would prove the beginning of universal liberty to Britain."

In the first of these, or the *direct* discourse, it will be observed that when the speaker refers to himself, he uses the *first* person, "I," "we." When he refers to those addressed, he uses the *second* person, "thou," "you."—and that the leading verbs in Latin are all in the indicative mood, and independent of any previous word. But in the second or *oblique* discourse, the *third* person *only* is used, whether the speaker is said to refer to himself, or his hearers, or a third person. And the leading verbs in Latin, are in the infinitive mood, or in the subjunctive with *ut*, and, in either case, dependent on the verb with which the account is introduced such as, "he said," "stated," "replied," or the like. It is evident, therefore, that while in both forms, the same idea is expressed in nearly the same language, the construction of the sentence in each is entirely different; thus, in direct discourse: *Antonius inquit, "Ars eārum rerum est quæ sciuntur."* Cic. Quintilian relates the same thing in the *oblique* form; thus, "*Antonius vit. artem eārum*

*rerum esse quæ sciuntur.*" Here, the leading verb in the direct form, is *est* in the indicative mood, having no dependence on any previous word, and having its subject in the nominative case. In the *oblique* form, the same verb is in the infinitive, *esse*; it is dependent on *ait*, and has its subject in the accusative. In the *first*, the verb in the subordinate clause, is in the indicative, *sciuntur*; in the last, it is in the subjunctive mood, *sciuntur*. Hence, the following general principle.

652.—In every unmixed example of *oblique narration*, two moods only are admissible, the *infinitive* and *subjunctive*, and consequently, as the relative is never employed but in the *secondary*, and subordinate members of a sentence, it must always, in *oblique* statements, be followed by the subjunctive.

653.—*Obs. 5.* In connection with this general principle, however, two things must be noticed :

1st. In *oblique* discourse, the narrator frequently introduces a remark of his own, for the purpose of explanation, but yet so closely interwoven with the discourse he is reporting, as to seem to be a part of it. Such remark is usually introduced with the relative, and the indicative, and may be detected by this construction: Thus, *Dixerunt Cæsar, non quidem sibi ignära quæ de Silano vulgabantur, sed non ex rumore statuentiam*, "Cæsar replied 'that those things, indeed,' viz.: which were rumored concerning Silanus, 'were not unknown to him,'" &c. Tac. Here, the clause, *quæ de Silano vulgabantur*, is not to be regarded as a part of what Cæsar said, but as a clause thrown in by the historian to inform his readers what things they were which Cæsar meant. But if the verb had been *vulgarentur*, it would have shown that it was a part of what Cæsar said.

2d. In animated *oblique* narration, the historian sometimes suddenly passes from the *oblique* to the *direct* discourse, and, instead of reporting the remarks of the speaker, introduces him, as it were, to speak for himself. This is always manifest by the transition, from the use of the infinitive and subjunctive, to that of the indicative, and from the use of the third person to denote the speaker, and the person addressed, to that of the first and second. The following is often quoted as an appropriate example of this. (OBLIQUE) "*Sabinæ mulieris dirimere infestas acies, hinc patres, hinc viros orantes,*" ne se sanguine nefando, soceri, generique respergerent; ne parricidio macularent partus suos, nepotum illi, liberum hi progeniem. (DIRECT) *Si piget affinitatis inter vos, si connubii piget, in nos vertite iras, nos causa belli, nos vulnèrum ac cædium viris ac parentibus sumus, melius peribimus, quam sine alteris vestrum viduæ aut orbæ vivamus.* Liv I. 13.

654.—*Obs. 6.* A verb in the *Future-perfect* indicative, in direct discourse, will always take the pluperfect subjunctive, when the same sentence is thrown into the oblique form, whatever be the tense of the introductory verb: thus, *Dabitur quodcumque optâris.* Ov.; in direct discourse is thus related by Cicero, in the oblique form: *Sol Phæthonti filio facitūrum esse dixit quidquid optâset.*

655.—*Obs. 7.* To this construction may be referred the subjunctive connected by a relative or casual conjunction with the preceding verb in

any of its parts, for the purpose of expressing, not what the writer asserts himself, but what is alleged by others; as, *Socrates accusatus est quod corrumpēret juventūtem*, "Socrates was accused, because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth." The indicative here would assert, on the part of the writer, that Socrates *did* corrupt the youth.

*Note.*—The verbs *pūto*, *dico*, *arbitror*, and the like, are sometimes used, especially by Cicero, in the subjunctive, with the verb following in the infinitive, when properly they should be in the indicative, (meaning, "as they said, thought, &c.") and the verb, in the clauses dependent on them, in the subjunctive; as, *Rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quia dicēret*, Cic., "He (Hannibal) returned soon after, because, as he said, he had forgotten something;" for *quod, ut dicebat, oblitus esset nescio quid. Kimentiendo quæ se . . . audisse dicērent*, SALL., "By forging stories which, as they said, they had heard;" for *quæ, ut dicebant, audivissent*.

656.—*Obs.* 8. When an infinitive or subjunctive mood has a clause connected with it by a relative or other connecting word, for the purpose of restricting the predicate, otherwise indefinite, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive mood; as,

*Quid enim pōtest esse tam perspicuum, quam esse aliquod nūmen quo hæc regantur*, "For what can be so clear, as that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed?"

## 657.—§ 142. CONSTRUCTION OF THE IMPERATIVE.

1. The Imperative mood is used to command, exhort, &c., 149. Its subject, with which it agrees by Rule IV., is the person or persons addressed in the command, &c., and hence, it is properly used only in the *second person*. In Latin, as well as in Greek, the imperative mood has a distinct form for the third person; it is, however, but seldom used, and chiefly in the enacting of laws, having the force of a command on those for whom they are designed.

2. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *ne*, and *nor* by *nēve*; as, *Ne crēde colōri*. VIRG. *Homīnem mortuum in urbe ne sepelito, neve urito*. CIC.

3. Instead of the simple imperative, sometimes *fac* or *cave*, with the subjunctive, are used, and *nōli* with the infinitive; as *fac venias*, "come;" *cave existimes*, "do not think;" *Nōli timēre*, "do not fear." For other tenses, used imperatively, see 150.

## § 143. CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

[For the tenses of the infinitive mood, in connection with different tenses of the verb, see § 47.]

658.—The infinitive mood, in Latin, is used in two ways; *First*, as a verbal noun, and *Second*, as a verb. As a verbal noun, it has no subject; as a verb it always has. Without a subject, it cannot form a proposition

or express an affirmation; with a subject, it always does. In the first case, it comes under the regimen of the verb, either alone as a verbal noun, or with the words depending upon it, as a *substantive phrase*. In the second, it comes under its regimen, only in connection with its subject, as a distinct, though dependent proposition, or *substantive clause*. Hence, all that belongs to the construction of this mood, may be comprised in what relates to the use of it, in these two ways.

## § 144. I. THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT.

659.—The infinitive without a subject, may be regarded as a verbal noun in the singular number, neuter gender (271), and in form indeclinable, but differing from all other nouns, inasmuch as it involves the idea of *time*, and has all the power of governing that belongs to the verb. The character of the infinitive as a noun, is manifest from its being used in almost every way that a noun is. It is used,

1. As the nominative to a verb; as, *invidere* (*invidia*) *non cecidit in sapientem. Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mōres. Ov. Utinam emori fortūnis meis honestus exitus esset*; or as the nominative after the verb; as, *sive illud erat sine funere ferri; bene vivere est bis vivere.*

2. As a case in apposition to a preceding nominative; as, *res erat spectaculo digna, videre Xerxem, &c.*; “it was a *thing* worthy of being seen, to see Xerxes,” &c.

3. It is used as a genitive after substances and adjectives; as, *tempus est abire*, for *abundi*;—*soli cantare periti Arcades*, equivalent to *cantandi* or *cantūs*. Rules VII IX.

4. As a dative after adjectives, &c.; thus, *et vos servire magis quam imperare parati estis*. Rule XVI.

5. As an accusative after an active verb; as, *da mihi fallere*, HOR.; *terram cum primum arant, proscindere appellant; cum iterum, offringere dicunt*. VARR.—After a preposition; as, *nihil intererit inter dare et accipere. SEN. Præter plorare. HOR. Præter loqui. LIV.*

6. As a vocative; as, *O vivere nostrum, for O vita nostra.*

7. As an ablative in various constructions; as, *dignus amari*; as the case absolute; thus, *Audito regem in Siciliam tendere*. This example, however, has a subject *regem*. Rule XXIII.

8. It has an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as, *scire tuum nihil est; ipsum dicere nunquam non ineptum est, &c.* CIO. In this way, we may account for the poetic “*dulce loqui*,” “*ridere decorum*,” &c.

9 It governs the genitive like a noun; as, *cujus non dimicare fuit vincere.*

*Note.*—It is however, chiefly as the subject or the object of a verb, in the nominative or accusative, that it is used as a noun. The examples

above (3, 4, 7), in which it is used, where a noun or pronoun would be put in the genitive, or dative, or ablative, are of rare occurrence, and in some cases may be otherwise explained. The infinitive as a noun, in the nominative or accusative, is subject to the following Rules:

660.—RULE LVI. One verb being the subject of another, is put in the infinitive; as,

*Facile est quæri,  
Mentiri turpe est,*

*To complain is easy  
To lie is base.*

661.—EXPLANATION.—In the first example the subject or thing spoken of is expressed by the infinitive *quæri*, which is therefore the nominative to the verb *est*. A noun used instead of *quæri* would have to be in the nominative case. In such sentences, it is manifestly improper to say that *est* governs *quæri*, just as it would be improper to say the verb governs its nominative. This rule applies also to the infinitive with a subject.

662.—*Obs.* 1. A proper attention to this rule will show that many verbs considered impersonal, or thought to be used impersonally, are not really so, but have an infinitive or a clause of a sentence for their subject or nominative; thus, *nec profuit Hydræ creescere per damnum*, “nor did it profit the Hydra to grow by his wounds.” Ovid. Here, instead of saying that *profuit* is used impersonally, and governs *creescere* in the infinitive; the true construction is, that *profuit* is used personally, and has *creescere* for its nominative. So, the following, *cædit in eundem misereri et invidere*. Cic. *Vacare culpâ magnum est solatium; neque est te fallere quidquam*, &c., 307.

663.—RULE LVII. One verb governs another, as its object, in the infinitive; as,

*Cupio discere,*

*I desire to learn.*

664.—EXPLANATION.—The infinitive mood under this rule is equivalent to a noun in the case which the preceding verb usually governs: Thus, in the example, *cupio* is a transitive active verb and governs *discere*, as if it were a noun in the accusative. The meaning is, that a verb, used as the object of another, without a conjunction or connective word, must be put in the infinitive. This Rule also applies to the infinitive with a subject.

*Note.*—In all cases of the infinitive without a subject, under this rule, the infinitive expresses an act, or state, of the subject of the preceding verb.

665.—*Obs.* 2. The infinitive without a subject, is used only after certain verbs, especially such as denote *desire, ability, intention or endeavor*; such as, *cupio, opto, volo, nolo, malo*;—*possum, queo, nequeo, valeo, cogito, conor, tendo, disco, doceo, debeo*, &c. By the poets it is used after *fuge, parce* for *noli*, and sometimes after *caveo, fugio, gaudeo*, &c. In a few instances it is used after verbs of motion, to denote a purpose; as, *intravit videre*, “he came to see.” Ter. *Initi consilia tollere reges*, “he devised a plan to destroy the kings.”



666.—*Obs.* 3. In many cases, the infinitive after such verbs may be changed for the infinitive with a subject; as, *cupio me esse clementem*, CIC.; for *esse clementem*, or *clementem*. 326. Or, for the subjunctive with *ut*, or *ne*; as, *sententiam ne diceret recusavit*, for *sententiam dicere*.

667.—*Obs.* 4. The infinitive without a subject is also used after adjectives, and nouns. So used, it is equivalent to a noun in the case governed by such adjective or noun. See examples, 659–3, 4, 7.

668.—*Obs.* 5. Sometimes the infinitive is understood; as, *ei provinciam Numidiam populus jussit*; sc. *dāri*.

*Note* 1.—When the verbs *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, in the indicative or subjunctive, are translated by the English auxiliaries *can*, *will*, *will not*, *will rather*; or in the past tense by *could*, *would*, &c., the infinitive following is translated without *to* before it; as, *pōtēst fieri*, “it can be done” *volo ire*, “I will go;” *malo facere*, “I would rather do it;”  *nolite timere*, “do not fear.”

*Note* 2.—The present infinitive is generally translated as the perfect, without *to*, when it comes after the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect, of *possum*, *volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, translated *could*, *would*, *would not*, *would rather*; and with *to* after the same tenses of *debeo* and *oportet*, translated *ought*; as, *melius fieri non potuit*, “it could not have been done better;” *volui dicere*, “I would have said;” *sumere arma noluit*, “he would not have taken arms;” *dividi oportuit*, “it ought to have been divided.” &c.

*Note* 3.—After verbs denoting *to see*, *hear*, *feel*, and the like, the present infinitive is sometimes rendered by the English present participle; as, *audivi eum dicere*, “I heard him saying.” Also when the infinitive is the subject of another verb; as, *morari periculosum est*, “delaying (to delay) is dangerous.”

### *The Historical Infinitive.*

669.—*Obs.* 6. The verb governing the infinitive is sometimes omitted, especially is this the case in historical narration, when the infinitive follows a nominative case in the sense of the imperfect indicative, or the perfect indefinite; as, *irridere omnes mihi*, “all envied me.” TER. *At Romani, domi militiaeque intenti, festinare, parare, aliis alium hortari*. SALL. When thus used, it is supposed to be governed by *cēpit* or *cēperunt* understood. Cases occur, however, in which this supplement cannot be made; as, *verum ingenium ejus haud absurdum, posse jacere versus, jocum movere*, &c., (310.) SALL. The historical infinitive and the imperfect, are often connected in the same construction; as, *Albinus . . . senatum de fœdere consulēbat; et tamen interim exercitui supplementum scribere . . . auxilia arcessere, denique modis omnibus festinare*. SALL, Jug. 39.

## 670.—§ 145. II. THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT

The infinitive with a subject possesses the character of the verb, and affirms of its subject as in the indicative or the subjunctive mood; but

only in subordinate and dependent propositions. These propositions themselves have a substantive character, and generally stand in the relation of substantives to a verb, or phrase, on which they depend; sometimes as a nominative to, or the subject of the verb, but generally as an object or an accusative after it. Thus used, they may be called *substantive clauses*—and as such, they fall under the two preceding rules. Thus:

1st. The infinitive with a subject must be considered as the nominative when it is the subject of a sentence, i. e. when anything is declared of it as, *te non istud audivisse mirum est*, “that you have not heard that is wonderful” Here, *te non istud audivisse* stands as the nominative to *est*. Rule LVI. See 661.

2d. The infinitive with its subject is the accusative or object after a verb, when it has for its direct object, the idea expressed by a dependent infinitive clause, or when such clause takes the place of a noun or pronoun governed by the verb; as, *miror te non scribere*, “I wonder that you do not write.” Here, *te non scribere* stands as the object of *miror*, which governs it as an accusative by Rule LVII, or XX. See 664.

*Note.*—The verbs which admit an infinitive with its subject as their direct object, are those which denote an action of our senses, or internal faculties, or such as denote *feeling, knowing, thinking, or saying*; as, *audio, video, sentio, cognosco, intelligo, memini, puto, dico, prodo, scribo, promitto*, and the like. These seldom take a conjunction (*ut* or *quod*) with the indicative or subjunctive as their object. See Obs. 5, et seq.

671.—RULE LVIII. The subject of the infinitive is put in the accusative; as,

*Gaudeo te valere,*                      I am glad that you are well.

672.—EXPLANATION.—The subject of the infinitive is the person or thing spoken of in the dependent clause, and may be, as in Rule IV., a noun, a pronoun, &c., and is always to be in the accusative case; except as in 669.

Under this Rule, the infinitive with its subject forms a distinct proposition, and is equivalent to the indicative, or subjunctive mood in English, together with the connective “*that*.” Thus, in the example, *te valere* contains the simple proposition, “You are well.” The equivalent of the English “that,” connecting it as a subordinate clause with the preceding verb, is implied in the infinitive form. If the infinitive stand after an accusative which does not form with it a distinct proposition, i. e. which is not its subject, it does not belong to this Rule, but the accusative is governed by Rule XX.; as, *Præteus pæcus egit alios visere montes*. HOR. Hence,

#### OBSERVATIONS.

673.—Obs. 1. The English particle “*that*,” may be called the sign of the accusative before the infinitive, being used to connect the infinitive clause with the preceding. It may often be omitted, however, in translating, as it frequently is in English; thus, *aiunt regem adventare*, “they say the king is coming, or, “that the king is coming.”

674.—*Obs. 2.* The accusative subject, in Latin, is translated by the nominative in English. Hence, the accusative of the relative pronoun referring to persons must be rendered *who*, not *whom*; as, *quem confectum vulneribus diximus*, “*who*, we said, was exhausted with his wounds.”

*Note.*—The infinitive with its subject in the accusative is sometimes translated in the same form in English; as, *cupio te venire*, “*I wish you to come*,” *quos discordare novèrat*, “*whom he had known to differ*,” *eum vocari jussit*, “*he ordered him to be called*.”

N. B.—For the various ways of rendering the different tenses of the infinitive after different tenses of the indicative or subjunctive, see at length, 180.

675.—*Obs. 3.* When the subject of the infinitive is the same with the subject of the preceding verb, it is seldom expressed, unless required to be emphatic; as, *pollicitus sum scripturum (esse) sc. me*, “*I promised that I would write*.” After verbs signifying to be accustomed, to dare, I can, I ought, the infinitives *esse*, *judicari*, *videri*, &c., having the same subject with the preceding verb, have an adjective or noun after them in the nominative case, indicating that the subject of the infinitive understood is regarded as a nominative according to the Greek construction. Gr. Gr. § 175. *Exc.* Thus, *sòlet tristis videri*; *aude sapiens esse*; *dèbes esse diligens*. See also, 325–328, and 738–3, 3d.

676.—*Obs. 4.* When the preceding verb is in the passive voice, the subject of the infinitive may be changed into the subject of that verb, or remain unchanged in the accusative, the passive verb being used impersonally, or rather having the infinitive clause for its subject; thus, *matrem Pausaniæ eo tempore vixisse dicitur*, or, *màter Pausaniæ eo tempore vixisse dicitur*, “*it is said that the mother of Pausanias was living at that time*,” or, “*the mother of Pausanias is said to have been living*,” &c. Gr. Gr. § 175, *Obs. 3.*

*Note.*—When a relative clause has the same verb as the proposition with the infinitive on which the relative clause depends, but without the repetition of the verb, the subject of the verb in the relative clause is put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Platonem ferunt idem sensisse quod Pythagoram*, “*They say that Plato thought as Pythagoras did*.” But, if the verb of the relative clause is expressed, its subject must be in the nominative; as, *Platonem ferunt . . . idem sensisse quod Pythagoras sensit*.

The same analogy is observed with the conjunction *quam* after a comparative. See 470, 1st and 2d.

677.—*Obs. 5.* The accusative with the infinitive, in a subordinate clause, is in some cases equivalent to the subjunctive with *ut* or *quod*, “*that*,” preceding; as, *Optavit ut in currum patris tolleretur*, or, *Optavit se in currum patris tolli*, “*He (Phæthon) desired that he should be taken up into his father’s chariot*.” *Gaudeo te valere*, or *gaudeo quod vales*, “*I am glad that you are well*.” But though, in a few cases, the one expression may be changed for the other, usage has given so decided a preference in some cases to the one form, and in others to the other, that such change would be improper; thus,

1st. When the dependent clause expresses *purpose* or *design*, or when "*that*" is equivalent to "*in order that*," "*so that*," *ut* with the subjunctive is used. 627-1. 2d.

2d. After verbs of *endeavoring*, *aiming*, *accomplishing*, such as *facio*, *efficio*, *perficio*, &c., the subjunctive with *ut* is always used. Hence arises the use of *facere ut*, instead of the indicative, to denote a fact; thus, *fecit ut dimitteret milites*, is equivalent to *dimisit milites*.

3d. Verbs signifying to *request*, *demand*, *admonish*, *advise*, *commission*, *encourage*, *command*, and the like, usually take the subjunctive with *ut*, which may generally be rendered as the infinitive; as, *præcepit ut irem* "He commanded me to go."

*Note*.—In narrative, dependent clauses, expressing obliquely the wish, command, or message of another, whether the verb be in the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, or in the infinitive with a subject, or both in connection, often depend on a word denoting to *say*, *saying*, understood, or implied in the leading verb; as, *Ad Bocchum nuntios mittit (qui dicerent ut) quam primum copias adduceret; prælii faciendi tempus adesse*. SALL. JUG. 97. *Verba facit (dicens) se arma cepisse*. Id. 102.

4th. *Ut* with the subjunctive follows verbs signifying to *happen*, to *occur*, &c., as, *fit*, *incidit*, *occurrit*, *contingit*; *est*, *restat*, *superest*, &c. 627-1. 4th.

5th. Verbs signifying *willingness*, *unwillingness*, *permission*, *necessity*, &c., commonly take the accusative with the infinitive. Also, generally, verbs denoting *seeing*, *hearing*, *knowing*, *feeling*, *thinking*, *saying*, &c., but sometimes they take the subjunctive.

6th. When the dependent clause expresses not a thought or conception only, but a fact, the verb is put in the indicative or subjunctive with *quod*; as, *Inter causas malorum nostrorum est quod vivimus ad exempla*.

7th. After verbs denoting a feeling of pain or pleasure, and the outward expression of those feelings, such as *gaudeo*, *delector*, *angor*, *doleo*, and the like, *quod*, "*that*," in the sense of "*because*," with the indicative or subjunctive is used, or the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Quod spiratis (or vos spirare) indignantur*. Whether the indicative or subjunctive is to be used, depends on whether the proposition expresses a fact, or only a conception of the mind.

678.—*Oba*. 6. After such verbs as *existimo*, *puto*, *spero*, *affirmo*, *suspicor*, &c., the place of the future infinitive is elegantly supplied by *fore*, or *futurum esse*, followed by *ut* with the subjunctive; as, *Nunquam putavi fore ut supplex ad te venirem*; for *(me) venturum esse*.

This construction is necessary when the verb has no supine, and consequently no future infinitive active. See 179-9. *Fore* is sometimes used with the perfect participle, to denote a future action in the passive voice as, *Quod videret nomine pacis bellum involutum fore*.

679.—*Oba*. 7. The verb on which the infinitive depends is sometimes omitted especially in interrogations, or exclamations, expressive of indignation; as, *Mene inrepto desistere nec posse*, &c. VIAG. In such cases, some such expression as *credibile est* is understood.

680.—*Exc* The historical infinitive has its subject in the nominative (810 and 669); as, *Fama præclara esse*, "*His fame was illustrious*." SALL.

## § 146. CONSTRUCTION OF THE PARTICIPLES.

[For the tenses, and the use of the participles in certain connections, see § 49.]

681.—RULE LIX. Participles, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

*Homo cārens fraude,*  
*Pax tantum amāta,*

A man wanting guile.  
Peace so greatly loved.

682.—REM. Participles together with gerunds and supines being parts of the verb, govern the case of their own verbs; so that no separate rule for the government of cases by these, is at all necessary.

## OBSERVATIONS.

683.—Obs. 1. The verbs *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *cūro*, *facio*, *habeo*, *comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to the compound tenses in English, and other modern languages; thus, *Habeo compertum*, for *compēri*, "I have found;" *Missam iram faciet*, for *iram mittet*, &c.

684.—Obs. 2. The perfect passive participle is often used, to supply the place of a verbal noun, when such a noun is wanting, or but seldom used; as, *Hæ litæ recitatæ magnum luctum fecerunt*, "The reading of this letter, (not "this letter being read") caused great mourning." So, *Captum Tarentum*, "The taking of Tarentum;" *receptus Hannibal*, "the reception of Hannibal." *Ab urbe condita*, "from the building of the city."

685.—Obs. 3. The future active participle is frequently used, to denote the purpose or design of an action, and is in such case rendered *to*, in order to; as, *ad Jovem Hammōnem pergīt consultūrus de origine sua*, "he goes to Jupiter Ammon to (or in order to) consult him about his origin." So also the present; as, *pētens veniam venīt*.

686.—Obs. 4. The future participle in *dus*, also, denotes a purpose, when joined with verbs signifying *to give*, *to deliver*, *to agree for*, *to have*, *to receive*, *to undertake*, &c.; as, *Testamentum tibi trādit legendum*, "he delivers his will to you to be read;" So, *his aera dedit habendum*.

687.—Obs. 5. The participle in *dus*, generally implies the idea of *propriety*, *necessity*, or *obligation*. This is almost always the case when it agrees with the subject of a sentence; as, *Delenda est Carthago*, "Carthage must be destroyed." Sometimes, also, when it agrees with words not in the subject; as, *Facta narrābas dissimulanda tibi*, "You were relating (things which) ought to have been concealed by you." The *doer* in such constructions, when expressed, must be in the dative. 581.

Note.—In some cases, the participle in *dus*, is used as a present participle passive. 182, Note 3.

688.—Obs. 6. Participles are often used instead of a dependent clause to express some condition or explanatory circumstance usually introduced in English, by a relative pronoun, or the particles *as*, *when*, *although*, *since*

*while*, and the like; as, *Cæsar hostes in fugam coniectos persecutus est*, "Cæsar pursued the enemy who had been put to flight." *Curio ad focum sedenti*, "To Curio as he was sitting by the fire." *Dionysius, Syracusis expulsus, Corinthi pueros docēbat*, "Dionysius, when he was expelled from Syracuse," &c.

689.—*Obs. 7* A participle is joined with another verb, and in the same case with its subject, for the two following purposes, viz.:

1st. It is used simply to connect an accompanying with the main action, whether simultaneous or antecedent, in the same subject. Thus used, the participle and verb may be rendered as two verbs connected by a conjunction, as, *venit ad me clamitans*, "he came to me and cried out," lit. *crying out*, *Cæsar hostes aggressus fugavit*, "Cæsar attacked and defeated the enemy."

2d. Sometimes, as in Greek, it is used to connect an accompanying with the main action, in the same subject, as the *cause*, *manner*, or *means* of effecting it; as, *hoc faciens vivam melius*, "by doing this I will live better." *Hoc*. So used, it is equivalent to the ablative Gerund.

When a participle does not refer to some leading subject in the proposition, but to a new subject introduced, and not depending on any word in the sentence, the participle is put with that new subject, in what is called—

#### THE CASE ABSOLUTE.

690.—**RULE LX.** A substantive with a participle, whose case depends on no other word, is put in the ablative absolute; as,

*Sole oriente fugiunt tenebræ*, { *The sun rising, or while the sun rises, darkness flies away.*

691.—**EXPLANATION.**—This Rule properly affects the substantive only, with which the participle then agrees by Rule LIX.

692.—*Obs. 8.* This construction is much more frequent in Latin, than in other languages, partly, because there is no perfect participle in the active voice. When, therefore, in connection with an active or deponent verb, a past act of its subject is to be expressed by the participle, the perfect participle passive must be used; and hence, the *object* of the act must be introduced as a new subject, which, having no dependence on any word in the sentence, must, under the rule, be put in the *ablative absolute*. Thus, in English we say: Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, followed with all his forces. There being no perfect participle in Latin corresponding to "having sent," which would agree with *Cæsar*, in the nominative case, this clause must be changed into the passive form; thus, *Cæsar, equitatus præmissus, subsequēbatur*, &c., "literally, Cæsar, the cavalry being sent before, followed," &c. Hence,

**REM.**—When in this construction, the act expressed by the perfect participle passive, is an act of the subject of the leading verb, it is better to render it into English by the perfect participle active; thus, *Cæsar, hæc dictis, profectus est*, "Cæsar having said these things departed."

693 —As the perfect participle of deponent verbs has an active sig

nification, it is not necessary to resort to such a change in the use of them. Thus, *Cæsar hæc locūtus concilium dimisit*, "Cæsar having said these things, dismissed the council." With the participle or a verb, not deponent, the passive form and the ablative would be used thus; *Cæsar his dictis, concilium dimisit*, etc., "Cæsar, these things being said, dismissed the council."—The first of these expressions, besides being more direct, is also much more definite; for here, there is no doubt as to who said the things referred to, but in the second, it is left in doubt, whether the things referred to were spoken by Cæsar or by some other. This doubt can be removed only by the context, or by express mention of the doer, which is not often done. In the following sentence, the two forms are combined: *Cæsar omnium remōtis equis, cohortātus suos prælium comāsit*.—So, *agros Remōrum depopulātī omnibus viciis ædificiisque incensis. Cæs.*

*Note.*—A few instances occur in which this construction is used when there is no change of subject, and where a different case would have expressed the same thing; thus, *legio ex castris Varrōnis, adstante et inspectante ipso*, for *adstantis et inspectantis ipsius*.

694.—*Obs. 9.* The ablative absolute, in the case of deponent, as well as of other verbs, is used to indicate the order and connection of events narrated, as in the above examples; or to mark the time of action by reference to that of another action; as, *Pythagōras, Tarquinio Superbo regnante, in Italiam venit*, "Pythagōras came into Italy in the reign of Tarquin the Proud." In all such cases, it is equivalent to the subjunctive with a connective word. Thus, *his dictis*, in the former example, is equivalent to *quum hac dixisset*—*Tarquinio Superbo regnante*, to *quum Tarquinus Superbus regnaret*; and so of others.

695.—*Obs. 10.* The verb *sum* having no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and adjective, are used in the case absolute without a participle, which is supplied in English by the word *being*; thus, *se dūce*, "he (being) leader;" *se consule*, "he (being) consul," or "in his consulship;" so, *C. Duilio et Cn. Cornelio Astūā consulibus*.

696.—*Obs. 11.* Some word, phrase, or clause of a sentence, sometimes supplies the place of the substantive, and has a participle with it in the ablative; as, *nondum comperto quam regiōnem hostes petissent*;—*audito Dariū appropinquāre*;—*vāle dicto*, &c.

697.—*Obs. 12.* Sometimes the noun is understood; as, *pārto quod avēbas*. Sometimes a plural substantive is joined with a singular participle, as, *nōbis præsente*. For the construction of Gerundives, see next section.

## 698.—§ 147. GERUNDS\* AND GERUNDIVES.

The Gerund is a verbal noun, in the singular number governed in the oblique cases as other nouns, and having the same power of government as

\* Some Graminarians, who regard the gerund as a verbal noun, speak of it as such only in the oblique cases. They think that the nominative of the verbal is supplied by the infinitive mood, and that which is called the nomi-

the verb. As, therefore, the rules which apply to the construction of nouns and verbs, apply to the gerund, it is unnecessary to repeat them here. All that is peculiar to the construction of the gerund, is comprised in the following Rules and Observations.

699.—RULE LXI.—The verb *Est* with the gerund for its subject, implies necessity, and governs the dative of the doer; as,

Nom. <i>Legendum est mihi,</i>	I must read, lit. reading is to me.
Nom. <i>Moriendum est omnibus,</i>	All must die, lit. dying is to all.
Acc. <i>Scio moriendum esse mihi,</i>	I know that I must die, lit. that dying is to me.

700.—EXPLANATION. The dative here is governed by *est*, according to R. II (894.) In the first and second examples, the gerund in the nominative is the subject of *est*, which agrees with it by R. IV. (808.) In the third example, the gerund is in the accusative, and the subject of *esse*, by R. LVIII. (871.) The necessity implied in this construction is stronger than that expressed by the participle in *dus*, the latter implying only that a thing *is to be done*, or *should be done*,—the former that it *must be done*. See 214-9.

701.—Obs. 1. The dative of the doer in this construction is often understood; as, *Orandum est (tibi) ut sit sana mens in corpore sano.*

702.—Obs. 2. The gerund in *di*, of the genitive case, is governed by substantives or adjectives; as,

<i>Tempus legendi,</i>	Time of reading, 332.
<i>Cupidus discendi,</i>	Desirous of learning, 849.

703.—Obs. 3. The gerund in *do*, of the dative case, is governed by adjectives, signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

<i>Charta utilis scribendo,</i>	Paper used for writing, 382.
---------------------------------	------------------------------

Sometimes it is governed by verbs; as, *adesse scribendo*. CIO. *Apertat habendo ensem*. VIRG. *Is finis censendo factus est.*

704.—Obs. 4. The gerund in *dum*, of the accusative case,

native of the gerund, is really the neuter of the participle in *dus*, in a passive sense, joined with the verb *est* used impersonally. Thus, *studendum est mihi*, they think should be literally rendered “it is to be studied by me.” Though this solution is plausible, and would seem to answer in many cases, there are others in which we, at least, cannot see how it could be applied. It cannot be applied unless the participle in *dus* in *all cases* has, or may have, a passive sense; but of this there is no evidence, and facts are opposed to it. Thus, it will hardly be admitted as a literal rendering of *moriendum est omnibus*, to say “it is to be died by all,” and it certainly cannot be so used in those examples in which it governs the same case that it does in its active sense; thus, *utrum pace nobis an bello esset utendum*. CIO. *Quum suo cuique judicio utendum sit*. Indeed, the fact that gerunds, in all cases, do govern the case of their own verb, seems to be opposed to their being or considered as parts of the passive participle in *dus*.



when not the subject of the infinitive, is governed by the prepositions, *ad*, *inter*, &c.; as,

*Inter docendum,*

In time of teaching.

705.—*Obs. 5.* The gerund in *do*, of the ablative case, is governed by the prepositions *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

*Pœna a peccando absterret,* Punishment frightens from sinning.

Or, without a preposition, as the ablative of manner, or cause; as,

*Memoria excolendo augetur,* The memory is improved by exercising it.

*Defessus sum ambulando,* I am wearied with walking.

706.—*Obs. 6.* The gerund, as a verbal noun, resembles the infinitive, and is often put for it; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*. The gerund, however, is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tisidium vocaretur ad imperandum*—"to receive orders;" *arbitrari videndo*,—"by being seen," i. e. *dum videtur*.

#### CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDIVES.

707.—**LXII.** Gerunds governing the accusative, are elegantly turned into gerundives in *dus*, which, with the sense of the gerund, instead of governing, agree with their substantive in gender, number, and case; as,

Gerund,	<i>Tempus petendi pacem,</i>	} Time of seeking peace.
Gerundive,	<i>Tempus petendæ pacis,</i>	
Gerund,	<i>Ad petendum pacem,</i>	} To seeking peace.
Gerundive,	<i>Ad petendam pacem,</i>	
Gerund,	<i>A petendo pacem,</i>	} From seeking peace.
Gerundive,	<i>A petendâ pace,</i>	

708.—**EXPLANATION.**—This rule applies only to the oblique cases. In the first of these examples, the Gerund *petendi* is governed in the genitive by *tempus* according to Rule VI., 382, and then governs *pacem* in the accusative by Rule XX., 486. In the gerundive form, the genitive *pacis* is governed by *tempus*, by Rule VI., 382, and the gerundive *petendæ* agrees with it by Rule II., 268. In the gerund form, the *gerund* is governed, and then governs the noun. In the gerundive form, the *noun* is governed, and then the gerundive agrees with it by R. II. In order to change from the gerund to the gerundive, it is necessary only to change the accusative of the noun, into the case of the gerund, and then make the gerundive agree with it; and from the gerundive to the gerund, change the noun into the accusative, and the gerundive into the gerund, in the same case as before.

The following are examples to be changed:

**GEN.** *Consilia urbis delendæ*;—*civium trucidandorum*;—*nominis Romanum extinguendi*.

**DAT.** *Perpetiundo labōri idoneus*;—*capessendæ reipublicæ habilis*;—*nātus miseras ferendo*;—*ad miseras ferendas*;—*onēri ferendo aptus*.

**ACC. and AB.** *Ad defendendam Rōmam*;—*ab oppugnando Capuam*;—*ad collocandum signa*;—*in diripiendis castris*.

709.—*Obs.* 7. Instead of the gerundive in the genitive plural, to agree with a noun in that case, the gerund in the genitive singular is often retained, probably for the sake of Euphony; as, *Fuit exemplōrum eligendi potestas*. *Cic.* *Facultas agrōrum condonandi*; *sui* (pl.) *condonandi*, instead of *eligendōrum*, *condonandōrum*. Also, sometimes when the noun is singular and feminine; as, *ejus* (fem.) *videndi cupidus*. **TER.**

710.—*Obs.* 8. The gerunds of verbs, which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the gerundive, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiundæ urbis*; but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, never *tui*.

711.—*Obs.* 9. After *esse*, *fore*, the gerund and the gerundive in the genitive (§64), are used, to express tendency to a thing, or serving a certain purpose; as, *Regium imperium initio conservandæ libertatis, atque augendæ reipublicæ fuerat*. **SALL.** *Cat. VI.* "The regal government at first had served the purpose of preserving liberty, and increasing the state," [*Aiebant*] *ea prodendi imperii Romani, iradendæ Hannibali victoriæ esse*, "They said that these things had a tendency to betray the Roman government, and to give the victory to Hannibal." **LIV.** *Quum animadvertisset pleræque dissolvendæ religionum esse*, "When he had perceived that most of them tended to destroy religion." **LIV.**

## § 148. CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

### 1. The Supine in *UM*.

712.—**RULE LXIII.** The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

*Abiit deambulatum,*

He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ducere cohortes prædatum*. **LIV.** *Nunc venis irritum dominum? Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitror, te id admonitum venio*. **PLAUT.**

713.—*Obs.* 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *it se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *opëram dat*, *ut se perdat*, "he is bent on his own destruction." **TER.** So, *ut perditum eatis—ut perditis; ereptum eunt,—eripiunt*. **SALL.** This supine with *iri*, taken impersonally, supplies the place of the future infinitive passive; as, *non credëbas illam sine tua opëra iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved; *an credëbas iri (z te, or ab aliquo) deductum* (i. e. *ad inducendum*) *illam domum*. **TER.** The supine here may be considered as a verbal substantive governing the accusative, like the gerund

714.—*Obs.* 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides those of motion; as, *dedit filiam nuptum*; *cantatum provocemus*. TER. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *divisit copias hiematum*. NEP.

715.—*Obs.* 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *venit oratum opem*: or 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandæ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*.

## 2. The Supine in *u*.

716.—**RULE LXIV.** The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

*Facile dictu*,

Easy to tell, or to be told:

So, *nil dictu fœdum, visûque, hæc limina tangat, intra quæ puer ex. Juv.* *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus*;—*fas est*, or *nēfas est dictu*;—*opus est scitu*. CIO.

717.—*Obs.* 4. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *nunc obsonatu redeo*,—"from getting provisions." PLAUT. *Præmum cubitu surgat* (villicus), *postremum cubitum eat*, "let the overseer be the first to rise, and the last to go to bed." CATO.

718.—*Obs.* 5. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *difficile cognitu, cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum*; *res facilis ad credendum*. CIO.

719.—*Obs.* 6. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood;—the supine in *um*, by the preposition *ad*; and the supine in *u*, by the preposition *in*.

## § 149. CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

720.—**RULE LXV.** The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *nēque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple similar cases and moods; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,*  
*Nec legit nec scribit,*

Honor father and mother.  
He neither reads nor writes.

721.—**EXPLANATION.**—Words coupled by a conjunction under this Rule, are in the same construction, i. e. two nominatives coupled together are the subject of the same verb, or predicates of the same subject; and nouns coupled together in the oblique cases are governed by the same word, as in the first example. *Veros* thus coupled have the same subject or nominative, as in the second example.

722.—*Obs.* 1. The copulative conjunctions under this Rule are such as *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *etiam*, *que*; the disjunctives *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, *seu*, *sive*, *ve*, *neve*, *neu*; also *quam*, *præterquam*, *nisi*, *an*, *nempe*, *quavis*, *nequid*, *sed*, *autem*, *verum*, and, in general, such connectives as do not imply a dependence of the following, on the preceding clause.

723.—*Obs.* 2. These conjunctions connect not only words, but also clauses whose construction is the same, i. e. whose subjects are in the same case, and their verbs in the same mood; as, *concidunt venti, fugiuntque naves*.

724.—*Obs.* 2. Words in the same construction are sometimes in a different case: still they are connected by the copulative conjunctions; thus, *mea et reipublicæ interest*. Here, *mea* and *reipublicæ*, though in different cases, are in the same construction by R. XVIII. (415). So, *constitit ares et plûris*, Rule XLIV. (581). *Vir magni ingenii, summæque industriæ*, Rule VII. (339), &c. The subjunctive being often used for the imperative is sometimes coupled with it; as, *disce nec invidere*.

725.—*Obs.* 4. The indicative and subjunctive may be connected in this manner, if the latter does not depend on the former.

726.—*Obs.* 5. When two words coupled together have each a conjunction, such as, *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, *nec*, &c., without being connected with a preceding word, the first *et* is rendered *both* or *likewise*; the first *aut* or *vel*, by *either*; the first *sive*, by *whether*; and the first *nec* or *neque*, by *neither*. So, also, *tum . . . tum*, and *cum . . . tum*, "not only . . . but also" or "both . . . and;" and so of others; as, *nunc . . . nunc*; *jam . . . jam*, &c. In such cases, the conjunctive before the first word renders it more emphatic: *tum . . . tum* often mean, "at one time, . . . at another time."

727.—*Note.* Affirmative and negative sentences are connected by conjunctions in pairs, as follows:

#### Affirmative.

*et*—*et* very common.  
*e*—*que*, not unfrequently.  
*que*—*et*, connecting single words.  
*que*—*que*, only in poetry & SALL.

#### Negative.

*neque*—*neque*, *nec*—*nec*,  
*neque*—*nec*, not unfrequently.  
*nec*—*neque*, seldom.

#### Affirmative and negative.

<i>et</i> — <i>neque</i> , <i>nec</i> ,	very frequent.
<i>neque</i> , <i>nec</i> — <i>et</i> ,	very frequent.
<i>nec</i> , <i>neque</i> — <i>que</i> ,	occasionally.

728.—*Obs.* 6. After words expressing similarity or dissimilarity, as and *atque* signify "as;" and "than;" as, *fâcis ac si me rôges*, "you do as if you should ask me;"—*me cõlit æquè atque patrõnum surm*, "he shows me as much attention as," &c.;—*si alitèr scribo ac sen*, "if I write otherwise than I think."

729.—*Obs.* 7. Conjunctions that do not imply doubt and contingency, are usually joined with the indicative mood; those which do imply doubt, contingency and dependence, are, for the most part, joined with the subjunctive (628).

## § 150. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A **FIGURE** is a manner of speaking different from the regular and ordinary construction, used for the sake of beauty or force.

730.—The figures of Syntax, or, construction, may be reduced to four: *Kilipms, Pleonasm, Enallage, and Hyperbaton*. Of these, the *first*, and *second*, and *third*, respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the *fourth* respects only the arrangement of words.

731.—1. **ELLIPSIS**, is the omission of one or more words necessary to complete the sense; as,

*Aliunt, ferunt, &c., sc., homines. Aberrant bidui, sc., iter, or itinere. Quid multa? sc., dicam.* Under this may be comprehended,

1st. **ASYNDETON**, or the omission of a conjunction; as, *vēni, vidē, vici. Deus optimus, maximus, sc., et.*

2d. **Zeugma** is the uniting of two nouns or infinitives to a verb which is applicable only to one of them; as, *pācem an bellum gērens SALL.*, where *gērens* is applicable to *bellum* only. In this way, *nēgo* is sometimes used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative; as, *Nēgant Cēsārem mansūrum, postulatāque interposita esse; i. e. dicuntque postulata.*

3d. **Syllepsis** is when an adjective or a verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another. See examples 266, 267.

4th. **Synecdōche** is the use of an accusative of the part affected instead of an ablative; as, *Explēri mentem nēquit*, 538. **VIRG.**

732.—2. **PLEONASM**, is using a greater number of words than is necessary, to express the meaning; as,

*Sic ore locūta est*, “thus she spoke with her mouth.” **VIRG.** Under this are included,

1st. **Polysyndeton**, or, a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *undē Euris que Notus que ruunt.* **VIRG.**

2d. **Hendiādys**, or the expression of an idea, by two nouns connected by a conjunction, instead of a noun limited by an adjective or genitive; as, *Patēris libāmus et auro*, “We offer a libation from cups and from gold,” instead of *putēris aureis*, “from golden cups.”

3d. **Periphrasis**, or a circuitous mode of expression; as, *tēnēri fētus ovum*, “the tender young of the sheep,” instead of *agni*, “lamba.”

733.—3. **ENALLAGE**, is a change of words, or a change of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice, of the same word, for another. It includes,

1st. **Antimeria**, or the using of one part of speech for another as, *nossum vivere*, for *nostra vita*; *conjugium videbit*, for *conjugem*, &c.

2d. **Heterōsis**, or the using of one form of a noun, pronoun, or verb, for another; as, *Romānus praliō victor*, for *Romāni victores*. *Truncus me sustulērat*, for *sustulisset*. **HOM.**

3d. *Antiptōsis*, or the using of one case for another; as, *cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo*, for *Iūlus*. (261 and 433). VIRG. *Uxor invicti Iōmis esse necia*, for *le esse uxōrem*. HOR. See 675.

4th. *Synesis*, or *Synthēsis*, is adapting the construction to the sense of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Concursus populi mirantium*;—*Pars in crucem acti*;—*scelus qui*, &c. 278 and 292.

5th. *Anacoluthon*, or a departure in the end of a sentence, from the construction with which it commenced. Thus, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est alicunde aliquis objectus lābos . . . . lucro est*. Here the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habemus*, and ended as if he had said *nōbis omnibus*. As it is, the nominative *nos* has no verb, and *est*, which, in such sentences, requires the dative of a person, is without it.

734.—4. **HYPERBATON**, is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses. It includes,

1st. *Anastrophe*, or an inversion of the order of two words; as *Transtra per et rēmos*, for *per transtra*, &c.;—*Collo dare brachia circum*, for *circumdare*, &c.

2d. *Hysteron protēron*, or reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Moriāmur et in media arma ruāmus*. VIRG. *Vālet atque vivit TER*.

3d. *Hypallagē*, or an interchange of constructions; as, *In nōva fert animus mutatas dicere formas corpōra*; for *corpōra mutata in nōvas formas*. *Dare classibus Austros*, for *dare classes Austriis*.

4th. *Tmesis*, or separating the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gena*, for *Septentriōni*. VIRG. *Quæ me cunque vocant terræ*, for *quæcunque*, &c.

5th. *Parenthesis*, or the insertion of a word or clause in a sentence, which interrupts the natural connection; as, *Tityre, dum redea (brēvis est via) pasce capellas*. VIRG.

To these may be added,

735.—**ARCHAISM**, which in Syntax means the use of ancient forms of construction; as, *Opēram abutitur*, for *opērā*. TER. *Quil tibi hanc curatio est rem?*

736.—**HELLENISM**, or the use of Greek constructions; as, *Abstīnēto irārūm*, for *iris*. HOR. *Tempus desistere pugne*, for *pugnā*. VIRG.

## § 151. LATIN ARRANGEMENT.

737.—In all languages, the arrangement of words in a sentence is different; and all, it is probable, consider the order of arrangement in their own language the most natural, being that to which they have themselves been most accustomed. In a language like the English, however, the words of which have but few changes of form or termination, much more

depends on their position in a sentence than in those languages which are able, by the changes of form only, to indicate the relation of words to each other, however they may be arranged. Thus, when we say in English, "*Alexander conquered Darius*," if we change the order of the words, we necessarily change the meaning also; as, *Darius conquered Alexander*. But whether we say in Latin, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*, or place these words in any other possible order of arrangement, the meaning is the same, and cannot be mistaken; because it depends, not on the position, but on the form of the words. This gave the Latin writer much more scope to arrange his words in that order which would best promote the strength or euphony of the sentence, without endangering its perspicuity. Still, even in Latin, custom has established a certain order of arrangement which is considered the best. And, though no certain rules can be given on this subject, which are applicable to every instance, the following general principles and Rules may be noticed.

### 738.—General principles of Latin Arrangement.

1. The word governed is placed before the word which governs it.

2. The word agreeing is placed after the word with which it agrees. More particularly,

739.—Rule I. The subject is generally put before the verb; as, *Deus mundum gubernat*.

*Exc. 1.* When the subject is closely connected with a clause following the verb, it is placed after the verb; as, *erant omnino duo itinera, quibus, &c.*

*Exc. 2.* When the subject is emphatic, it usually follows the verb and concludes the sentence.

740.—Rule II. The adjective or participle most commonly follows the substantive with which it agrees.

With few exceptions, however, the place of the adjective or participle is entirely arbitrary. The following usages may be noticed:

1st. The adjectives, *primus, medius, ultimus, extremus, summus, infimus, imus, supremus, reliquus, cæterus*, denoting the first part, the middle part, &c., are generally put before the substantive; as, *summus mons; extremo libro*, "the top of the mountain," &c.

2d. When the substantive governs another in the genitive, the adjective generally precedes both; as, *Duo Platonis precepta*.

3d. When the substantive is governed by a preposition, the adjective is frequently put before the substantive; as, *Hæc in questione; magna in parte*.

4th. The adjective is often put before the substantive for the sake of Euphony

5th. *Id, ille, hic, iste*, are generally placed before the substantive, and, if used substantively, are placed before the participle

741.—*Rule III.* The relative is commonly placed after, and as near as possible to its antecedent.

*Obs. 1.* The relative is commonly the first word of its own clause, and when it stands for *et ille, et hic, et is*, or for these pronouns without *et*, (295, 1st,) it is always first. Sometimes, however, the relative and its clause, precede the antecedent and its clause.

742.—*Rule IV.* The governing word is generally placed after the word governed; as, *Carthaginensium dux—laudis avidus—Romanorum ditissimus—hostem fudit*, &c. Hence,

*Obs. 2.* The finite verb is commonly the last in its own clause. To this, however, there are many exceptions.

743.—*Rule V.* Adverbs are generally introduced before the word which they are intended to modify; as, *Leviter ægritantes, leniter curant*. *Cic.*

744.—*Rule VI.* Conjunctions generally introduce the clause to which they belong; as, *AT si dures*;—*SED profecto in omni re fortuna dominatur*.

*Exc. 1.* The enclitics *que, ve, ne*, are always annexed—the two first, to the latter of the two words which they serve to connect; as, *albus aterve*. *Cic.* *Boni malique*;—and the last, to the subject which the question chiefly regards; thus, *loquarne?* “shall I speak?” *egone loquar?* “shall I speak?”

*Exc. 2.* The conjunctions *autem, enim, vero, quodque, quidem*, are always placed after the introductory word of the clause, generally in the second place, and sometimes in the third; *etiam, igitur*, and *tamen*, more frequently in the second and the third place than in the first.

745.—*Rule VII.* Words connected in sense, should be as close as possible to each other, and the words of one clause should never be mixed with those of another.

746.—*Rule VIII.* Circumstances, viz: the *cause*,—the *manner*,—the *instrument*,—the *time*,—the *place*, &c., are put before the predicate; as,

*Eum ferro occidi*;—*Ego te ob egregiam virtutem semper amavi*.

747.—*Rule IX.* The proper name should precede the name of rank or profession; as, *Cicero orator*.

748.—*Rule X.* The vocative should either introduce the sentence, or be placed among the first words; as, *Crêdo vos, iudices*.

749.—*Rule XI.* When there is an antithesis, the words chiefly opposed to each other, should be as close together as possible; as, *Appêtis pecuniam, virtutem abjicis*.



750.—*Rule XII.* Dependent clauses, as well as single words, are placed before the principal finite verb, upon which they chiefly depend.

751.—*Rule XIII.* As a general rule, where the case will admit, it is proper to proceed from shorter to longer words; and from shorter to longer clauses and members of a sentence, as we advance towards the close.

Hence, it will follow, that a sentence should not conclude with a monosyllable, when it can be avoided.

REMARK.—These are to be considered only as general Rules, subject to many modifications and exceptions, according to the taste of different writers. However, as a general guide, with close attention to classical usage and euphony, they may be of use to enable the student to avoid errors on this subject.

## 752.—§ 152. ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

A sentence is such an assemblage of words as makes complete sense. as, *homo mortalis est*, "man is mortal."

All sentences are either *simple* or *compound*.

A *simple* sentence contains only a single affirmation; as, *vita brevis est*.

A *compound* sentence consists of two or more simple sentences connected together; as, *his dat, qui cito dat*.

### 753.—SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A simple sentence or proposition consists of two parts—the *subject* and the *predicate*.

The *subject* is that of which something is affirmed.

The *predicate* is that which is affirmed of the subject.

The subject is commonly a noun or pronoun, but may be anything, however expressed, about which we can speak or think.

The predicate properly consists of two parts,—the *attribute* affirmed of the subject, and the *copula*, by which the affirmation is made; thus, in the sentence, *vita brevis est*, the subject is *vita*; the predicate is *brevis est*, of which *brevis* is the *attribute*, and *est* the *copula*. In most cases, the attribute and copula are expressed by one word; as, *equus currit*, "the horse runs"—*equus currens est*, "the horse is running."

The name of a person or thing addressed forms no part of a sentence.

The predicate may be a noun, a pronoun, an adjective, a preposition with its case, an adverb, a participle, an infinitive mood, or clause of a sentence, as an attribute, connected with the subject by a substantive verb as a copula or it may be a verb which includes in itself both attribute and copula, and is therefore called an *attributive verb*.

## 754.—THE SUBJECT.

The subject of a proposition is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

I. The *grammatical* subject is the person or thing spoken of, *unlimited* by other words.

The *logical* subject is the person or thing spoken of, together with all the words or phrases by which it is limited or defined; thus, in the sentence, *vir bonus sui similem querit*, the grammatical subject is *vir*; the logical, *vir bonus*. Again:

II. The subject of a proposition may be either *simple* or *compound*.

A *simple* subject consists of one subject of thought, either unlimited, as the grammatical, or limited, as the logical subject.

A *compound* subject consists of two or more simple subjects, to which belongs but one predicate; as, *Romulus et Remus fratres erant*

## 755.—MODIFICATIONS OF THE SUBJECT.

A *grammatical* subject may be modified, limited, or described in various ways; as,—

1. By a noun in apposition; as, *Cicero orator factus est consul*
2. By a noun in the genitive; as, *Ira Dei lenta est.*
3. By an adjunct; as, *De victoria Cæsaris fama perfertur.*
4. By an adjective word, i. e. an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as, *Iustitia gaudent viri boni.*—*Suus cuique erat locus definitus.*—*Vox missa nescit reverti.*
5. By a relative and its clause; as, *Vir sapit, qui pauca loquitur*

Each grammatical subject may have several modifications; and if it has none, the grammatical and logical subject are the same.

## 756.—MODIFICATION OF MODIFYING WORDS.

Modifying, or limiting words, may themselves be modified.

1 A noun modifying another may itself be modified in all the ways in which a noun, as a grammatical subject, is modified.

2 An adjective qualifying a noun may itself be modified—

1st. By an adjunct; as, *campi ad prælium boni: liber a delictis.*

2d. By a noun; as, *Major pietate: æger pedibus.*

3d. By an infinitive mood or clause of a sentence, a gerund, or a supine; as, *Homo dignus cantari—dignus qui impetret—dignus ut figat palam in pariete.*—*Charis utilis scribendo.*—*Monstrum mirabile dictu.*

4th. By an adverb; as, *Homo longe dissimilis;—facile princeps.*

3. An adverb may be modified—

1st. By another adverb; as, *multo magis.*

2d. By a substantive in an oblique case; as, *conversanter naturæ optime omnium; proxime castris*

757.—The subject of a proposition may be an infinitive mood, with or without a subject; or a clause of a sentence; as, *humānum est errāre Incerta pro certis habere stultissimum est. Nunc opus est, te animo valēre. Reliquum est, ut officitiis certemus inter nos*

### 758.—THE PREDICATE.

I. The *Predicate*, like the subject, is either grammatical or logical.

The *grammatical* predicate consists of the attribute and copula, not modified by other words.

The *logical* predicate is the grammatical, with all the words or phrases that modify it; thus, *vir bonus sui similem quærit*; the grammatical predicate is *quærit*; the logical, *quærit similem sui*.

When the grammatical predicate has no modifying terms, the logical and grammatical are the same.

II. The predicate, like the subject, is either simple or compound.

A *simple* predicate affirms but one thing of its subject; as, *vita brevis est; ignis urit*.

A *compound* predicate consists of two or more simple predicates affirmed of one subject; as, *Cæsar venit, vidit, vicit. Probitas laudatus et alget*.

### 759.—MODIFICATIONS OF THE PREDICATE

The grammatical predicate may be modified or limited in different ways.

I. When the attribute in the predicate is a noun, it is modified—

1. By a noun or pronoun limiting or describing the attribute; as, *honor est præmium virtutis. Invidia est supplicium suum*.

2. By an adjective or participle limiting the attribute; as, *ira furor brevis est*.

II. When the grammatical predicate is an attributive verb, it is modified—

1. By a noun or pronoun as its object; as, *res amicos invenit. Laus debetur virtuti. Sapiens imperat cupiditatibus. Venter caret auribus*.

2. By an adverb; as, *bis dat qui cito dat; bene scribit*.

3. By an adjunct; as, *venit in urbem; ex urbe venit*.

4. By an infinitive; as, *cupio discere*.

5. By a dependent clause; as, *polla dicit tram esse brevem insaniam.—Constituit ut ludi fierent*.

760.—Nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and other words modifying the predicate, may themselves be modified, as similar words are when modifying the subject.

Infinitives and participles modifying the predicate, may themselves be modified in all respects, as the attributive verb is modified.

### COMPOUND SENTENCES.

761.—A *Compound sentence* consists of two or more simple sentences

or propositions connected together. The propositions which make up a compound sentence, are called *members* or *clauses*.

762.—The propositions or clauses of a compound sentence, are either independent or dependent; in other words, *coördinate*, or *subordinate*.

An *independent* clause is one that makes complete sense by itself.

A *dependent* clause is one that makes complete sense only in connection with another clause.

The clause on which another depends, is called the *leading* clause; its subject is the *leading* subject; and its predicate, the *leading* predicate.

763.—Clauses of the same kind, whether *independent* or *dependent*, are connected by such conjunctions as *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, &c.

764.—Dependent clauses having finite verbs, are connected with their leading clauses in three different ways.

1. By a relative; as, *vir sapiens, qui pauca loquitur*.

2. By a conjunction; as, *loquaces, si sapiat, vitet*.

3. By an adverb; as, *ubi quid datur otii, illud chartis; rogabat cur unquam fugisset*.

765.—A subordinate clause, consisting of an infinitive with its subject, is joined to a leading clause without a connecting word; as, *gaudeo te valere*.

#### ABRIDGED PROPOSITIONS.

766.—A compound sentence is sometimes converted into a simple one, by rejecting the connective, and changing the verb of the dependent clause into a participle. A simple sentence thus formed is called an *abridged proposition*; as, *bello confecto discessit*, for *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit*. *Cæsar, hæc locutus, profectus est*, for *quum Cæsar hæc locutus esset, profectus est*.

#### 767.—EXAMPLES OF ANALYSIS.

##### 1. *Vita brevis est*.

This is a simple sentence, of which

The logical subject, and also the grammatical, is *vita*.

The logical predicate, and also the grammatical, is *brevis est*, in which *brevis* is the attribute, and *est* the copula.

##### 2. *Labuntur anni*.

This is a simple sentence, of which

The logical subject, and also the grammatical, is *anni*.

The logical predicate, and also the grammatical, is *labuntur*, an attributive verb including both the attribute and copula.

##### 3. *Vërum dëcus in virtute positum est*.

This is a simple sentence, of which

The logical subject, is *vërum dëcus*.

The logical predicate is, *in virtute positum est*

The grammatical subject is *dēus*, qualified by the adjective *vērūm*.

The grammatical predicate is *positum est*, modified by the adjunct *in virtūte*.

#### 4. *Romulus et Remus fratres erant.*

This is a simple sentence, having a compound subject.

The logical subject is *Romulus et Remus*, compound, consisting of two subjects connected by *et*.

The logical predicate is *fratres erant*.

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

#### 5. *Probitas laudatur et alget.*

This is a simple sentence with a compound predicate.

The logical subject is *probitas*.

The logical predicate is *laudatur et alget*, compound, the parts of which are connected by *et*.

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

#### 6. *Video meliōra probōque; deteriōra sēquor.*

This is a compound sentence, consisting of two independent or coördinate clauses in juxta position.

The first clause is a simple proposition with a compound predicate, of which

The logical subject is *ēgo*, understood.

The logical predicate is *video meliōra probōque*.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *video probō que*, compound, consisting of two predicates connected by *que*, both modified by their object, *negotia*, understood, and that qualified by the adjective *meliōra*.

The second clause, *deteriōra sēquor*, is a simple proposition, of which

The logical subject is *ēgo*, understood.

The logical predicate is *deteriōra sēquor*.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *sēquor*, modified by its object, *negotia*, understood, qualified by the adjective, *deteriōra*.

#### 7. *Quæ in terrâ gignuntur, ad ūsum hominis omnia creantur.*

This is a compound sentence, consisting of one leading, and one dependent clause, connected by *quæ*.

The leading clause, *ad ūsum hominis omnia creantur*, is a simple sentence, or proposition, of which

The logical subject is *omnia (negotia)*, restricted by the relative clause *quæ in terrâ gignuntur*.

The logical predicate is, *ad ūsum hominis creantur*.

The grammatical subject is *negotia* understood, qualified by the adjective *omnia*, and restricted by the relative clause.

The grammatical predicate is *creantur*, modified by the adjunct *ad usum*, and that modified by *hominis*.

The dependent clause is *quæ in terrâ gignuntur*, of which

The logical subject is the *quæ*, which, being a relative, connects the dependent with the leading clause. (125.)

The logical predicate is, *in terrâ gignuntur*.

The grammatical subject is *quæ*, the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *gignuntur*, modified by the adjunct *in terrâ*.

### CONSTRUING.

768.—In Latin and English, the *general* arrangement of a sentence is the same, i. e. the sentence commonly begins with the subject and ends with the predicate. But the order of the words in each of these parts is usually so different in Latin, from what it is in English, that one of the first difficulties a beginner has to encounter with a Latin sentence, is to know how “to take it in,” or to arrange it in the order of the English. This is technically called *construing* or *giving the order*. To assist in this, some advantage may be found by carefully attending to the following

### DIRECTIONS FOR BEGINNERS.

769.—DIRECTION 1. As all the other parts of a sentence depend upon the two leading parts, namely, the subject or **NOMINATIVE**, and the predicate or **VERB**; the first thing to be done with every sentence, is to find out these. In order to this,

*First.* Look for the leading verb, which is always in the present, imperfect, perfect, pluperfect, or future, of the indicative, or in the imperative mood,\* and usually at or near the end of the sentence.

*Second.* Having found the verb, observe its number and person; this will aid in finding its nominative, which is commonly a noun or pronoun in the same number and person with the verb, commonly before it, and near the beginning of the sentence, though not always so, 789, R. I. with exceptions.

770.—DIRECTION 2. Having thus found the nominative and verb, and ascertained their meaning, the sentence may be resolved from the Latin into the English order, as follows:

1st. Take the *Vocative, Exciting, Introductory, or connecting words*, if there are any.

2d. The **NOMINATIVE**.

3d. Words *limiting or explaining* it, i. e. words agreeing with it, or governed by it, or by one another, where they are found, till you come to the *verb*.

4th. The **VERB**.

5th. Words *limiting or explaining* it, i. e. words which modify it, are governed by it, or depend upon it. 759, II.

\* All the other parts of the verb are generally used in subordinate clauses. So, also, is the pluperfect indicative. In oblique discourse, the leading verb is in the infinitive. 652.

6th. Supply everywhere the words *understood*.

7th. If the sentence be compound, take the parts of it severally as they depend one upon another, proceeding with each of them as above.

771.—DIRECTION 3. In arranging the words for translation, in the subordinate parts of a sentence, observe the following

#### 772.—RULES FOR CONSTRUING.

I. An oblique case, or the infinitive mood, is put after the word that governs it.

*Exc.* The relative and interrogative are usually put before the governing word, unless that be a preposition; if it is, then after it.

II. An adjective, if no other word depend upon it, or be coupled with it, is put *before* its substantive; but if another word depend upon it, or be governed by it, it is usually placed after it.

III. The participle is usually construed after its substantive, or the word with which it agrees.

IV. The relative and its clause should, if possible, come immediately after the antecedent.

V. When a question is asked, the nominative comes after the verb (in English, between the auxiliary and the verb). Interrogative words, however, such as *quis*, *quidus*, *quantus*, *uter*, &c., come before the verb.

VI. After a transitive active verb, look for an accusative;—and after a preposition, for an accusative or ablative; and arrange the words accordingly.

VII. Words in apposition must be construed as near together as possible.

VIII. Adverbs, adverbial phrases, prepositions with their cases, circumstances of time, place, cause, manner, instrument, &c., should be placed, in general, after the words which they modify. The case absolute commonly before them, and often first in the sentence.

IX. The words of different clauses must not be mixed together, but each clause translated by itself, in its order, according to its connection with, or dependence upon, those to which it is related.

X. Conjunctions are to be placed before the last of two words, or sentences connected.

#### 773.—*Examples of Resolution.*

*First.* Etēnim omnes artes, quæ ad humanitatem pertinent habent quoddam commūne vincūlum, et quāsi cognatiōne quādam inter se continentur. Cic.

1. In looking over this sentence, according to Direction first, we find the first leading verb to be *habent*, which must have a plural *nominative*. This leads us at once to *artes*, as the nominative. The *nominative* and verb being thus found on which the other parts depend, then

2 By direction 2, the general arrangement will be—

- 1 Connective word, *et̄nim*.
2. NOMINATIVE, *artes*.
3. Words limiting and explaining, *omnes, quæ ad humanitatem pertinent*.
4. The VERB, *habent*.
5. Words governed by it, *quoddam commune vinculum*.

3. Then by the rules in direction 3, the words in each of these divisions, will be arranged thus: 1. *Et̄nim*; 2. and 3. *omnes artes*, (R. II.) *quæ* (R. III.) *pertinent ad humanitatem*, (R. VIII.) 4. *habent*, 5. *quoddam commune vinculum*, (R. II.)

By proceeding in the same manner with the next clause, the whole will then stand thus:

*Et̄nim omnes artes, quæ pertinent ad humanitatem, habent quoddam commune vinculum, et continentur inter se quæsi quâdam cognitiõe:—* and may be translated as follows:

“For all the arts which pertain to liberal knowledge (civilization), have a certain common bond, and are connected together as if by a certain affinity between them.”

The pupil will now see, that in the first clause, or simple sentence, the grammatical subject is *artes*; the logical—*omnes artes quæ ad humanitatem pertinent*.—The grammatical predicate is *habent*; the logical—*habent quoddam commune vinculum* (758-1); and so with the next clause.

In like manner proceed with every new simple sentence, or with every succeeding clause of a compound sentence.

## 774.—§ 153. ETYMOLOGICAL AND SYNTACTICAL PARSING.

Having arranged and translated a sentence, the next thing is to parse it, in doing which, every word should be fully described by its accidents, traced to its primitive, if a derivative,—analyzed into its parts if compound, and its concord or government pointed out. The following scheme, with each part of speech, may be useful to the beginner.

1. NOUN.—1. Kind; 2. Gender; 3. Declension; 4. Decline; 5. Derived from (if derived); 6. It is found in—case; 7. Number; 8. is the nominative to—, or the predicate nominative after—(if the nominative); 9. is governed by—(if governed), 9. Rule.

2. ADJECTIVE.—1. Declension; 2. Decline it; 3. Compare it (if compared); 4. It is found in—case; 5. Number; 6. Gender; 7. agrees with—; 8. Rule.

3. PRONOUN.—1. Kind (i. e. personal, relative or adjective,); 2. Decline it; then—

If personal, 3. Person; 4. found in—case; 5. Number; 6. Reason of the case; 7. Rule; 8. stands for—

If a Relative pronoun, 3. found in—case; 4. Number; 5. Reason of the case; 6. Rule; 7. Its antecedent; 8. Rule.



If an Adjective pronoun; then, 3. Kind (i. e. possessive, indefinite, demonstrative, &c.), 4. It is found in—case; 5. Number; 6. Gender. 7. Agrees with; 8. Rule.

4. VERB.—1. Kind, viz: Transitive, or Intransitive. 2. Conjugation (or Irregular, if it is so); 3. Conjugate it; 4. Derived from (if derived); 5. Compounded of (if compounded); 6. It is found in—tense; 7. Mood; 8. Voice; 9. Person; 10. Number; 11. agrees with—as its subject. 12. Rule. 13. give a Synopsis.

5. ADVERB.—1. Derived from (if derived); 2. Compounded of (if compounded); 3. Compared (if compared); 4. It modifies—; 5. Rule.

6. PREPOSITION.—1. Governs—case; 2. Rule; 3. It points out the relation between—and—.

7. INTERJECTION.—1. Kind; 2. Governs, or is put with the—case; 3. Rule.

8. CONJUNCTION.—1. Kind; 2. Connects—; 3. Rule.

### 775.—*Example of Parsing by the foregoing Scheme.*

The sentence construed (773) may serve as an example of Etymological and Syntactical parsing, and for this purpose we arrange it in the order of translation, as above.

“Etēnim omnes artes, quæ pertinent ad humanitatem, hābent quoddam commune vincūlum, et continentur inter se quāsi quādam cognatiōne.”

*Etēnim*. Conjunction, casual, connecting the following sentence with the preceding, as containing the *cause* or *reason* of what is there stated.

*omnes*... An adjective, third declension, *omnis*, -is, -e, &c.; not compared, because incapable of increase,—in the nominative, plural, feminine, and agrees with *artes*, (Rule,) “An adjective agrees,” &c.

*artes*. A noun (or substantive), feminine, third declension, *ars*,\* *artis*, &c.—in the nominative plural,—the nominative to, (or subject to,) *hābent*.

*quæ*.... Relative pronoun,—in the nominative plural, feminine, nominative to *pertinent*, agrees with its antecedent *artes*, Rule III, and connects its clause with *artes* which it restricts.

*pertinent*, Verb intransitive, second conjugation, *pertineō*, -ere, -ui, *pertentum*; compounded of *per*. and *teneō*,—in the present indicative, active, third person plural, and agrees with *quæ*. Rule IV “A verb agrees,” &c.

---

\* As all nouns are *common* except proper nouns; to save time in parsing, this may always be taken for granted, mentioning, however, when the noun is proper. For the same reason, the words “gender,” “number,” “mood,” “tense,” may be omitted, these being sufficiently indicated by the words *masculine*, *singular*, *indicative*, &c.

*ad* . . . . . Preposition, governs the accusative, and shows the relation between *pertinent* and *humanitatem*.

*humanitatem*, Noun, feminine, third declension, *humanitas*,—*atis*, &c. Abstract, derived from *humānus* (33-2), in the accusative, singular, governed by *ad*. Rule XLVIII. "Twenty-eight prepositions," &c.

*hābent*, Verb transitive, second conjugation, *habeo*, -*ere*, -*ui*, -*itum*,—in the present indicative active, third person plural—and agrees with *artes*. Rule IV. "A verb agrees," &c. Synopsis.

*quoddam*, Indefinite adjective pronoun, *quidam*, *quædam*, &c., compounded of *quis* and the syllable *dam*.—in the accusative, singular, neuter, and agrees with *vinculum*. Rule II. "An adjective agrees," &c.

*vinculum*, Noun, neuter, second declension, *vinculum*, -*i*, &c.—in the accusative singular, governed by *hābent*. Rule XX. "A transitive verb in the active voice," &c.

*et* . . . . . A conjunction, copulative, connecting *continentur* with *hābent*, which are consequently in the same construction (721), and have the same nominative, *artes*.

*continentur*, A verb transitive, second conjugation; *contineo*, *continere*, *continui*, *contentum*; compounded of *con* and *teneo*,—in the present indicative passive, third person plural, and agrees with *artes*. Rule IV. "A verb agrees," &c. Synopsis.

*inter*, . . . A preposition which governs the accusative, and here points out the relation of reciprocity between the individuals represented by *se*. 118-5.

*se*, . . . Substantive pronoun, third person, in the accusative plural, feminine, governed by *inter*. Rule XLVIII. "Twenty-eight prepositions," &c., refers to *artes*, the subject of *continentur*, and is here taken *reciprocally*. 118-5.

*quasi*, . . An adverb of *manner* modifying *continentur*. Rule XLV. "Adverbs are joined," &c.

*quædam*, Indefinite adjective pronoun, *quidam*, *quædam*, &c., compounded of *quis* and the syllable *dam*,—in the ablative singular, and agrees with *cognatiōne*. Rule II. "An adjective agrees," &c.

*cognatiōne*, A noun, feminine, third declension, *cognatio*, -*onis*, &c., from *cognātus*, "related by birth," (from *con* and *nascor*)—in the ablative of *manner*, relating to *continentur inter se*. Rule XXXV. "The cause, manner," &c.

*Note*.—In this way, by stating everything respecting a word in the shortest manner, and without waiting to be questioned, parsing may be done rapidly, and much time saved; and then such questions may be put as will draw attention to anything not included in the above scheme. By a little attention, on the part of the teacher, in leading the pupil to understand and apply the preceding rules for arranging a sentence in the order of translation, he will save much time and labor to himself afterwards, and teach the learner to form the important habit of reasoning out a difficult sentence, and so, by repeated victories, to gain confidence in his own powers.

## PART FOURTH.

### PROSODY.

776.—PROSODY, in its common acceptation, treats of the quantity of syllables, and the construction of verses; in other words, of *Quantity* and *Metre*.

#### § 154. OF QUANTITY.

777.—QUANTITY means the relative length of time taken up in pronouncing a syllable.

1. In respect of quantity, every syllable is either *long* or *short*. When a syllable is sometimes long, and sometimes short, it is said to be *common*.

2. The quantity of syllables is determined by certain established rules; or, when no rule applies,—by the *authority* of the poets.

3. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special*; the former apply alike to all the syllables of a word; the latter, to particular syllables.

#### § 155. GENERAL RULES.

778.—RULE I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *deus, altus, nihil*.

779.—EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to a vowel before another vowel or diphthong in a different syllable, whether it be in the same, or in a different word. The letter *h*, in verse, being considered as only a breathing is wholly disregarded; hence, such words as, *nihil, mihi, dhe*, &c., come under this rule. A diphthong before a vowel does not come under this rule, except as in Rule V., *Exc.* 1.

#### 780.—EXCEPTIONS.

1. *A* is long in *dër, Cät, auläi, terräi*, and the like.

2. *E* is long after *i* in the genitive and dative of the fifth declension as, *speciëi*; not after *i*, it is common.

*E* is long in *ëheu, Pompëi*.

3. *I* not before *er*, is long in *fio*; as, *fio*, *fiebam*. Also in *alius*, the genitive of *alius*.

*I* is common in *Diana* (*Diana* or *Diāna*), and genitives in *ius*; but is short in *alterius*. Genitives in *ius*, in prose, have *i* long.

4. *O* is common in *Ohe*.

5. Greek words vary. As a general rule, when the vowel before another represents a long vowel or diphthong in the Greek word, it is long; otherwise it is short.

781.—RULE II. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant, is long by position; as,

*arma*, *fallo*, *axis*, *gaza*, *māior*.

782.—EXPLANATION.—When a final syllable is long by another rule, this rule does not apply; the double consonants under this rule are, the same consonant doubled; as, *ll*, *tt*, *rr*, &c., and the letters, *j*, *z*, and *s*, equivalent to *dj*, *tz*, *ds*.

#### 783.—EXCEPTIONS.

1. A short vowel in the end of a word, before two consonants in the next, is common; before *sc*, *sp*, *sq*, *st*, it is usually long; before a double consonant, it is short.

2. A vowel before *j*, is short in compounds of *jūgum*; as, *bijūgus*.

784.—RULE III. A vowel before a mute and a liquid, is common; as, *volūcris*, or *volūcris*.

785.—EXPLANATION.—Under this rule, the vowel must be naturally short, and the mute must come before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. But if the vowel is naturally long, it remains so; as, *mātris* (from *μήτηρ*), *salūbris*, &c. If the mute and the liquid are in different syllables, the vowel preceding is long by position; as, *ābluo*, *obruo*. In Latin words, the liquids are *l* and *r* only. In Greek words, *l*, *r*, *m*, *n*.

786.—Obs. 1. This rule is properly an exception to Rule II. A short vowel in the end of a word, is seldom affected by a mute and a liquid in the next.

787.—RULE IV. A contracted syllable is always long; as,

*Nūl*, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mihī*; *alius*, for *alius*; *it*, for *iit*; *sōdes*, for *sides*; *nōlo*, for *non vōlo*; *biga*, for *bijūga*; *scilicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

788.—RULE V. A diphthong is long; as, *Cāsar*, *Aūrum*, *Eubāa*.

#### 789.—EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Præ*, in composition, before a vowel, is commonly short; as, *præter*, *præstus*, &c.

2. Also, *æ* is sometimes short in the end of a word, when the next begins with a vowel; as, *Insulæ Ionio*, &c.

Note.—*U*, after *q* and *g*, does not form a diphthong with a vowel following it, but has a force similar to the English *w*; as, *lingua*, *queror* &c., pronounced *lingwa*, *kweror*. 8-2.

## SPECIAL RULES.

## § 156. FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

790.—RULE VI. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former; as, *veni, vidi, vici*.

791.—Exc. 1. Those which are short by Rule I; as, *rui, lūi, &c*

Exc. 2. Seven have the first syllable short; viz: *bibi, dādi, fidi* (from *bi, dā, fi*), *scidi, stēti, stiti, and tūli*.

792.—RULE VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, shorten the first and second; as, *cēcidi, tētigi, pēpuli, &c.*, from *cādo, tango, pello*.

Exc. *Cēcidi*, from *cādo*; and *pēpuli*, have the second long.

793.—RULE VIII. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former; as, *cāsum, mōtum, visum*, from *cādo, mōveo, video*.

794.—Exc. Ten have the first syllable short; viz: *citum* (from *cido*), *dātum, itum, litum, —quitum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, —situm, and slātum*.

795.—RULE IX. In polysyllables, *a, e, and u*, are long before *tum*, of the Supine; as, *amātum, delētum, indūtum*.

796.—RULE X. In polysyllables, *i* is short before *tum*, of the Supine; as, *monītum*. *I* is long in *divisum*.

797.—Exc. But Supines in *itum*, from preterites in *ivi*, have *i* long; as, *cupīvi, cupītum; audīvi, auditum, &c*.

798.—Obs. *Recensē* has *recensitum*, from *ui* in the preterite, because originally from *censio, censivi*. *EO* and its compounds have *i* short; as, *itum, reditum, &c*. Except *ambio, ambitum*, fourth conjugation.

799.—RULE XI. Participles in *rus* have *u* long in the penult; as, *amatūrus, &c*.

## 800.—§ 157. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

1. A noun is said to *increase*, when any of its cases has more syllables than the nominative singular; as, *rex, regis; sermo, sermonis*.

2. With only few exceptions, nouns have but *one increase* in the singular number: *iter, supellex*, and compounds of *caput* ending in *ps*, have two; as, *itinēris, supellētilis, praeceptis*, from *praecepta*.

3. The increment, or increasing syllable, to which the following rules apply, is never the last syllable, but the one preceding it, if there is only one increment; or the two preceding it, if there are two.

4. The rules for the increase of nouns, apply to adjectives and participles.

5. Nouns of the *fourth* declension have no increment in the singular; ~~those~~ of the *first and fifth*, have none but what come under Rule L (778)

and its exceptions. (780.) In the *second declension*, those only increase in the singular which end in *r*, according to the following—

801.—**RULE.** The increment of the *second declension* is short; as—

*Puēri, vīri, satūri, &c.*, from *puer, vir, sator*.

*Exc.* But *Iber* and *Celtiber*, have *Ibēri* and *Celtibēri*.

### INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

802.—**XII.** Increments of the *third declension*, have *s* and *o* long; *e*, *i*, and *u*, short; as—

*Pietatis, honoris, mulieris, lapidis, murmuris.*

### *Rules with Exceptions.*

#### A.

803.—1. Increments in *a*, of the *third declension*, are long.

*Exc.* 1st. The increment in *a*, from masculines in *al* and *ar* is short, also from *par* and its compounds;—from *anas, mas, vas (vādis), baccar, hepar, jubar, lar, nectar, and sal*.

*Exc.* 2d. The increment in *a*, from nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, is short; as, *Arab̄s, Arābia*.

*Exc.* 3d. The increment in *a*, from Greek nouns in *a, -ātis*; and *as, -ādis*, is short; as, *poēma, poemātis; lampas, lampād̄is*.

*Exc.* 4th. Also the following in *ax*; viz: *abax, anthrax, Atax, Atrax, climax, colax, corax, dropax, fax, harpax, panax, phylax, smilax, and styrax*, increase with *ā* short.

#### O.

804.—2. Increments in *o*, of the *third declension*, are long.

*Exc.* 1st. The increment in *o*, from neuter nouns is short; as, *marmor, marmōris; corpus, corpōris*. But *os, ōris*, and neuter comparatives increase in *ō* long; *ador* has *adōris, or adōris*.

*Exc.* 2d. The increment in *o*, from nouns in *s* with a consonant before it is short; as, *scrobs, scrōbis; inops, inōpis*. But *Cercops, Cyclops, and Hydrops*, have *ō* long.

*Exc.* 3d. Generally from Gentile and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*, the increment is short; as, *Macēdo, Macedōnis*; but some are long, and some are common.

*Exc.* 4th. Greek nouns in *or*, shorten the increment; as, *Hector—ōris*.

*Exc.* 5th. Greek nouns in *pus (πούς)*; as, *tripus, Polypus*; also, *arbor, niēmor, bos, compos, impsa, and lēpus*, have *o* short in the increment; as, *tripus, tripōdis, &c.*

#### E.

805.—3. Increments in *e*, of the *third declension*, are short.

*Exc. 1st.* The increment in *-nis* from *en* and *e* is long; as, *Siren, Sirenis, Anio, Aniēnia*.

*Exc. 2d.* The increment in *e* is long, from *hæres, locuples, mansues, merces*, and *quies*. Also, from *iber* and *ver*—from *lex, rex, and vervec*—*plebs, seps, and halea*.

*Exc. 3d.* Greek nouns in *er* and *es* increase *e* long; as, *crater, crateris; magnes, magnētis*.

## I.

806.—4. Increments in *i*, of the third declension, are short.

*Exc. 1st.* Verbals in *triz*, and adjectives in *ix*, have *i* long; as *victrix, victricis; felix, felicia*.

Also, *cervix, cicatrix, cornix, coturnix, lodix, matrix, pernix, phœnix, radix, and vibex*.

*Exc. 2d.* Greek nouns in *is* and *in*, with the genitive in *inia*, increase long; as, *Salamis, Salamēnia*.

*Exc. 3d.* *Dis, glis, and lis*, with *Nesis, Quiris, and Samnis*, increase long.

## U.

807.—5. Increments in *u*, of the third declension, are short.

*Exc. 1st.* Genitives in *adis, uris, and utis*, from nominatives in *us*, have the increase long; as, *palus, paladis, &c.* But *Ligus, intercus* and *pecus*, increase with *ū* short.

*Exc. 2d.* *Fur, frux, lux, and Pollux*, have *u* long.

## Y.

808.—6. Increments in *y* are short.

*Exc.* Greek nouns, with the genitive in *ynis*, have the increase long. Also, *Bombyx, Ceyx, and gryps*, which increase long.

## INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

809.—A noun in the plural number, is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any case, than in the nominative plural.

810.—An increment in the plural, can occur only in the genitive, dative, and ablative; and in these, it is the syllable next to the last. When any of these cases has no more syllables than the nominative, it has no plural increment. Thus, *sermōnum, puēris, capitum*, have no plural increase, because they have no more syllables than *sermōnes, puēri, capita*, still, they all have the increment of the singular, because they have more syllables than *sermo, puer, and caput*. But *sermōnibus, puērōrum, and capitibus*, have both the singular and plural increment.

811.—RULE XIII. Plural increments in *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; in *i* and *u*, short; as,

	<i>Musarum,</i>	<i>rerum,</i>	<i>virorum,</i>	<i>partibus,</i>	<i>lacibus,</i>
from	<i>Musa,</i>	<i>res,</i>	<i>vir,</i>	<i>partes,</i>	<i>laca.</i>

§12.—EXPLANATION.—All the increments of the singular remain in the plural; and to these the plural increment is added. The rule here given, applies to the plural increments only, and not to the increments of the singular in the plural. Thus, in *itinēribus* from *iter*, the second and third syllables are increments of the singular, to be found in *itinēris*; the fourth is the plural increment, which comes under this rule.

## § 158. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§13.—A verb is said to increase when it has more syllables in any part, than in the second person singular, of the present indicative, active; as, *amas, amātis, amābātis*, &c.—A verb in the active voice may have three increments, and in the passive four. If there is but one increment, it is the syllable next the last. If there are two, the second increment is the syllable next the last, and the first the syllable preceding that, &c.; thus,

1                      1 2                      1 2 3  
ā-mas,—am-ā-mus,—am-ā-bā-mus,—am-āv-ēr-ā-mus, &c.

The increments of deponent verbs, are determined in the same manner as if they had an active form.

§14.—RULE XIV. In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o* are long; *i* and *u*, short; as,

*Amārēmus, amātōtis; legimus, possimus.*

### §15.—Exceptions in A.

1. The first increment of *do* is short: as, *dāmus, dābāmus, dārēmus*, &c.

#### *Exceptions in E.*

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, and *ro*.

But when contracted by syncope, it is long; as, *flerān*, for *flēvēram*.

3. In the third conjugation, *e* is short before *r* in the first increase of the present and imperfect; as,

*Legēre, legērem*, Act. *Legērēris, legērēre, legēre*, Pass.

4. In the first and second conjugations, *e* is short in—*bēris* and—*bēre*.

*Note.*—*erunt* and *ere* in the perfect come under the general rule; sometimes they are shortened. 867-5.

#### *Exceptions in I.*

5. In preterite tenses, *i* is long before *v*; as—

*Audiui, audivēram, audivērim*, &c.



6. In the first increase of the fourth conjugation, except *imus* of the perfect, *i* not before a vowel is always long; as,

*Pres. venimus*; *Perf. venimus*. So, also, *ibam*, and *ibo*, from *eo*.

7. *I* is long in *simus*, *sitis*, *velimus*, *velitis*; and their compounds; as, *possimus*, *nolumus*, &c.

8. In *rimus* and *ritis* of the future perfect indicative, and perfect subjunctive, *i* is common; as,

*Dixerimus*, or *dixerimus*; *videritis* or *videritis*.

*Note*.—*U* long before *tum* of the supine comes under Rules VIII. and IX. It is long also in the penult of the perfect participle by the same rules, because the perfect participle is always derived from the supine.

## § 159. QUANTITY OF PENULT SYLLABLES.

816.—For the quantity of penult syllables, no definite rule can be given which is not rendered nearly useless by the number of exceptions occurring under it. The following observations are usually given rather as a general guide, than certain rules; and they might be easily extended, were it of any practical advantage.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult; as,

*Pniamides*, *Atlantiades*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus*, as, *Pelides*, *Tyrides*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE* commonly lengthen the penult; as,

*Achais*, *Ptolemais*, *Chrysais*, *Æneis*, *Memphitis*, *Latias*, *Icariotis*, *Nerine*, *Acrisioe*. Except *Thebais*, and *Phocais* short; and *Nereis*, which is common.—*Nereis* or *Nereis*.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as,

*Ægyptiacus*, *academicus*, *lepidus*, *legitimus*: also superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opacus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, *pudicus*, *mendicus*, *anticus*, *posticus*, *fidus*, *infidus* (from *fido*), *bitus*, *quadrismus*, *patrimus*, *matrimus*, *optimus*; and the two superlatives, *imus*, and *primus*: but *perfidus*, from *per* and *fides*, has the penult short.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as,

*Dotalis*, *urbanus*, *avarus*, *astivus*, *decorus*, *arendus*. Except *barbarus*, *opiparus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult, as *agilis facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as,

*Anilis, civilis, herilis*, &c. To these add *exilis, subtilis*; and names of months, *Aprilis, Quintilis, Sextilis*: Except *humilis, parilis*; and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *atilis*, are short; as, *versatilis, volatilis, umbratilis, plicatilis, fluvialis*; *saxatilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS*, derived from words denoting inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c., also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as,

*Amaracinus, crocinus, cedrinus, faginus, oleaginus; adamantinus, crystallinus, crastinus, pristinus, perenninus, carinus, annotinus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as,

*Agninus, caninus, leporinus, binus, trinus, quinus, austrinus, clandestinus, Latinus, marinus, supinus, vespertinus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS, OLA, OLUM*; and *ULUS, ULA, ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as,

*Urcædulus, filiola, musædulum; lectulus, ratiuncula, corculum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as,

*Oppidatim, virutim, tributim*. Except *affutim, perpétim*, and *statim*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenult, which, in the second and third persons, is the penult; as,

*Esurio, esuria, esurit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligurio, liguris; scaturio, scatüris*, &c.

#### 317.—PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

1. *The following proper names lengthen the penult*: Abdëra, Abýdus, Adónis, Æsópus, Ætölus, Abála, Alaricus, Alcides, Amyclæ, Andronicus, Anúbis, Archimedes, Ariaráthes, Ariobarzánes, Aristides, Aristobulus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Artabánu; Brachmánès. Busíris, Buthrótu; Cethëgus, Chalcëdon, Cleobulus, Cyrène, Cythëra, Curètes; Darici, Demonicus, Diomédès, Dióres, Dioscúri; Ebüdes, Eriphýle, Eubulus, Euclides, Euphrátes, Eumödes, Eurípus, Euxinus; Gargánu, Gætulus, Granicus; Heliogabálu, Henricus, Heraclides, Heraclitus, Hippónax, Hispanus; Irène, Latóna, Leucáta, Lugdúnium, Lycóras; Mandáne, Mausölu, Maximínu, Meleáger, Messála, Messína, Milétus; Nasica, Nicánor, Nicétas; Pachýnu, Pandóra, Pelóris & -us, Pharsálu, Phœnice, Polites, Polyclétus, Polynices, Priápus; Sardanápalus, Sarpëdon, Serápis, Sinópe, Stratonice, Suffètes; Tigránes, Thessalonica; Veróna, Verónica.

2. *The following are short*: Amáthus, Amphipólis, Anabásis, Antioýra, Antigónus, & -ne, Antióchus, Antiópa, Antipas, Antipáter, Antiphánes, Antiphátes, Antiphila, Antiphon, Anytus, Apúlus, Areopágnus, Arimínum, Arménus, Athénsa, Attálu, Attica; Bitúrix, Brueteri; Caláber, Callierátes, Callistrátus, Candáce, Cantáber, Carneádes, Cherílus, Chrysotónus, Cleombrotus, Cleomènes, Corycös, Constantinopóli, Cratérus, Cratylus, Cremëra, Crustuméri, Cybèle, Cycládes, Cyzicus; Dalmátæ, Damódes, Darlánu, Dejóres, Dejolárus, Democritus, Demípho, Diágnus, Dio

gēnes, Drepanum, Dumnōrix; Empedōcles, Ephēsus, Evergētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripylus; Fucinus; Geryōnes, Gyārus; Hecyra, Helipōlis, Hermiōne, Herodōtus, Hesiodus, Hesiōne, Hippocrātes, Hippotāmos, Hypāta, Hypānis; Icārus, Icētas, Illyris, Iphītus, Ismārus, Ithāca; Laodice, Laomēdon, Lampeacus, Lamyrus, Lapithæ, Lucretilia, Libānus, Lipāre, or -a, Lysimachus, Longimānus; Marāthon, Mænālus, Marmarica, Massagētæ, Matrōna, Megāra, Melitus, & -ta, Metropōlis, Mutina, Micōnus; Neōcles, Neritos, Noricum; Omphale; Patāra, Pegāsus, Pharnāces, Pisistrātus, Polydāmus; Polyxēna, Porsēna, or Porsenna, Praxitēles, Puteoli, Pylādes, Pythagōras; Sarmatæ, Sarsina, Semēle, Semirāmis, Sequāni, & -a, Sisyrchus, Sicōria, Socrātes, Sodomā, Sotādes, Spartacus, Sporādes, Strongyla, Stymphālius, Sybāris; Taygētus, Telegōnus, Telemachus, Tenēdos, Tarraco, Theophānes, Theophilus, Tomyris; Urbicus; Venēti, Vologēsus, Volūsus; Xenocrātes; Zoilus, Zopyrus.

3. The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batāvi*. LUCAN. *Batāvi*. JUV. and MART. *Fortuitus*. HOR. *Fortuitus*. MARTIAL. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables, but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*. STAZ. *Patrimus, matrimus, prætor, &c.*, are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

## § 160. FINAL SYLLABLES.

### A final.

818.—RULE XV. *A*, in the end of a word, declined by cases, is short; as, *Musā, templā, &c.*

*Exc.* 1. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musā, &c.*

*Exc.* 2. The vocative of Greek nouns in *as*, is long; as, *O Enēa, O Pallā*.

819.—RULE XVI. *A*, in the end of a word not declined by cases, is long; as, *amā, frustrā, ergā, intrā, &c.*

820.—*Exc.* *Itā, quā, ejā, postē, putā* (adv.), are short; sometimes, also, the prepositions, *contrā* and *ultrā*; and the compounds of *ginta*, as *trigintā, &c.* But, *contrā* and *ultrā*, as adverbs, are always long.

### E final.

821.—RULE XVII. *E* in the end of a word is short; as, *natē, sedilē, ipsē, possē, nenpē, antē*.

## 822.—Special Rules and Exceptions.

RULE 1. Monosyllables in *e* are long; as, *mē, tē, sē*.

*Exc.* The enclitics *quē, vē, nē*, are short; also, *ptē, cē, tē*.

RULE 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declensions have final *e* long; as, *Calliōpē, Anchisē, diē, &c.*

Also Greek neuter plurals; as, *Cetē, melē, Tempē, &c.*

**RULE 3.** Verbs of the second conjugation have *e* long in the second person singular of the imperative active, as, *docē*, *nanē*, &c. But *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

**RULE 4.** Adverbs, from adjectives of the first and second declensions, have final *e* long; as, *placidē*, *pulchrē*, *valdē* (contracted for *validē*). So, also, *fermē*, *ferē*, and *ohē*.

*Exc.* But, *benē*, *malē*, *infernē*, and *supernē*, are short.

### I final.

823.—**RULE XVIII.** *I* final is long; as, *dominī*, *filī*, &c.

*Exc. 1.* *I* final is common in *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*; also in *ibi*, *ubi*, *nisi*, *quasi*. Sometimes *uti*, and *cui* as a dissyllable, have *i* short. *Sicutī*, *sicubi*, and *necubi*, are always short.

*Exc. 2.* *I* final is short in Greek vocatives and datives; as, *Alexī*, *Daphnī*; *Palladī*, *Troasī*, and *Troasiv*.

### O final.

824.—**RULE XIX.** *O* final is common; as, *Virgo*, *āmo*, *quando*.

*Exc. 1.* Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *O*, *dō*, *stō*, *prō*.

*Exc. 2.* The dative and ablative in *o* are long; as, *librō*, *dominō*. Also Greek nouns in *o*; as, *Didō*, *Sapphō*.

*Exc. 3.* Ablatives used as adverbs have *o* long; as, *certō*, *falsō*, *paulō*; *quō*, *eō*, and their compounds; *illō*, *idcirco*, *citrō*, *retrō*, *ultrō*, *ergō* (for the sake of).

*Exc. 4.* *Egō*, *sciō*, the defective verb *cedō*; also *homō*, *citō*, *illico*, *immō*, *dudō*, *ambō*, *modō*, and its compounds; *quomodō*, *dummodō*, *postmodō*, are almost always short.

*Exc. 5.* In Virgil, the gerund in *do* is long; in other poets, mostly short.

### U, and Y, final.

825.—**RULE XX.** *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *vultu*, *Moly*.

### B, D, L, M, R, T, final.

826.—**RULE XXI.** *B*, *D*, *L*, *R*, and *T*, in the end of a word, are short; as, *āb*, *apūd*, *semēl*, *consūl*, *patēr*, *capūt*.

827.—**EXPLANATION.**—This rule does not apply, if any of these final letters are preceded by a diphthong, or if the syllable is contracted, or made long by position: as, *aut*, *abit* for *abiit*, *amānt*.

## 828.—EXCEPTIONS.

*Exc. 1.* *Sal, söl, and nil* are long.

*Exc. 2.* *Aër* and *æthër*, have the final syllable long. Also nouns in *er*, which have *eris* in the genitive; as, *Oratër, Ibër, &c.*

*Exc. 3.* *Far, lar, Nar, par, cur, and fur*, are long.

*Exc. 4.* The Hebrew names *Jöb, Daniël*, are long; but *David* and *Bagus* re common.

829.—*Obs.* *M* final anciently made the preceding vowel short; as, *Militüm octo*. By later poets it is usually cut off, by *Echthipsis* (§ 166-2.), when the next word begins with a vowel. When not so cut off, it is short.

C, N, *final*.

830.—RULE XXII. C and N in the end of a word are long, as, *ac, sic, illüc, èn, nön, &c.*

*Exc. 1.* *Nēc* and *donēc* are short; *hic* and *fac*, common.

*Exc. 2.* *Forsitän, in, forsän, tamën, än, vidën*, are short.

*Exc. 3.* *En* having *nis* in the genitive is short; as, *carmën, carmënis*. Also Greek nouns in *an, on, in, yn*, originally short, and the dative plural in *in*, have the final syllable short; as, *Ilion, Eratïon, Maiän, Alexin, chelyñ, Troasïn, &c.*

As, Es, Os, *final*.

831.—RULE XXIII. *As, es, os*, in the end of a word are long; as, *mäs, quies, bonče*.

*Exc. 1.* *As* is short in *anäs*, and Greek nouns which have *adis* or *ados* in the genitive; as, *Arcäs, lampäs, &c.*

*Exc. 2.* *Es* is short, 1st, in nouns and adjectives which increase short in the genitive; as, *hospës, limës, hebës*. But *Cerës, pariës, ariës, abiës*, and *pïs*, with its compounds, are long. 2d. *Es* from *sum*, and *penës* are short. 3d. Greek neuters in *es*, and nominatives and vocatives of the third declension which increase in the genitive otherwise than in *eos*, have *es* short; as *Arcadës, Troës, &c.*

*Exc. 3.* *Os* is short in *compës, impës, ðs (osis)*,—in Greek words of the second declension, and in neuters and genitives of the third; as, *Ilids, Tyväs, chads, epös, Palladös, &c.*

Is, Us, Ys, *final*.

832.—RULE XXIV. *Is, us, and ys*, in the end of a word are short; as, *Turrits, legïs, legitimüs, Capÿs*.

*Exc. 1.* Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long; but the dative and ablative in *bus* are short.

*Exc. 2.* Nouns in *is* with the genitive in *tis, nis, or entis* are long; as, *Samnis, Salamis, Simois*.

*Exc. 3.* *Is* is long in *glis, vis, gratts, foris*. And in the second person

singular, present indicative, active, of the fourth conjugation; as, *audis*. Also in *fis*, *is*, *sis*, *vis*, *velis*, and their compounds *possis*, *quavis*, *malis*, *nohis*, &c.

*Exc. 4.* Monosyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs*, *sūs*, &c.

Also those which have *ūris*, *ūdis*, *ūtis*, *untis*, or *ōdis*, in the genitive; as *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *Amathūs*, *tripūs*. To these add Greek genitives in *us*; as, *Didūs*, *Sapphūs*, &c.

*Exc. 5.* *Tethys* is sometimes long, likewise nouns in *ys*, which have also *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcys* or *Phorcyn*.

## § 161. QUANTITY OF DERIVATIVES AND COMPOUNDS.

833.—RULE XXV. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

<i>Amicus</i> , <i>from</i> <i>āmo</i> .	<i>Decōro</i> , <i>from</i> <i>decus</i> , -ōria.
<i>Auctiōnor</i> , <i>auctio</i> , -ōnia.	<i>Exūlo</i> , <i>exul</i> , -īlis.
<i>Auctōro</i> , <i>auctor</i> , -ōria.	<i>Pāvidus</i> , <i>pāveo</i> .
<i>Audītor</i> , <i>auditum</i> .	<i>Quirīto</i> , <i>Quiria</i> , -ītis.
<i>Auspēor</i> , <i>auspex</i> , -īcia.	<i>Radicītus</i> , <i>radix</i> , -īcia.
<i>Caupōnor</i> , <i>caupo</i> , -ōnia.	<i>Sospīto</i> , <i>sospes</i> , -īcia.
<i>Competītor</i> , <i>compētītum</i> .	<i>Nātūra</i> , <i>nātus</i> .
<i>Cornūcor</i> , <i>cornix</i> , -īcia.	<i>Māternus</i> , <i>māter</i> .
<i>Custōdio</i> , <i>custos</i> , -ōdia.	<i>Lēgēbam</i> , &c. <i>lēgo</i> .
<i>Decōrus</i> , <i>decor</i> , -ōria.	<i>Lēgēram</i> , &c. <i>lēgi</i> .

### 834.—EXCEPTIONS.

#### 1. Long from Short.

<i>Dēni</i> , <i>from</i> <i>dēcem</i> .	<i>Sēdes</i> , <i>sēdeo</i> .	<i>Mōbīlis</i> , <i>from</i> <i>mōveo</i>
<i>Fōmes</i> , <i>fōveo</i> .	<i>Sēcūs</i> , <i>sēcus</i> .	<i>Hūmor</i> , <i>hūmus</i> .
<i>Hūmānus</i> , <i>hōmo</i> .	<i>Pēnūra</i> , <i>pēnus</i> .	<i>Jūmentum</i> , <i>jūvo</i> .
<i>Rēgūla</i> , <i>rēgo</i> .		<i>Vox</i> , <i>vōcis</i> , <i>vōco</i> , &c.

#### 2. Short from Long.

<i>Arēna</i> and <i>ārista</i> , <i>from</i> <i>āreo</i> .	<i>Lūcerna</i> , <i>from</i> <i>lūceo</i> .
<i>Nōta</i> and <i>nōto</i> , <i>nōtus</i> .	<i>Dux</i> , -ūcia, <i>dūco</i> .
<i>Vādum</i> , <i>vādo</i> .	<i>Stābīlis</i> , <i>stābam</i> .
<i>Fīdes</i> , <i>fīdo</i> .	<i>Dītio</i> , <i>dia</i> , <i>dītia</i> .
<i>Sōpor</i> , <i>sōpio</i> .	<i>Quāsillus</i> , <i>quālus</i> , &c.

835.—EXPLANATION.—This rule applies to all those parts of the verb derived or formed from the primary parts, §§ 51 and 52, i. e. the quantity of the primary part remains in all the parts formed from it.

836.—RULE XXVI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them; as,

*adāmo*, *from* *ād* and *āmo*; *dedūco*, *from* *dē* and *dūco*.

837.—*Obs. 1.* The change of a vowel or diphthong, in forming the compound, does not alter its quantity; as, *cado, concido; cado, concido; eludo, recludo; æquus, iniquus, &c.*

838.—*Obs. 2.* When a short syllable in the first part of the compound ends with a consonant, it becomes long by position when joined to another word beginning with a consonant; as, *përmaneo*, from *për* and *maneo*; but if the second word begin with a vowel, the first retains its quantity; as, *përambulo*, from *për* and *ambulo*.

839.—*Obs. 3.* When the second part of a compound word begins with a vowel, the vowel ending the first part is short by Rule I. When it begins with two consonants, or a double consonant, the vowel preceding is long by Rule II. But if it begins with a simple consonant, followed by a vowel or diphthong, the vowel preceding is sometimes long, and sometimes short, by the following—

*Special Rules for the first part of a compound, ending with a vowel.*

840.—*Rule 1.* The first part of a compound, if a preposition of one syllable, has the final vowel long; as, *décido, pròtendo*.

*Exc. 1.* *Pro* is short in *pròcella, pròfanus, pròfari, pròfecto, pròfessus, pròfiscor, pròfiteor, pròfugio, pròfugus, pròfundus, prònepos, prònepis, pròpero*, and *pròtervus*. It is common in *procùro, profundo, propàgo, propello, propino, propulso*.

*Exc. 2.* The Greek *pro* (before), is always short; as, *pròpheta, pròlogus*.

*Note.*—The final vowel of a preposition of more than one syllable, retains its own quantity; as, *contràdico, antècedo*.

841.—*Rule 2.* The inseparable prepositions, *se* and *di*, are long; *re* is short; as, *Sèpono, divello, rēpello*.

*Exc. 3.* *Di* is short in *dìrimo* and *dìsertus*. *Re* is long in *rēfert*.

842.—*Rule 3.* The first part of a compound, not a preposition, has final *a* long; *e, i, o, u,* and *y*, short; as,

*Mala, nefas, ñceps, philòsophus, dūcenti, Polýdorus.*

843.—EXCEPTIONS.

*Exc. 1 A.*—In *quàsi, eàdem*, not in the ablative, and in some Greek compounds, *a* is short.

*Exc. 2. E.*—The *e* is long in *nēmo, nēquam, nēquando, nēquaquam, nēquāquam, nēquis, nēquitia; mēnet, mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, vērors, vēsanus, vēnficus*. Also in words compounded with *se* for *sex*, or *semi*; as, *sēdecim, sēmentris, &c.* *E* is common in some compounds of *facio*; as, *liquefacio, rarefacio, &c.*

**Exc. 3. I.**—When the first part of a compound is declined, *i* is long; as *quidam*, *quilibet*, *reipublicæ*, &c., or when the first can be separated from the last, and yet both retain their form and meaning; as, *ludi-magister*, *lucrificio*, *si-quis*, *agri-cultura*, &c.

*I* is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *bigæ*, *scilicet*, *bi-mis*, &c., for *bigæ*, *scire licet*, *bis annis*, or *biennis*. It is also long in *idem* (masculine), *ubique*, *utrobique*, *ibidem*, *nimirum*, and the compounds of *die*, such as, *biduum*, *pridie*; *meridies*, &c. In *ubicunque* and *ubivis*, it is common.

**Exc. 4. O.**—*Contro*, *intro*, *retro*, and *quando*, in compounds, have the final *o* long; as, *contrôversia*, *intrôduco*, *retrôcedo*, *quandôque*, (except *quandôquidem*.)

*O* is long in compounds of *quo*; as, *quômodo*, *quôcunque*, *quôminus*, *quôcirca*, *quôvis*, *quôque*, (from *quisque*;) but in *quodque*, the conjunction, it is short.

**Exc. 5. U.**—*Jupiter*, *jûdex*, and *jûdiciûm*, have *u* long; also *usûcapio* and *usûvenio*, being capable of separation, as in **Exc. 3.**

**844.—RULE XXVII.** The last syllable of every verse is common.

**845.—EXPLANATION.**—This means that a short syllable at the end of a line, if the verse requires it, is considered long; and a long syllable, if the verse requires it, is considered short.

**846.—N. B.** A syllable which does not come under any of the preceding rules, is said to be long, or short, by “authority,” viz.: of the poets.

## § 162. VERSIFICATION.

**847.—**A verse is a certain number of long and short syllables, disposed according to rule. The parts into which a verse is divided are called *Feet*.

### FEET.

**848.—**A foot, in metre, is composed of two or more syllables, strictly regulated by time, and is either simple or compound. The simple feet are twelve in number, of which four consist of two, and eight of three syllables. There are sixteen compound feet, each of four syllables. These varieties are as follows:

#### 849.—Simple feet of two Syllables.

Pyrrhic	— —	as <i>Dêta</i> .
Spondee	— —	as <i>fundunt</i> .
Iambus	— —	as <i>erant</i> .
Trochee	— —	as <i>arma</i> .



850 — *Simple feet of three Syllables.*

Tribrach	— — —	as <i>fiocéré.</i>
Molossus	— — —	as <i>cōtēdunt</i>
Dactyl	— — —	as <i>cōrpōrā.</i>
Anapæst	— — —	as <i>dōmīnī.</i>
Bacchius	— — —	as <i>dōlōrēa.</i>
Antibacchius	— — —	as <i>Rōmānta.</i>
Amphibrach	— — —	as <i>hōnōrē.</i>
Amphimacer	— — —	as <i>chāritās.</i>

851.—*Compound feet of four Syllables.*

Choriambus	— — — —	pōntificēs	Trochee and Iambus.
Antispastus	— — — —	āmābātis	Iambus and Trochee.
Ionic a majore	— — — —	cālcārībūs	Spondee and Pyrrhic.
Ionic a minore	— — — —	prōpērābāt	Pyrrhic and Spondee.
First Pæon	— — — —	tēmpōribūs	Trochee and Pyrrhic.
Second Pæon	— — — —	pōtēntiā	Iambus and Pyrrhic.
Third Pæon	— — — —	ānūnātūs	Pyrrhic and Trochee.
Fourth Pæon	— — — —	cēlērītās	Pyrrhic and Iambus.
First Epitrite	— — — —	vōlūptātes	Iambus and Spondee.
Second Epitrite	— — — —	cōndītōrēs	Trochee and Spondee.
Third Epitrite	— — — —	discōrdiās	Spondee and Iambus.
Fourth Epitrite	— — — —	adduxistis	Spondee and Trochee.
Proceleusmaticus	— — — —	hōmīnītūs	Two Pyrrhics.
Spondee	— — — —	ōrātōrēs	Two Spondees.
Ditambus	— — — —	āmāvērānt	Two Iambi.
Ditrochee	— — — —	Cāntilēnā	Two Trochees.

## 852.—ISOCRONOUS FEET.

1. In every foot, a long syllable is equal in time to two short ones. 'To constitute feet Isochronous, two things are necessary: 1st. That they have the same time: 2d. That they be interchangeable in metre.

2. Feet have the same time which are measured by an equal number of short syllables; thus, the Spondee, Dactyl, Anapæst, and Proceleusmaticus, have the same time, each being equal to four short syllables.

3. Feet are interchangeable in metre, when the *ictus* or stress of the voice falls, or may fall, on the same portion of the foot. The part of the foot that receives the ictus, is called *arsis*, or elevation: the rest of the foot is termed *thesis*, or depression.

4. The natural place of the *arsis*, is the long syllable of the foot. Hence, in the Iambus, it falls on the second syllable, and in the Trochee, on the first. Its place in the Spondee and Tribrach cannot be determined by the feet themselves, each syllable being of the same length.

5. In all kinds of verse, the fundamental foot determines the place of the *arsis* for the other feet admitted into it; thus, in Dactylic verse, and Trochaic verse, the Spondee will have the *arsis* on the first syllable;—in Anapæstic and Iambic, on the last. In Trochaic verse, the tribrach will have the *arsis* on the first syllable, — — —, in Iambic on the second,

— — —

4. Those feet, then, according to the ancients, were called *isochronous*, which were capable of being divided into parts that were equal in time, so that a short syllable should correspond to a short; and a long to a long, or to two short; thus, in Iambic and Trochaic verse,

Iambus	—   —	Trochea	—   —
Tribrach	—   — —	Tribrach	— —   —

In Dactylic and Anapaestic; thus,

Dactyl	—   — —	Anapaest	— —   —
Spondee	—   —	Spondee	—   —

853.—But feet which cannot be divided in this manner, are not *isochronous*, though they have the same time; thus, the *Iambus* and *Trochea*, though equal in time, cannot be divided so as to have the corresponding parts of equal length; thus,

Iambus,	—   —
Trochee,	—   —

854.—Hence these feet are not interchangeable, or *isochronous*; and for this reason a Trochee is never admitted into Iambic verse nor an Iambus into Trochaic. The same is true of the Spondee, (— —) and Amphibrach (— — —), and of the Amphibrach with the Dactyl or Anapaest.

### 855.—§ 163. OF METRE.

1. *Metre*, in its *general sense*, means an arrangement of syllables and feet in verse, according to certain rules; and, in this sense, applies, not only to an entire verse, but to part of a verse, or to any number of verses. A *metre*, in a *specific sense*, means a combination of two feet (sometimes called a *syzygy*), and sometimes one foot only.

The distinction between rhythm and metre is this:—the former refers to the *time* only, in regard to which, two short syllables are equivalent to one long; the latter refers both to the *time* and the *order* of the syllables. The rhythm of an anapaest and dactyl is the same; the metre different. The term rhythm, is also understood in a more comprehensive sense, and is applied to the harmonious construction and enunciation of feet and words in connection; thus, a line has rhythm when it contains *any number* of metres of *equal time*, without regard to their order. Metre requires a *certain number* of metres, and these arranged in a *certain order*. Thus, in this line,

Panditur interea domus omnipotentis Olympi,

there is both *rhythm* (as it contains six metres of equal value in respect of time) and *metre*, as these metres are arranged according to the canon

for Hexameter heroic verse, which requires a dactyl in the fifth, and a spondee in the sixth place. Change the order thus,

Omnipotentis Olympi panditur interea domus.

and the rhythm remains as perfect as before, but the metre is destroyed it is no longer a Hexameter heroic line.

2. The principal metres used in Latin poetry are six; namely 1. Iambic. 2. Trochaic. 3. Anapaestic. 4. Dactylic. 5. Choriambic. 6. Ionic. These are or called from the foot which prevails in them.

These different kinds of verse, in certain varieties, are also designated by the names of certain poets, who either invented them, or made special use of them in their writings. Thus, we have Asclepiadic, Glyconian, Alcaic, Sapphic, Pherecratian, &c., from Asclepiades, Glycon, Alcaeus, Sappho, Pherecrates, &c.

3. In Iambic, Trochaic, and Anapaestic verse, a metre consists of two feet (sometimes called a *dipodia*, or *syzygy*), in the other kinds, of one foot.

4. A verse consisting of one metre is called *Monometer*; of two metres, *Dimeter*; of three, *Trimeter*; of four, *Tetrameter*; of five, *Pentameter*; of six, *Hexameter*; of seven, *Heptameter*; &c. Hence, in Trochaic, Iambic, and Anapaestic verse, a monometer will contain *two* feet; a dimeter, *four*; a trimeter, *six*; &c. In the other kinds of verse, a monometer contains one foot; a dimeter, *two*; a trimeter, *three*; &c.

5. A verse or line of any metre may be complete, having precisely the number of feet or syllables that the canon requires; or, it may be deficient; or it may be redundant. To express this, a verse is variously characterized as follows; viz:

- (1.) *Acatalectic*, when complete.
- (2.) *Catalectic*, if wanting one syllable.
- (3.) *Brachycatalectic*, if wanting two syllables, or a foot.
- (4.) *Hypercatalectic*, or *hypermeter*, when it has one or two syllables more than the verse requires.
- (5.) *Acephalous*, when a syllable is wanting at the beginning of the line.
- (6.) *Asynartete*, when different measures are conjoined in one line.

Hence, in order fully to describe any verse, three terms are employed the first expressing the kind of verse; the second, the number of metres and the third, the character of the line; thus,

Nōn vūl- | tūis in- | stāntīs | tŷrān | nī |

is described; as, *Iambic, dimeter, hypercatalectic*.

6. Verses, or parts of verses, are further designated by a term expressive of the number of feet, or parts of feet, which they contain. Thus a line, or a part of a line, containing—

three half feet is called *trimimer*,  
 five half feet,       “ *penthemimer*,  
 seven half feet,     “ *hepthemimer*.

These are of use to point out the place of—

## THE CÆSURAL PAUSE

856.—*Cæsura*, in metre, is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

It is of three kinds, 1. Of the *foot*; 2. of the *rhythm*; 3. of the *verse*

1st. *Cæsura* of the *foot* occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as in the second, third, fourth, and fifth feet of the following line:

Silvês- | trêm tẽnũ- | I Mũ- | sãm mễđĩ- | tãrĩs ấ- | vẽnã.

2d. *Cæsura* of the *rhythm* is the separation of the *arsis* from the *thesis* by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding line.

This has sometimes the effect of making a final short syllable long, by the force of the ictus; as,

Pectõrĩ- | bũs inhĩ- | ấna spĩ- | rãntĩấ | cõnsũlĩt | ếtấ.

*Note*.—This effect is not produced by the *Cæsura* of the foot, nor of the verse, unless they happen to coincide with the *cæsura* of the rhythm.

3d. The *Cæsura* of the *verse* is such a division of the line into two parts, as affords to the voice a pause or rest, at a proper or fixed place, without injuring the sense by pausing in the middle of a word.

857.—The proper management of this pause is a great beauty in certain kinds of verse, and shows the skill of the poet. In pentameter verse, its place is fixed; in hexameter and other metres, it is left to the poet. When it occurs at the end of the third half foot, it is called *trininervis*;—of the fifth, *penthemimeris*;—of the seventh, *hephthemimeris*.

858.—The situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place*.

## § 164. DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

The canons, or rules of the different kinds of metre used in Latin poetry are the following:

## 859.—1. IAMBIC METRE.

1. A pure iambic line consists of iambic feet only; as,

Phầsê- | bũs ỉl- | ỉl quẽm | vĩđê- | tĩs hỏs- | pĩtêa. |

Here the single line marks the end of the foot; the double line, the end of the metre; and the Italic syllable, the *cæsural* pause.

2. A mixed iambic line admits a spondee into the first, third, and fifth places; and again in all these a dactyl or an anapæst is sometimes admitted for a spondee, and a tribrach for the iambus.

3. This verse occurs in all varieties of length, from the dimeter catalectic to the tetrameter.

4. The cæsura commonly takes place at the fifth half foot.  
 5. Different varieties of this metre are denominated as follows:

- 1st. *Senarian*, or Trimeter acatalectic, used in tragedy and comedy
- 2d. *Archilochian*, or Trimeter catalectic.
- 3d. *Archilochian*, or Dimeter hypermeter.
- 4th. *Anacreontic*, or Dimeter catalectic.
- 5th. *Galliambus*, or Dimeter catalectic, double; i. e. two verses in one line.
- 6th. *Hipponactic*, or Tetrameter catalectic.
- 7th. *Choliambus*, or Trimeter Acatalectic. This is called, also, *Sezon* and *Hipponactic trimeter*, and has a spondee in the sixth place, and generally an iambus in the fifth.
- 8th. *Octonarius*, or Tetrameter acatalectic, called also *quadratus*.
- 9th. *Acephalous*, or Dimeter, wanting the first syllable of the first foot. This may be resolved into Trochaic dimeter catalectic.

#### 860.—II. TROCHAIC METRE.

1. A pure trochaic line consists of trochees only. These, however, are but seldom used. An acephalous trochaic becomes an iambic line; and an Acephalous iambic becomes a trochaic line.

2. A mixed trochaic line admits a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleusmatic in even places, i. e. in the 2d, 4th, 6th, &c. But in the odd places, a trochee, or a tribrach, and in the last place, a trochee only.

3. This verse may be used in all varieties, from the Monometer hypercatalectic (two trochees and one syllable) to the tetrameter, or octonarius catalectic. The varieties most used by the Latin poets, are,

- 1st. The *Trochaic tetrameter catalectic*, rarely pure:
- 2d. The *Sapphic*, consisting of five feet, viz.: a trochee, a spondee, a dactyl, and two trochees. It has the cæsural pause after the fifth half foot; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ | scēlē- | rīsquē | pūrūs. HOR.

- 3d. The *Phalæcian*, or *Phaleucian*, consisting of five feet, viz.: a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; thus,

Nōn ēst | vīvērē | sēd vā- | lērē | vītā. MART.

This verse neither requires nor rejects a cæsura.

- 4th. The *Trochaic dimeter catalectic*, or *Acephalous iambic dimeter*. See I. 9th.

5b Other varieties, but seldom used, are: 1. The *Pancretic*, monometer hypercatalectic. 2. The *Ithyphalic*, dimeter brachycatalectic. 3. The *Euripidean*, dimeter catalectic. 4. The *Alcmanic*, dimeter acatalectic. 5. *Anacreontic*, dimeter acatalectic, with a pyrrhic in the first place. 6. The *Hipponactic*, tetrameter acatalectic.

### 861.—III. ANAPÆSTIC METRE

1. A pure Anapæstic line consists of Anapæsts only.

2. The mixed anapæstic line has a spondee or a dactyl, feet of equal length, in any place.

3. The following varieties occur, viz.: 1st. The *Anapæstic Monometer*, consisting of two anapæsts. 2d. The *Anapæstic dimeter*, consisting of four Anapæsts.

*Obs.* Anapæstic verses are usually so constructed, that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

4. Other varieties not much in use are the *Simodian*; monometer catalectic. 7l; *Partheniac*; dimeter catalectic. The *Archebulian*; trimeter brachycatalectic.

### 862.—IV. DACTYLIC METRE

1. A pure dactylic verse consists of dactyls only, which have the arsis on the first syllable of the foot.

Of this verse, one foot constitutes a metre, and the lines range in length from dimeter to hexameter. Of these, the most important are—

#### 1. *Hexameter or Heroic verse.*

Hexameter or Heroic verse consists of six feet, of which the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four, a dactyl or a spondee; as,

Lūdĕrĕ | quæ vĕl- | lĕm cālĕ- | mō pĕr- | mīsit ā- | grĕstī. *Vīra.*

Respecting this verse the following things may be noticed.

1st. When a spondee occurs in the fifth place, the line is called *spondaic*. Such lines are of a grave character, and but rarely occur.

2d. When the line consists of dactyls, the movement is brisk and rapid, when of spondees, slow and heavy. Compare in this respect the two following lines: the first expresses the rapid movement over the plain, of a troop of horse eager for the combat;—the other describes the slow and toilsome movements of the Cyclops at the labors of the forge.

Quādrūpĕ- | dāntĕ pŭ- | trēm sōnī- | tū quātīt | ūngŭlā | cāmpŭm.

Illī m- | tĕr sē- | sē māg- | nā vī | brāchiā | tollūt. *Vīra.*

3d. The beauty and harmony of a Hexameter verse depends on the proper management of the cæsura. The most approved cæsural pause, in heroic poetry, is that which occurs after the arsis of the third foot. Sometimes called the *heroic cæsural pause*; thus,

At dōmŭs | intĕrī- | ōr | rē- | gālī | splēndidā | lūxū *Vīra.*

In reading this line with due attention to quantity, we naturally pause where the cæsural pause is indicated by the double line, and the whole movement is graceful and pleasing. Compare now with this, a line in which no attention is paid to the cæsura, or in which, if one is made, you have to pause in the middle of a word, and the difference is manifest.

Rōmā | mōeniā | tēr- | rūit | impīgēr | Hännibāl | ārmīa.

Sometimes the cæsura falls after the thesis of the third foot, or the arsis of the fourth. In the last case, a secondary one often occurs in the second foot. The pause at the end of the third foot was the least approved. The following lines are examples of each of these:

1. Infān- | dūm rē- | gīnā | jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrēm.
2. Primā tē- | nēt, | plaū- | sūquē vō- | lāt | frēmī- | tūquē sō- | cūndō.
3. Cui nōn | dictūs Hŷ- | lās pūēr | ēt Lā- | tōniā | Dēlōa.

2. A species of Hexameter is the *Priapean*. It is divisible into two portions of three feet each, of which portions, the first begins generally with a *trochee*, and ends with an *amphimacer*, and the second begins with a *trochee*; as follows,

O cō- | lōniā | que cūpis | pōntē | ludērē | lōngō. CATULL.

These parts, however, may very well be scanned, the first as a *Glyconic*, and the second, as a *Pherecratic* verse, of which see under (V) Choriambic verse.

3. *Pentameter verse* consists of five feet. It is commonly arranged in two portions or hemistichs, of which the first contains two feet, dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable which ought to end a word; and the second, two dactyls followed by a long syllable; thus,

Māximā | dē nihī- | lō | nāscitūr | histōrī- | ā—*Propert.*  
Pōmāquē | nōn nō- | tīs | lēgit āb | arbōrī- | būs | *TIBULL.*

Where the first distich does not end a word, or, if there be an elision by *Synalopha* or *Echthipsis*, the verse is considered harsh.

This verse is commonly used alternately with a hexameter line, combination which is commonly called *Elegiac* verse.

4. *Dactylic tetrameter*, of which there are two kinds.

1st. *Dactylic tetrameter a priore*, called also *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, which consists of the first four feet of a hexameter line, the fourth being always a dactyl; as

Sēlvitūr | ācria hŷ- | ēms grā- | tā vicē. HOR.

2d. *Dactylic tetrameter a posteriore*, called also *Spondaic tetrameter*, which consists of the last four feet of a hexameter line; as,

Sic trīs- | tēs āf- | fātūs ā- | micōa. HOR.

5. *Dactylic trimeter* (or *Choriambic Trimeter Catalectic*), consists of the last three feet of a hexameter line (See *Choriambic verse*); as,

Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb | āntrō. Hor.

6. *Dactylic trimeter catalectic*, also called *Archilochian penthemimeris*, consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter line; as,

Arbōrī- | būsquē cō- | mā. Hor.

7. *Dactylic dimeter* or *Adonic*—commonly used to conclude a Sapphic Stanza—consists of a dactyl and spondee; thus,

Risīt A- | pōllō.

### 863.—V. CHORIAMBIC METRE.

In Choriambic verse, the leading foot is a choriambus; but in the varieties of this metre, different other feet are admitted, chiefly at the beginning or end of the line, or both. The principal varieties are the following:

1. The *Choriambic tetrameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quāsiēris | scīrē nēfās | quēm mīhī quēm | tibi.

2. *Choriambic tetrameter*, consists of three choriambi, or feet equivalent in length, and a Bacchius; as,

Jānē pātēr | Jānē tūēns | divē bīcēps | bīfōrmis.

Horace altered without improving this metre, by substituting a spondee for the iambus in the first foot; as,

Tē dēōs ō- | rō Sýbārīn | &c.

*Note.*—Choriambic tetrameter was originally called Phalæcian, from Phalæcus, who made great use of it.

3. *Asclepiadic tetrameter*, consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; thus,

Mæcē- | nās ātāvīs | ēdītē rē- | gībūs. Hor.

This form is uniformly used by Horace. Other poets sometimes make the first foot a dactyl.

The cesural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

This verse is sometimes scanned as a Dactylic pentameter catalectic thus,

Mæcē- | nās ātā- | vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.

4. *Choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic*, consists of a spondee, (sometimes an iambus or trochee,) a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sic tē | d'vā pōtēns | Cýpri. Hor.



When the first foot is a spondee, it may be scanned as dactylic trimeter as,

Sic tē | divā pō- | tēns Cypri.

5. *Choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic*, consists of a spondee, choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb ān- | trō.

Here, also, the first foot is sometimes a trochee or an iambus. When a spondee, it may be scanned as Dactylic trimeter. See IV. 5.

6. *Choriambic dimeter*, consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lýdīā dic | pēr ōmnēs. Hōz.

#### 864.—VL IONIC METRE.

1. The *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotadic metre*, consists of three Ionics a majore, and a spondee; as,

Hās cūm gēmī- | nā cōmpēdē | dēdicāt cā- | tēnās.

*Obs.*—In this metre, an Ionic foot is often changed for a ditrochee, as in the third foot of the preceding line; and a long syllable is often resolved into two short ones.

2. The *Ionic a minore*, consists generally of three or four feet, which are all Ionics a minore; as,

Pūēr alēs | tibi tēlis | ōpērōsē- | quē Minērvā. Hōz.

### § 165. COMPOUND METRES.

865.—A compound metre or *Asynartete*, is the union of two kinds of metre in the same verse or line. Of these the following are the chief:

1. *Greater Alcaic*. Iambic mon. hyper. + Chor. dim. acat.

Thus,      — — | — — | — || — — — — | — —

2. *Lesser Alcaic*. Dactylic dim. + Trochaic mon.

Thus,      — — — | — — — || — — — —

3. *Archilochian Hept.* or Dact. tetr. a priore + Troch. dim. B. C.

Thus,      — — — | — — — | — — — | — — — || — — | — — | — —

4. *Dactylico-Iambic*. Dactylic trim. cat. + Iambic dim.

Thus,      — — — | — — — | — || — — | — — | — — | — —

5. *Iambico Dactylic*. Iambic dim. + Dactylic trim. cat.

Thus,      — — | — — | — — | — — || — — — | — — — | — —

§ 166. SCANNING.

866 —Scanning is the measuring of verse, or the resolving of a line into the several feet of which it is composed.

To do this properly, a previous acquaintance with the rules of quantity, and the structure of each kind of verse, is indispensable,—and also with the various ways by which syllables in certain situations are varied by contraction, elision, &c. These are usually called Figures of Prosody and are as follows:

867.—FIGURES OF PROSODY.

1. *Synalœpha*, cuts off a vowel or diphthong from the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, or *h* with a vowel following it, thus converting two syllables into one; as,

*Terra antiqua* by *Synalœpha*, *terr' antiqua*; *Dardanida infensi*, *Dardania' infensi*; *vento huc*, *vent' uc*; thus:

Quidve moror! si omnes uno ordine habetis Achivos. VIRG.

Scanned thus,

Quidvê mō- | rōr' s' ōm- | nēs ū- | n' ōr dīn' hā- | bētīs A- | chīvōs.

The *Synalœpha* is sometimes neglected, and seldom takes place in the interjections, *O*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*.

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ | Iōn' | in māg- | nō quās | dirā Cē- | lānō. VIRG.

Crēdīmūs | ān quī ā- | māt ip- | sī sibi | sōmniā | fingunt. ID.

2. *Ecthlipsis* cuts off *m* with a vowel preceding it, from the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, or *h* followed by a vowel; as,

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.

Scanned thus,

Mōnstr' hōr- | rēnd, in- | fōrm, in- | gēns cui | lūmēn ād- | ēmptūm.

This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,

Corporum | offici- | um est quoni- | am preme- | re omnia de- | orsum. LUCR.

*Obs.* A *Synalœpha* and *Ecthlipsis* are sometimes found at the end of a line, where, after the completing of the metre, a syllable remains to be joined to the next line, which of course must begin with a vowel; thus,

Sternitur | infe- | lix ali- | one | vulnere | coelum | que  
Adspicit, &c.

Here the *que* and *adspicit* are joined; as, *qu' adspicit*.

Janque iter | emen- | si, tur- | res ac | tecta La- | tino- | rum  
Ardua, &c., where the *-rum* and *ardua* are joined; as, *r' ardua*.

3. *Synæresis*, sometimes called *Crasis*, contracts two syllables into one; as, *Phæthon*, for *Phaëthon*; this is done by

forming two vowels into a diphthong; *æ*, *ē*, *ō*, into *æ*, *ei*, *oi*; or, pronouncing the two syllables as one; thus, *ea*, *iu*, as if *ya*, *yu*, &c.; as, *aurea*, *aurya*; *filius*, *filyus*; and *ua*, *ui*, &c., as if *wa*, *wi*; thus, *genua*, *genwa*; *tenuis*, *tenwis*.

4. *Diæresis* divides one syllable into two; as, *aulai*, for *aulæ*; *Troia*, for *Trojæ*; *Perseus*, for *Perseus*; *milinus*, for *milvus*; *soluit*, for *solvit*; *voluit*, for *volvit*; *agûæ*, *sûetus*, *sûa-sit*, *Sûevos*, *relangûit*, *reliqûas*, for *aguæ*, *suetus*, &c.; as,

*Aulai* in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. VIRG.

*Stamina non ulli dissolvienda Deo. Pentam. TIBULLUS.*

5. *Systole* makes a long syllable short; as, the penult in *culârunt*; thus,

*Matri* | *longa de-* | *cem tulê-* | *runt fas-* | *tidia* | *mensea.* VIRG.

6. *Diastole* makes a short syllable long; as, the last syllable of *âmôr* in the following verse:

*Consi-* | *dant, si-* | *tantus a-* | *môr, et* | *mœnia* | *condant.* VIRG.

## § 167. STANZA.

868.—A poem may consist of one or more kinds of verse. When a poem consists of one kind of verse, it is called *monocolon*; of two, *dicolon*, of three, *tricolon*.

869.—The different kinds of verse in a poem are usually combined in regular portions called stanzas, or strophes, each of which contains the same number of lines, the same kinds of verse, and these arranged in the same order.

870.—When a stanza or strophe consists of two lines, the poem is called *distrophon*; of three lines, *tristrophon*; of four, *tetastrophon*. Hence poems, according to the number of kinds of verse which they contain, and the number of lines in the stanza, are characterized as follows:

*Monocolon*, one kind of verse in the poem.

*Dicolon distrophon*, two kinds of verse, and two lines in the stanza.

*Dicolon tristrophon*, two kinds of verse, three lines in the stanza.

*Dicolon tetastrophon*, two kinds of verse, four lines in the stanza.

*Tricolon tristrophon*, three kinds of verse, three lines in the stanza.

*Tricolon tetastrophon*, three kinds of verse, four lines in the stanza.

## § 168. COMBINATIONS OF METRES IN HORACE.

871.—Horace makes use of *nineteen* different species of metre combined in *eighteen* different ways. They are arranged as follows, according to the order of preference given them by the poet. The references here, where not marked, are to § 164.

- No. 1. Two lines Greater Alcaic. § 165. 1. One Archilochian trimeter hypermeter, I. 2. 5. 3d; and one Lesser Alcaic. § 165. 2.
- No. 2. Three lines Sapphic, II. 2. One Adonic, or Dactylic dim. IV. 7
- No. 3. One line Choriambic trim. or Glyconic, V. 4. One choriambic tetram. or Asclepiadic. V. 3.
- No. 4. One line Iambic trim. or Senarian, I. 3. 5. 1st. One Iambic dim. I. 2. 3.
- No. 5. Three lines, Chor. tetram. or Asclepiadic, V. 3. One Chor. trim. or Glyconic, V. 4.
- No. 6. Two lines Chor. tetram. or Asclepiadic, V. 3. One Chor. trim. cat., or Pherecratic, V. 5. One Chor. trim. or Glyconic, V. 4.
- No. 7. Choriambic tetrameter, or Asclepiadic alone, V. 3.
- No. 8. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Dactylic tetram. a posteriore, IV. 4. 2d.
- No. 9. Choriambic pentameter only, V. 1.
- No. 10. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambic dim. 1 2. 3.
- No. 11. Iambic trimeter Senarian only, 1. 2. 5. 1st.
- No. 12. One line Choriambic dim. V. 6. One Chor. tetram. (altered) V. 2.
- No. 13. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambic trim. sen. I. 3. 5. 1st.
- No. 14. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Archilochian Dactylic trimeter catalectic, IV. 6.
- No. 15. One line Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1. One Iambico dactylic, § 165. 5.
- No. 16. One line Iambic trim. Senarian, I. 3. 5. 1st. One Dactylic Iambic. § 165. 4.
- No. 17. One line Archilochian Heptameter. § 165. 3. One Archilochian Iambic trimeter, Catalectic, I. 2. 5. 2d.
- No. 18. One line Iambic dimeter Acephalous, I. 5. 9th.; and one Iambic trimeter catalectic, I. 5. 2d.
- No. 19. Ionic a minore only, VI. 2. The first line contains three feet, the second, four.

*Note.*—The Satires and Epistles are in Dactylic Hexameter, IV. 1.

### § 169. METRICAL KEY TO ODES OF HORACE.

872.—This key gives, in alphabetic order, the first words of each ode, with a reference to the Nos. in the preceding section where the stanza is described, and reference made to the place where each metre is explained.

<i>Æli vetusto</i> . . . . .	No. 1	<i>Bacchum in remotis</i> . . . . .	No. 1
<i>Æquam memento</i> . . . . .	1	<i>Beatus ille</i> . . . . .	4
<i>Albi ne doleas</i> . . . . .	5	<i>Cælo supinas</i> . . . . .	1
<i>Altera jam teritur</i> . . . . .	13	<i>Cælo tonantem</i> . . . . .	1
<i>Angustam am.</i> . . . . .	1	<i>Cum tu Lydia</i> . . . . .	3
<i>At Deorum</i> . . . . .	4	<i>Cur me querelis</i> . . . . .	1
<i>Audivére Lycæ</i> . . . . .	6	<i>Delicta majorum</i> . . . . .	1

Descende cœlo . . . . .	1	Nullus argento . . . . .	2
Dianam teneræ . . . . .	6	Nunc est bibendum . . . . .	1
Diffugens nives . . . . .	14	O crudelis adhuc . . . . .	9
Dive quem proles . . . . .	2	O Diva gratum . . . . .	1
Divis orte bonis . . . . .	5	O fons Blandusiae . . . . .	6
Donarem pateras . . . . .	7	O matre pulchrâ . . . . .	1
Donec gratus eram . . . . .	3	O nata mecum . . . . .	1
Eheu fugaces . . . . .	1	O navis referent . . . . .	6
Eat mihi nonum . . . . .	2	O sæpe mecum . . . . .	1
Et thure et fidibus . . . . .	3	O Venus regina . . . . .	2
Exegi monumentum . . . . .	7	Odi profanum . . . . .	1
Extremum Tanaium . . . . .	5	Otium Divos . . . . .	2
Faune nympharum . . . . .	2	Parcius junctas . . . . .	2
Nesto quid potius die . . . . .	3	Parvus Deorum . . . . .	1
Herculis ritu . . . . .	2	Parentis olim . . . . .	4
Horrida tempestas . . . . .	15	Pastor quum traheret . . . . .	5
Ibis Liburnis . . . . .	4	Persicos odi puer . . . . .	2
Icci beatis . . . . .	1	Petti nihil me . . . . .	16
Ille et nefasto . . . . .	1	Phœbe, silvarumque . . . . .	2
Impios parræ . . . . .	2	Phœbus volentem . . . . .	1
Inclusam Danaën . . . . .	5	Pindarum quisquis . . . . .	2
Intactis opulentior . . . . .	3	Poscimus siquid . . . . .	2
Integer vitæ . . . . .	2	Quæ cura patrum . . . . .	1
Intermissa Venus diu . . . . .	3	Qualem ministrum . . . . .	1
Jam jam efficaci . . . . .	11	Quando repostum . . . . .	4
Jam pauca aratro . . . . .	1	Quantum distet ab Inacho . . . . .	3
Jam satis terribis . . . . .	2	Quem tu, Melpomene . . . . .	3
Jam veris comites . . . . .	5	Quem virum aut heroa . . . . .	2
Justum et tenacem . . . . .	1	Quid bellicosus . . . . .	1
Laudabunt alii . . . . .	8	Quid dedicatum . . . . .	1
Lupis et agnis . . . . .	4	Quid fles Asterie . . . . .	6
Lydia dic per omnes . . . . .	12	Quid immerentes . . . . .	4
Mæcenas atavis . . . . .	7	Quid obseratis . . . . .	11
Malâ soluta . . . . .	4	Quid tibi vis . . . . .	8
Martiis cœlebs . . . . .	2	Quis desiderio . . . . .	5
Mater sæva Cupidinum . . . . .	3	Quis multa gracilis . . . . .	6
Mercuri facunde . . . . .	2	Quo me, Bacche . . . . .	3
Mercuri nam te . . . . .	2	Quo, quo scelesti ruitis . . . . .	4
Miserarum est . . . . .	19	Rectius vives . . . . .	2
Mollis inertia . . . . .	10	Rogare longo . . . . .	4
Montium custos . . . . .	2	Scriberis Vario . . . . .	5
Motum ex Metello . . . . .	1	Septimi Gades . . . . .	2
Musis amicus . . . . .	1	Sic te Diva potens . . . . .	3
Natis in usum . . . . .	1	Solvitur acris hiems . . . . .	17
Ne forte credas . . . . .	1	Te maris et terræ . . . . .	8
Ne sit ancillæ . . . . .	2	Tu ne quæsieris . . . . .	9
Nolis longa feræ . . . . .	5	Tyrrhena regum . . . . .	1
Nondum subacta . . . . .	1	Ulla si juris . . . . .	2
Non ebur neque aureum . . . . .	18	Uxor pauperis Ibyci . . . . .	3
Non semper imbres . . . . .	1	Velox amicum . . . . .	1
Non usitata . . . . .	1	Vides ut alta . . . . .	1
Non vides quanto . . . . .	2	Vile potabis . . . . .	9
Nox erat . . . . .	10	Vitas hinnulæ . . . . .	6
Nonnulli vixere sapienter . . . . .	9	Vixi . . . . .	9

## APPENDIX.

## 1 ROMAN COMPUTATION OF TIME.

1. *Divisions of the Year.*

873.—Romulus is said to have divided the year into ten months as follows: 1. *Martius*, from Mars, his supposed father; 2. *Aprilis*, from *Aperio*, "to open;" 3. *Maius*, from *Maia*, the mother of Mercury; 4. *Junius*, from the goddess *Juno*. The rest were named from their number, as follows: 5. *Quintilis*, afterwards *Julius*, from *Julius Cæsar*; 6. *Sextilis*, afterwards *Augustus*, from *Augustus Cæsar*; 7. *September*; 8. *October*; 9. *November*; and 10. *December*. Numa afterwards added two months; viz: 11. *Januarius*, from the god *Janus*; 12. *Februarius*, from *februus*, "to purify."

874.—As the months were regulated by the course of the moon, it was soon found that the months and seasons did not always correspond, and various expedients were adopted to correct this error. Much confusion however still remained till about A. U. 707, when Julius Cæsar, assisted by Sosigenes, an astronomer of Alexandria, reformed the Calendar, adjusted the year according to the course of the sun, and assigned to each of the twelve months the number of days which they still contain.

2. *The Roman Month.*

875.—The Romans divided their month into three parts, called *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*\*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth was called the *Nones*; and the thirteenth was called the *Ides*; except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* fell on the seventh, and the *Ides* on the fifteenth; and the day was numbered according to its distance, (not *after* but) *before* each of these points; that is, after the *Kalends*, they numbered the day according to its distance before the *Nones*; after the *Nones*, according to its distance before the *Ides*, and after the *Ides*, according to its distance before the *Kalends*—both days being always included. The day before each of these points was never numbered, but called *Pridie*, or *ante diem Nonarum*, or *Iduum*, or *Kalendarum*, as the case might be; the day before that was called *tertio*, the day before that, *quarto*, &c.; scil. *Nonarum*, *Iduum*, *Kalendarum*.

876.—Various expressions and constructions were used by the Romans in the notation of the days of the months. Thus, for example, the 29th December or the 4th of the *Kalends* of January, was expressed differently as follows:

- 1st. Quarto Kalendârum Januarii. Abbreviated, IV. K<sup>l</sup>l. Jan., & c  
2d. Quarto Kalendas Januarii. " IV. Kal. Jan., & c

\* The first day was named *Kalends*, from the Greek, *καλέω*, *to call*, because when the month was regulated according to the course of the moon, the priest announced the new moon, which was of course the first day of the month. The *Nones* were so called because that day was always the ninth from the *Ides*. The term *Ides* is derived from an obsolete Latin verb *iduaré*, *to divide*, it is supposed, because that day being about the middle of the month, divided it into two nearly equal parts.

3d. Quarto Kalendas Januarias. Abbreviated. IV. Kal. Jan. or  
4th. Ante diem quartum Kal. Jan. " a. d. IV. K. Jan.

In these expressions, *quarto* agrees with *die* understood; and *die* governs *Kalendarum* in the genitive. *Kalendas* is governed by *ante* understood. In the first expression, *Januarii* is considered as a noun governed by *Kalendarum*; in the second, as a noun governed by *Kalendas*; in the third, *Januarias* is regarded as an adjective agreeing with *Kalendas*; in the fourth, *ante diem quartum* is a technical phrase for *die quarto ante*, and frequently has a preposition before it; as, in *ante diem*, &c., or, *ex ante diem*, &c.

The notation of Nones and Ides was expressed in the same way, and with the same variety of expression.

The correspondence of the Roman notation of time with our own, may be seen by inspection of the following

877.—TABLE.

<i>Days of our Months.</i>	MAR. MAL. JUL. OCT. 31 days.	JAN. AUG. DEC. 31 days.	APR. JUN. SEPT. NOV. 30 days.	FEBR. 28 days. Bissext. 29.
1	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.	Kalendæ.
2	VI. nonas.	IV. nonas.	IV. nonas.	IV. nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonas.	Nonas.	Nonas.
6	Pridie "	VIII. idus.	VIII. idus.	VIII. idus.
7	Nonas.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie "	XIX. kal.	XVIII. kal.	XVI. kal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. kal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie Mar.
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie "	
31	Pridie "	Pridie "		

3. Rules for reducing Time.

As, however, this table cannot be always at hand, the following simple rules will enable a person to reduce time without a table.

I. TO REDUCE ROMAN TIME TO OUR OWN.

*For reducing Kalends.*

878.—*Kalends* are always the first day of the month :—*Pridie Kalendrum*, always the last day of the month preceding. For any other notation, observe the following—

879.—**RULE.** Subtract the number of the Kalends given, from the number of days in the preceding month ; add 2, and the result will be the day of the preceding month ; thus,

X. Kal. Jan.—Dec. has days  $31-10=21+2=23$ d of Dec'r.

XVI Kal. Dec.—Nov. has days  $30-16=14+2=16$ th of Nov'r.

*For reducing Nones and Ides.*

880.—**RULE.** Subtract the number given, from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fall, and add 1. The result will be the day of the month named ; thus,

IV. Non. Dec.—Nones on the  $5-4=1+1=2$ , or 2d Dec'r

VI. Id. Dec.—Ides on the  $13-6=7+1=8$ , or 8th Dec'r.

IV. Non. Mar.—Nones on the  $7-4=3+1=4$ , or 4th March.

VI. Id. Mar.—Ides on the  $15-6=9+1=10$ , or 10th March.

II. FOR REDUCING OUR TIME TO ROMAN.

881.—If the day is that on which the Kalends, Nones, or Ides fall, call it by these names. If the day before, call it *Pridie Kal.* (of the following month), *Prid. Non.*, *Pridie Id.* (of the same month). Other days to be denominated according to their distance before the point next following, viz : those after the Kalends and before the Nones, to be called *Nones* ; those after the Nones and before the Ides, to be called *Ides*, viz : of the month named ; and those after the Ides and before the Kalends, to be called *Kalends*, viz : of the month following ; as follows :

*For reducing to Kalends.*

882.—**RULE.** Subtract the day of the month given, from the number of days in the month, and add 2. The result will be the number of the Kalends of the month following ; thus,

Dec. 23d.—Dec. has days  $31-23=8+2=10$ , or X. Kal. Jan.

Nov. 16th.—Nov. has days  $30-16=14+2=16$ , or XVI Kal. Dec

*For reducing to Nones and Ides.*

883.—**RULE.** Subtract the day of the month given, from the day of the Nones (if between the Kalends and Nones), or from the day of the Ides (if between the Nones and Ides),



and add 1. The result will be the number of the Nones or Ides respectively; as,

Dec. 2d.—Day of the Nones	$5-2=3+1=4$ , or IV. Non. Dec.
Dec. 8th. “	Ides $13-8=5+1=6$ , or VI. Id. Dec.
March 4th. “	Nones $7-4=3+1=4$ , or IV. Non. Mar.
March 10th. “	Ides $15-10=5+1=6$ , or VI. Id. Mar.

### Division of the Roman Day.

884.—The Roman civil day extended, as with us, from midnight to midnight, and its parts were variously named; as, *media nox, gallicinium, canticinium, diluculum, mane, antemeridianum, meridies, pomeridianum, &c.*

885.—The natural day extended from sunrise (*solis ortus*) till sunset (*solis occidus*), and was divided into twelve equal parts, called hours, (*horæ*); which were, of course, longer or shorter according to the length of the day. At the equinox, their hour and ours would be of the same length; but, as they began to number at sunrise, the number would be different, i. e. their first hour would correspond to our 7 o'clock, their second to our 8 o'clock, &c.

886.—The night was divided by the Romans into four watches (*vigiliæ*), each equal to three hours; the first and second extending from sunset to midnight, and the third and fourth, from midnight to sunrise.

## II. OF ROMAN NAMES.

887.—The Romans at first seem to have had but one name; as, *Romulus, Remus, Numitor*; sometimes two; as, *Numa Pompilius, Ancus Martius, &c.*; but when they began to be divided into tribes, or clans, (*gentes*) they commonly had three names—the *prænomen*, the *nomen*, and the *cognomen*; arranged as follows:

1. The *Prænomen* stood first, and distinguished the individual. It was commonly written with one or two letters; as, *A.* for *Aulus*; *C.* for *Caius*. — *Cn.* for *Cneius, &c.*

2. The *Nomen*, which distinguished the gens. This name commonly ended in *ius*; as, *Cornelius, Fabius, Tullius, &c.*; and

3. The *Cognomen*, or surname, was put last, and marked the family; as, *Cicero, Cæsar, &c.*

Thus, in *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, *Publius* is the *prænomen*, and denotes the individual; *Cornelius* is the *nomen*, and denotes the gens; and *Scipio* is the *cognomen*, and denotes the family.

4. Sometimes a fourth name, called the *Agnomen*, was added, as a memorial of some illustrious action or remarkable event. Thus, *Scipio* was named *Africanus*, from the conquest of Carthage in Africa.

888.—The three names, however, were not always used—commonly two, and sometimes only one. In speaking to any one, the *prænomen* was commonly used, which was peculiar to Roman citizens.

889.—When there was only one daughter in a family, she was called by the name of the gens, with a feminine termination; as, *Tullia*, the daughter of *M. Tullius Cicero*; *Julia*, the daughter of *C. Julius Cæsar*. II

there were two, the elder was called *Major*, and the younger *Minor*; as, *Tullia Major*, &c. If more than two, they were distinguished by numerals; as, *Prima*, *Secunda*, *Tertia*, &c.

890.—Slaves had no *prænomen*, but were anciently called by the *prænomen* of their masters; as, *Marcipor*, as if *Marci puer*; *Lucipor* (*Lucii puer*), &c. Afterwards they came to be named either from their country or from other circumstances; as, *Syrus*, *Dānus*, *Gēta*, *Tiro*, *Laurea*; and still more frequently from their employment; as, *Medici*, *Chirurgi*, *Pudagogi*, *Grammatici*, *Scribæ*, *Fabri*, &c.

891.—The most common abbreviations of Latin names, are the following, viz.:

A., <i>Aulus</i> .	M. T. C., <i>Marcus Tullius</i>	Q., or Qu., <i>Quintus</i> .
C., <i>Caius</i> .	Cicero.	Ser., <i>Servius</i> .
Cn., <i>Cneius</i> .	M', <i>Manius</i> .	S., or Sex., <i>Sextus</i> .
D., <i>Decimus</i> .	Mam., <i>Mamercus</i> .	Sp., <i>Spurius</i> .
L., <i>Lucius</i> .	N., <i>Numerius</i> .	T., <i>Titus</i> .
M., <i>Marcus</i> .	P., <i>Publius</i> .	Ti., or Tib., <i>Tiberius</i> .

#### Other Abbreviations.

A. d., <i>Ante diem</i> .	Id., <i>Idus</i> .	S., <i>Salutem, Sacrum, Senatus</i> .
A. U., <i>Anno Urbis</i> .	Imp., <i>Imperator</i>	S. D. P., <i>Salutem dicit plurimum</i> .
A. U. C., <i>Anno urbis conditæ</i> .	Non., <i>Nonæ</i> .	S. P. Q. R., <i>Senatus populusque Romanus</i> .
Cal., or kal., <i>Kalendæ</i> .	P. C., <i>Patres conscripti</i> .	S. C., <i>Senatus consultum</i> .
Con., <i>Consul</i> . (Singular.)	P. R., <i>Populus Romanus</i> .	
Cos., <i>Consules</i> . (Plural.)	Pont. Max., <i>Pontifex maximus</i> .	
D., <i>Divus</i> .	Pr., <i>Prætor</i> .	
Eq. Rom., <i>Eques Romanus</i> .	Proc., <i>Proconsul</i> .	
	Resp., <i>Respublica</i> .	

### III. DIVISIONS OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE.

892.—The Roman people were originally divided as follows:

1. *Patres*. Fathers, or Senators, called also *patrônes*, from their relation to the plebeians, to whom they were the legal protectors.
2. *Plebes*, or common people, called also *clientes*.  
There were afterwards added—
3. *Equites*, or Knights, persons of merit and distinction, selected from the two orders, whose duty at first was to serve in war as cavalry, but they were afterwards advanced to other important offices. It was necessary for them to be over 18 years of age, and to possess a fortune of four hundred thousand sesterces.
4. *Liberti*, or *Libertini*. Freedmen—persons who had once been slaves, but obtained their freedom, and ranked as citizens. They were called *liberti* in relation to the person by whom they were set free, and *libertini* in relation to all others.
5. *Servi*. Slaves.

893.—When Romulus arranged the affairs of the new city, he appointed a council of 100 *Patres* from the Romans, and afterwards added to them 100 more from the Sabines. Tarquinius Priscus, the fifth king of Rome, added 100 more, called *Patres minorum gentium*, in relation to whom the former senators were called *Patres majorum gentium*, making 300 in all. A great part of these were slain by Tarquin the proud; and after his expulsion, Brutus, the first consul, chose a number to supply their place, who were called *Patres conscripti*, because they were enrolled with the other senators. This title was afterwards applied to all the senators in council assembled, and is supposed to be abbreviated for *Patres et conscripti*.

894.—The sons of the *Patres* were called *Patricii*, or Patricians. Besides these distinctions among the Romans, there were also distinctions of rank or party, as follows:

*Nobiles*, whose ancestors or themselves held any curule office, i. e. had been *Consul*, *Prætor*, *Censor*, or *Curule Edile*.

*Ignobiles*, who neither themselves, nor their ancestors, held any curule office.

*Optimates*, those who favored the senate.

*Populares*, those who favored the people.

#### IV. DIVISIONS OF THE ROMAN CIVIL OFFICERS.

895.—At first Rome was governed by kings for the space of 244 years. The ordinary magistrates after that, till the end of the republic, were,

1. *Consuls*, or chief magistrates, of whom there were two.
2. *Prætors*, or judges, also two in number, next in dignity to the consuls.
3. *Censors*, who took charge of the census, and had a general supervision of the morals of the people.
4. *Tribunes* of the people, the special guardians of the people against the encroachments of the patricians, and who, by the word "*Veto*," *I forbid*, could prevent the passage of any law.
5. *Ædiles*, who took care of the city and had the inspection and regulation of its public buildings, temples, theatres, baths, &c.
6. *Quæstors*, or Treasurers, who collected the public revenues.

896.—Under the emperors there were added,

1. *Præfectus Urbis*, or *Urbis*, Governor of the city.
2. *Præfectus Prætoris*, Commander of the body guards.
3. *Præfectus Annonæ*, whose duty it was to procure and distribute grain in times of scarcity.
4. *Præfectus militaris ærarii*, who had charge of the military fund.
5. *Præfectus Classis*, Admiral of the fleet.
6. *Præfectus Vigilum*, or captain of the watch.

#### V. THE ROMAN ARMY.

897.—The Romans were a nation of warriors. All within a certain age (17 to 45), were obliged to go forth to war at the call of their country

When an army was wanted for any purpose, a levy was made among the people, of the number required. These were then arranged, officered, and equipped for service.

898.—*The Legion.* The leading division of the Roman army was the legion, which when full consisted of 6000 men, but varied from that to 4000.

899.—Each legion was divided into ten cohorts; each cohort, into three maniples; and each maniple, into two centuries.

900.—The complement of cavalry (*equitatus*), for each legion was three hundred, called *Ala*, or *justus equitatus*. These were divided into ten *turms* or troops; and each *turma* into three *decuria*, or bodies of ten men.

#### *Division of the Soldiers.*

901.—The Roman soldiers were divided into three classes, viz.

1. *Hastati*, or spearmen; young men who occupied the first line.
2. *Principes*, or middle-aged men, who occupied the middle line.
3. *Triarii*; veterans of approved valor, who occupied the third line.

Besides these, there were,

4. *Velttes*, or light armed soldiers; distinguished for agility and swiftness.
5. *Funditores*, or slingers.
6. *Sagittarii*, or bowmen.

902.—*The Officers of the Legion were,*

1. Six *Military tribunes*, who commanded under the consul in turn, usually a month.
2. The *Centuriones*, who commanded the centuries.

*The Officers of the Cavalry were,*

1. The *Præfectus Alæ*, or commander of the wing.
2. The *Decuriones*, or captains of ten.

903.—The whole army was under the command of the consul or præconsul, who acted as commander-in-chief. Under him were his *Legati*, or lieutenants, who acted in his absence, or under his direction; or, as his deputies, were sent by him on embassies, or on business of special importance.

## VI. ROMAN MONEY--WEIGHTS--AND MEASURES.

### *Roman Money.*

904.—The principal coins among the Romans were—*Brass*: the *As* and its divisions; *Silver*: *Sestertius*, *Quinarius*, and *Denarius*, called *bigati* and *quadrigati*, from the impression of a chariot drawn by two or four horses on one side; *Gold*: the *Aureus* or *Solidus*.

905.—Before the coining of silver, the Romans reckoned by the *As*, a brass coin, called also *libra*. This coin was originally the weight of the

Roman *libra* or *pondus*, but was afterwards reduced at different times, till at last it came to one twenty-fourth of a pound, and was called *libella*. It was divided into twelve equal parts called *Unciæ*, every number of which had a distinct name, as follows :

$\frac{1}{12}$	<i>Uncia.</i>	$\frac{6}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{2}$	<i>Semis, sem-</i>	$\frac{9}{12}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$	<i>Dodrans.</i>
$\frac{2}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{6}$	<i>Sextans.</i>		<i>bella.</i>	$\frac{10}{12}$ or $\frac{5}{6}$	<i>Dextans.</i>
$\frac{3}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$	<i>Quadrans.</i>	$\frac{7}{12}$	<i>Septunx.</i>	$\frac{11}{12}$	<i>Deunx.</i>
$\frac{4}{12}$ or $\frac{1}{3}$	<i>Triens.</i>	$\frac{8}{12}$ or $\frac{2}{3}$	<i>Bes, or bes-</i>		
$\frac{5}{12}$	<i>Quincunx.</i>		<i>sis.</i>		

906.—After the use of silver money, accounts were kept in Sesterces (*Sestertii*). This coin emphatically called *nummus* (money), was originally equal to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  *asses*, as the name *sestertius* means. Its symbol was L. L. S. i. e. *Libra Libra Semis*, or the numeral letters, thus, IIS, or with a line across HS. Other coins were multiples of this; thus, the *denarius* was equal to 4 *sesterces*, or 10 *asses*, and the *aureus*, a gold coin, was equal to 25 *denarii*, or 100 *sestertii*. When the *as* was reduced in weight after A. U. C. 586, the *sestertius* was worth 4 *asses*, and the *denarius*, 16.

907.—A thousand *sestertii* was called *sestertium* (not a coin but the name of a sum), and was indicated by the mark IIS. This word was never used in the singular; and any sum less than 2000 sesterces was called so many *sestertii*; 2000 was called *duo* or *biua sestertia*; 10,000, *decia sestertia*; 20,000, *vicena sestertia*, &c., up to a million of sesterces; which was written *decies centena millia sestertsorum*, or *nummorum*, ten times a hundred thousand sesterces. This was commonly abbreviated into *decies sestertium*, or *decies nummum*, in which expressions *centena millia*, or *centies millia* is always understood.

908.—The following table will show the value of the Roman *as*, in federal money, both before, and after, the Punic war, and of the larger coins at all times

1. Table of Roman Money.

		Before A. U.	After A. U.
		586.	586.
		D. cts. m.	D. cts. m.
	Teruncius, or 3 <i>Unciæ</i> , . . . .	3.8	2.4
2	Teruncii = 1 <i>Sembella</i> , . . .	7.7	4.8
2	<i>Sembella</i> = 1 <i>As</i> , . . . . .	15.4	9.6
Before 516-24	{	<i>Asses</i> , = 1 <i>Sestertius</i> , . .	3 8.6
After 516-4			3 8.6
2	<i>Sestertii</i> = 1 <i>Quinarius</i> , or .		
	<i>Victoriatius</i> , . . . . .	7 7.3	7 7.3
2	<i>Quinarii</i> = 1 <i>Denarii</i> , . . . .	15 4.7	15 4.7
25	<i>Denarii</i> = 1 <i>Aureus</i> , or <i>Solidus</i> , . . . .	3 86 8.4	3 86 8.4
10	<i>Aurei</i> = 1 <i>Sestertium</i> , . . . .	38 68 4.6	38 68 4.6

2. Roman Weights.

		Troy Weight.		Avoirdupois Wt.	
		Lbs. oz.	dwt. grs.	Lbs. oz.	drs
The Siliqua (equal to 4 Cus), . . . . .			2.92		0.106
3 Siliquæ = 1 Obolus, . . . . .			8.76		0.320
2 Oboli = 1 Scrupulum, . . . . .			17.53		0.641
4 Scrupulæ = 1 Sextula, . . . . .		2	22.13		2.564
1½ Sextula = 1 Siciliquus, . . . . .		4	9.19		3.847
1½ Siciliquus = 1 Duella, . . . . .		5	20.26		5.129
3 Duellæ = 1 Uncia, . . . . .		17	12.79		15.389
12 Unciæ = 1 LIBRA, . . . . .		10	10 9.53	-- 11	8.668

The Drachma was 3 Scrupulæ.

3. Roman Liquid Measure.

		Galls	qts.	pts
1 Ligula, or Cochleare, is equal to . . . . .				0.019
4 Ligula, = 1 Cyathus, . . . . .				0.079
1½ Cyathi, = 1 Acetabulum, . . . . .				0.118
2 Acetabula, = 1 Quartarius, . . . . .				0.237
2 Quartarii, = 1 Hemina, . . . . .				0.475
2 Heminæ, = 1 Sextarius, . . . . .				0.950
6 Sextarii, = 1 Congius, . . . . .		2	3	1.704
4 Congii, = 1 Urna, . . . . .		2	3	0.819
2 Urnæ, = 1 Amphora, . . . . .		5	2	1.639
20 Amphoræ, = 1 Culeus, . . . . .		114	0	0.795

The Sextarius was divided into twelve Unciæ, one of which was the Cyathus, equal to a small wine glass.

4. Roman Dry Measure.

		Pks.	galls.	qts.	pts
1 Sextarius (same as in liquid measure), . . . . .					0.950
8 Sextarii, = 1 Semi-modius, . . . . .				3	1.606
• Semi-modii, = 1 Modius, . . . . .		— 1		3	1.213

Roman Measures of Length.

909.—The Roman foot (*pes*), like the *as*, was divided into 12 *unciæ*, different numbers of which were sometimes called by the same names as those of the *as*; viz.: *Sextans*, *quadrans*, &c. The measures less than the *uncia* were the *digitus* =  $\frac{1}{4}$ ; the *semiuncia* =  $\frac{1}{2}$ ; the *siciliquus* =  $\frac{1}{3}$ ; and the *sextula* = 1-6th of the *uncia*; i. e. the *pes*, or foot, contained 12 *unciæ*, or 16 *digiti*, or 24 *semiuncia*, or 48 *siciliqui*, or 72 *sextula*.

5. Table of Measures above a *Pes*.

		Yds.	ft.
1 Pes = 12 Unciæ, or 16 Digiti, . . . . .			.97
1½ Pes = 1 Palmipes, . . . . .			1.21
1½ Pes = 1 Cubitus, . . . . .			1.45
2½ Pædes = 1 Pes Sestertius, . . . . .			2.42
5 Pædes = 1 Passus, . . . . .			1 1.85
25 Passus = 1 Stadium, . . . . .		202	0.72
8 Stadia = 1 Milliære, or mile, . . . . .		1617	2.45

## 6. Table of Land Measure.

			A. rods.	poles	sq ft
100	Pædes quadrāti,	= 1 Serupūlum,			94 23
4	Serupūla,	= 1 Sextūla,			1 104.69
1 1 5	Sextūlæ,	= 1 Actus Simplex,			1 180.08
5	Actus, or 6 Sextūlæ,	= 1 Uncia,			8 83.66
6	Unciæ,	= 1 Actus quadrātus,	1		9 229.87
2	Actus quadrāti,	= 1 Jugērum (As),	2		19 187.09
2	Jugēra,	= 1 Hæredium,	1	0	39 101.88
100	Hæredia,	= 1 Centuria,	124	2	17 109.79
4	Centuriæ,	= 1 Saltus,	498	1	29 166.91

The Roman *Jugērum*, or *As*, of land, was also divided into 12 *Unciæ*, any number of which was denominated as before, 906.

## VII. DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

910.—Of the Roman literature, previous to A. U., 514, scarcely a vestige remains. The Roman writers, subsequent to that period, have been arranged into four classes, with reference to the purity of the language at the time in which they lived. These are called the *Golden age*, the *Silver age*, the *Brazen age*, and the *Iron age*.

911.—The *Golden age* extends from the time of the second Punic war, A. U., 514, to the death of Augustus, A. D., 14, a period of about 250 years. In that period, Facciolatus reckons up in all 62 writers, of many of whose works, however, only fragments remain. The most distinguished writers of that period are *Terence*, *Catullus*, *Cæsar*, *Nepos*, *Cicero*, *Virgil*, *Horace*, *Ovid*, *Livy*, and *Sallust*.

912.—The *Silver age* extends from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D., 118, a period of 104 years. The writers who flourished in this age are about twenty-three in number, of whom the most distinguished are *Celsus*, *Villeius*, *Cotumella*, the *Senecas*, the *Plinys*, *Juvenal*, *Quintilian*, *Tacitus*, *Suetonius*, and *Curtius*.

913.—The writers of the *Brazen age*, extending from the death of Trajan till Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D., 410, were 35; the most distinguished of whom were *Justin*, *Terentianus*, *Victor*, *Lactantius*, and *Claudian*.

914.—From this period commenced the *Iron age*, during which the Latin language was much adulterated by the admixture of foreign words, and its purity, elegance, and strength, greatly declined.

## VII. ENGLISH PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN.

915.—For reasons stated in the note, § 2, the continental pronunciation of the Latin language, as presented in that section, is considered the best. But since there are many who prefer the English, or Walkerian pronunciation, a brief statement of the principles by which it is regulated is here introduced. In doing this it is necessary to state, and for the learner always to bear in mind, that the English accentuation and vowel sounds have nothing to do with the quantity of the syllables as established by the rules of Latin prosody. These indeed are often directly opposed to each other. A vowel which by the rules of English orthoepy is long, having both the accent and the long English sound, is short in Latin; as *pá-ter*, *Dé-us*. On the other hand, a syllable that is short, being without the accent and having the short English sound, is long in Latin; as, *an"-a-bá-mus*, *mon"-a-bá-tis*. When, therefore, a vowel is said to have the long sound, or the short sound—to be accented or unaccented, nothing is affirmed respecting the quantity of the syllable, as long or short. Here indeed there is an incongruity, but it is inseparable from the system.

916.—According to this mode of pronunciation, the sound of a vowel or diphthong depends entirely on two things; viz, the *accent* and the *place* of the vowel in the syllable. Again, the division of words into syllables depends, in a great measure, on the place of the accents; and that again on the quantity of the penult syllable. Hence to present this matter fully and properly, we must reverse this order, and consider,

- I. The quantity of the penult syllables.
- II. The accent.
- III. The division of words into syllables; and
- IV. The sounds of the letters in their combinations.

☞ For the division of letters into vowels and consonants, the combination of the former into diphthongs, and the division of the latter into mutes, liquids, &c.; as also for the meaning of the terms *monosyllable*, *disyllable*, &c., *penult* and *antepenult*, and the marks for *long*, *short*, and *accented* syllables, see § 1

## I. THE QUANTITY OF THE PENULT SYLLABLES.

917.—For quantity in general, see the Rules, §§ 154–161; and particularly for penult syllables, §§ 156–159. The following are *general*, being applicable to other syllables as well as the penult, and are of extensive application:

1. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *vía*, *dēus*.
2. A vowel before two consonants, or a double consonant is long by position; as, *arma*, *fallo*, *axis*.
3. A vowel before a mute and a liquid (*l* and *r*), is common; i. e. either long or short; as, *volūcris*, or *volūcris*.
4. A diphthong is always long; as, *Cāsar*, *aūrum*.

*Note.*—When the quantity of the penult is determined by any of these rules, it is *u* t marked; otherwise it is *i* marked.



## II. THE ACCENT.

918.—ACCENT is a particular stress of voice laid on a particular syllable of a word, and marked thus ('); as, *pa'-ter*, *an'-i-mus*. Its place is on the penult or antepenult.

919.—When a word has more accents than one, the last is called the *primary* accent, the one preceding it, the *secondary*, marked ("); preceding that, is often a *third*, marked ('); and sometimes even a *fourth*, marked ("); and all of them subject to the same rules. These are as follows:

## 920.—RULES.

1. Words of two syllables have the accent on the first, or penult; as, *pă'-ter*, *mū'-sa*, *atū'-rum*.

2. Words of more than two syllables, when the penult is long, have the accent on the penult; as, *a-mī'-cus*: when the penult is short they have the accent on the antepenult; as, *dom'-i-nus*.

3. When the enclitics *que*, *ve*, *ne*, are added to a word, the two words are considered as one, and it is accented accordingly; as, *pa-ter'-que*, *am''-i-cus'-ne*, *dom''-i-nus'-ve*.

4. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed on the first; as, *dom''-i-nō'-rum*.

5. If three or four syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary is placed sometimes on the first and sometimes on the second; as, *tol''-e-ra-bil'-i-us*, *de-mon''-stra-ban'-tur*.

6. Some words which have four syllables before the primary accent, and all that have more than four have a *third* accent; and in longer words even a *fourth*; as, *pab'''-u-la''-ti-ō'-nis*, *pab'''-u-la'''-ti-on''-i-bus'-que*.

## III. THE DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

920.—In Latin, every word has as many syllables as there are separate vowels or diphthongs. Hence the following—

## RULES.

1. Two vowels coming together and not forming a diphthong, must be divided; as, *De'-us*, *su'-us*, *au'-re-us*.

2. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid (*l*, *r*) between the last two vowels of a word, or between any two unaccented vowels, are joined to the last; as, *pa'-TER*, *al'-a-CER*, *al'-a-CRIS*, *tol''-e-RA-bil'-i-us*, *per'''-e-GRI-nā''-ti-ō'-NIS*.

*Exc.* But *tib-i* and *sib-i* join it to the first.

3. A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid *before* an accented vowel, are joined to that vowel, and so also is a single consonant *after* it, except in the penult; as, *i-TIN'-ē-ra*, *HOM'-i-nes*.

*Exc. 1.* A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid, after *a*, *e*, *o*, accented, and followed by *e* or *i* before a vowel, are joined to the latter; as, *sō-ai-us*, *i-ni-us*, *dō-oe-o*, *pā-tri-us*.

*Exc. 2.* A single consonant, or a mute and a liquid after *u*, accented, must be joined to the following vowel; as, *mū-li-er*, *tū-ti-or*, *lū-rrī-cus*.

4. Any two consonants, except a mute and a liquid coming before or after an accented vowel, and also a mute and a liquid after an accented vowel (the penult and the exceptions to Rule 3 excepted), must be divided; as, *tem-por'-i-bus*, *lec'-tum*, *tem'-pō-rum*, *met'-ri-cus*.

Also *gl*, *tl*, and often *cl*, after the penultimate vowel, or before the vowel of an accented syllable; as, *At'-las*, *At lan'-ti-des*, *ec-lec'-ta*.

5. If three consonants come between the vowels of any two syllables, the last two, if a mute and a liquid, are joined to the latter vowel; as, *con'-tra*, *am''-pli-a'-vit*; otherwise, the last only; as, *comp'-tus*, *re-demp'-tor*.

6. A compound word is resolved into its constituent parts, if the first part ends with a consonant; as, *AB-es'-se*, *SUB'-i-it*, *IN'-i-tur*, *CIRCUM'-ā-go*. But if the first part ends with a vowel, it is divided like a simple word; as, *DEf'-ē-ro*, *DIL'-i-go*, *PRÆs'-to*.

921.—These rules are useful here, only as a guide to the pronunciation in the Walkerian mode, the vowel sounds being always different when they end a syllable, and when followed by a consonant; thus, *dil'-i-go* and *præs'-to* would be pronounced very differently if divided thus, *dī'-li-go* and *præ'-sto*, though the *quantity* and *accent* would be the same in both. It is therefore manifest, that in order to correct pronunciation in this mode, it is necessary to be familiar with, and ready in applying, the rules of syllabication.

#### IV. OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

##### 922.—The sound of the Vowels.

1. Every accented vowel at the end of a syllable has the long English sound; as in the words *fate*, *me*, *pine*, *no*, *tube*; thus, *pa'-ter*, *de'-dit*, *vi'-vus*, *to'-tus*, *tu'-ba*. *Ty'-rus*.\*

2. At the end of an unaccented syllable, *e*, *o*, and *u*, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but are sounded shorter; as, *re' te*, *vo'-lo*, *ma'-nu*; *a* has the sound of *a* in *father*; as, *mu'-sa*, *e-pis'-to-la*.

*I*, ending an unaccented syllable, has always its long sound in the following positions:

\* *Y* has the sound of *i* in the same situation.

1st. In the end of a word; as, *dom'i-ni*. Except in *tib-i* and *sib-i*, in which final *i* sounds like short *e*.

2d. In the first syllable of a word (the second of which is accented), either when it stands alone before a consonant; as *i-do'-nē-us*, or ends the syllable before a vowel; as, *fi-ē'-bam*.

In all other situations at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, *i* has an obscure sound resembling short *e*; as, *nob'-i-lis*, *rap'-i-dus*, *ri-dē'-lis*, &c.

3. When a syllable ends with a consonant, its vowel has the short English sound, as in *fat*, *met*, *pin*, *not*, *tub*, *symbol*; thus *mag'-nus*, *reg'-num*, *fin'-go*, *hoc*, *sub*, *cyg'-nus*.

*Exc.* *Es* at the end of a word, has the sound of the English word *case* as, *fi-des*, *ig'-nes*.

### 923.—2. The sound of the Diphthongs.

*Æ* and *æ* are pronounced as *e* in the same situation; as, *æ'-tas*, *cæt'-ē-ra*, *pæ'-na*, *æs'-trum*.

*Au* is pronounced like *aw*,—*eu* like long *u*,—and *ei*, not followed by another vowel, like long *i*; as, *au'-di-o*, *eu'-ge*, *hei*.

*Exc.* In Greek proper names, *au* are separated; as, *Men'-e-la'-us*.

*Note.*—*ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, and *uu*, in one syllable after *g*, *g*, *s*, are not properly diphthongs, but the *u* takes the sound of *w*, 8-2.

After *g* and *s* these vowels are often pronounced separately, or in different syllables; as, *ar'-gu-o*, *su'-a*, *su'-i*, *su'-us*.

*Exc.* *Ui* in *cui* and *huic*, has the sound of *i* long.

### 924.—3. The sound of the Consonants.

The consonants are in general pronounced in Latin as in English. The following may be noticed.

*C* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, *œ*, has the sound of *s*; as, *cē-do*, *ct-vis*, *cyg'-nus*, *Cæ-sar*, *cæ'-na*; before *a*, *o*, *u*, *l*, *r*, and at the end of a syllable, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca-to*, *con-tra*, *cur*, *Clo-di-us*, *Cri-to*.

*Ch*, generally has the sound of *k*; as *char'-ta* *chor'-da*, *chrō-ma*.

*G* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, *œ*, has its soft sound like *j*; as, *gē'-nus*, *re'-gis*; also before another *g* soft; as, *agger*. In other situations it is hard; as in the English words, *bag*, *go*.

*Ch* and *ph* before *th* in the beginning of a word, are not sounded; as *Chthonia*, *Phthia*; also when a word begins with *mn*, *gn*, *tm*, *ct*, *pt*, *ps*, the first letter is silent, or but slightly sounded; as, *mne-mō'-y-na*, *gnō'-rus*, *tmē-sis*, *Ctō-si-as*, *Ptol-e-mæ'-us*, *psal'-lo*.

Other consonants in their combinations resemble so closely their sounds in English words, that further illustration is unnecessary

# SHELDON & COMPANY'S

## School and Collegiate Text-Books.

---

*We would call the Especial attention of Teachers, and of all who are interested in the subject of Education, to the following valuable list of School Books:*

### **BULLIONS' SERIES OF GRAMMARS, Etc.**

#### **A Common School Grammar.**

Being an Introduction to the Analytical and Practical English Grammar, . . . . . \$0 50

This work for beginners has the same Rules, Definitions, etc., as the

#### **Analytical and Practical English Grammar.**

A complete work for Academies and higher classes in Schools, containing a complete and concise system of Analysis, etc., . . . . . 1 00

#### **Progressive Exercises in Analysis and Parsing.**

. . . . . 0 25

#### **Latin Lessons, with Exercises in Parsing. . . 1 00**

Prepared by GEORGE SPENCER, A.M., as Introd. to Bullions'

#### **Principles of Latin Grammar. \$1 50.**

#### **Bullions & Morris's Latin Lessons.**

For beginners, with simple lessons to be learned each day, and Vocabulary, etc., . . . . . 1 00

#### **Bullions & Morris's New Latin Grammar. . . 1 50**

***Latin Reader (New Edition).***

With simple progressive Exercises, references to Bullions's and Bullions and Morris's Latin Grammars, Latin Idioms, and an Improved Vocabulary, . . . . . \$1 50

***Exercises in Latin Composition.***

Adapted to Bullions's Latin Grammar, . . . . . 1 50

***Key to Do.*** (for Teachers only), . . . . . 0 60

***Cæsar's Commentaries.***

With Notes, Vocabulary, and References to Bullions's and Bullions & Morris's Grammars, . . . . . 1 50

***Cicero's Orations.***

With Notes and References to Bullions's, Bullions & Morris's, and to Andrews & Stoddard's Grammars, . . . . . 1 50

***Sallust,*** . . . . . 1 50

***Latin-English and English-Latin Dictionary.***

With Synonyms, and other new features, . . . . . 5 30

***First Lessons in Greek,*** . . . . . 1 00

***Principles of Greek Grammar,*** . . . . . 1 75

***Bullions and Kendrick's New Greek Grammar,*** 2 00

***Greek Reader.***

With Introduction on Greek Idioms, Impr. Lex., etc., . . 2 25

***Cooper's Virgil.***

With valuable English Notes, . . . . . 2 50

***Long's Classical Atlas.***

Containing Fifty-two Colored Maps and Plans, and forming the most complete Atlas of the Ancient World ever published. 1 vol., 4to, . . . . . 4 5

***Baird's Classical Manual.*** 1 vol., 16mo, . . . . . 0 9

***Kautschmidt's English-Latin and Latin-English***

***Dictionary.*** For Schools. 900 pages, 16mo, . . . 2 50

"Bullions' Analytical and English Grammar has been in constant use for several years in this and the other Public Schools of the city. It stands the test of use. The more one sees of it the better it is liked. I consider it a successful work; and I know that this opinion is shared by other masters in and out of the public service."  
—JAMES A. PAGE, *Master of Dwight School.*

"We heartily concur in the above."—S. W. MASON, *Master of Eliot School.*  
D. C. BROWN, *Master of Bowdoin School.* |  
JOSHUA BATES, *Master of Brimmer School.*

"We have used Bullions' Analytical English Grammars in our Public Schools nearly two years with success. We find them an improvement on those previously in use. Bullions' small Grammar is a fit introduction to the large one."—J. D. E. JONES, *Supt. of Schools, Worcester, Mass.*

"I have used Bullions' Analytical English Grammar some two and a half years, and am ready to give it my approval. I have not failed to pronounce it the best text-book on Grammar whenever I have had opportunity to do so. I now have a class of ninety in it, and it bears the drill of the school-room."—REV. J. W. GARDNER, *Principal of New London (N. H.) Institute.*

## BROCKLESBY'S ASTRONOMIES.

### *Brocklesby's Common School Astronomy.*

12mo. 173 pages, . . . . . \$0 80

This book is a compend of

### *Brocklesby's Elements of Astronomy.*

By JOHN BROCKLESBY, Trinity College, Hartford, Conn

12mo. Fully illustrated. 321 pages, . . . . . 1 75

In this admirable treatise the author has aimed to preserve the great principles and facts of the science in their integrity, and so to arrange, explain, and illustrate them that they may be clear and intelligible to the student.

"We take great pleasure in calling the attention of teachers and students to this truly excellent book. Both the plan and execution of the whole are equally admirable. It is not a milk-and-water compilation, without principles and without demonstration. It contains the elements of the *science* in their proper integrity and proportions. Its author is a learned man and a practical instructor, as the author of every school-book should be. The style is a model for a text-book, combining in high degree, perspicuity, precision, and vivacity. In a word, it is the very best elementary work on Astronomy with which we are acquainted."—*Connecticut Common School Journal.*

"This is a compact treatise of 320 pages, containing the elements and most of the important facts of the science clearly presented and systematically arranged. It is very finely illustrated. It is worthy of a careful examination by all who wish to secure the best text-books."—*Ohio Journal of Education.*

## KEETEL'S FRENCH METHOD.

### *A New Method of Learning the French Language.*

By JEAN GUSTAVE KEETELS, Professor of French and German in the Brooklyn Polytechnic Institute. 12mo., . \$1 75

### *'A Key to the New Method in French.*

By J. G. KEETELS. 1 vol. 12mo, . . . . . 0 69

"I have examined Keetels' New Method of Learning the French Language, and find it admirably adapted for conveying a thorough knowledge of the French language. It is an easy and sure method of both writing and speaking French with accuracy and elegance."—DANIEL LYNCH, S. J., *Director of Studies in Gonzaga College, Washington.*

"The 'New Method of Learning the French Language,' by Professor Keetels, appears to be exceedingly well adapted as an introduction into the study of French. It is emphatically a practical book, and bears the mark that it has resulted from the author's own experience in teaching. I shall take pleasure in soon giving it the test of a trial in my own Institute."—OSWALD SEIDENSTICKER, *Principal of the Commercial and Classical Institute, Philadelphia.*

"I have examined several books designed for pupils studying the French language, and among them Keetels' 'New Method of the French.' The last work I consider superior to any other which I have examined, and shall use it in my classes as the best text-book upon the subject."—S. A. FARRAND, *Trenton, N. J.*

## PEISSNER'S GERMAN GRAMMAR.

### *A Comparative English-German Grammar.*

Based on the affinity of the two languages. By Prof. ELIAS PEISSNER, late of the University of Munich, and of Union College, Schenectady. New edition. 816 pp., . \$1 75

"Prof. Peissner's German Grammar has been, from its first publication, and is now, used as a text-book in this College, and has by the teachers here, as in many other Institutions, been esteemed a superior work for the end to be subserved by it, in attaining a knowledge of the elements of the German language. I cordially recommend it to the attention and use of such American Academies and Colleges as are designed to give instruction in the German language."—L. P. HICKOK, *President Union College, N. Y.*

## COMSTOCK'S SERIES.

### *System of Natural Philosophy.*

Re-written and enlarged, including latest discoveries.  
Fully illustrated, . . . . . \$1 75

### *Elements of Chemistry.*

Re-written 1861, and adapted to the present state of the  
Science, . . . . . 1 75

## OLNEY'S GEOGRAPHY.

### *Olney's Geography and Atlas.*

Revised and improved, by the addition on the Maps of the latest information and discoveries. New Plates and Woodcuts. Atlas, 28 Maps. Geography, 18mo, 304 pages, \$2 40

These favorite text-books, of which more than a million have been sold, are kept up to the times by the publishers, who add the latest geographical information on the large and beautiful Maps and in the Text-Books, so as to make them worthy of the claim that they are the best works for the study of Geography now published.

## PALMER'S BOOK-KEEPING.

### *Palmer's Practical Book-Keeping.*

By JOSEPH H. PALMER, A.M., Instructor in New York

Free Academy. 12mo. 167 pages, . . . . . \$1 00

*Blanks to Do.* (2 numbers, Journal and Ledger), each . 0 50

*Key to Do.* . . . . . 0 10

This work is adopted by the Boards of Education of the cities of New York and Brooklyn, where it is generally used in schools and recommended by teachers. It is also recommended by accountants of prominent commercial firms, and the Press.

### *Whately's Elements of Logic.*

By RICHARD WHATELY, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin.

New revised edition, with the Author's last Additions.

Large 12mo. 484 pages, . . . . . \$1 75

"This work (Elements of Logic) has long been our text-book here. The style in which you have published this new edition of so valuable a work, leaves nothing to be desired in regard of elegance and convenience."—*Prof. DUNN, Brown University.*

"Its merits are now too widely known to require an enumeration of them. The present American edition of it is conformed to the ninth English edition, which was revised by the author, and which contains several improvements on the former issues."—*North American Review*

### *Whately's Elements of Rhetoric.*

Comprising an Analysis of the Laws of Moral Evidence and of Persuasion, with Rules for Argumentative Composition and Elocution. New edition, revised by the Author. Large 12mo. 546 pages, . . . . . \$1 75



"The Elements of Rhetoric has become so much a standard work that it might seem superfluous to speak of it. In short, we should not dream of teaching a College class from any other book on Rhetoric. Communion with Whately's mind would improve any mind on earth."—*Presbyterian Quarterly Review*.

The above are the editions formerly published by JAMES MUNROE & Co., Boston, and the best in the market. They are used in all the principal Colleges and Academies in the United States.

***Fitch's Mapping Plates.*** (In one volume, quarto.)

Designed for Learners in Geography; being a collection of Plates prepared for Delineating Maps of the World, and Counties forming its principal subdivisions, viz., 1. The World. 2. United States. 3. North America. 4. South America. 5. A State. 6. Mexico and Guatemala. 7. Great Britain and Ireland. 8. Europe. 9. Southern Europe. 10. Germany. 11. Africa. 12. Asia. 13. Atlantic Ocean. 14. Pacific Ocean. By GEO. W. FITCH, . \$0 60

## NORMAL MATHEMATICAL SERIES.

***Stoddard's Juvenile Mental Arithmetic.***

By JOHN F. STODDARD, A.M. For Primary Schools. 72 pp., \$0 25

***Stoddard's American Intellectual Arithmetic.***

An extended work, for Schools and Academies. 172 pp., . 0 50

***Stoddard's Rudiments of Arithmetic.***

This work presents such parts of Arithmetic as are most useful in ordinary business computations. 192 pp., . . . 0 50

***Stoddard's New Practical Arithmetic.***

Embracing methods and forms of modern business, with Analyses and many varied Examples. 192 pp., . . . . 1 00

***Stoddard's Complete Arithmetic.***

Being in one book, the pages of the New Practical Arithmetic in the order of that book, and 120 pages of additional matter, suited for classes in High Schools. A full course in one book, . . . . . 1 25

***Key to Stoddard's Complete Arithmetic,*** . . . 1 00

***Methods of Teaching and Key to Intellect. Arith.*** 0 50

***Schuyler's Higher Arithmetic.*** (For Colleges), . . 1 25

***Stoddard & Henkle's Elementary Algebra.***

By JOHN F. STODDARD, A.M., and Prof. W. D. HENKLE, 1 25

***Key to Stoddard & Henkle's Element. Algebra, . \$.*** 25

***Stoddard & Henkle's University Algebra.***

For High Schools, Academies, and Colleges. By JOHN

F. STODDARD, A.M., and Prof. W. D. HENKLE. 528 pp.,. 2 00

***Key to Stoddard & Henkle's University Algebra.*** 2 00

"I have examined Stoddard & Henkle's University Algebra. It is a thorough and elaborate work. It combines clearness and simplicity in its method and illustrations, and constitutes a valuable addition to the mathematical works of the day."  
—CYRUS NUTT, A.M., *Professor of Mathematics in the Indiana Ashbury Univ'y.*

"I have examined Stoddard's American Intellectual Arithmetic, and cheerfully recommend it to teachers and parents as a valuable elementary work, and one well adapted to the wants of pupils in the first stages of arithmetic. It is constructed upon sound and practical principles, and will be found an important addition to the text-books now in use in our Common Schools."—Hon. SAMUEL S. RANDALL, *Supt. of New York City Schools.*

"Stoddard's Arithmetical Series is now in general use in the schools of this county. They have stood the test for four years as the text-books in Arithmetic in our schools, and are considered by our teachers superior to any others now before the public."—Mr. S. A. TORRILL, *late Supt. of Public Schools of Wayne County, Pa.*

## HOOKER'S PHYSIOLOGIES.

***Hooker's First Book in Physiology.***

For Public Schools, . . . . . \$0 90

***Hooker's Human Physiology and Hygiene.***

For Academies and general reading. By WORTHING-

TON HOOKER, M.D., Yale College,. . . . . 1 75

These books are text-books almost wherever they are known. The "First Book" is a text-book in the Public Schools of Boston, New York, Buffalo, and San Francisco.

"Professor Hooker's work on Physiology has been in use for the last year in the Normal School in this city, and it gives me great pleasure to express my convictions of its excellence as a text-book. In the course of my experience as a teacher, I have used the books of various authors on the subject of Physiology, but the work of Professor Hooker satisfies me much more fully than any other that I have used. It has the double advantage of being accurately scientific in its matter and arrangement, and of being expressed in correct and elegant English, a combination of the highest importance, and yet seldom attained to the extent exhibited in this book. I know of no book for which I would be willing to exchange it."—RICHARD EDWARDS  
*Ed., Pres. Ill. Normal University, Bloomington, Ill.*

***The Elements of Intellectual Philosophy.***

By FRANCIS WAYLAND, D.D. 1 vol. 12mo, . . . \$1 75

This clearly written book, from the pen of a scholar of eminent ability, and who has had the largest experience in the education of the human mind, is unquestionably at the head of text-books in Intellectual Philosophy. The author's practical suggestions on the cultivation of the several faculties of the mind, aiding the student's efforts to discipline and strengthen his intellectual energies, and the numerous references to books of easy access, specifying the places where topics treated of are more fully discussed, make this book a valuable addition to the readable books of any teacher or professional man.

***The Exhibition Speaker and Gymnastic Book.***

Containing Farces, Dialogues, and Tableaux, with Exercises for Declamation, in Prose and Verse. Also, a Treatise on Oratory and Elocution, Hints on Dramatic Characters, Costume, Position on the Stage, Making up, etc., etc., with illustrations. Carefully compiled and arranged for School Exhibitions, by P. A. FITZGERALD. To which is added a complete System of Calisthenics and Gymnastics, with instructions for Teachers and Pupils, illustrated by numerous Engravings. 1 vol. 12mo, . . \$1 25

***Shaw's Outlines of English Literature.***

By THOS. B. SHAW, with a sketch of American Literature,

by HENRY F. TUCKERMAN, Esq. 1 vol. royal 12mo, \$1 75

"Its merits I had not, now for the first time to learn. I have used it for two years as a text-book, with the greatest satisfaction. It was a happy conception, admirably executed. It is all that a text-book on such a subject can or need be, comprising a judicious selection of materials, easily yet effectively wrought. The author attempts just as much as he ought to, and does well all that he attempts; and the best of the book is the *genial spirit*, the genuine love of genius and its works which thoroughly pervades it, and makes it just what you want to put into a pupil's hands."—*Prof. J. H. RAYMOND, University of Rochester.*

"Of 'Shaw's English Literature' I can hardly say too much in praise. I hope its adoption and use as a text-book will correspond to its great merits."—*Prof. J. C. PICKARD, Ill. College.*

*For more full particulars, send for School Catalogue.*

Address

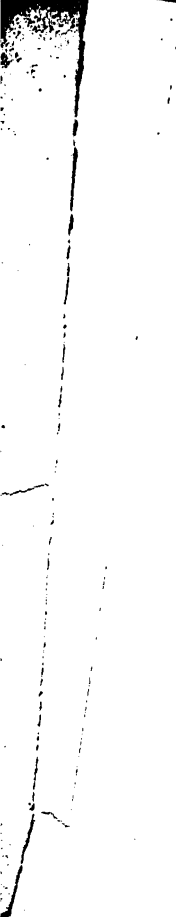
SHELDON &amp; COMPANY, PUBLISHERS,

877 BROADWAY, NEW YORK.

Digitized by Google

md dk







THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

[illegible]

Page 419





THE NEW YORK PUBLIC LIBRARY  
REFERENCE DEPARTMENT

This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

[illegible]



